

Manual for FOMA® F801i '07.12



**Easy Search/Contents/
Precautions**

**Before Using the
Handset**

**Voice/
Videophone Calls**

Phonebook

**Sound/Screen/
Light Settings**

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode/i-motion

Mail

i-appli

GPS Function

**Data Display/Edit/
Management**

**Other Convenient
Functions**

Character Entry

Network Services

PC connection setting

**Appendix/External
Devices Troubleshooting**

Index/Quick Manual

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for purchasing FOMA F801i mobile terminal.

Both before and during use of your FOMA F801i mobile terminal, be sure to thoroughly read this manual and other instruction manuals that come with the optional devices to ensure you are able to correctly use your FOMA F801i mobile terminal. For more information, you may contact us as mentioned on the back of this manual.

Treated with care, your FOMA F801i mobile terminal will be your able partner.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- Because your FOMA terminal uses radio waves, it may not function in locations where it is difficult for radio waves to penetrate, such as tunnels, underground passages and some buildings, in areas where radio wave signals are weak, or out of service area. Even when you are high up in a tall building or condominium and nothing blocks your view outside, your FOMA terminal may not be able to receive or transmit signals. Also, communication may be interrupted even when the signal meter on your FOMA terminal indicates there is a strong signal and you are not moving (traveling).
- Use your FOMA terminal in a way that does not disturb others in public spaces, crowded locations or quiet places.
- Because your FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is a possibility that third parties may attempt to listen in on your calls. The W-CDMA system automatically supports a confidential communication function for all calls so even if someone should somehow be able to tap a call, the signals are modified so that the eavesdropping party will hear only noise.
- Your FOMA terminal encodes voice communication as digital data. When you are operating your FOMA terminal while moving to a location subject to weaker radio wave signals, the transmitted digital data may not be correctly decoded and as a result the decoded voice may differ somewhat from the actual voice.
- Maintain a separate record of the data (Phonebook, Schedule, Notepad, Recorded messages, Voice memos, Movie memo, etc.) you registered in your FOMA terminal. Note that DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for any loss of saved contents of data resulting from malfunction, repair, changing of the model or other handling of the FOMA terminal.
- You are recommended to save important data. Using DoCoMo keitai datalink, you can transfer and save phonebook, mail, schedule and other data to a PC.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
Certifier : VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd., Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd.
- This FOMA terminal is applicable to FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

When using FOMA terminal for the first time

When you are going to use FOMA terminal for the first time, please read this manual in the order below. You will be able to understand an outline of the preparation for using FOMA terminal and basic operations.

1. Check "Precautions". → P10
2. Set and charge the battery pack. → P37
3. Turn the power ON, make initial settings and check your phone number. → P42, 44
4. Check the functions of terminal keys. → P26
5. Check the definitions of icons appearing on the screen. → P28
6. Check how to use the menus. → P32
7. Check how to make and receive calls. → P46, 55

Latest information about this manual can be downloaded from DoCoMo's website.

- User's Manual Download

<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>

* The URL and contents are subject to change without prior notice.

How to use this manual

This manual provides the methods below for necessary function's easy search :

Searching from Easy Search

▶ P4

Using friendly words, search for functions frequently used or convenient functions.

Searching from Menu list

▶ P290

Search from menu displayed on the display of F801i. Default settings are described in Menu list.

Searching from thumb indices

▶ Front cover

Use indices on the front cover to search for functions.

*See P2-3 for examples.

Searching from CONTENTS

▶ P6

Use CONTENTS categorized into chapters based on operations to search for functions.

Searching by main functions

▶ P8

Functions can be searched from specific features of F801i.

Searching from Index

▶ P342

Search from the function name, item keyword or service name.

Using Quick Manual

▶ P348

You can cut out Quick Reference Manual from this manual and carry it with you anywhere.

- In this "Manual for FOMA F801i", "FOMA F801i" mobile terminal is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal".
- The images or illustration provided in this manual are for information purposes only and may differ from the actual displays.
- The icons and screens that appear on the display are already set from the combinations prepared in FOMA terminal depending on the FOMA terminal color.
This manual mostly gives description assuming that Style theme is set to "Dot".→P89
- This manual gives descriptions based mainly on the default settings. If settings are changed, the displays or operations of the FOMA terminal may differ from the ones described in this manual. Operation procedures are given assuming that Kids' mode is "OFF". When Kids' mode is "ON", functions and operations requiring authentication may be disabled. For details, see "Menu list".→P290
- The description of "authenticate" indicates the operating procedure for entering the terminal security code (4-8 digits) in this manual.
Terminal security code→P105
- Unauthorized copying of parts of or this entire manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

How to use this manual

Methods to search pages are described, taking "Answer machine" for example.

Searching from Easy Search

Functions frequently used and convenient functions are categorized by their purposes and with simple words.

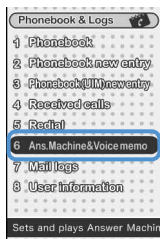


When you cannot answer the call

Putting the call on hold when you cannot answer it immediately	Respond and Hold	57
Notifying the caller that you have to refrain from talking	Public mode (Drive mode)	58
	Public mode (Power OFF)	59
Recording the other party's voice or image	Answer machine	60

Searching from Menu list

Functions can be searched for using the words displayed on the FOMA terminal screen.



4 Phonebook & Logs	
Menu	Page
1 Phonebook	P69
2 Phonebook new entry	P67
3 Phonebook(UIM) new entry	P68
4 Received calls	P48
5 Redial	P48
6 Ans. Machine & Voice memo	1 Answer machine P60
	2 Recorded messages P61
	3 Record voice memo P259
	4 Voice memos P259
	5 Sent msg log P183
	P183

Searching from thumb indices

Functions can be searched for using indices of the end of the right side of the front cover in the order of the front cover, chapter top page and function description page.
The chapter top page also gives the list of detailed contents.

Easy Search/Contents/ Precautions

Before Using the Handset

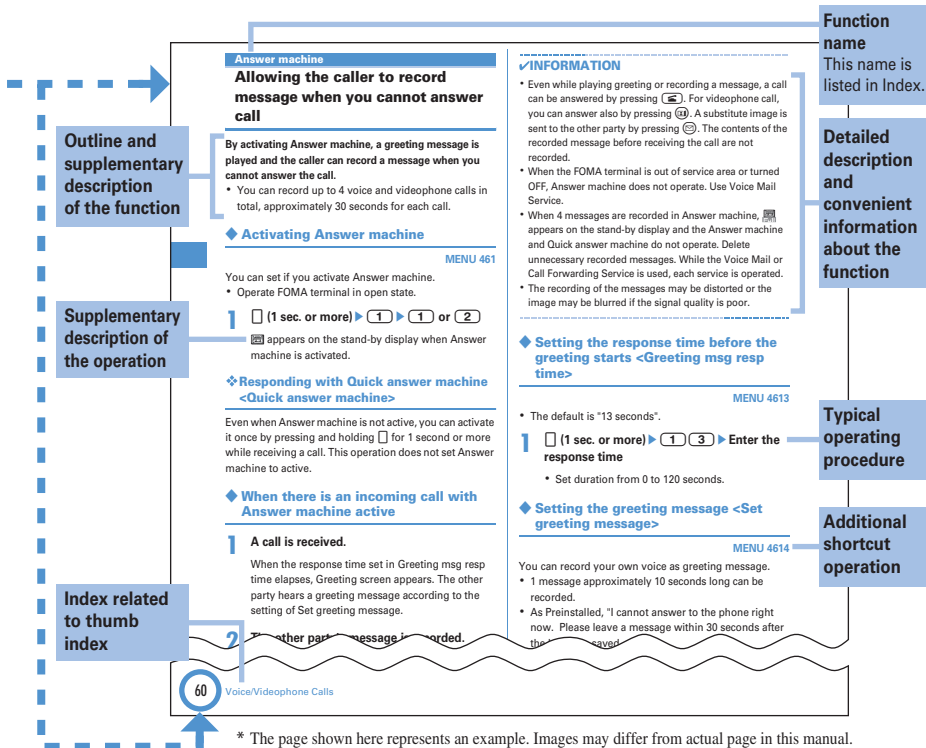
Voice/ Videophone Calls

Phonebook

Sound/Screen/ Settings

Voice/Videophone Calls

Making voice/videophone calls	
Videophone	46
Making voice/videophone calls	46
Switching voice/videophone call	48
Making a call using Redial/Received calls	Redial/Received calls 48
Using Chakuwoji	Chakuwoji 50
Setting to either Notify/Not notify caller ID for each call	186/184 51
Sending tone signal (DTMF)	51
Making a call under set conditions	Call option 52
	WORLD CALL 52
	Int'l call assist 53
Receiving voice/videophone call	53
Receiving voice/videophone calls	Prefix dialing 54
Switching voice/videophone call when receiving a call	Sub address 54
Enabling use of keypad to answer call	Noise reduction 54
Ending/putting on hold/continuing a call by holding FOMA terminal	Car Hands-Free 54
Setting priority screen for incoming calls during call or packet communication	Priority screen mode 57
When you can/could not answer a voice/videophone call	
Putting calls on hold when you cannot answer immediately	Respond and Hold 57
Setting status message	Status message 57
Using Public mode (Drive mode)	Public mode (Drive mode) 58
Using Public mode (Power OFF)	Public mode (Power OFF) 59
Allowing the caller to record message when you cannot answer call	Answer machine 60
Playing/deleting recorded messages	61



Operating procedure and representation of key

- In this manual, operations of pressing keys are represented by graphical symbols. And, to distinguish the side key from the silent alarm key, the silent alarm key is described as []. Keys are represented with simplified symbols as shown below.

Actual key	Key representation in this manual
[1] []	[1]

Graphical symbols of keys used in this manual → P26 "Names and functions of parts"

- The representations and meanings of operating procedures are as shown below.

Representation example	Meaning
[MENU] (1 sec. or more)	Press and hold [MENU] for 1 second or more.
[MENU] ► [8] [1] [7] ► Select the item to set ► [1] [5]	Press [MENU] on the stand-by display and then sequentially press [8] [1] [7]. Then, place the cursor on an item to set, press [] and press one of keypads [1] to [5] related to the number to set.

- In this manual, to select an item by placing the cursor with [] (Multi-cursor key) and pressing [] (Enter key) is referred to as "select". Regarding an operation to enter characters in the entry field, the final step of pressing [] [OK] is omitted.

Easy Search

Functions which you want to know can be searched for using friendly words.



Convenient functions for calls

Showing/Hiding your phone number	Caller ID notification	44
Putting the call on hold	On hold	47
Changing the volume of the other party's voice	Listen volume	47
Switching from voice call to videophone call	Switching to videophone call	48



When you cannot answer the call

Putting the call on hold when you cannot answer it immediately	Respond and Hold	57
Notifying the caller that you have to refrain from talking	Public mode (Drive mode)	58
.....	Public mode (Power OFF)	59
Recording the other party's voice or image	Answer machine	60



Changing sound, lighting color and vibration

Setting different ring tone, etc. for incoming calls from specific parties	Alert by contact	68
Changing ring alert	Ring alert	78
Changing loudness of ring tone	Adjust volume	79
Making vibration when there is an incoming call	Vibrate alert/effect	80
Muting keypad sound	Operation sound	80
Setting silent mode	Silent mode	82
Changing color such as light	Light alert	91



Changing displays

Meanings of icons on display	Display overview	28
Switching the menu display	Selecting functions from menu	32
Changing stand-by display	Stand-by display	83
Displaying a calendar on stand-by display	Info/calendar layout	85
Changing font size	Font size	93



Making full use of mail

Sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail	165
Sending images and/or melodies	Attachment	169
Automatically sorting mails	Sort method	185



Making full use of camera

Changing image size	Image settings/Recording settings	131
Shooting with light ON		133
Viewing shot still images	My Picture	224



Safety and security

Hiding contents of phonebook	Secret attribute	74
Making safety settings for child		96
Sounding safety alarm	Safety alarm	97
Notifying current location with single touch of button	Silent alarm	99
Preventing misplacement with Omamorimokon		100
Locking FOMA remotely in case of misplacement, etc.	Omakase Lock*1	108
Rejecting calls with no caller IDs	Anonymous caller	119
Rejecting calls from parties not saved in phonebook.....	Unregistered caller	120
Saving phonebook and other data as a precaution against data loss	Data Security Service*2	120



Other convenient functions

Reading QR and/or bar code	Bar code reader	137
Using GPS function	GPS function	212
Sending or receiving data via infrared communication	Infrared communication	240
Using alarm clock	Alarm clock	249
Using calculator	Calculator	261
Updating software	Software update	328
Keeping security software updated	Scanning function	332

*1 This is charged service.

*2 This is an optional subscriber service to be charged requiring subscription.

- For procedures to search for other functions, see "How to use this manual". → P1
- Quick Manual introduces you procedures for using convenient functions. → P348

CONTENTS

■ Before using your FOMA terminal	Inside front cover
■ How to use this manual	1
■ Easy Search	4
■ Main functions of FOMA F801i	8
■ Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)	10
■ Handling instructions	16
■ Waterproof performance	18
■ Intellectual property rights	21
■ Basic package and optional accessories	24

● Before Using the Handset..... 25

Names and functions of parts Display overview
 Selecting menu Using UIM (FOMA card)
 Attaching/removing battery pack Charging
 battery Battery level Power ON/OFF Select
 language Date & time Caller ID notification User
 information etc.

● Voice/Videophone Calls..... 45

Making calls Redial/Received calls Chaku-moji
 186/184 Tone signal (DTMF) Call option WORLD
 CALL Receiving calls Any key answer Close
 settings Respond and Hold Public mode
 Recorded messages Using Chara-den
 Videophone settings Notify switchable mode
 etc.

● Phonebook..... 65

Phonebook new entry Alert by contact Group
 settings Phonebook search Edit phonebook
 Delete phonebook Secret attribute Quick dial
 Direct call etc.

● Sound/Screen/Light Settings.....77

Ring alert Alarm sound Adjust volume Vibrate
 alert/effect Silent mode Stand-by display Sound
 & Image Outgoing/Incoming mail/Retrieving
 image Menu setting Light alert Clock display
 format etc.

● Security Settings.....95

Safety options Kids' mode setting Safety alarm
 Silent alarm Omamorimokon Loss protection
 Power OFF notice Battery indicator Timed theme
 Restrict functions Security code Terminal
 security code change PIN code All lock Omakase
 Lock Self mode Personal data lock Keypad dial
 lock Privacy mode Side key hold Lock on close
 Accept/Reject call Data Center etc.

● Camera 123

Still camera Movie camera Setting for shooting
 Bar code reader etc.



i-mode/i-motion.....	141
i-mode Site display Change i-mode password Go to location Bookmark Screen memo Downloading from site i-mode settings MessageR/F Operating certificate i-motion i- motion setting etc.	
Mail.....	163
Creating/sending i-mode mail Deco-mail Attachment Saving i-mode mail Quick mail Receiving i-mode mail Check new message Operating Inbox/Outbox Mail settings Creating/ sending chat mail Creating/sending SMS etc.	
i-appli	199
Downloading Starting i-appli i-appli To i-appli stand-by display Managing i-appli etc.	
GPS Function.....	211
GPS Position location GPS compatible i-appli Location request Notify location Loc. history Setting GPS etc.	
Data Display/Edit/Management	223
Displaying/editing image Playing/editing movie/ i-motion Chara-den Playing melody Managing data Infrared communication Sound recorder etc.	
Other Convenient Functions	247
Multiaccess Multitask Auto power ON/OFF Countdown timer Alarm clock Scheduler Custom menu Voice memos/Movie memo Call duration/Call cost Calculator Notepad Dictionaries Earphone/Microphone with switch Reset Delete all data etc.	
Character Entry	267
Character entry 5-touch input method Save phrase Copying/cutting characters KUTEN code input Save word DL dictionary Slot input method Text input method etc.	
Network Services	277
Voice Mail Service Call waiting Call Forwarding Service Nuisance Call Blocking Service Caller ID request service Dual Network Service English guidance Service numbers Arrival call act Remote control Multi number Additional service etc.	
PC connection setting.....	285
Data Communication AT commands DoCoMo keitai datalink etc.	
Appendix/External Devices/ Troubleshooting	289
Menu list Combination of Multiaccess/Multitask functions Services available Options and related devices Error messages Warranty and After- Sales Service Software update Scanning function SAR certification information etc.	
Index/Quick Manual.....	341
Index Quick Manual	

Main functions of FOMA F801i

FOMA is a DoCoMo's service name based on W-CDMA recognized as one of the global standards for 3rd generation wireless communication (IMT-2000).

It's amazing because it's i-mode!

i-mode is an online service used with i-mode terminal. This service supports connection to i-mode sites (programs) or i-mode compatible sites that provide a variety of useful information and allows you to exchange i-mode mail.

Main features of FOMA F801i

i-mode mail and Deco-mail pictograms

In addition to message text, you can attach up to 10 files (images, etc.) or files of up to 2 Mbytes in total to mail. →P169
Moreover, because Deco-mail and Deco-mail pict are available, you can change a font color and size or background color for the message text, or you can insert image or moving pictogram. →P165

Mega i-appli and i-appli DX

Using i-appli downloaded from sites, you can enjoy games or automatically update stock prices, weather information or other information. This FOMA terminal is compatible with large-capacity Mega i-appli, allowing you to play high-resolution 3D and long roll-playing games.
Moreover, i-appli DX allows you to enjoy i-appli in various ways by linking information such as phonebook entries and mail in the FOMA terminal. →P200

Videophone call

You can have a conversation with a party in the distance seeing each other's face.
The other party's voice is heard from the speaker by default, so you can immediately start talking. And, even during a usual voice call, it can be switched to a videophone call without disconnecting the call.

Direct call

If you register parties you frequently contact in Direct call, you can make a call or send mail to them with simple procedures. In addition, you can check the other party's current location (イマドコかんたんサーチ (imadocokantan search)), send mail attached with location information URL or display a list of logs of calls and/or mail sent to or received from registered parties. →P75

Video clip

Since i-motion of up to 10Mbytes in H.264 format with high compression efficiency is available, you can enjoy music clips containing a full tune or high-quality video clip containing movie, animation, etc. →P230

GPS

You can use wave emitted from GPS satellites to acquire location information of the FOMA terminal. Using acquired location information, you can search for the map or peripheral information of your current location, notify your location by attaching it to mail or navigate to a destination ("地図アプリ for Kids" (Map application for kids)" is saved). →P212

Kisekai Tool

With Kisekai Tool possible to change the screen to have a unified design; original styles can be added to 5 pre-installed styles. By downloading Kisekai Tool contents from the site, you can collectively change stand-by images, menu icons, incoming/outgoing images, ring alerts, etc. →P89

Chaku-moji

When making a call, you can keep displaying a message on the receiver's incoming call screen before the called party answers. The receiver can check the message displayed on the screen and know the purpose or feelings of the caller.

Kids' mode

Changes to functions or settings can be restricted by using one of 2 different security codes (terminal security code and password) by the parent and the other by the child.

Security and other functions that can be set up with a terminal security code (security code for parent) cannot be set up with a password (security code for child).

You are recommended to set Kids' mode when a child uses the terminal.→P96

Safety alarm

In an emergency, you can sound a loud alarm with a simple procedure to notify people around you of your current location. Sounding the safety alarm with a single touch of button enables you to automatically make a voice call or inform where you are using the GPS function.→P97

Omamorimokon (pairing device) and Loss protection

You can sound alarm or lock the FOMA terminal when the distance between Omamorimokon and FOMA terminal exceeds a limit (Loss protection).

You can protect your personal information by preventing misplacement and, even if misplaced, locking the terminal.→P100

Waterproof performance

Waterproof performance of IPX5 and IPX7 under locked condition with the external connection terminal cap securely closed and back cover installed is provided.→P18

You can talk or send/receive mail in the rain or use the terminal in a bathroom or the poolside area. You can hand-wash the spotted terminal with tap water.

Flashlight and Safety light

You can use the folded FOMA terminal as a small size light with the light or sub-display section ON.

Flashlight turns the light ON 30 seconds and Safety light flashes the light and sub-display section 15 minutes.→P103

Infrared communication

You can send/receive data to/from other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs equipped with the infrared communication function.→P240

Security Settings→P105

Omakase Lock*

Omakase Lock is a service that locks FOMA terminal on request from the subscriber. Even if the holder of FOMA terminal is different from its subscriber, the terminal may be locked on request from the subscriber.→P108

* This is charged service. If you request unlocking at the same time as service interruption or during interruption, no charges occur. Even in Omakase Lock, if Request permit/deny is "ON", the FOMA terminal responds to location request of GPS function. For precautions and detailed procedure for using this service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Procedures and After-Sales Service]".

Data Security Service*

You can store phonebook, mail and/or images saved in FOMA terminal to Data Center and, in case of misplacement, etc. of FOMA terminal, restore the data to FOMA terminal. In addition, you can edit or manage data stored in Date Center from a PC and reflect the edited data to FOMA terminal.→P120

* This is an optional subscriber service to be charged requiring subscription. For precautions and detailed procedure, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Wide array of network services

- Voice Mail Service (Charged)→P278
- Catch Phone (Call Waiting Service) (Charged)→P279
- Call Forwarding Service (Free)→P279
- Dual Network service (Charged)→P280

- Multi Number (Charged)→P282
- * All these services require application.

Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)

- Before using your FOMA terminal, or when necessary, read the precautions below to ensure safe use and handling. After reading this manual, keep it carefully.
 - These precautions are intended to protect you and others around you. Read and follow them carefully to avoid injury, damage to the product or damage to property.
- The signs below differentiate between the levels of danger that can occur if the product is not used within the specified guidelines :

 DANGER	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may directly result from improper use.
 WARNING	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may result from improper use.
 CAUTION	This sign denotes that bodily injury or damage to property may result from improper use.

- The symbols below show specific directions :

 Don't	This symbol denotes that the action is prohibited.
 No disassembly	This symbol denotes that disassembling the phone or its components is not allowed.
 Avoid water	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components with wet hands is not allowed.
 Avoid water	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components in a bathroom or other highly humid area is not allowed.
 Do	This symbol denotes that an instruction must be obeyed at all times.
 Pull the power plug out	This symbol denotes that the equipment should be unplugged.

■ Precautions contain the description below

Handling FOMA terminal, Omamorimokon, battery pack, adapter (including battery charger) and UIM (Common)	10
Handling FOMA terminal	11
Handling battery pack	13
Handling optional devices (AC Adapter/DC Adapter/Desktop Holder/In-Car Holder)	13
Handling UIM	14
Handling Omamorimokon	15
Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment	15

◆ Handling FOMA terminal, Omamorimokon, battery pack, adapter (including battery charger) and UIM (Common)

DANGER



Don't

Do not use, keep or leave the equipment in hot areas such as near flames or in areas under strong direct sunlight such as inside a vehicle.

May cause the equipment to be deformed or malfunction, and battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the capability or life to be reduced or shortened. Overheating on parts of the case may cause burns or injuries.



No disassembly

Do not disassemble or remodel the equipment. Do not solder items onto the equipment.

May cause fire, injuries, electric shock, or malfunction. It may also cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



Avoid water

Do not let the equipment get wet.

Contact with water or other liquids can cause heating, electric shock, fire, malfunctions or injuries. Take care of the place for use and treatment of the equipment.



Do

Use equipment specified by the DoCoMo Group companies with your FOMA terminal.

Use of equipment not specified by DoCoMo can cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other parts to leak, heat, burst, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery Pack F09
Desktop Holder F21
FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01
FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use

WARNING



Do not put the battery pack, FOMA terminal, adapter (including battery charger) or UIM in microwave ovens or other heating appliances or high-pressure containers.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, the FOMA terminal, adapter (including battery charger) or heat, smoke, ignite, or damage circuits.



Do not throw the equipment or give hard shock to it.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.



Keep conductive materials (metal pieces, pencil lead, etc.) from coming in contact with the charger terminal or external connection terminal. Do not put those materials inside the terminal.

May be subject to electrical short and could cause fire or malfunction.



Turn the FOMA terminal OFF before entering a place such as a gas station where flammable gases are generated. Do not charge the battery.

The gas may catch fire.



If the equipment starts giving off a strange smell, overheats, becomes discolored or deformed during use, charging or in storage, immediately perform the following operations :

1. Remove the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn the FOMA terminal OFF.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

May cause the equipment to heat, burst or ignite or the battery pack to leak if you keep using the equipment.

CAUTION



Do not leave the equipment on unstable or sloping surfaces.

May cause malfunction or injuries.



Do not store the equipment in extremely humid, dusty or hot areas.

May cause malfunction.



Children using the equipment should be instructed in proper operation by an adult. Do not allow them to use the equipment without adult supervision.

May cause injuries.



Store the equipment out of reach of small children.

The equipment can be accidentally swallowed or cause injuries.



Be careful especially when using the FOMA terminal connected to the adapter (including battery charger) continuously for a long time.

If you use i-appli or videophone call long time while charging, the FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter (including battery charger) may become hot.

Directly touching a hot part for a long time, you may have redness, itching or rash on your skin, or it may result in low-temperature burns depending on your constitution and/or health condition.

◆ Handling FOMA terminal

WARNING



Do not direct the infrared data port toward your eye and transmit signals.

May affect your eyes. Faulty operation could result from directing the infrared data port toward other infrared equipment and transmitting signals.



Do not put the FOMA terminal in the place such as the dashboard near the air-bag, where the influence of air-bag explosion is expected.

When the air-bag explodes, the FOMA terminal may hit yourself or others and could cause injury, equipment malfunction or damage.



When you use medical electrical equipment, do not keep the terminal in your chest pocket or inside pocket.

Using your FOMA terminal near medical electronic equipment could cause equipment failure.



Do not put foreign objects such as liquid like water, metal pieces or burnable things into the UIM slot.

May cause fire, electric shock or equipment failure.



Do not turn the light ON pointing to a car driver, etc.

Do

May disturb driving and result in an accident.



Turn the FOMA terminal OFF in areas where use is prohibited, such as in airplanes and hospitals.

Do

Use in these areas can cause electronic medical equipment and electronic equipment to malfunction or fail.

If the function which automatically turns on the power is set, cancel the setting before turning the power off.

When using the phone in a medical facility, be sure to observe the regulations of the facility. If you do prohibited act such as using the phone in an airplane, you may be punished according to law.



When you talk with the speakerphone function activated, always keep the FOMA terminal away from your ear. When you play a game or music with earphone/microphone connected to the FOMA terminal, adjust the sound volume appropriately.

Do

May cause hearing loss.

When it is hard to hear surrounding sounds, an accident may occur.



If you have weak heart, be careful when setting the Vibrate alert (vibration) or alert volume setting.

Do

Could affect heart function.



If it starts thunder while using the phone outside, immediately turn the power OFF and move to a safe location.

Do

May be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.



Turn the FOMA terminal OFF near high-precision electronic control equipment or electronic equipment using low-power signals.

Do

Using the phone near this type of equipment can cause the equipment to fail or malfunction.

* Examples of electronic equipment to avoid :

Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, other electrical medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors, other automatic control equipment. Users wearing implanted pacemakers or defibrillators or other electrical medical equipment should check with the manufacturer or sales outlet about the effect of radio frequencies on the equipment.



In case that the display or camera lens is damaged, be careful of broken glass and/or exposed internal parts of FOMA terminal.

Do

Though the display and camera lens apply plastic panel to prevent glass fragments from scattering, you may be hurt if you carelessly touch broken or exposed parts.



When you sound safety alarm, be sure to keep the FOMA terminal away from your ears.

Do

May cause hearing loss.



CAUTION



Do not swing the FOMA terminal by holding the strap, etc.

Don't

May cause the terminal damage or failure, or injury to yourself or others.



Do not place magnetic disks or cards with magnetic stripes near the FOMA terminal or place inside and fold the terminal.

Don't

Data stored on media such as cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks may be erased if the storage medium is placed near the phone.



Do not bring anything magnetized close to the FOMA terminal.

Don't

Strong magnetism placed close to the FOMA terminal may cause malfunction.



If the display part is accidentally damaged and liquid crystal leaks out, do not put the liquid in your mouth, inhale, or make contact with your skin.

Don't

If the liquid gets into your eyes or mouth, rinse with clean water and see a doctor immediately.

If the liquid adheres to skin or clothing, use alcohol, etc. to wipe off and wash with soap.

May cause loss of sight or skin problems.



Do not bring the speaker close to your ear when the ring alert is sounding or you are playing a melody with the FOMA terminal.

Don't

It may cause hearing loss.



In rare cases, using the phone in some vehicle models can cause the vehicle's electronic equipment to malfunction or fail.

Do

In this case, do not use the phone because it may hamper safe driving.



Mobile phones can give some users skin problems such as itching, allergic reactions or rashes. If you develop skin problems, stop using the phone immediately, and see a doctor.

The FOMA terminal contains metal in the parts below :

Place of use	Material	Surface finishing
Metal part of strap opening	SUS304	Coating



When opening or closing FOMA terminal, take care not to have your fingers or strap caught by the terminal.

May cause injuries or damages.

◆ Handling battery pack

- Check that the battery type matches the type displayed on the battery pack label :

Display	Battery type
Li-ion	Li-ion battery

! DANGER



Do not connect a wire or other metal objects to the jack. And, do not carry or store the FOMA terminal with objects like a metal necklace.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



Do not try to force the battery pack onto the FOMA terminal if you are having trouble attaching it. Always attach it after checking that it is correctly oriented.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



Do not throw the battery pack into the fire.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



Do not nail the battery pack, hit with a hammer or step on it.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



If the battery pack's fluid contacts eyes, immediately flush the eyes with clean water and see a doctor right away. Do not rub the eyes.

Battery fluid in the eyes may cause blindness.



WARNING



If the battery pack seems to have abnormalities such as deformation or scratches due to an external impact or falling, immediately stop using it.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.



If the battery pack does not have a full charge after being charged for the specified time, stop charging it.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



If the battery pack leaks or gives off a strange smell, immediately remove it from the vicinity of open flames.

The vapors from leaking battery pack fluid may ignite or explode.



Do not let pet animals bite the battery pack.

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.



CAUTION



Do not discard old battery packs together with other garbage.

May cause igniting or environmental destruction. Tape the terminals of old battery packs to insulate them, and then bring them into a sales outlet such as DoCoMo Shop. If your local municipality has a battery recycling program, dispose of them as provided for.



Do not charge a wet battery pack.

This causes the battery pack to heat, ignite or burst.



If the battery pack's fluid contacts skin or clothes, immediately flush the contacted area thoroughly with clean water.

The fluid may damage the skin.

◆ Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/desktop holder/in-car holder)



WARNING



Do not use the adapter (including battery charger) cord or power code if it gets damaged.

May cause electric shock, heat or fire.



Don't

Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a bathroom or other highly humid area.

May cause electric shock.



Don't

Always use the DC adapter with a negative-ground vehicle. Do not plug it into a positive-ground vehicle.

May cause fire.



Don't

When it starts to thunder, do not touch the FOMA terminal and adapter (including battery charger).

May be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.



Don't

Do not short the charger terminal while it is connected to the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Do not touch the charger terminal with a part of your body such as your hand or finger.

May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injuries.



Don't

Place battery charger and desktop holder in a stable location during charging.

Do not cover or wrap battery charger and desktop holder with a cloth or blanket, etc.

May cause the FOMA terminal to be removed or the optional devices to be heated, resulting in fire or troubles.



Don't

Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (including battery charger) cord or power code.

May cause electric shock or fire.



Avoid water

Do not touch the adapter (including battery charger) cord or outlet with wet hands.

May cause electric shock.



Do

Only use with the specified power source and voltage.

If incorrect voltage is used, this may cause fire or failure. When using FOMA terminal overseas, use AC Adapter for global use.

AC adapter : AC100V

DC adapter : 12 or 24V DC (specific for negative ground vehicle)

AC adapter for global use : Between 100V and 240V AC (Connect to 240V AC outlet for internal household use)



Do

If the DC adapter's fuse blows, replace it only with the specified fuse.

Using other fuses may cause fire or equipment failure. For the specified fuse, see the instructions that come with the DC adapter.



Do

Wipe off any dust that accumulates on the power plug.

May cause fire.



Do

When you connect the AC adapter to an outlet, make sure not to touch with metal such as metal straps and firmly connect to the outlet.

May cause electric shock, electrical short or fire.



Do

When you disconnect the adapter (including battery charger) from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the adapter (including battery charger) cord or power code; instead hold the plug to disconnect.

Pulling the cord could damage it, possibly leading to electric shock or fire.



Pull the power plug out

Always remove the power plug from the outlet when not using the adapter for an extended period.

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Pull the power plug out

Immediately remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if water or other fluids get into the adapter.

May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Pull the power plug out

Always remove the plug from the cigarette lighter socket when cleaning the equipment.

May cause electric shock.

◆ Handling UIM



CAUTION



Do

Take care with a sharp edge when removing the UIM (ICs).

Hands or fingers may be injured.

⚠ WARNING



Do not put Omamorimokon in the place such as the dashboard near the air-bag, where the influence of air-bag explosion is expected.

When the air-bag explodes, Omamorimokon may hit yourself or others and cause injury, equipment malfunction or damage.



When you use medical electrical equipment etc., do not keep the terminal in your chest pocket or inside pocket.

Using Omamorimokon near medical electronic equipment etc. may cause equipment failure.



Turn OFF Omamorimokon in areas where its use is prohibited, such as in airplanes and hospitals.

Use in these areas can cause electronic medical equipment and electronic equipment to malfunction or fail.

When using the phone in a medical facility, be sure to observe the regulations of the facility. If you do prohibited act such as using the phone in an airplane, you may be punished according to law.



If it starts thunder while using the phone outside, immediately turn the power OFF and move to a safe location.

May cause lightning strike and electric shock.



Turn OFF Omamorimokon near electronic equipment using high-precision control or low-power signals.

Using the phone near this type of equipment can cause the equipment to fail or malfunction.

* Examples of electronic equipment to avoid :

Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, other electrical medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors, other automatic control equipment. Users wearing implanted pacemakers or defibrillators or other electrical medical equipment should check with the manufacturer or sales outlet about the effect of radio frequencies on the equipment.

⚠ CAUTION



Do not swing Omamorimokon by holding the strap etc.

May cause the terminal damage or failure, or injury to yourself or others.



Do not place anything magnetized close to Omamorimokon.

Strong magnetism placed close to the FOMA terminal may cause malfunction.



In rare cases, using the phone in some vehicle models can cause the vehicle's electronic equipment to malfunction or fail.

In this case, do not use the phone because it may hamper safe driving.

◆ Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment

■ These precautions are based on the guidelines produced at the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.

⚠ WARNING



Obey the following rules inside medical facilities :

- Do not bring the FOMA terminal into operating rooms (ORs), intensive care units (ICUs) or coronary care units (CCUs).
- Turn the FOMA terminal OFF in hospital wards.
- Turn the FOMA terminal OFF in hospital lobbies and corridors if electrical medical devices could be nearby.
- If the medical facility has specified zones where use or possession of mobile devices is prohibited, obey those instructions.
- If the function to automatically turn on the power is set, cancel the setting before turning the power off.



Turn the FOMA terminal OFF in crowded trains or other public places where pacemaker or defibrillator wearers could be nearby.

The FOMA terminal's signals may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, and other devices.



Wearers of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators must carry and use the FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from the implanted device.

The FOMA terminal's signals may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, and other devices.



When electrical medical devices other than implanted pacemakers or defibrillators are in use outside of medical facilities (such as in home care settings), check with the device manufacturer to determine how the device is affected by electrical signals.

The FOMA terminal's signals may affect the performance of electrical medical devices.

Handling instructions

◆ General

- F801i and Omamorimokon are provided with waterproof performance, but do not let water leak into the FOMA terminal or Omamorimokon. And, do not let accessories or optional devices other than Omamorimokon get wet.
 - The FOMA terminal is provided with waterproof performance of IPX5 and IPX7 under locked condition with the external connection terminal cap securely closed and back cover installed, and Omamorimokon is provided with waterproof performance of IPX5 under securely closed condition, but not meaning that they are totally waterproof. Do not install or remove the battery pack or lithium battery, or do not open/close the external connection terminal cap or back cover in the rain or with water drops stuck to them. Doing so may cause inner parts to be wet and corroded. Accessories or optional devices except Omamorimokon are not provided with waterproof performance. Malfunctions deemed to be caused by water are not covered by the warranty.
- Clean FOMA terminal with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).
 - The display of FOMA terminal may have been applied special coating to improve clearness of the color LCD. When cleaning FOMA terminal, rubbing it roughly with a dry cloth can scratch the display. Take care when handling the unit, and clean it with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses). Drops of water or dirt left on the display can cause stains or remove the coating.
 - If FOMA terminal is wiped with alcohol, paint thinner, benzene or detergent, the printing may disappear or color may fade.
- Clean the jack occasionally with a dry cotton swab.
 - If the jack is dirty, the contact may become poor and the power may shut off. A dirty jack can result in poor charging, so clean it with a dry cloth or cotton swab.
- Do not place FOMA terminal near an air-conditioner outlet.
 - The rapid change in temperature may cause condensation, causing internal corrosion and malfunction.

- When using, be careful not to subject excessive force to the FOMA terminal or the battery.
 - If crammed into a brimming bag or placed in a pocket and sat on, FOMA terminals display, internal PCBs or battery pack may be damaged or malfunctioned. And, if external devices are plugged into the external connection terminal, the breakage of the connector or malfunction may result.
- Carefully read the separate instructions that come with the FOMA terminal, Omamorimokon, adapter (including battery charger) and desktop holder.
- Do not rub or scrape the display with a metal piece, etc.
 - The display may be scratched and cause malfunction or damage.

◆ FOMA terminal

- Avoid temperature extremes.
 - Use the FOMA terminal under temperature 5-40℃ (temperature 36℃ or more is only permitted for temporary use in a bathroom, etc.) and humidity 45-85%.
 - Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35℃).
- FOMA terminal may affect general subscriber phones, TVs or radios in use nearby, so use it as far as possible from these appliances.
- Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal.
 - If the data should be deleted, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- Do not plug external devices into the external connection terminal at a slant, or do not pull it forcibly while it is plugged.
 - Malfunction or breakage may result.
- Do not fold FOMA terminal with the strap held inside.
 - May cause malfunction or damage.
- It is normal for FOMA terminal to become warm during use or charging. Continue to use it.
- Do not leave the FOMA terminal with the camera in areas under strong direct sunlight.
 - May cause discoloring or burn-in of materials.
- Normally, use the FOMA terminal with the external connection terminal cap closed.
 - Dust and/or water brought into FOMA terminal cause troubles.
- Do not use the FOMA terminal with the back cover removed.
 - May cause the battery pack to be removed, a failure or damage.
- Do not put an extremely thick seal, etc. on the display surface, keypad or button.
 - May cause malfunction.

◆ Battery pack

- The battery pack is a consumable part.
 - Replace the battery pack if FOMA terminal has extremely short operation time on a full charge, though it may vary by operating conditions. Purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.
- Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35°C).
- Always charge before using it for the first time or after extended disuse.
- The operation time provided by the battery pack varies by the operating environment and battery pack's deterioration.
- The battery pack may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions, but it is not a problem.
- Do not preserve or leave the battery pack as it is empty.
 - The battery pack performance may be degraded or its lifetime reduced.

◆ Adapter (including battery charger)

- Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35°C).
- Do not charge the battery in the areas below :
 - In areas of excessive humidity, dust or vibrations
 - Near general subscriber phones, TVs or radios
- It is normal for the adapter (including battery charger) to become warm during charging. Continue charging with a warm adapter.
- When using the DC adapter for charging, keep the vehicle engine running.
 - The vehicle's battery could become flat.
- When using an outlet with a mechanism preventing unplugging, follow the handling instructions for that outlet.
- Do not give hard shock to the adapter (including battery charger). Do not deform the charger terminal.
 - May cause malfunction.

◆ UIM

- Do not use excessive force to insert/remove the UIM.
- It is normal for the UIM to become warm during use. Continue using a warm card.
- Note that DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for malfunctions occurring as the result of inserting and using a UIM with another IC card reader/writer.
- Always keep UIM ICs clean.
- Clean the UIM with a soft, dry cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).
- Maintain a separate record of the data you register on the UIM.
 - If the data should be deleted, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- To preserve the environment, bring the old UIM to a sales outlet such as DoCoMo Shop.
- Avoid temperature extremes.
- Take care not to scratch, touch accidentally or short IC.
 - May cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not drop the UIM or subject it to shocks.
 - May cause malfunction.
- Do not bend the UIM or place heavy objects on it.
 - May cause malfunction.
- Do not install UIM, with any labels or seals put, to the FOMA terminal.
 - May cause malfunction.

◆ Omamorimokon

- Avoid temperature extremes.
 - Use the FOMA terminal under temperature 5-40°C (temperature 36°C or more is only permitted for temporary use in a bathroom, etc.) and humidity 45-85%.
- FOMA terminal may affect general subscriber phones, TVs or radios in use nearby, so use it as far as possible from these appliances.
- Due to influences of radio waves emitting from nearby electronic devices or radio stations, Loss protection may operate even when Omamorimokon is placed in an effective range. In such a case, immediately move to another place.
- Omamorimokon exchanges radio waves with FOMA terminal for Loss protection. If the FOMA terminal or Omamorimokon is placed near metallic furniture or coins, the effective range may be dramatically narrowed or radio waves may be shut down, resulting in activation of Loss protection.

◆ CAUTION

- Do not use a remodeled FOMA terminal or Omamorimokon. Using a remodeled terminal violates the Radio Law.

FOMA terminal and Omamorimokon are certified according to technical standard conformance of specified wireless equipment based on the Radio Law, and as a proof of it, the "Technical Compliance Mark" is depicted on the engraved sticker of FOMA terminal and Omamorimokon.

If you remodel FOMA terminal or Omamorimokon by removing its screws, your certification of technical standard conformance becomes invalid.

Do not use FOMA terminal with its certification of technical standard conformance invalid as it violates the Radio Law.

- Be careful when using the FOMA terminal while driving.

Using a mobile phone holding it while driving is subject to penal regulations.

If you inevitably receive a call, tell the caller that you will "call back" by handsfree, then park in a safe place and call back.

- Use Omamorimokon only in Japan.

Omamorimokon of the FOMA terminal is compliant with the wireless standard and authorized for using only in Japan.

If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.

Waterproof performance

F801i provides waterproof performance of IPX5 (former JIS protection code 5)*¹ and IPX7 (former JIS protection code 7)*² under locked condition with the external connection terminal cap securely closed and back cover installed.

Omamorimokon securely closed provides waterproof performance of IPX5 (former JIS protection code 5)*¹.

*¹ IPX5 means that F801i keeps functions of a phone after directly applying jet flow of 12.5 L/min at least 3 minutes from a distance of 2.5-3 m to it placed on a rotating turntable.

*² IPX7 means that F801i keeps functions of a phone after it is slowly submerged to depth of 1m in static tap water of a room temperature, left there 30 minutes and then taken out.

◆ Advantages in actual operation

- You can talk without using an umbrella in the rain (for rainfall of 20 mm or less per hour).
 - * When your hands or FOMA terminal is wet, avoid installing/removing the back cover and opening/closing the external connection terminal cap.
- You can use the FOMA terminal in a bathroom. Do not to put the terminal in a bathtub.
 - * Never put the FOMA terminal in hot spring or water containing soap, detergent or bath powder.
 - * Do not use the FOMA terminal underwater. May cause malfunction.
- You can use the FOMA terminal in the poolside area. Do not put the terminal in water of the swimming pool.
 - * If the FOMA terminal is wet with water of the swimming pool, wash it in the procedures given below.
 - * If Omamorimokon is wet with water of a swimming pool, wipe it off with dry cloth.
 - * Do not use the FOMA terminal underwater. May cause malfunction.
- You can wash the FOMA terminal by submerging and moving it forth and back in still water in a basin, etc.
 - * When washing, use only your hands, not brush or sponge, with the FOMA terminal locked, the back cover installed and the external connection terminal cap held in position.

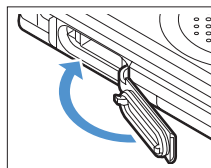
◆ Important precautions

To keep the waterproof performance, be sure to observe the points below :

■ FOMA terminal

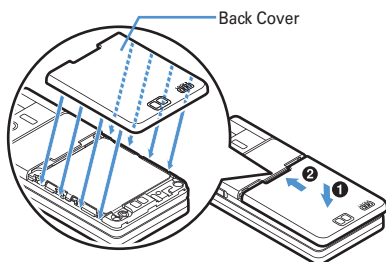
- Securely close the external connection terminal cap and back cover.
- Make sure that the cap and back cover are completely closed without floating.
- Before using, make sure that the back cover lever is at the LOCK position.

Closing external connection terminal cap

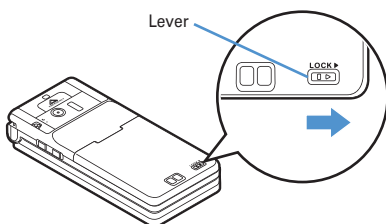


Installing back cover

- ① Align 8 tabs of the back cover with concaves of the FOMA terminal. While pressing the back cover in the direction of ① so that there is no gap between the FOMA terminal and back cover, slide the back cover in the direction of ② to install.

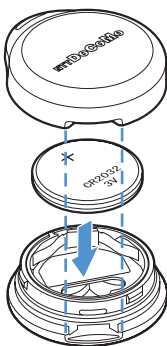


- ② Lock the back cover by sliding its lever in the direction of the arrow.



■ Omamorimokon

Mount the top and bottom cases, correctly aligning their grooves with each other, and securely close.



- Do not use the FOMA terminal or Omamorimokon underwater (including opening/closing and keypad operations and button operation of Omamorimokon).
- Do not let the FOMA terminal wet with liquids other than water of room temperature.

<Example>



Soap/detergent/
bath agent



Ocean water



Swimming pool



Hot spring water



Sand/mud

To maintain the waterproof performance, replacement of parts is required every 2 years regardless of whether the FOMA terminal is normal or abnormal. DoCoMo replaces the parts as a chargeable service. Bring the FOMA terminal to sales outlet such as DoCoMo Shop.

◆ Precautions

■ FOMA terminal and Omamorimokon (common)

- Do not leave the FOMA terminal with water drops stuck to it. In a cold region, water may freeze causing troubles.
- Do not apply water flow stronger than the limit (e.g., such water flow that gives you pain when applied to your skin directly from a faucet or shower). Doing so may cause troubles though F801i and Omamorimokon are provided with waterproof performance of IPX5.
- Do not wash the FOMA terminal with a washing machine, etc.
- Accessories or optional devices except F801i and Omamorimokon are not provided with waterproof performance.
- Do not put the FOMA terminal in hot water, use it in a sauna or apply hot airflow (of a dryer, etc.) to it.
- Do not charge or replace the battery pack when it is wet.
- Do not leave the FOMA terminal wet. Doing so may cause the power terminals to short-circuit.
- The FOMA terminal and Omamorimokon do not float on water.
- Do not let the FOMA terminal fall. Doing so may give scratches causing the waterproof performance to degrade.

■ FOMA terminal

- Securely lock the back cover and firmly close the external connection terminal cap. Even a fine obstacle (one hair, one grain of sand or tiny fiber) put between contact surfaces may cause water to enter inside.
- If the FOMA terminal gets wet with water or other liquids with the external connection terminal cap or back cover open, the liquid may enter inside the terminal causing electric shocks or failure. Stop using the FOMA terminal, turn the power OFF, remove the battery pack and contact a DoCoMo-specified repair office.
- Rubber gasket on the external connection terminal cap and back cover plate has an important role for maintaining the waterproof performance. Do not remove or damage the gasket. Do not let it become spotted.
- If the back cover is damaged, replace it. Water may enter inside from a damaged section causing troubles such as electric shocks or corrosion of the battery.
- Do not pick the microphone, earpiece or speaker with a swab or sharp object. Doing so may damage the waterproof performance.
- Do not leave water on the microphone, earpiece or speaker. Such water may disturb talking.

■ Omamorimokon

- Securely close the case. Even a fine obstacle (one hair, one grain of sand or tiny fiber) put between contact surfaces may cause water to enter inside.
- If Omamorimokon gets wet with water or other liquids with its case open, the liquid may enter inside causing electric shocks or failure. Stop using Omamorimokon, turn the power OFF, remove the lithium battery and contact a DoCoMo-specified repair office.
- Rubber gasket on the case has an important role for maintaining the waterproof performance. Do not remove or damage the gasket. Do not let it become spotted.

DoCoMo does not guarantee actual operations under all conditions.

Malfunctions deemed to be caused by inappropriate operations of the customer are not covered by the warranty.

◆ Draining water when FOMA terminal gets wet

■ For FOMA terminal

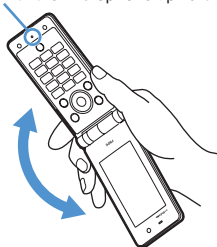
When the FOMA terminal is wet, water may flow out after wiping it off; drain the water in the steps below.

- ① Wipe the FOMA terminal surface with dry, clean cloth, etc.

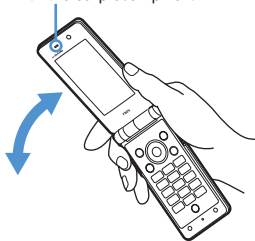


- ② Swing around the FOMA terminal approximately 20 times, securely holding its hinge section, until there are no water scattering.

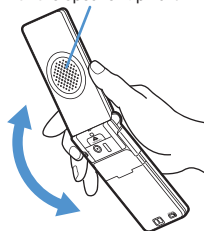
To drain water off the microphone, shake FOMA terminal with the microphone upward.



To drain water off the earpiece, shake FOMA terminal with the earpiece upward.

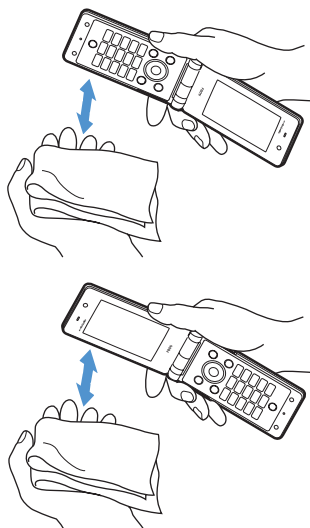


To drain water off the speaker, shake FOMA terminal with the speaker upward.



- * When draining water from periphery of the back cover, shake the FOMA terminal keeping its back cover side upward.

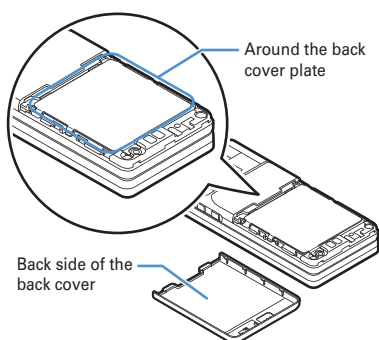
- ③ Softly press dry, clean cloth, etc., against the FOMA terminal to wipe off any water remaining in the microphone, earpiece, speaker, keypads and hinge section.



- ④ Remove the back cover and wipe off water from the vicinity of the back cover plate and back cover rear side. After wiping off water, install and lock the back cover.

Removing back cover → P37 "Attaching/removing battery pack" ■ Attaching ①

* Never open the back cover plate.



- ⑤ Wipe off water drained from the FOMA terminal with dry, clean cloth, etc.
- * Water, if any, remaining in the FOMA terminal may leak up after wiping off.
 - * Do not wipe off water remaining in concaves directly with a cotton swab, etc.

■ For Omamorimokon

When Omamorimokon gets wet, be sure to wipe it off with dry cloth.

◆ Charging

Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof.

Make sure the points below before and after charging :

- Check that the FOMA terminal is not wet. If wet, adequately drain the FOMA terminal and wipe off water with dry, clean cloth, etc., before connecting a desktop holder or opening the external connection terminal cap.
- When charging the battery after the FOMA terminal is wet, adequately drain it and wipe off water with dry, clean cloth, etc., before connecting a desktop holder or opening the external connection terminal cap.
- If the external connection terminal cap is opened for charging, close the cap firmly after charging. You are recommended to use a desktop holder for charging to prevent water from entering inside from the external connection terminal.
- * Never try to charge the battery pack when the FOMA terminal is wet.
- * Do not touch the AC adapter or desktop holder with wet hands. May cause electric shock.
- * Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a place subject to water. Doing so may cause fire or electric shock.
- * Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a bathroom, kitchen, lavatory or other highly humid area. Doing so may cause fire or electric shock.

Intellectual property rights

◆ Copyrights and portrait rights

Except for the case protected by copyright laws such as personal use, use of FOMA terminal to reproduce, alter, or publicly transmit recorded pictures or sounds, or copyrighted text, images, music or software downloaded from websites without the copyright holder's authorization is prohibited.

Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.

Avoid taking pictures of others with FOMA terminal without their consent or disclosing recorded pictures of others without their consent to general public through Internet websites, etc., because they may infringe on portrait rights.

Company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-appli", "i-motion mail", "i-shot", "DoPa", "mopera U", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Chaku-motion", "Deco-mail", "V-live", "i-area", "Chara-den", "i-appliDX", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "sigmarion", "Security Scan", "musea", "Public mode", and logos of "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-appli", "Kid's PHONE" and "Choku-den" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo. "Omamorimokon" is a trademark of NTT DoCoMo, Inc. in Japan.
- Microsoft®, Windows® and Windows Vista® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the US and other countries.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- "Multitask" is a trademark of NEC Corporation.
- "Catch Phone (Call Waiting Service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- This product contains NetFront Sync **NetFront** Client of ACCESS CO., LTD. Copyright© 2007 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved. ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- This product contains the technology of Flash® Lite™ and Adobe® Reader® of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Flash Lite copyright© 1995-2007 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe Reader copyright© 1984-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash, Flash Lite and Reader are registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the US and other countries.



- FlashFX® Pro™ is a registered trademark of DATALIGHT, Inc.
 - FlashFX® Copyright 1998-2007 DATALIGHT, Inc. U.S. Patent Office 5,860,082/6,260,156
 - QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
 - Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2007 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
- 
- JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- McAfee® is registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
 - QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. in the US and other countries.
 - ATOK + APOT of Justsystem Corporation is installed in this product as Japanese character conversion function.
- "ATOK" "APOT (Advanced Prediction Optimization Technology)" are registered trademarks of Justsystem Corporation.
- This product contains software licensed by Symbian Software Ltd © 1998-2007. **symbian** and Symbian OS are trademarks of Symbian Ltd.
 - "Privacy mode" is a registered trademark of FUJITSU LIMITED.
 - Other company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.
 - The abbreviations of operating systems (Japanese versions) below are used in this manual :
 - Windows Vista stands for Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise and Ultimate).
 - Windows XP indicates the Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
 - Windows 2000 indicates the Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
 - © Kashiwa Sato
 - © NTT DoCoMo

- This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- "明鏡モバイル国語辞典 (Meikyo Mobile Dictionary)", "Gモバイル英和辞典 (G Mobile English-Japanese Dictionary)" and "Gモバイル和英辞典 (G Mobile Japanese-English Dictionary)" are copyrighted works edited by TAISHUKAN Publishing Co., Ltd.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the cases below :
 - Recording movies and i-motion that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
 - Playing MPEG-4 Video supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG-LA

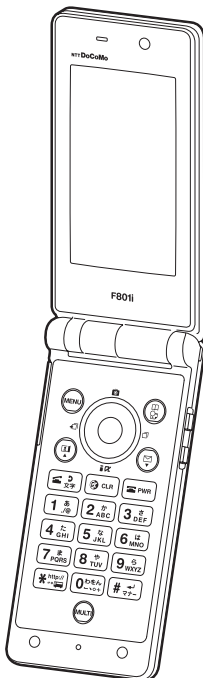
For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in U.S.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;
 Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;

4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,490,165	5,101,501
5,511,073	5,267,261	5,568,483
5,414,796	5,659,569	5,056,109
5,506,865	5,228,054	5,544,196
5,337,338	5,657,420	5,710,784
5,778,338		

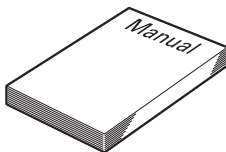
Basic package and optional accessories

<Basic package>

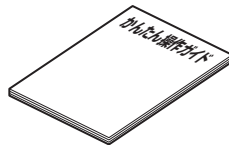
FOMA F801i
(including the Back Cover F24
and the written warranty)



Instruction manual (this manual)



かんたん操作ガイド
(Manual for kids)



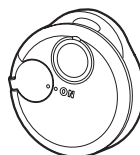
* Quick Manual is appended on P348.

CD-ROM for FOMA F801i

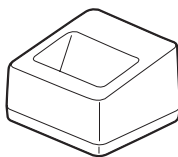


* The PDF version "Manual for PC connection setting" and "Kuten Code List" are contained in the CD-ROM.

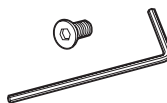
Omamorimokon F01
(including the written
warranty, operation manual)



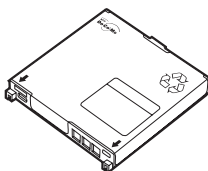
Desktop Holder F21
(including operation manual)



**Back cover plate
setting-screw (sample)/
Back cover plate
setting-tool (sample)**



Battery Pack F09

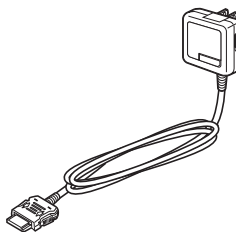


Alarm strap (sample)



<Optional accessories>

**FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (including the
written warranty, operation manual)**

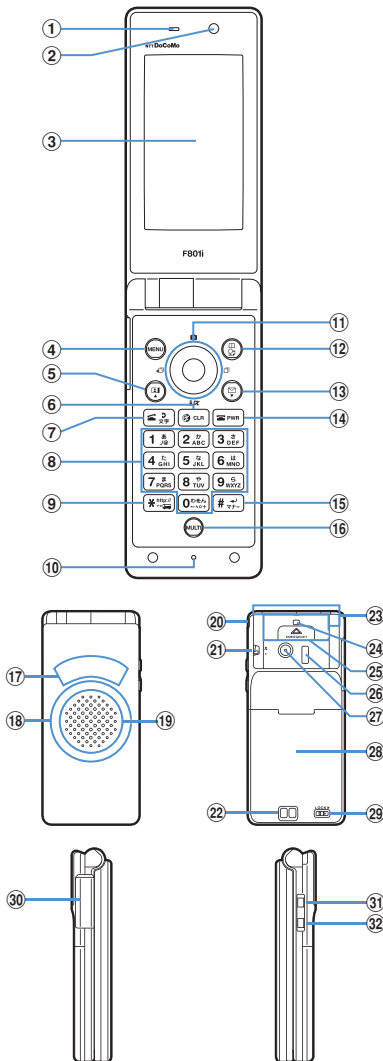


Other optional accessories → P318

Before Using the Handset

Names and functions of parts	26
Display overview	28
Reading sub-display section	30
Selecting functions from menu	32
Using UIM (FOMA card)	35
Attaching/removing battery pack	37
Charging mobile phone battery	39
Checking remaining battery level	Remaining battery level 41
Turning power ON/OFF	Power ON/OFF 42
Switching to English	Select language 43
Setting date and time	Date & time 43
Notifying your phone number to the other party	Caller ID notification 44
Checking your own phone number	User information 44

Names and functions of parts



① Earpiece

Use to hear other party's voice from here.

② In-camera

Use to shoot the image of yourself, send the image of yourself over a videophone call.

③ Display → P28

④ MENU key

Use to display menus, perform the operation shown in the upper left part of the guide area.

Press and hold for 1 second or more : Start/Cancel Side key hold.

⑤ Videophone start/▲(Scroll) key

Use to make/receive videophone calls, scroll upward by pages of the mail screen or site/website display, switch cases when entering characters, perform the operation shown in the lower-left corner of the guide area.

Press and hold for 1 second or more : Make a videophone call using the speakerphone.

⑥ CLR / Clear key

Use to switch i-appli stand-by display and i-appli activation, delete characters or return to previous display.

Press and hold for 1 second or more : Start/cancel Self mode.

⑦ Start voice call/Direct call/Character/

Speakerphone key

Use to make/answer voice calls, start Direct call, switch character entry modes, switch ordinary and speakerphone calls.

Press and hold for 1 second or more : Make a voice call using the speakerphone.

⑧ Keypads

Use to enter phone numbers or text, perform menu items.

Press **1** - **9** for 1 second or more : Perform the functions registered in Custom Menu.

Press **0** for 1 second or more : Use Auto switch of Int'l call assist when making international calls.

⑨ * /Public mode (Drive mode) key

Use to enter " * ", " ^ ", " ° ", etc.

Press and hold for 1 second or more : Start/cancel Public mode.

⑩ Microphone

Send your voice from here.

* Do not cover with your finger while talking or recording sound.

11 Multi-cursor key

● Enter key

Use to perform the selected operation, activate Focus mode.

Press and hold for 1 second or more : Start i-appli set for one-key shortcut.

📷 Camera/ ↑ key

Use to activate Still camera, adjust volume, move the cursor upward.

Press and hold for 1 second or more : Activate Movie camera.

⌂ i-mode/i-appli/ ↓ key

Use to display i-mode menu, adjust volume, move the cursor downward.

Press and hold for 1 second or more : Display i-appli folder list.

☎ Received calls/← (previous) key

Use to display Received calls, switch displays, move the cursor leftward.

Press and hold for 1 second or more : Start/cancel Privacy mode.

☎ Redial/→ (next) key

Use to display Redial, switch displays, move the cursor rightward.

* Representation of the icon may vary by the key operations as



12 ☑ Phonebook/Schedule key

Use to display phonebook, perform the operation shown in the upper right part of the guide area.

Press and hold for 1 second or more : Display Scheduler.

13 ✉ Mail/ ▼ (Scroll) key

Use to display mail menu, scroll downward the mail screen or site/website display by pages, perform the operation shown in the lower-right corner of the guide area.

Press and hold for 1 second or more : Display Compose new message screen.

14 🔌 Power/End key

Use to terminate on-hold, calling/operating function or display/hide calendar layout.

Press and hold for 2 seconds or more : Turn power ON/OFF.

15 #/Line-feed/Silent mode key

Use to enter "#" and start a new line when entering characters.

Press and hold for 1 second or more : Start/cancel Silent mode.

16 MAX Multitask key

Use to perform another function while talking or perform an operation (Multiaccess/Multitask).

17 Sub-display section → P30

18 Light → P62, 91, 103, 133

Turn on or blink when activating Lock on close, shooting a still image or recording a movie.

Operate according to Indicator light or turn on Light.

* Lighting color changes at 4 sections of the light : top, bottom, right and left. Other sections are lit or blink in white, without changing the color.

19 Speaker

Hear ring alert or voice of the caller using the speakerphone, etc. from here.

20 Strap opening

21 Macro switch → P62, 133

Set to ☝ side when shooting an object at a close distance with the out-camera.

22 Charging jack

23 FOMA Built-in antenna

* The terminal has a FOMA built-in antenna. To talk in better conditions, do not cover the antenna with your hand.

24 Safety alarm strap opening → P97

25 Safety alarm switch → P98

26 Infrared data port → P240

Use for Infrared communication, Infrared remote control.

27 Out-camera

Use to shoot still images or movies, send images over a videophone call.

28 Back cover

29 Back cover lever → P37

30 External connection terminal

Connecting the earphone/microphone with switch → P264

31 □ Side key

Stop ring tone, alarm sound or vibrator, turn on the light or switch display of the sub-display section while the FOMA terminal is folded, operate Wheel^{*1}.

Pressing and holding for 1 sec. or more : Start Quick answer machine while receiving a call, start/stop voice memo/movie memo during a call, start/cancel^{*2} Silent mode while the FOMA terminal is folded, activate answer machine/voice memos on the stand-by display while the FOMA terminal is open.

*1 During preparation for wheel, pressing □ ends wheel.

*2 This is an operation carried out when "Silent mode ON/OFF" is set in Side key shortcut by pressing and holding a side key. → P103

32 □ *Silent alarm key

Pressing and holding for 1 sec. or more : Notify your current location with imadoco-search → P99

* In this manual, the silent alarm key is described as □ to distinguish from □ (side key).

Display overview

The current status can be checked by the icon appearing on the screen.



- *1
① : Battery indicator locked→P104
- ② : Battery icon→P41
- ③ : Signal level icon→P42
- : Out of service area→P42
- : Self mode ON→P109
- : In data transfer mode→P114, 240
- ④ : In i-mode lock→P105
- : In i-mode communication (connected to i-mode site)/(during packet communication)→P142
- ⑤ : In Camera lock→P105
- ⑥ : Speakerphone in use→P47
- *1
⑦ : Positioning with GPS→P212
- (gray) : Location request setting with GPS/out of permission period→P217
- ⑧ : Phonebook entry or schedule data has secret attribute→P74, 255
- : In infrared communication→P241
- : Infrared remote control function in operation→P243
- : The total calls cost exceeds the limit.→P261

- *1
⑧ Mail lock, unread message or MessageR/F status→P105, 155, 171, 194
- : In Mail lock
- : Unread i-mode mail and SMS storage space is full on UIM
- : Unread i-mode mail and SMS storage space is full
- : SMS storage space is full on UIM
- : Unread i-mode mail and SMS exists
- : Unread i-mode mail exists
- : Unread SMS exists
- (red)/ (blue) : Unread MessageR storage space is full/unread MessageR exists
- (red)/ (yellow-green) : Unread MessageF storage space is full/unread MessageF exists
- *1
⑨ Storage status in i-mode Center→P155, 171
- : i-mode mail and MessageR/F storage are full or one of these spaces is full and unreceived messages exist in Data Center
- / : i-mode mail or MessageR/F storage space is full in data Center
- : Unreceived i-mode mail and MessageR/F exist in Data Center
- / : Unreceived i-mode mail or MessageR/F exist in Data Center
- *1
⑩ : Displaying SSL page/executing SSL session with i-appli or using i-appli downloaded from SSL page→P143
- : Mail failed in Auto-send exists→P170
- : Auto-send mail exists→P170
- ⑪ i-appli/i-appliDX status→P105, 201, 208
- : In i-appli lock
- : During i-appli operation
- (α in gray) : i-appli stand-by display ON
- (α in orange) : i-appli is being started from the i-appli stand-by display
- : i-appliDX is running
- (α in gray) : i-appliDX stand-by display ON
- (α in orange) : i-appli is being started from the i-appliDX stand-by display
- : i-appli Auto start failed→P207
- *2
⑫ : In Kids' mode→P96
- *2
⑬ Loss protection function→P100
- : Omamorimokon in valid range
- : Omamorimokon out of valid range or battery exhausted
- : Omamorimokon battery low level
- ⑭ Direct call newly arrived information→P35
- ⑮ New arrival→P35
- ⑯ : Silent mode ON→P82
- : Personalized silent mode ON→P83
- : School mode ON→P82
- ⑰ : Call alert volume OFF→P79
- : Vibrator for voice call ON→P80
- : Call alert volume OFF and vibrator for voice call ON→P80
- ⑱ : In Public mode (Drive mode)→P58

19 / : Answer machine set ON/recorded message full→P60

*1

20 : Keypad dial lock ON→P111

: Side key hold ON→P116

21 : Personal data lock ON→P110

22 : Reading UIM→P35, 42

23 : Displaying available multi-cursor key in Focus mode→P35

: Lock on close ON→P116

24 : Alarm clock ON→P249

: Schedule reminder ON→P252

: Alarm clock and schedule reminder ON→P249, 252

25 / / : Location request success/failure/end as unanswered

26 : Connected to external device using USB cable→P64

*1

27 : Software update pre-specified→P331

: Update notification icon→P329

/ : Auto-update of latest pattern definition failure/success→P332

*1 The current highest-priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in descending order of the priority from the top.

*2 Time appears on a display other than the stand-by display.

◆ Task area

The task area shows up to 9 icons indicating active tasks. During Multitaccess or Multitasks, the icons show which functions are running.

<Example> When activating Still camera during a voice call



❖ Icons indicated on the task area

: Voice call

: Redial

: Received calls

: Answer machine/voice memo

: Videophone call

: Videophone using an external device

: Call (switching)

: Call (disconnecting)

: FOMA terminal phonebook

: Direct call

: Contact setting of Privacy mode

: Safety alarm

: Mobile phone search for Loss protection/Omamorimokon

: Kisekae Tool

: Still camera

: Movie camera

: Bar code reader

: i-mode

: Bookmark/Go to location/Last visited URL/Screen memo

: MessageR/F

: Mail

: Receiving i-mode mail

: Inquiring for i-mode mail/SMS

: Sent msg log/Received msg log

: Chat mail

: Receiving SMS

: i-appli

: Position location of GPS

: Location request of GPS

: Notify location of GPS

: Location history of GPS

: My Picture

: Movie/i-motion

: Chara-den

: Melody

: Sound recorder

: Adjusting volume by Multitask

: Countdown timer

: Alarm clock

: Scheduler

: Schedule reminder ringing

: User information

: Calculator

: Notepad

: Dictionaries

: In play

: Accessing Data Center

: Displaying synchronization log

: Network services set

: Calling or communicating packets via USB/Sending or receiving packets via USB

: 64K data communication

: Accessing external data

: Updating software/Software update notified

: Updating pattern definition/displaying version/setting auto-update

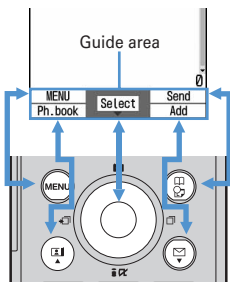
(blue) / (gray) : Each function set or on hold

◆ Guide area

Operations that can be executed by pressing , , , and are displayed in the guide area.

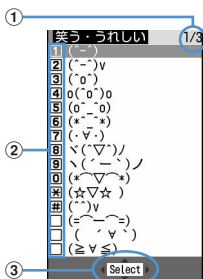
Display locations and keys correspond as shown in the figure. In this manual, related keys () are used when describing operations displayed in the guide area.

Operations displayed in the guide area vary by the screen.



- on the guide area corresponds to multi-cursor keys (It may be different depending on the function you are using or how the site or website is made).

◆ List screen



- ① When a list extends to multiple pages, the currently displayed page number and the total number of pages appear.
- ② The items can be selected by pressing the keys corresponding to the displayed numbers or symbols (- , , ,). When selecting an item with no number or symbol displayed, move the cursor and press .
- ③ indicates that other selectable items exist above and below the item at the cursor position. Press to move the cursor. When is pressed on the last item of the page, the next page appears, when is pressed on the first item of the page, the previous page appears. indicates that selectable items exist over the multiple pages. Press to change the page. Some screens such as an icon selection screen cannot be switched.

Reading sub-display section

You can check the time, locking status, presence of newly arrived information, etc., from a pattern display even with the FOMA terminal folded.

- Opening the FOMA terminal with a pattern displayed causes the display to disappear.

❖ List of patterns displayed

Patterns have meanings given below. Given screens show only a part of patterns.

■ When receiving a phone/videophone call



■ When receiving mail/message



Receiving



Reception completed

■ When displaying clock

- It appears when you fold FOMA terminal or when you press  with the FOMA terminal folded. When Lock on close is activated, "ON" appears instead of a clock.
- When there is newly arrived information, pressing  displays the clock and operates the vibrator at the same time.
- You can set so that a clock appears at minutes 00 every hour. →P92
- When Open/close is "Time+random", "Time+Custom 1-10" or "Time only", no clock appears.



- If the FOMA terminal is folded when Open/close/turn is "Time+Wheel!", wheel operation starts after a clock appears. Wheel operations are as shown below.

* During preparation for roulette, pressing  ends Wheel.



Preparation for roulette*

Rotation of roulette



During rotation press 



Win

Lose

- In All lock, Omakase Lock or Side key hold, pressing  displays a clock after displaying the next pattern.



■ When Silent mode is started/canceled

- When Silent mode starts*, the light goes lit once in red and the vibrator operates once. When Silent mode is canceled, the light flashes twice in blue and the vibrator operates twice.
- * If "Silent mode ON/OFF" is set by Side key shortcut, Silent mode can be started/canceled by pressing and holding  for 1 second or more with the FOMA terminal closed.



Starting



Terminating

■ Alarm clock/schedule reminder ringing

- Repeatedly display the specified time and pattern.



■ During Safety alarm sounding



■ During Loss protection sounding

Appear when Loss protection is "ON" and Omamorimokon is separated from the FOMA terminal.



■ During Countdown timer operation

Remaining time appears.

- When remaining time is 3 minutes or more, it appears every 10 seconds.



■ When i-mode/SMS inquiry is performed

Indicate whether mail or SMS exists after displaying the inquired pattern.

- If "Check new message" is set by Side key shortcut, i-mode inquiry can be made by pressing and holding  for 1 sec. or more with the FOMA terminal closed.



Inquiring



Existent



None*

* It does not appear when there is no SMS.

■ In various communications



When making a call/
ringing/during a call



During packet
communication with PC



During 64K data
communication

■ GPS being used

Appear during Positioning, Notifying or Sending (including Power OFF notice or Silent alarm). During notifying, patterns below appear :



Notify location

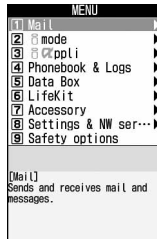


- Besides, a pattern appears when Safety light is lit or when playing a playlist of movies/i-motion, etc.

Selecting functions from menu

Menus are classified to normal menu displayed by default and custom menu that allow to save menu items.

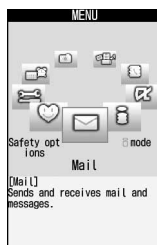
- You can select a menu display format from the ones given below displayed by selecting Normal or Custom field from Menu Settings displayed by pressing   on the stand-by display. →P88



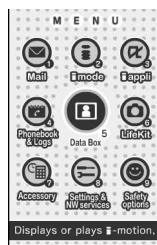
1 List view



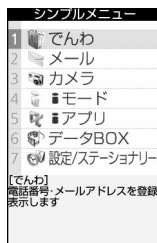
2 Tile display



3 3D display



4 Animation*1, 2
(Default)



5 Simple display*2, 3

*1 Animation design varies by Menu settings or settings of Style theme.

*2 It cannot be selected from Custom menu.

*3 "Simple display" is disabled when the screen display is English.

◆ Selecting a function

Press in stand-by and select and execute the functions from the menu displayed.

There are 2 ways to execute the function : one is to press a keypad corresponding to a menu item and the other is to select the menu item using the multi-cursor key.

- When any function is restricted by lock functions or no UIM in slot, icon appears or characters are displayed in a different color that the function is disabled. The display does not change for animation menu. When a function is selected, the reason the function is nonexecutable, etc. appears.
- Display the function description for the menu item at the cursor position. Settings also appear for some menu items.

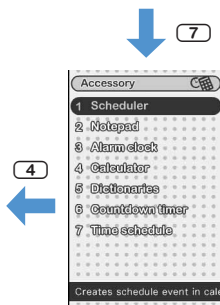
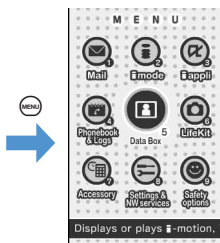
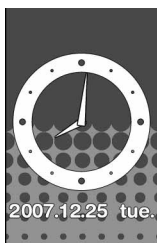
◆ Selecting menu items by key (Shortcut operations)

A number (item number) is assigned to each menu item. The menu items can be selected by pressing the corresponding key (-).

- Item number of the menu→P290 "Menu list"

<Example> Selecting "Calculator"

1

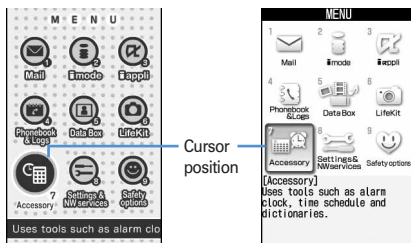


◆ Selecting menu items by multi-cursor key

<Example> Selecting "Calculator"

1 Place the cursor on "Accessory" and

For Animation or Tile display

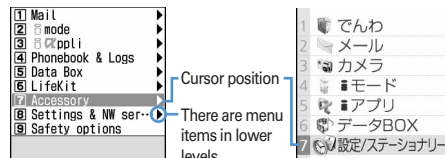


Animation

Tile display

- Use to move the cursor. Moving by may be unavailable depending on the animation design.

For List view or Simple display

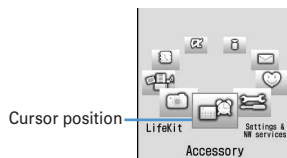


List view

Simple display

- Use to move the cursor. You can display menu items in lower level also by placing the cursor and pressing .

For 3D display



- Use to move the menu item to the front in the center. Operated keys and movement of a menu item are as shown below.

: Turn clockwise, moving the icon at the right of the cursor to the cursor position.

: Turn counterclockwise, moving the icon at the left of the cursor to the cursor position.

: Turn upward, moving the icon at the back to the cursor position.

: Turn downward, moving the icon at the front to the cursor position.

2 Place the cursor on "Calculator" and .

- When the menu is displayed in List view or Simple display, you can also select a menu item by placing the cursor on and pressing .

❖ To return to stand-by display or previous menu

After selecting a menu item, you can return to the stand-by display or previous menu by pressing the keys below.

 : Return to the stand-by display.

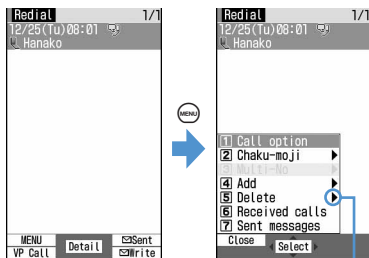
[CLR] : Return to the previous menu. When the menu is displayed in List view or Simple display, you can return to the previous menu by pressing .

◆ Selecting method of submenu

When "MENU" is displayed at upper-left of the guide area, various operations can be performed with submenus.

<Example> Displaying redial submenus

1 on the redial list screen ▶ Press a key for the submenu item number



There are menu items in lower levels

- You can also select an item by placing the cursor on and pressing  or .
- Item numbers of the submenu with the same functions may vary by the operating screen.
- Pressing  or **[CLR]** closes the submenu.

◆ Operation of items on the screen

❖ Selecting an item

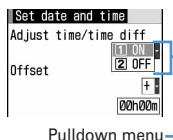
1 Press a key for the item number.



- You can also select an item by placing the cursor on it and pressing .
- For some function, you can check vibration pattern of the vibrator, color and lighting pattern of the light, color scheme of the screen setting, brightness of the screen, etc. by placing the cursor on an item.

❖ Pulldown menu operation

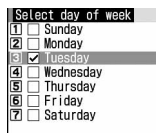
1 Place the cursor on the item to set and ▶ Press a key for the pulldown item number



- You can also select an item by placing the cursor on it and pressing .

❖ Check box operation

1 Press a key for the item number.



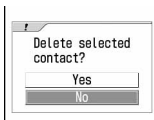
- You can also select an item by placing the cursor on it and pressing .
- Pressing key for the item number or pressing  after placing the cursor, the status of check box switches between ☒ (Select) and ☐ (Cancel).
- For some functions, you can select or cancel all items by pressing .

◆ Confirmation screen operation

While deleting or setting saved information, a confirmation screen may appear asking you to perform a function.

<Example> Deleting phonebook data (1 item)

1 Place the cursor on "Yes" or "No" and .



- For some functions, items other than "Yes" or "No" may appear.

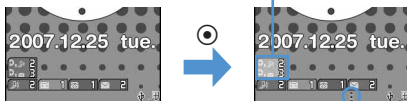
◆ Displaying information quickly <Focus mode>

When  is pressed on the stand-by display with newly arrived information (including direct call newly arrived information) being displayed on the stand-by display or with Info/calendar layout set and displayed, the display is set to Focus mode that allows to quickly display the related information.

<Example> Displaying newly arrived information

1 Place the cursor on an icon and .

An icon at the cursor position is surrounded with a red frame.



The direction is indicated that it can be moved to by using multi-cursor key.

A screen matched for the selected icon appears.

 2 (Missed calls) : Received call list appears.

 1 (Recorded messages) : The recorded message list appears.

 1 (Voice messages in Voice Mail Service) : A confirmation screen of message play appears.

 2 (Unread messages) : The folder list of Inbox appears.

 3 (missed direct calls only) /  2 (missed direct calls and unread messages) : Received direct call list appears.

 3 (Unread direct call messages only) : The list of received direct call messages appears.

- You can also display a related screen by placing the cursor and pressing  for  3 or  2 or by placing the cursor and pressing  for  2 or  3.

- You can perform the same operations when the next icon appears.
 -  : Software update notification
 -  : Failed to auto-update of latest pattern definition/successful
 -  : Location request success/failure/end as unanswered

Canceling Focus mode :  or 

✓ INFORMATION

- When placing the cursor on the icon for newly arrived information and press and hold  for 1 second or more, the icon disappears temporarily. For a voice message icon of Voice Mail Service, a confirmation screen appears asking you to delete the display. Select "Yes" to delete the display. It reappears when the number of items is changed by accumulating new information or viewing existing information.
- In Focus mode, you cannot display the menu by pressing .
- If i-αpli stand-by display is set, icon does not appear even if there is Direct call newly arrived information. To display icon, cancel i-αpli stand-by display.

Using UIM (FOMA card)

UIM (FOMA card) is a card for storing user information such as phone numbers.

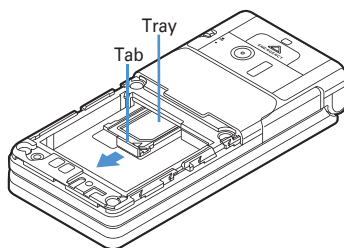
- If a UIM has been inserted incorrectly or if there is a problem with the UIM, you cannot make/receive a call or send/receive a mail.
- For details on handling UIM, see the UIM manual.

◆ Attaching/removing UIM

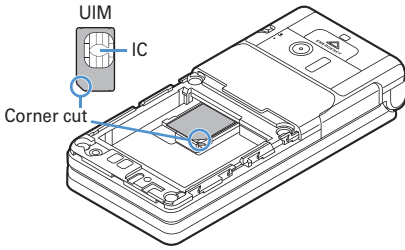
- After turning the power OFF, fold FOMA terminal and hold it with your hand.
- Take care not to touch or scratch the IC portion.
- Attaching/removing back cover and battery pack → P37

■ Attaching

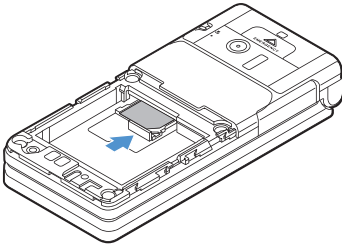
- ① Holding the tab, pull out the tray until it clicks.



- ② Put UIM with the IC side upward on the tray in the direction shown in the figure.

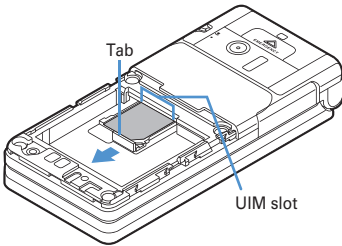


- ③ Push the tray fully until it stops.



■ Removing

- ① Holding the tab, pull out the tray until it clicks and carefully remove UIM.



✓INFORMATION

- Forcing the UIM into or out of FOMA terminal may damage UIM or the tray.
- If the tray is removed by pulling it excessively, press it straight along the guide rail inside the UIM slot. Remove UIM in advance.

◆ Security code of UIM

Two security codes, "PIN code" and "PIN2 code", are set for the UIM.

You can change the security codes by yourself. →P107

◆ UIM operation restriction

FOMA terminal is provided with the UIM operation restriction for protecting your or copyright data or files.

- When files or data are downloaded from websites or data attached to mails are obtained to your FOMA terminal with the UIM card equipped, the UIM operation restriction is automatically set to these data or files.
- With UIM replaced or no UIM inserted, data or files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be displayed or played. For i-appli with the UIM operation restriction set, no functions except deletion are available.
- For data or files with the UIM operation restriction set, infrared communication are disabled.
- Restricted data types are as follows :
 - Videophone call message, Movie memo
 - i-mode mail attachment files, images inserted to Deco-mail or signature, MessageR/F, mail template containing data subject to operation restriction
 - Screen memo
 - i-appli (including i-appli stand-by display)
 - Images (including GIF animations, Flash graphics and images downloaded from Data Center), i-motion, melodies, Chara-den
 - Kisekae Tool

✓INFORMATION

- When data, subject to the UIM operation restriction is set as the stand-by display, incoming/outgoing image, ring alert, etc., replacing the UIM with another one or using FOMA terminal without the UIM inserted causes the sound, image and other settings to reset to the default values. In this case, the sound or image actually generated or appears may be different from those set. If the UIM used when downloading the data is inserted, the data operation restriction is canceled and the original settings are restored (When data has been used for Set random image, the settings may be canceled).
- The UIM operation restriction is not enabled for data obtained via infrared communication or DoCoMo keitai datalink or still images/movies taken with the built-in camera.
- The settings below are saved to UIM. When UIM is replaced, the set contents saved in the inserted UIM are enabled.
 - My phone number
 - SMS settings (except "SMS report request")
 - DoCoMo Cert/User Certificate of Manage certificate
 - Select language, UIM

◆ Functional differences in UIM types

When using UIM (Blue) in FOMA terminal, note that it differs in the items listed below from UIM (Green/White).

Item	UIM (Blue)	UIM (Green/White)	Page
Number of savable digits of phone numbers in UIM phonebook	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits	P68
User certificate download to use FirstPass	Unavailable	Available	P158
WORLD WING service	Unavailable	Available	P37
Service Numbers	Unavailable	Available	P281

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is DoCoMo's international roaming service that allows to make/receive calls overseas with the same mobile phone number by using UIM (Green/White) in a FOMA terminal compatible with the service or mobile phone for overseas use (W-CDMA or GSM system).

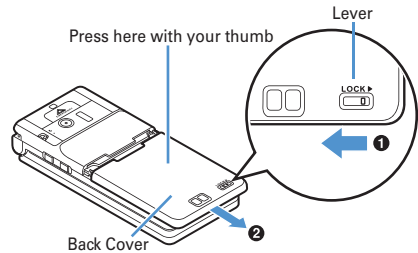
- * If you subscribed to FOMA service on or after September 1, 2005, separate subscription is not required to use WORLD WING. Note that, if you declined to use WORLD WING at subscription to FOMA service or canceled it, you need subscription.
- * If you subscribed to FOMA service on or before August 31, 2005, but not to WORLD WING, separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING.
- * There are some charging plans unavailable.
- * If UIM (Green/White) is misplaced or stolen overseas, immediately contact DoCoMo and request for suspension of usage. Please refer to the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for contact information. Be careful that you are charged also for calls and/or communications, if any, occurring after misplacement or stealage.

Attaching/removing battery pack

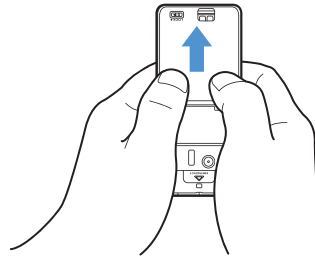
- After turning the power OFF, fold FOMA terminal and hold it with your hand.
- Removing the battery pack may cause reservation of Software update to be canceled. When the date and time is set with Adjust time/time diff set to "OFF" in Date & time, removing the battery pack may delete the date and time.

■ Attaching

- ① Unlock the back cover by sliding its lever in the direction of ❶ and remove the back cover by sliding approximately 2 mm in the direction of ❷ while pressing it with your thumb.

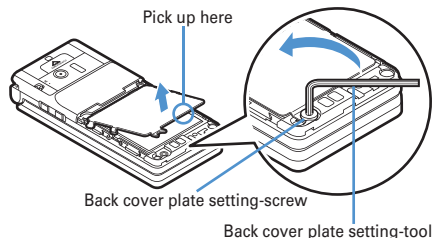


- * When it is hard to slide the back cover, hold the FOMA terminal and slide the back cover with both thumbs as shown in the figure below.

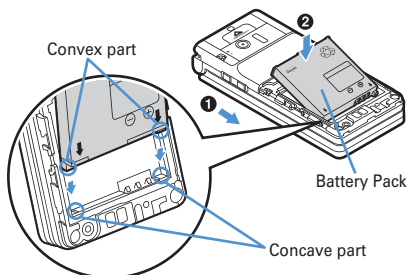


- ② Insert the attached back cover plate holding tool in the back cover plate set screw hole, remove the screw and lift the edge of the back cover plate in the direction of the arrow to open it.

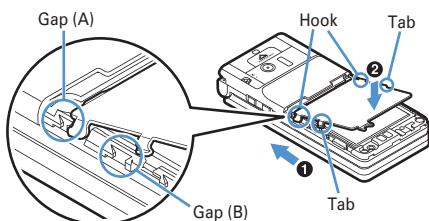
- No screw is inserted by default.



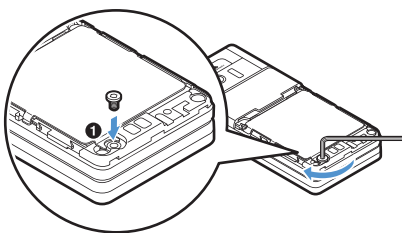
- ③ Holding the battery pack with its label surface facing upward, align the battery pack convex part with the concave part of the FOMA terminal and push it in the direction of ❶ and then push it in the direction of ❷ until it is placed in position.



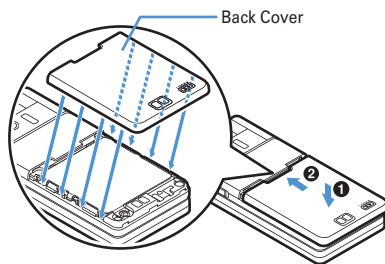
- ④ Align the hook of the back cover plate with concave (A), insert it in the direction of ❶, align the tab with concave (B), push in the direction of ❷ and insert until it clicks.



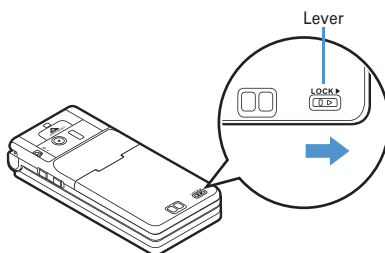
- ⑤ Set the back cover plate set screw to ❶, insert the attached back cover plate holding tool and set the screw.
- Do not tighten the screw with an excessive force.



- ⑥ Align 8 tabs of the back cover with concaves of the FOMA terminal and, while pressing the back cover in the direction of ❶ so that there is no gap between the FOMA terminal and back cover, slide the back cover in the direction of ❷ to install it.

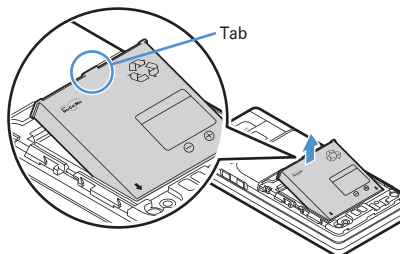


- ⑦ Lock the back cover by sliding its lever in the direction of the arrow.



■ Removing

- ❶ Perform steps ❶-❷ for attaching.
❷ Holding the tab of the battery pack, lift and remove the battery pack in the direction of the arrow.



✓INFORMATION

- Forcing the battery pack into FOMA terminal may damage the FOMA terminal jack.
- FOMA terminal or back cover may be damaged if you attach or remove the battery pack by a method except the procedures above or if you press too hard.
- To prevent water from entering inside, securely attach the back cover and lock it with the lever.
- Rubber gasket on the back cover plate has an important role for maintaining the waterproof performance. Do not remove or damage the gasket. Do not let it become spotted.

❖ For better battery pack performance

- **Do not charge the battery for an extended period (several days) with the FOMA terminal turned ON.** After charging has completed with FOMA terminal turned ON, the power is supplied to the terminal from the battery pack. If FOMA terminal is left in that state for a long time, the battery pack may run out causing the low battery alert to sound after using only a short period of time. In such a case, remove FOMA terminal from the AC adapter, desktop holder or DC adapter and then reconnect it and charge the battery again.
- **To promote environmental conservation, return your used battery pack to NTT DoCoMo sales outlets, our corporate agencies or the shops that collect used battery in your community.**



Charging mobile phone battery

The battery pack does not have a full charge at time of purchase. Use AC/DC adapter for FOMA terminal to charge the battery before using FOMA terminal.

- To get the maximum performance from F801i, use Battery Pack F09.

❖ Charging times (approximate)

The times below are the times for charging an empty battery pack with F801i's power switched OFF. Charging with the terminal ON or under low temperature requires longer time.

AC adapter	Approx. 140 min.
DC adapter	Approx. 140 min.

❖ Operation times on full charge (approximate)

The times below vary by the charging method and operating environment.

Continuous stand-by time (stationary)	Approx. 570 H
Continuous call time (during a voice call)	Approx. 185 min.
Continuous stand-by time (moving)	Approx. 400 H
Continuous call time (during a videophone call)	Approx. 110 min.

- Continuous call time indicates the approximate time that the phone can send or receive radio waves normally.
- Continuous stand-by time indicates the approximate time that the phone can receive radio waves normally with F801i closed. Call, communication or stand-by times may be about half depending on factors such as the battery pack charging condition, function settings, operating environment such as ambient temperature, and signal condition in the area of use (whether the signal is weak or absent). Call, communication or stand-by times are reduced by performing i-mode communication. And, even with no calls or i-mode communications made, the continuous call and continuous stand-by times are reduced by using with power OFF notification "ON", creating i-mode mail, activating downloaded i-appli, using i-appli stand-by display, performing data communication or multiaccess, using camera, playing movie/i-motion or setting or starting safety alarm, etc.

❖ Battery pack life

- The battery pack is a consumable part. Each time it is charged, time available with each charging reduces.
- When a time available with each charging is reduced to about a half from that of a new battery, replacement of the battery is recommended because it is near the end of life. The battery pack may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions, but it is not a problem.
- The battery pack's life may be reduced by using i-appli or videophone call for a long time while charging.

❖ Battery charge

- For details, see the operation manuals for FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (optional) or FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional).
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 is applicable only to 100V AC. And, FOMA AC Adapter 02 is applicable to 100-240V AC.
- Though FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use is applicable to 100-240V AC, AC Adapter has a plug dedicated to 100V AC (for domestic use).

✓INFORMATION

- Some i-appli remains operating even when FOMA terminal is folded, consuming power. In that case, the call, communication or stand-by time may be reduced.
- During talking or communications, charging may not finish. Charging may not complete if you start battery charging while playing movie/i-motion or running i-appli. In such a case, it is recommended to end the operation, and then charge the battery.
- The charging may not be completed depending on the settings of Display light or charging method, such as charging the battery with the FOMA terminal open when Normal use is set to "Always" in Display light time of Display light. In such a case, it is recommended to charge the battery with the FOMA terminal folded.
- It is normal for FOMA terminal, battery pack, desktop holder and AC adapter, DC adapter to become warm while charging. If you use the videophone or if you transmit/receive packets or 64K data while charging the battery, the charging may not finish normally because of temperature rise in FOMA terminal. In that case, wait until the temperature falls down and try again.

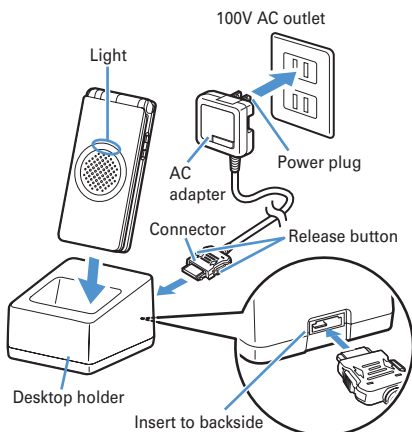
◆ Charging

When using optional FOMA AC Adapter, FOMA DC Adapter, Desktop Holder, read the related operation manuals in advance.

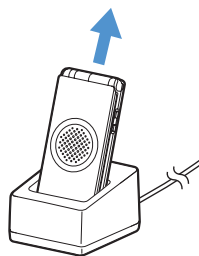
- The battery pack cannot be charged without an adapter. When charging the battery pack, attach it to FOMA terminal.

■ Using desktop holder and AC adapter for charging

- ① Insert the AC adapter connector to the desktop holder, with the arrow on the connector facing upward.
- ② Unfold the AC adapter power plug and insert it into a 100V AC outlet.
- ③ Fold the FOMA terminal and insert to the desktop holder with the light facing this side as shown in the figure.



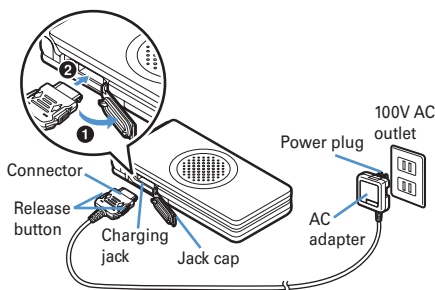
- ④ After charging is over, remove the FOMA terminal holding the desktop holder.



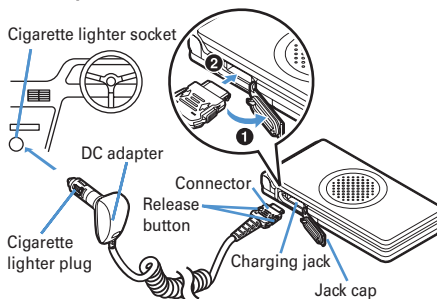
■ Charging with AC adapter or DC adapter

- ① Open terminal cap (1) of FOMA terminal, hold the connector horizontally with the arrow facing upward and insert it to terminal. (2)
- ② Unfold the AC adapter power plug and insert it into a 100V AC outlet.
Insert the DC adapter cigarette lighter plug into the vehicle's cigarette lighter socket.
- ③ After charging has completed, disconnect the AC adapter from the outlet or the cigarette lighter plug from the cigarette lighter socket, and press the release buttons on both sides of the connector and remove the connector horizontally from FOMA terminal.

<AC adapter>



<DC adapter>



INFORMATION

- Insertion or removal of the AC and DC adapter connectors should be done slowly and carefully so that they are not given excessive force. When disconnecting the connector, pull it straight while pressing the release button. Applying an excessive force to disconnect the connector may give damage to it.
- When FOMA terminal is not used or you are leaving the car, disconnect the cigarette lighter plug of the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket and disconnect the DC adapter connector from FOMA terminal.
- The fuse (2A) of the DC adapter is a consumable part. Contact your nearest automotive supply store for a replacement.

Operations and precautions for charging

When charging starts, a charge start alert sounds, light turns ON and the battery icon on the display blinks. When charging is over, a charge completion alert sounds, the light turns off and the battery icon stops blinking.

- When resuming the battery charging, the light turns on in red. In some environments, the light may not light immediately when charging starts; this is normal and not a malfunction. However, if the light fails to light after a while, disconnect FOMA terminal from the AC adapter, desktop holder or DC adapter then connect it again to start charging. Contact the sales outlet such as DoCoMo Shop if the light fails to light for a while after charging starts.
- If the light is used for mail reception, camera shooting, etc. during charging, the light turns to a different color, but it is lit in red soon.

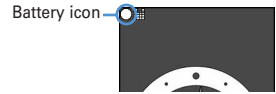
When the light blinks while charging in cases except these reasons→P319 "Troubleshooting"

- When attaching the fully charged battery pack to the FOMA terminal and connecting it to the AC adapter, desktop holder or DC adapter, the light may turn on for a moment and turn off. This is normal and not a malfunction.
- During a call or communication, in Silent mode or Public mode or with Charge alert "OFF", the charge alert does not sound at start or completion of charge.

Remaining battery level

Checking remaining battery level

A battery icon appearing on the top of the display shows an approximate remaining battery level.



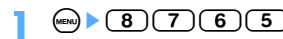
- (Battery level 3) : Ample charge
- (Battery level 2) : Low charge
- (Battery level 1) : Battery level very low. Charging required
- The battery icon set by default varies by the color of the FOMA terminal.→P299
- When Battery indicator lock is activated, the battery icon changes to

When battery is almost exhausted

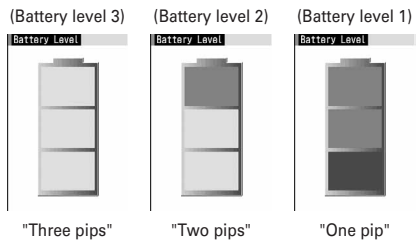
A message indicating low battery appears on the display. Pressing any one of , , keys deletes the message temporarily. After a period of time, a battery alarm sounds from the speaker and all icons on the top of the display start blinking. The power is turned off after approximately 1 minute. These operations stop when charging starts; press to immediately stop the battery alarm.

- During a call, the message remains displayed and the battery alarm keeps sounding from the earpiece. After approximately 20 seconds, the call is terminated, the battery alarm sounds from the speaker and all icons on the top of the display blink.

Checking remaining battery level by sound and display <Battery level>



The battery level appears and the keypad sound is emitted depending on the battery level. After a while, the screen returns to the menu list.



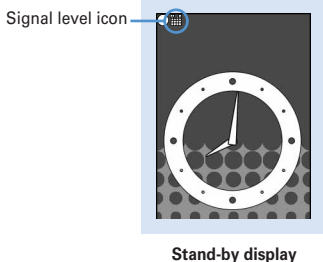
Turning power ON/OFF

❖ Turning power ON

1 (2 sec. or more)

The wake-up screen appears and the stand-by display appears.  appears in the bottom of the display while reading UIM and disappears when reading completes.

- A signal level icon appearing in the top of the display shows the approximate received signal level.



Icon	   	
Received signal level	Strong $\longleftrightarrow$ Weak	Outside the service area and where radio waves are hard to reach

- The battery icon set by default varies by the color of the FOMA terminal. →P299

❖ Turning power OFF

1 (2 sec. or more)

- With power OFF notification function set to "ON", turning the power OFF by this operation causes Location request to be carried out.

❖ Completely turning power OFF <Complete power OFF>

Even with power OFF notification function set to "ON", turn the power OFF without Location request by Power OFF notice.

1 Enter terminal security code (2 sec. or more)

- In Kids' mode, authentication is available also with the password.

2 "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- With power turned OFF, making the settings or operations given below may cause the power to turn ON :
 - Power OFF notice* (except for full power OFF)→P103
 - Auto power ON/OFF→P249
 - Safety alarm→P97
 - Silent alarm→P99
- * A sequence of temporarily turning the power ON, making Location request and turning the power OFF is repeated.

◆ Operations to perform after turning the power ON for the first time

After turning the power ON for the first time, make initial settings. The settings made can be changed later.

❖ Default setting

MENU 8768

1 Set the required items on the initial setting screen

Date & time : Set the date and time.→P43

Security code : Change the terminal security code after performing authentication.→P106

Keypad sound : Set a confirmation sound to be generated when a key is pressed.→P80

Location request : Set if you provide location information after performing authentication. To permit Location request only in a specified period of time, make settings to Permission period of Request permit/deny.→P217

Kids' mode : Set Kids' mode.→P96

Password : Set a password to be entered by a child in Kids' mode after performing authentication.→P96

- Items with setting completed turn from ✓ (gray) to ✓ (blue).
- When ,  or  is pressed before completing setting for all related items, a confirmation screen appears asking if you exit. If you exit by selecting "Yes", this confirmation screen reappears when the power is turned ON the next time.
- When the initial setting screen is displayed by a short-cut operation, the operations of Step 2 and the following steps should not be performed.

2 Saving your home with 地図アプリ (Map application)

When 地図アプリ is activated, save your home following instructions on the screen.→P215
"Registering your home location in initial settings of FOMA terminal"

- If 地図アプリ is deleted, you can download it by selecting "Yes" on a confirmation screen.

3 On Safety options intro screen, **1** or **2**.

- Select "Set now" and perform authentication to display Safety options menu screen (→P96).
- Select "Set later" to display the stand-by display.

❖ Checking Welcome mail

By default, "📧はじめてまして (Welcome)📧" mail is saved. The stand-by display shows a spot animation and  **1** and, when the FOMA terminal is folded, the light flashes in light blue indicating that there is an unread message.

1

The next procedure→P177 Step 2 and the following steps in "Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox"

✓INFORMATION

- When the UIM is replaced, authentication is required after turning on the FOMA terminal. When authentication has succeeded, the stand-by display appears. If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is turned OFF (You can turn the power ON again.).
- If no operations are carried out for approximately 5 minutes with the FOMA terminal open, the display is automatically deactivated (power saving mode). The same situation occurs during voice call. The display light is turned on again if there is any operation or incoming call.

Select language

Switching to English

1 **8** **2** **8** **3** **1** or **2**

✓INFORMATION

- The setting of Select language are saved to UIM. When a UIM is replaced, the setting switches to that saved in the inserted UIM.

Date & time

Setting date and time

You can set so that the time is automatically corrected or directly enter the date and time. With automatic correction set, the time is corrected when receiving the time information from the DoCoMo's network.

1 **8** **7** **1** **1** Set the required items



Adjust time/time diff : Set if you automatically correct time.

- When "ON", Offset can be set.
- When "OFF", set the date and time.

Offset : When "+", the displayed time is always set forward the specified period of time from the corrected time. When "-", the displayed time is always set back the specified period of time from the corrected time.

Date : The date can be entered up between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2050.

Time : Enter the time in the 24-hour format.

✓INFORMATION

- When Adjust time/time diff is set to "ON", time or the time difference is corrected when FOMA terminal is turned ON or at other timings. When the correction is not made for a while after turning the power ON, turn the power OFF and ON.

Note that time is not corrected with no UIM inserted or for some signal quality even if turning the power OFF and ON. During execution of certain i-appli, time correction may be disabled.

- Even with Adjust time/time diff "ON", the corrected time may have an error of several seconds.
- After setting the date and time with Adjust time/time diff "OFF", removing the battery pack or leaving it exhausted for a long time may cause the date and time to be deleted. In this case, set the date and time again after recharging.
- If correction has never been performed and date and time are displayed with "--" or "?", clocks or Flash graphics using the date and time information do not appear correctly. The functions below are unavailable.
 - Certificate download
 - Search message (With scheduler)
 - i-appliDX, i-appli Auto start
 - Top of hour light
 - Permission period of Request permit/deny (GPS)
 - Alarm clock, Scheduler (including data transmission of schedule and displaying schedule data)
 - Timed theme, Update, Auto power ON, Auto power OFF, Software update

- If correction of date and time has never been performed and date and time are displayed with "--" or "?", the functions below do not record the date and time, instead display them as "--/--/--" or "-----". A segmental number furthermore (number to segmentalize) may be appended.
 - Date and time of sent message, unsent message, and mail logs, date and time of saving created message template
 - Date and time of saving downloaded data or file
 - Date and time of i-appli download
 - Received calls, redial, recorded messages/voice memo
 - Date and time in the file name of still images, movies, sound files or data read with Bar code reader
 - Loc. history of GPS

Caller ID notification

Notifying your phone number to the other party

You can set FOMA terminal to display your number (Caller ID) on the other party's terminal when making a voice call or videophone call.

- For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- Caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether you want to include caller ID information when making a call.
- Setting operations for this function is disabled from a location out of service area.

1      

- Press       and select "Yes" to check the current settings.

2 Enter network security code  or 

❖ Priority of caller ID notification

You can also use the ways below to notify/not notify your phone number to the other party : If these are set and operated simultaneously, the caller ID operations are performed with the priorities below. At this time, the status displayed on your terminal may differ from actual notify/not notify Caller ID.

- ① When whether to notify a caller ID in Call option for the dialing is set→P52
- ② When "186"/"184" is prefixed to a phone number→P51
- ③ Caller ID settings for the phonebook entry→P73
- ④ Activate/Deactivate

✓INFORMATION

- If an announcement of requesting caller ID is heard when making a call, make a call again after setting your caller ID to be notified.

User information

Checking your own phone number

MENU 48

You can check your phone number (My phone number), Name, Mail address, etc.

1  

Checking during talking, etc. :  

✓INFORMATION

- For details of how to check i-mode mail address, see "Mobile Phone Users Guide [i-mode]".

Voice/Videophone Calls

Making voice/videophone calls

Videophone	46
Making voice/videophone calls	46
Switching voice/videophone call	48
Making a call using Redial/Received calls	Redial/Received calls 48
Using Chaku-moji	Chaku-moji 50
Setting to either Notify/Not notify caller ID for each call	186/184 51
Sending tone signal (DTMF)	51
Making a call under set conditions	Call option 52
Making international calls	WORLD CALL 52
Changing International call assist settings	Int'l call assist 53
Setting prefix to be added before phone number	Prefix dialing 54
Making a call specifying a sub address	Sub address 54
Suppressing ambient noise to improve call quality	Noise reduction 54

Receiving voice/videophone calls

Receiving voice/videophone calls	55
Switching voice/videophone call when receiving a call	56
Enabling use of keypad to answer call	Any key answer 56
Ending/putting on hold/continuing a call by folding FOMA terminal	Close settings 56
Setting priority screen for incoming calls during call or packet communication	Priority comm mode 57

When you can/could not answer a voice/videophone call

Putting calls on hold when you cannot answer immediately	Respond and Hold 57
Setting status message	Status message 57
Using Public mode (Drive mode)	Public mode (Drive mode) 58
Using Public mode (Power OFF)	Public mode (Power OFF) 59
Allowing the caller to record message when you cannot answer call	Answer machine 60
Playing/deleting recorded messages	61

Videophone call settings

Using Chara-den	61
Setting images to send to the other party during a call	62
Customizing display settings for videophone call	62
Changing videophone settings	Operation 63
Setting substitute and hold images for videophone calls	Image setting 63
Setting about switching voice call and videophone call	Notify switchable mode 64
Setting actions for incoming calls during packet communication	DataSession arv. act 64
Using videophone call by connecting with external device	External device 64

Videophone

The videophone function is available between terminals that support DoCoMo's videophone. Phone conversations can be made between FOMA terminals while looking at the other party's image using videophone. It is also possible to send still images, substitute images, Chara-den, etc. instead of camera image.

- Videophone calls are only available at 64 kbps.
- DoCoMo videophone specifications are conforming to "3G-324M"^{*2}, an international standard prepared by 3GPP^{*1}. The connection with the videophones of different specifications cannot be established.

*1 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)*** is an area standardization organization established to develop standard technology specifications for third generation mobile communications system (IMT-2000).

*2 3G-324M*** An international standard for 3rd generation mobile videophone

◆ Reading screen during a videophone call



① Main screen

Display other party's image.

② Videophone icon

③ Speakerphone function

🔊 : ON No icon : OFF

④ Sub screen

Display your own image.

⑤ Zooming

📷 : Standard-📷 : 2X (in-camera)

📷 : Standard-📷 : 12X (out-camera)

⑥ Status

📷 : Sending camera image

📷 : Sending Camera-Off image 📷 : Using Chara-den

📷 : Sending frame 📷 : Sending still image

📷 : On hold 📷 : Respond and Hold

📷 : Recording message 📷 : Recording movie memo

Action mode

📷 : Action

📷 : Action of Parts

⑦ Shooting mode

📷 : Standard 📷 : Backlight 📷 : Monotone
📷 : Sepia

⑧ Light

No icon : OFF 📷 : ON (out-camera)

⑨ Sending image quality

No icon : Normal 📷 : Prefer motion speed

📷 : Prefer image quality

⑩ Sending/receiving status of audio/video

📷 : Sending/receiving audio

📷 : Sending/receiving video

📷 : Sending/receiving audio/video

Speakerphone volume/listen volume

📷 : Adjusting speakerphone volume/listen volume

⑪ Switchable mode

No icon : Switching unavailable 📷 : Switching available

⑫ Call duration

Displayed in the HH:MM:SS format

Making voice/videophone calls

1 Enter a phone number.

- Always enter the area code even when calling from the same city when calling to a general subscriber phone.
- Up to 80 digits can be entered.

(CLR) : Delete 1 digit

(CLR) (1 sec. or more) : Delete all digits

2 Select a call type.

Making a voice call : 📞

Making videophone calls : 📷

Your own image is displayed while the videophone call is connected.



- A switching confirmation screen to speaker appears during Silent mode.
- The charging begins when "Connected to videophone." appears on the screen.

3 When ending the call, 📞.

✓INFORMATION

<For both voice and videophone calls>

- If the phone on the other party is busy, you hear the busy tone. Press  to end the call and make a call again later.
- If an announcement requesting caller ID is heard, make a call again after setting your caller ID to be notified.

<For videophone calls only>

- The charges are based on the rate for digital communication not for voice calls even when substitute image is sent instead of the camera image.
- If a videophone call attempt fails, the screen automatically returns to the stand-by display after the message below appears. Displayed messages may not reflect the status on the other party correctly, depending on the type of the terminal and/or usage of the network service on the other party.

Message	Description
Check number, then redial.	When you make a call to a phone number not used
Busy.	The other party is busy.*
Out of service area/ power off.	The other party is out of the service area or the other party's terminal is turned OFF.
Set Caller ID to ON.	You did not notify your caller ID (when dialing to Visualnet, etc.)
Redial using voice call.	The other party is set Call Forwarding Service but the destination's FOMA terminal does not support videophone calls.
Busy with packet transmission.	The other party is in packet transmission.
Make call from i-mode web page.	You are not making a videophone call after connecting to a site provided by IP (Information Provider).
Upper limit exceeded.	Upper limit of a charging plan with limiting function (Type Limit or Family Wide Limit) is exceeded.
Connection failed.	When none of the above messages is applicable

- * This message may appear during packet communication depending on the other party's terminal.
- If a videophone call accompanied by a Chaku-moji is made with Auto redial as voice set to "ON", the Chaku-moji accompanies when redialing.
 - Any videophone call from FOMA terminal to emergency call (110, 119 or 118) with Auto redial as voice set to "ON" is automatically switched to a voice call.

◆ Putting calls on hold <On hold>

Putting the call on hold during a call lets you talk to someone without the caller hearing your voice.

- The caller is charged for time spent on hold.

1 During a call, .

The call is put on hold, light flashes in green, and a melody is played. For a videophone call, the videophone on-hold image is displayed on the phone of the other party and yourself.

- To clear voice call on hold, press  or .
- To clear videophone call on hold, perform any of the operations below :
 -  : Redisplay the image sent before the call is put on hold
 -  /  : Camera image is sent
 -  : Substitute image is sent

◆ Using speakerphone function

To make/receive videophone calls without using speakerphone function, change the setting of Speakerphone in Operation (Videophone settings).

1 Enter a phone number (1 sec. or more) or

-  appears at the top of the display.
- The procedure is the same when operating from the phonebook, Redial, Received calls, Recorded messages or Voice memos.
 - Press and hold  for 1 second or more to make a videophone call using speakerphone function with Speakerphone in Operation (Videophone settings) set to "OFF".
 - While making a call, ringing or talking on the phone, you can switch the speakerphone function ON/OFF by each pressing .

✓INFORMATION

- If you switch to speakerphone, the volume may suddenly increase. Use it with FOMA terminal away from your ears.
- Talk to the FOMA terminal within approximately 50 cm. If a call is hard to hear from the speaker due to loud noise around you or the other party, turn the speakerphone function OFF.
- This function can be used in Silent mode.

◆ Adjusting volume during call <Listen volume>

- Listen volume adjusted during a call is reflected to "Listen volume" of Adjust volume.

1 during a call.

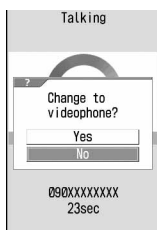
Switching voice/videophone call

Call switching can be operated only from the terminal that has made the voice or videophone call.

- This function is available among the models which support switching voice call and videophone call.
- The voice calls and videophone calls are charged individually depending on the respective time.
- To switch the call, Notify switchable mode needs to be started by the other party.→P64

<Example> Switching to videophone call during a voice call

During a voice call, (F) ▶ "Yes"



- During call switching, a message indicating to switch the call is played.
- When switched to videophone call, the speakerphone function is activated.

Switching to voice call during a videophone call :

During a videophone call, (MENU) ▶ (1) ▶ "Yes"

- The speakerphone function is canceled when the call is switched to voice call.

✓INFORMATION

- The switching takes approximately 5 seconds. Switching may take a long time depending on the signal quality.
- While the switching screen is being displayed, no call cost is charged.
- Depending on the signal quality, switching calls is disabled, resulting in disconnection of the call.
- During a voice call using Call waiting, switching to a videophone call is disabled.
- When packet communications are made during a voice call, packet communications are disconnected before switching to a videophone call.
- While the other party is performing packet communication, switching to a videophone call is unavailable.
- The settings such as camera switching, frame selection, substitute image sending, etc. made during videophone call are canceled by each switching the voice call and videophone call.→P62

Redial/Received calls

Making a call using Redial/Received calls

MENU 45
MENU 44

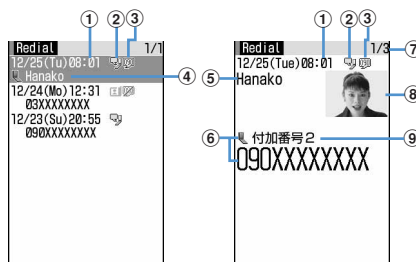
This function records call log (Redial) and Received calls of voice and videophone calls.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded in each of Redial and Received calls. If the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When calls are made to the same phone number, the latest call is recorded in the redial list for each of "Unspecified", "Notify", "Not notify" of Caller ID.

(F) (Redial) or (F) (Received calls) ▶ Place the cursor on a party to redial

- The details screen appears when placing the cursor on a number to redial.

Reading Redial screen



Redial list screen

Redial details screen

① Calling date/time

② Types of outgoing call

- ☎ : Voice call ☎ : International voice call
- F : Videophone call F : International videophone call

③ Notify/Not notify for a caller ID

- ☎ : When Notify is set in Call option or Caller ID settings for phonebook entry
- ☎ : When Not notify is set in Call option or Caller ID settings for phonebook entry

④ Phone number^{*1}/phone number icon and name in phonebook (if saved in the phonebook)

⑤ Name (if saved in the phonebook)

⑥ Phone number icon in the phonebook (if saved in the phonebook), phone number^{*1}

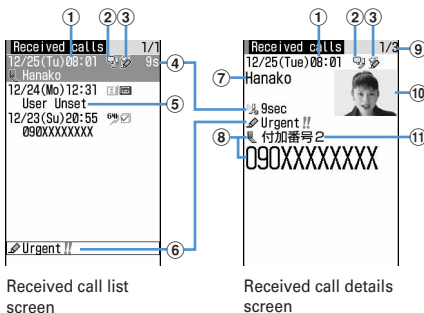
⑦ Redial No./No. of items

⑧ Image (if saved in the phonebook)^{*2}

⑨ Multi number name of outgoing call (if subscribed to Multi number)

^{*1} For an international call, a plus sign "+" appears at the beginning of the phone number.

^{*2} Displayed according to the settings of View preference.



① Date/time of call reception

② Types of incoming call

- : Voice call : International voice call
- : Videophone call : International videophone call
- : 64K data communication
- : International 64K data communication

③ Status icon

- : Missed call (unchecked)
- : Missed call (checked)
- : Recorded messages
- : Recorded message (deleted)
- : Chaku-moji
- : Missed call with Chaku-moji (unchecked)
- : Missed call with Chaku-moji (checked)
- : Recorded messages with Chaku-moji
- : Recorded messages with Chaku-moji (deleted)

④ Ring time icon for missed call (details screen only), ring time for missed call (on a list screen, "99+" appears for 100 or more seconds)

⑤ Phone number*1/phone number icon and name in phonebook (if saved in the phonebook)/reason for hiding caller ID

⑥ Chaku-moji icon, Chaku-moji

⑦ Name (if saved in the phonebook)/Reason for hiding caller ID

⑧ Phone number icon in the phonebook (if saved in the phonebook), phone number*1

⑨ Received call number/number of calls

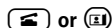
⑩ Image (if saved in the phonebook)*2

⑪ Multi number name of incoming call (when you subscribe to Multi number)

*1 For an international call, a plus sign "+" appears at the beginning of the phone number.

*2 Displayed according to the settings of View preference.

2



- Pressing on the details screen makes a call in the same way as the call type of the selected redial/received calls.

- To make a call specifying conditions, press

1 . → P52

❖ Using Redial/Received calls

Adding to phonebook :

① Place the cursor on a party to add and

4 **1** or **2** **1** or **2**

- When adding data to existing phonebook entry, select the phonebook entry.

② Save the name or mail address, etc.

Phonebook new entry → P67, 68

Creating an i-mode mail : Place the cursor on a destination party and .

Creating SMS : Place the cursor on the party and (1 sec. or more).

Switching Redial/Received calls : **6**

Displaying Sent msg log/Received msg log :

❖ Switching details screen display <View preference>

1 On the details screen, **8** **1** - **3**

Setting items → P71 "Switching details screen display"

❖ When you missed calls <Missed calls>

2 (the digit indicates the number of missed calls) appears in the stand-by display. The incoming calls are recorded as missed calls in Received calls.

- When a missed call from an unknown phone number exists, the ring time enables you to check whether it is a malicious ("One-ring phone scam", etc.) call for the sole purpose of recording the phone number in the received call list.

✓ INFORMATION

- Calls received from callers using dial-in services in an office, etc. may display different numbers than the caller's dial-in number (with dial-in service, you can have multiple incoming phone numbers for one telephone line).
- When switching voice and videophone calls is made during talking, the call type at the time of receiving call (voice or videophone call) is recorded in Received calls.
- To display all received call logs including missed calls within Delay time set in Ring alert delay, press **8** **1** on Received calls list. To return to the original received call list, press **8** **2**.
- If you press during a voice call, Redial/Received calls appear.

◆ Deleting redial/received call logs <Delete redial/received call log>

<Example> Deleting one entry

1 (Redial) or (Received calls) ▶ Place the cursor on an entry to delete and (MENU) ▶ 5 1

Deleting selected entries : (Redial) or (Received calls) ▶ (MENU) ▶ 5 2 ▶ Select the entries to delete ▶

Deleting all entries : (Redial) or (Received calls) ▶ (MENU) ▶ 5 3 ▶ Authenticate

2 "Yes"

✓ INFORMATION

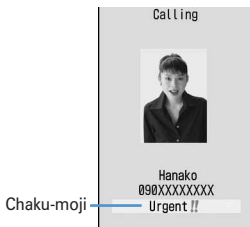
- When operating from details screen, press (MENU) and select "Delete" → "One item" or "All items".

Chaku-moji

Using Chaku-moji

When making a voice or videophone call, a message can be sent in a ring time to inform the receiver of the purpose and urgency of the call.

- For details of Chaku-moji or supported models, see the DoCoMo's website or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- The sender is charged for communication fee, but the receiver is not.



◆ Adding Chaku-moji

- Up to 10 Chaku-moji can be registered.

1 (MENU) ▶ 8 8 3 1

2 "<New message>"

- After selecting existing Chaku-moji, you can edit it.

Creating Chaku-moji by quoting sent Chaku-moji :

(MENU) ▶ 1 ▶ Select Chaku-moji

Deleting Chaku-moji : Place the cursor on Chaku-moji to delete and (MENU) ▶ 2 or 3 ▶ "Yes"

3 Enter Chaku-moji.

- Up to 10 characters can be entered. Pictograms/symbols also can be entered.

4

When editing existing Chaku-moji, Chaku-moji registration confirmation screen appears.

◆ Setting display of Chaku-moji for an incoming call <Message display settings>

1 (MENU) ▶ 8 8 3 2 ▶ 1 - 4

- If "Hide all" is set, no Chaku-moji is received.

◆ Making a call accompanied by Chaku-moji

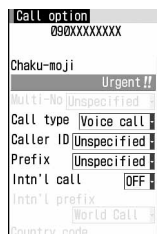
Chaku-moji appears on the incoming call screen of the other party.

- Up to 10 sent Chaku-moji is saved to Sent messages. If the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, record is overwritten chronologically.

<Example> Creating Chaku-moji

1 Enter a phone number ▶ (MENU) ▶ 3

2 1 ▶ Enter Chaku-moji into the message entry field ▶



Call option screen

- Up to 10 characters can be entered. Pictograms/symbols also can be entered.

Selecting from saved Chaku-moji : 2 ▶ Select Chaku-moji

Selecting from Sent messages : 3 ▶ Select Chaku-moji

Sending no Chaku-moji : Select the Chaku-moji field on the Call option screen ▶ 1

"Transmission completed" appears on the calling screen and you are charged for message transmission.

If the Chaku-moji message is not received by the other party due to incompatibility or Message display settings or because he or she stays overseas, message "Transmission failed" appears on the calling screen and you are not charged for message transmission.

✓INFORMATION

- Chaku-moji cannot be sent and it is not recorded in Received calls when the receiver side is in one of the states below. The transmission result does not appear on the sender side with no transmission fee charged.
 - When the receiver is out of service area or the terminal power is OFF
 - If Greeting msg resp time is "0 Sec."
 - Public mode (Drive mode) ON, etc.
- When operating from Redial or Received calls, press  and select "Chaku-moji".
- When operating from Recorded messages, Voice memos or Members list of scheduler, press  and select "Call option".
- When operating from Phonebook list of FOMA terminal or UIM, press  and select "Mail/Call option" → "Call option"; when operating from a phone number detail screen, press  and select "Chaku-moji/MultiNo" → "Chaku-moji".
- When the other party is set Ring alert delay, Chaku-moji is sent even in Delay time and the transmission is charged.
- Depending on the signal quality, the transmission result may not appear on the sender's terminal even when Chaku-moji arrives at the other party's terminal. In this case, you are charged for message transmission.

186/184

Setting to either Notify/Not notify caller ID for each call

- Caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether you want to include caller ID information when making a call.
- Priority of the method to notify a caller ID → P44

Notify your caller ID :    ► **Enter a phone number** ►  or 

Not notify your caller ID :    ► **Enter a phone number** ►  or 

✓INFORMATION

- In case of international call, caller ID may not be notified depending on connecting phone companies even when "186" is prefixed.
- When making a call by dialing the phone number prefixed with "186" or "184", the phone number prefixed with that number is recorded in the redial list.

Sending tone signal (DTMF)

Tone signals (DTMF) can be sent from FOMA terminal to operate the Voice Mail Service or use various push-button phone services at your home. By entering pause ("P") or timed pause ("T") when making a voice call, tone signals (DTMF) can be sent with digits in the phone number separated.

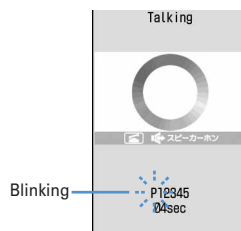
- Pause and timed pause are enabled only for voice calls.

❖Entering pause "P"

Use for operating the answering system at home, reserving tickets, etc. Tone signals are sent with the phone number separated at the point where pause ("P") is entered.

1 Enter a phone number ►  (1 sec. or more) ► **Enter digits to send** ► 

When pressing  after the call is connected, the digits after the pause ("P") are sent.



❖Entering timed pause "T"

Timed pause ("T") is used to dial outside line number followed by an extension. When timed pause ("T") is entered between the phone and extension numbers, the extension number is dialed with a pause of the predetermined seconds after the phone number is dialed.

1 Enter a phone number ►  (1 sec. or more) ► **Enter an extension number** ► 

- Timed pauses ("T") can be entered in succession.
- Each timed pause ("T") is followed by an interval of approximately 1 second.

❖ Sending tone signal (DTMF) during a videophone call

1 During a call, Enter digit to send

The number you pressed is displayed and the tone signal is transmitted.

 : Cancel sending

- While sending camera image or Camera-Off image, a tone signal can be sent only by pressing the keypad without pressing  .
- A frame set on a camera image or a still image set as a substitute image is canceled.
- Because a tone signal is sent using keypads, actions with pressing keypads are disabled while using Chara-den.

✓INFORMATION

- Tone signals may not be received depending on the receiving device.
- You cannot make a call to another party, putting the current call on hold, by entering a pause ("P") or timed pause ("T").

Call option

Making a call under set conditions

You can set calling conditions each time you make a voice or videophone call.

- Priority of the method to notify a caller ID → P44

1 Enter a phone number Set the required items

Chaku-moji : Create or select a message to be sent to the other party. → P50

Multi-No : Select the caller ID. → P282

Call type : Select "Voice call" or "V.phone".

Caller ID : Set Notify/Not notify for a caller ID. When "Unspecified" is set, the settings in Caller ID notification are used.

Prefix : Select Prefix to be added before phone number.

Intn'l call : Set whether to make an international call. → P53

Intn'l prefix : Select international prefix number when making an international call.

Country code : Select a country code when making an international call.

2

A call is made in the specified settings.

- If "V.phone" is selected for "Call type", Chara-den to display during a call can be set by pressing .

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the received/sent message details screen or using Phone To (AV Phone To) function, set items and press  to display a calling confirmation screen. When "No, use original" is selected, a call is made under such conditions that the settings except "Chaku-moji" and "Call type" are canceled.
- In case of international call, caller ID may not be notified depending on connecting phone companies even when "Notify" is selected in Caller ID.

WORLD CALL

Making international calls

- "WORLD CALL" is the international call service available from DoCoMo mobile phones.
- You can call approximately 240 countries and regions in the world.
- "WORLD CALL" charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.
- No subscription charges apply. No monthly fee is required.
 - * You are subscribed to "WORLD CALL" at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (unless you request not to subscribe to it).
- There are some charging plans unavailable.
- Change international call dial procedure
"Myline" service is not applicable to mobile telephone communications, including "WORLD CALL" service. Along with the introducing of "Myline" service, the dialing procedure for international communications using a mobile telephone was changed. Consequently, the previous dial procedure (without prefix "010") can no longer be used.
- Contact the numbers for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for details of "WORLD CALL".
 - * To use international call services except the DoCoMo service, contact the carrier for details.

"International videophone" calls to parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals can be made by dialing as described below and placing a call in the videophone mode.

- For countries and overseas telecommunications carriers available, see DoCoMo's "International service web page".
- The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the other party's terminal connected through the international videophone line.

1 **0 0 9 1 3 0** ▶ **0 1**
0 ▶ **Country code** ▶ **Area code (City code)** ▶ **Enter a phone number** ▶

- Omit "0" in area code (city code) starting with "0". This dialing procedure does not cover certain countries including Italy (general subscriber phones).
- The above phone number can be saved in FOMA terminal phonebook.

❖ Making international call entering "+"

By entering "+", it is converted to Intn'l prefix No. "009130010 (WORLD CALL)".

- When a call is made by entering Japanese country code "81" succeeding "+", international prefix number is not converted.

1 **0 (1 sec. or more)** ▶ **Country code** ▶ **Area code (City code)** ▶ **Enter a phone number** ▶

- Press **0** for 1 second or more to enter "+".
- Omit "0" in area code (city code) starting with "0". This dialing procedure does not cover certain countries including Italy (general subscriber phones).

2 "Yes"

- When "No, use original" is selected, a call is made under such conditions that the settings except "Chaku-moji" and "Call type" are canceled.

❖ Making international call by selecting international prefix number and country code

You can select an international prefix number or country code registered in Int'l call assist.

1 **Area code (City code)** ▶ **Enter a phone number** ▶ ▶ **2** ▶ **Select the Intn'l call field** ▶ **2** ▶ **Select the Intn'l prefix field** ▶ **Select the name of Intn'l prefix No.** ▶ **Select the Country code field** ▶ **Select the Country code** ▶

2 "Yes"

- When "No, use original" is selected, a call is made under such conditions that the settings except "Chaku-moji" and "Call type" are canceled.

Int'l call assist

Changing International call assist settings

◆ Setting Auto switch <Auto switch>

You can set if you convert automatically an international prefix number by entering "+".

1 ▶ **8 9 1** ▶ **Select Intn'l prefix field** ▶ **1** or **2**

- Select "ON" and select an international prefix number to be automatically converted from "+".

2

◆ Editing country code <Country code setting>

Up to 22 codes can be registered.

1 ▶ **8 9 2**

2 Select the country code to edit.

Deleting a country code : Place the cursor on the country code and ▶ **2** ▶ "Yes"

3 Set the required items ▶

Country name : Enter a country name.

- Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Country code : Enter the country code.

- Up to 5 digits can be entered.

◆ Setting international prefix number <Auto assist setting>

You can save up to 3 Intn'l prefix No. to be prefixed to a phone number when making international calls.

1 ▶ **8 9 3**

2 "<Not recorded>"

Selecting an international prefix number to be automatically converted : Place the cursor on the Intn'l prefix No. and .

✓ appears before the selected number.

Deleting an international prefix number : Place the cursor on the international prefix number and ▶ **3** ▶ "Yes"

3 Set the required items ▶

Name : Enter the name.

- Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Intn'l prefix No. : Enter the international prefix number.

- Up to 10 digits can be entered.

Setting prefix to be added before phone number

You can set a number (prefix) such as an international prefix number to be prefixed to a phone number.

- Up to 3 codes can be registered.
- Making a call selecting a prefix → P52

1      Enter the number in the entry field 

- Up to 10 digits can be entered.
- If you set a number (prefix) containing a pause ("P") or timed pause ("T"), you cannot add the prefix when making a call.

Sub address

Making a call specifying a sub address

You can set if you call a specific phone or communication device by specifying a sub address.

- A sub address is a number used to call a specific device out of multiple telephone sets and/or communication devices assigned the same phone number (e.g. when multiple devices with sub addresses are connected to an ISDN line).

It is also used to select contents in a movie delivery service "V live".

1       or 

❖ Making a call specifying a sub address

1 Enter a phone number  Enter a sub address  or 

✓INFORMATION

- If " *" is entered after the pause ("P") or timed pause ("T") is entered, it is not recognized as the separator of sub address and is sent as tone signals containing " *" even if Sub address is "ON".

Noise reduction

Suppressing ambient noise to improve call quality

By setting the noise canceller function that suppresses the ambient noise, your voice and the other party's voice can be made clearer.

- It is recommended that this function be used set to "ON" normally.

1       or 

Receiving voice/videophone calls

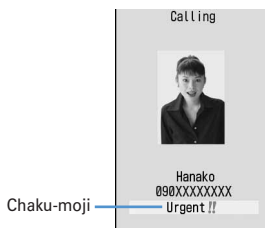
- You cannot answer calls just by opening FOMA terminal.

1 A call is received.

A ring alert sounds and the light goes lit or flashes.

 : Ring alert volume

 : Stop the ring tone and the vibrator operation.



- If Chaku-moji is received, Chaku-moji is displayed. When the call is answered, Chaku-moji disappears. Chaku-moji is recorded in Received calls.→P50

When the phone number of the other party is notified

If the phone number of the other party is saved in your phonebook, the name and phone number are displayed as specified in Receive display option. When Contact image is "ON", the image or movie/i-motion that is set in the phonebook is displayed.

When the phone number of the other party is not notified

Reason for hiding caller ID is displayed.

User Unset : When the caller selected not to send caller ID

PublicPhone : When the call was made from a publicphone, etc.

Unavailable : The call was made under the situation that does not allow sending the caller ID; e.g. a call from overseas or a general subscriber phone via forwarding services (caller ID may be sent by connecting phone companies).

2 Select call reception type.

Receiving a voice call :

- Voice calls can be answered by pressing a keypad (Any key answer).

Receiving videophone calls : or

Your own image is displayed while the videophone call is connected.



- Any key answer is unavailable.
- A switching confirmation screen to speaker appears during Silent mode.
- You can answer a videophone call using a substitute image by pressing  instead of  or . The substitute image is sent to the other party when the videophone call is connected.

3 When ending the call, .

✓INFORMATION

- For calls received from callers not saved in the phonebook, you can set to reject incoming calls or set the ring tone or vibrator ringer action not to start immediately.→P119
- Reject call can be set for parties saved in the phonebook.→P118
- Telephones that do not support dialed long-distance calls such as internal phones and PBX cannot be used to make calls to FOMA terminals.
- When a call forwarded from FOMA terminal is received, the phone number appears in the incoming call screen if the forwarders phone number is not saved in the phonebook or the name appears if the forwarders phone number is registered. However, the phone number or name may not appear depending on the forwarder.
- When receiving an international call, a plus sign "+" appears at the beginning of the sender's number.

◆ Operations from submenu during receiving call

When there is an incoming voice or videophone call, the operations listed below can be performed from submenu. When Arrival call act is "Answer", the same operations are enabled also when there is another incoming voice call during a voice call.

Submenu item	Operation
1 Call Rejection	Disconnect without receiving a call
2 Voice Mail	Connect the call to Voice Mail Service center
3 Call Forwarding	Forward the call to the specified phone number

◆ When you hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) while talking over a voice call

If you are a subscriber to Voice Mail Service, Call waiting or Call Forwarding Service, you hear beeps (the call waiting ring tone) when receiving another incoming voice call while talking over a voice call. You can perform any of the operations below :

Service	Operation
Voice Mail Service*	Connect the call to Voice Mail Service center
Catch Phone (Call Waiting Service)	Put current voice call on hold and answers second voice call
Call Forwarding Service*	Forward the call to the specified phone number

* Selection from the submenu is enabled only when Arrival call act is "Answer".

Switching voice/videophone call when receiving a call

When a caller of the current voice (videophone) call has switched to videophone (voice) call, a receiver must react to it.

- Call switching can be done only from the caller's terminal.
- To react to switching to voice or videophone call, Notify switchable mode must be started in advance. → P64

<Example> Accepting switching to videophone call

1 Receive a request for switching to videophone call during a voice call.



- During call switching, a message indicating to switch the call is played.

2 "Yes"

The call is switched to videophone call and camera image is sent to the other party.

- Select "No" to send Default image set for Substitute image.
- When a call is switched to a videophone call with Speakerphone in Operation (Videophone settings) set to "ON", the speaker phone function is used for the call.

Accepting switching to voice call : Receive a request for switching to voice call during a videophone call

- The speakerphone function is canceled when the call is switched to voice call.

Any key answer

Enabling use of keypad to answer call

You can set if you answer a call by pressing **0**-**9**, ***** or **#** in addition to .

- It is effective for voice calls. It is unavailable to an incoming call during talking.

1  **8** **5** **3**  **1** or **2**

Close settings

Ending/putting on hold/continuing a call by folding FOMA terminal

- This function does not operate during 64K data communication, packet communication.

1  **8** **5** **7** **2**  **1**-**3**

End the call : Terminate the call.

On-hold : Put the call on hold.

Continue(mute) : Mute the sound without terminating the call. However, when the speakerphone function is active, your voice is not heard by the other party but you hear the other party's voice from the speaker.

✓INFORMATION

- When the FOMA terminal is folded in the cases below, the call continues regardless of the setting in this function.
 - When Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected.
 - When a message is being recorded by Answer machine.
- When FOMA terminal is folded during a videophone call with "Continue(mute)" set, a substitute image is sent to the other party. Frames already sent, if any, are canceled.
- Also, when FOMA terminal is folded while recording voice memo while talking or movie memo, operations are performed according to these settings. In case of "On-hold", the contents recorded until the time immediately before holding are saved.
- To make settings during a voice call, press  and select "Terminal close".

Setting priority screen for incoming calls during call or packet communication

You can select the voice call or packet communication screen to be given priority when data is received via packet communication from a connected PC during a voice call or when a voice call is received during i-mode communication.

- A screen change caused by this function does not suspend the call or packet communication.
- When i-mode mail or MessageR/F is received during a voice call, a voice call screen appears by priority regardless of this setting.

1 (MENU) ▶ 8 5 6 1 ▶ 1 - 3

No Set Up : Display the last image received without giving display priority. Note that, when there is receiving packet communication, a voice call screen appears.

Voice call : Display the voice call screen.

Packet : Display the packet communication screen during a voice call and i-mode screen * during i-mode session.

* Press (MENU) to open Switch Task menu, allowing to receive a call.

Respond and Hold

Putting calls on hold when you cannot answer immediately

- The caller is charged for the time spent on hold.

1 While receiving a call, (H).

The call is put on hold, and the other party hears a status message.

For a videophone call, Response hold image for videophone is displayed to you and the other party.

- When Call session light is "ON", the light flashes according to the setting of Color.

2 When you are ready to answer the call, (H).

- You can also answer a videophone call by pressing (H). A substitute image is sent to the other party by pressing (H).
- If the caller presses (H) or hangs up while on hold, the call ends.

Setting status message

You can record a status message in your own voice.

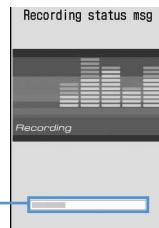
- 1 message approximately 10 seconds long can be recorded.
- As standard, "I cannot answer to the phone right now. Please wait or call back later." is saved.

1 (MENU) ▶ 8 1 1 7 1 ▶ Select the On-hold tone field ▶ 2

- Press 1 and go to Step 3 to restore standard guidance.

2 "Record" in the Edit message field ▶ Record the status message after the beep

Recording starts after a message appears.



An approximate guide of the time for recording

- An end tone (beep) sounds approximately 10 seconds after the start of recording.
- Press (H) to stop recording halfway.
- When a recorded status message is deleted, the standard guidance is reset.
- Select "Play" to check the recorded status message.

3 (H)

Using Public mode (Drive mode)

Public mode is an automatic answering service putting emphasis on manners in a highly public place. With Public mode set, the caller hears an announcement notifying that the receiver is driving a car or in a place requiring suppression of calling (electric train, bus, movie theater, etc.) and the call is disconnected.

- Public mode can be set or canceled only in stand-by. It is enabled also while "圏外" appears on the top of display.
- Even in Public mode, calls can be made normally.
- Even in Silent mode or Answer machine, Public mode takes precedence.
- Making an emergency call (110, 119 or 118) in Public mode cancels Public mode.
- Public mode is disabled in Kids' mode.

◆ Activating Public mode (Drive mode)

1 (1 sec. or more)

Public mode is set and  appears on the stand-by display.

When a call is received, an announcement "The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cellphone should not be used. Please try again later." is played.

Canceling :  (1 sec. or more)

◆ When Public mode (Drive mode) is activated

When there is an incoming voice call, the caller hears an announcement notifying that the receiver is driving or in a place where the receiver has to refrain from using a mobile phone, and the call is disconnected. When there is an incoming videophone call, Public mode announcement and image is displayed on the caller's terminal and the call is disconnected. In any case, your FOMA terminal does not perform receiving operation, and  2 (the number indicates the number of items) appears on the stand-by display and the call is recorded as a missed call.

- The sound below does not ring. Also, vibrator and/or light are not activated.
 - Ring tone of a call
 - Ring alert for mail or MessageR/F
 - Sound of Countdown timer, Alarm clock, schedule reminder
 - Sound of i-appli
 - Call cost limit*
 - Low battery alert
 - Charge start alert/completed
 - GPS alert sound
- * Even if Call cost limit is "ON" and the alert set, no messages appear.

- When usage setting for service is "Check every time", no location information is sent even if Location request of GPS is issued.
- Even with Security indicator "ON" and loss protection lock or Lock on close "ON", the light does not operate.

◆ Incoming operations while using network services in Public mode (Drive mode)

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice Mail Service	After a Public mode announcement is played for the other party, the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service center*	The call is connected to the Voice Mail Service center without displaying a Public mode announcement and image for the other party*
Call Forwarding Service	After a Public mode announcement is played for the other party, the call is forwarded to the specified destination*. Whether to play an announcement for the other party depends on the Call Forwarding Service settings	The call is forwarded to the specified destination without displaying a Public mode announcement and image for the other party*. If the forwarding destination does not support videophone calls, the call is disconnected
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	When the other party has been registered as nuisance caller, an announcement informing call rejection is played for the other party, and the call is disconnected	When the other party has been registered as nuisance caller, an announcement and image informing call rejection is displayed for the other party, and the call is disconnected
Caller ID request	- When the other party has not notified the phone number, an announcement asking for caller ID notification is played for the other party, and the call is disconnected - When the other party has notified the phone number, a Public mode announcement is played for the other party, and the call is disconnected	- When the other party has not notified the phone number, an announcement and image asking for caller ID notification is displayed for the other party, and the call is disconnected - When the other party has notified the phone number, a Public mode announcement and image is displayed for the other party, and the call is disconnected

* When Ring time for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service is "0 Sec.", no Public mode announcement is played and the call reception is not recorded in Received calls.

Using Public mode (Power OFF)

Public mode (Power OFF) is an automatic answering service putting emphasis on manners in a highly public place. When there is an incoming call in **Public mode (Power OFF)**, the caller hears an announcement notifying that the receiver is in a place requiring power OFF of the mobile phone (hospital, air plane, near priority seats in electric train, etc.) and cannot answer the call, and the call is disconnected.

◆ Setting Public mode (Power OFF)

1

Public mode (Power OFF) is set (No change on the stand-by display).

When there is an incoming call in Public mode (Power OFF), announcement "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later." is played.

Canceling :

Checking the settings :

❖ When Public mode (Power OFF) is activated

When there is an incoming voice call, the caller hears an announcement notifying that the receiver is in a place requiring power OFF of a mobile phone and the call is disconnected. When there is an incoming videophone call, Public mode announcement and image is displayed on the caller's terminal and the call is disconnected.

- The settings continue until Public mode (Power OFF) is canceled by dialing " * 25250". The settings are not canceled by simply turning the power ON.
- The Public mode (Power OFF) announcement is played also when you are outside the service area or in a place where waves do not reach.

❖ Incoming operations while using network services in Public mode (Power OFF)

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice Mail Service	Public mode (Power OFF) announcement is played for the other party, and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service center*	The call is connected to the Voice Mail Service center without displaying a Public mode announcement and image for the other party
Call Forwarding Service	A Public mode (Power OFF) announcement is played for the other party, and the call is forwarded to the specified destination* Whether to play an announcement for the other party depends on the Call Forwarding Service settings	The call is forwarded to the specified destination without displaying a Public mode announcement and image for the other party If the forwarding destination does not support videophone calls, the call is disconnected
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	When the other party has been registered as nuisance caller, an announcement informing call rejection is played for the other party, and the call is disconnected	When the other party has been registered as nuisance caller, an announcement and image informing call rejection is displayed for the other party, and the call is disconnected
Caller ID request	• When the other party has not notified the phone number, an announcement asking for caller ID notification is played for the other party, and the call is disconnected • When the other party has notified the phone number, a Public mode announcement is played for the other party, and the call is disconnected	• When the other party has not notified the phone number, an announcement and image asking for caller ID notification is displayed for the other party, and the call is disconnected • When the other party has notified the phone number, a Public mode announcement and image is displayed for the other party, and the call is disconnected

* When Ring time for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service is "0 Sec.", no Public mode (Power OFF) announcement is played.

Allowing the caller to record message when you cannot answer call

By activating Answer machine, a greeting message is played and the caller can record a message when you cannot answer the call.

- You can record up to 4 voice and videophone calls in total, approximately 30 seconds for each call.

◆ Activating Answer machine

MENU 461

You can set if you activate Answer machine.

- Operate FOMA terminal in open state.

1  (1 sec. or more) ►  ►  or 

 appears on the stand-by display when Answer machine is activated.

❖ Responding with Quick answer machine <Quick answer machine>

Even when Answer machine is not active, you can activate it once by pressing and holding  for 1 second or more while receiving a call. This operation does not set Answer machine to active.

◆ When there is an incoming call with Answer machine active

1 A call is received.

When the response time set in Greeting msg resp time elapses, Greeting screen appears. The other party hears a greeting message according to the setting of Set greeting message.

2 The other party's message is recorded.

- A beep announces the other party at the start and the end. And when approximately 25 seconds elapsed since the start, 2 short beeps are heard to warn that the end is approaching.

3 When the recording is completed, the call ends.

✓INFORMATION

- Even while playing greeting or recording a message, a call can be answered by pressing . For videophone call, you can answer also by pressing . A substitute image is sent to the other party by pressing . The contents of the recorded message before receiving the call are not recorded.
- When the FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned OFF, Answer machine does not operate. Use Voice Mail Service.
- When 4 messages are recorded in Answer machine,  appears on the stand-by display and the Answer machine and Quick answer machine do not operate. Delete unnecessary recorded messages. While the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service is used, each service is operated.
- The recording of the messages may be distorted or the image may be blurred if the signal quality is poor.

◆ Setting the response time before the greeting starts <Greeting msg resp time>

MENU 4613

- The default is "13 seconds".

1  (1 sec. or more) ►   ► Enter the response time

- Set duration from 0 to 120 seconds.

◆ Setting the greeting message <Set greeting message>

MENU 4614

You can record your own voice as greeting message.

- 1 message approximately 10 seconds long can be recorded.
- As Preinstalled, "I cannot answer to the phone right now. Please leave a message within 30 seconds after the beep." is saved.

1  (1 sec. or more) ►   ► Select the Greeting message field ► 

- Press  to restore Preinstalled guidance and go to Step 3.

2 "Record" in the Edit message field ► Record the greeting message after the beep

Recording starts after a message appears.

Supplementary description of recording message → P57 Step 2 in "Setting status message"

3

Playing/deleting recorded messages

MENU 462

◆ Playing recorded messages

1 [(1 sec. or more) ▶ 2



① Status icon

- [] : Recorded message of voice call (unplayed)
- [] : Recorded message of voice call (played)
- [] : Recorded message of videophone call (unplayed)
- [] : Recorded message of videophone call (played)

② Receiving international call

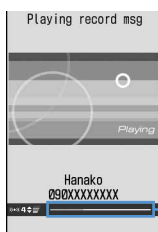
③ Phone number*/name (if saved in the phonebook)/reason for hiding caller ID

④ Date/time of recording and phone number of the other party* at cursor position/reason for hiding caller ID

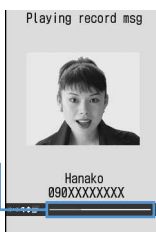
⑤ Multi number name of incoming call (when subscribing to Multi number)

* For an international call, a plus sign "+" appears at the beginning of the phone number.

2 Select a recorded message to play.



Playing voice call message



Playing videophone call message

An approximate guide of the playing time

- During playing, the operations below are enabled :
 - [] : Adjust volume
 - [] : Stop
 - [] : Switch the speakerphone function ON/OFF (only when playing voice call message).
- When videophone call message is being played, the speakerphone function is set to ON. Switching the speakerphone function is not available.

- When videophone call message is played in Silent mode, a sound playing confirmation screen appears. Select "No" to play the message without sound.

Making a call : Place the cursor on the party and

[] or []

- To make a call specifying conditions, press

[MENU] [3] .→ P52

Adding to phonebook :

① Place the cursor on the party and [MENU] ▶ [4] or

[5] ▶ [1] or [2]

- When adding data to existing phonebook entry, select the phonebook entry.

② Save the name or mail address, etc.

Phonebook new entry→P67, 68

3 Select if you delete the played recorded message.

◆ Deleting recorded messages

1 [(1 sec. or more) ▶ 2 ▶ Place the cursor on the recorded messages and

[MENU] ▶ [2] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ "Yes"

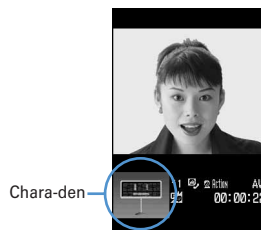
- When "Delete all" is selected, perform authentication.

Using Chara-den

During a videophone call, a character can be sent instead of camera image.

- Displaying Chara-den→P235

1 During a call, [MENU] ▶ [4] [2] [1] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a Chara-den



- The operations below are available during a videophone call :
 - [1] - [9], [#] : Action
 - [] : List actions
 - [0] : Stop the action

Setting images to send to the other party during a call

1 Perform necessary operation during a call.

Switching your image and substitute image :

- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, the Chara-den may not be displayed and the Default image may be sent.

Switching in-camera/out-camera*1 :

- This item is set to "In-camera" by default.
- Even when the camera is switched, settings of Frames, Scene mode/effect, Brightness/Flicker adjustment, etc. are kept.

Turn on/off the light*2 : (1 sec. or more)

If the light is turned on, the light turns on in white.

- Light may be temporarily turned off by setting operations, etc. during a call.

Switching display magnifications of camera image <Zoom>*1 :

- Each time you press , the zoom scale switches in the order below, and each time you press , it switches in the reverse order.

In-camera : Standard → 2×

Out-camera : Standard → 2× → 4× → 6× → 8× → 10× → 12×

- Switching in-camera and out-camera cancels the zoom.

Applying special effects to image <Scene mode/effect>*1 :

Standard : Standard image

Backlight : Shooting subjects against the light

Monotone : Shooting in monochrome mode

Sepia : Shoot in sepia mode

Adjusting brightness of image*1, 3 :

- This item is set to "Level 3" by default.
- You can adjust at 5 levels.

Adjusting flicker*1, 3 :

The flicker may be reduced by selecting the settings that match the power supply frequency of your area.

- This item is set to "Auto" by default.
- Reflected to the flicker adjustment settings of Camera and Barcode reader.

Adding frame on image*1 :

- Only the frames of 176×144 or smaller for Image size can be selected.
- Press to cancel.

Sending Camera-Off images :

The substitute image set in Substitute image is sent.

- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, the Default image is sent.

Sending still image :

- Only still images that are 176×144 or smaller for Image size and permitted to output from the FOMA terminal can be set. Images that inhibited to output from FOMA terminal → P238 "File restriction" in "List of display items and changeability"
- Press to cancel.

Switching to Macro shooting*2 : **Setting Macro shooting switch to side**

You can adjust the focus when sending images of very close objects approximately 6-11 cm away.

- To cancel, set Macro shooting switch to side.

Setting the quality of sending/receiving images :

or

Normal : Standard quality

Prefer motion spd : Motions become smoother in a little lower-definition image.

Prefer img qual : Motions become a little slower in a higher-definition image.

*1 This item can be set only while sending camera image.

*2 This item can be set only when using Out-camera.

*3 The settings are retained after a call.

Customizing display settings for videophone call

- The settings are retained after a call.

1 Perform necessary operation during a call.

Switching the main screen and the sub screen :

- The main screen is set to "Other side" and the sub screen is set to "My side" by default.

Changing the main screen size : (1 sec. or more)

- This item is set to "Large" by default.
- Each time you hold down, the display size switches as Large→Standard→Small→Large→...

Setting screen :

Setting items→P63 "Changing videophone settings"

Changing videophone settings

You can set the operation to be performed when videophone calls fail to get through, the screen to appear during videophone calls and speakerphone.

- Auto redial as voice is provided to ensure the access to the other party. When "ON" is set, redialing is attempted with the call type switched to voice call if the other party cannot answer the call because he or she is a user of terminal not supporting the videophone function or using the mova service through Dual Network Service. However, the redialing function cannot work as written above if you attempt videophone calls with inapplicable conditions such as at ISDN-sync 64K or via PIAFS access points, with ISDN videophones incompatible with 3G-324M (as of November, 2007), or dialing the wrong phone number. Note that these calls may charge you in some cases.

1 ▶ Set the required items ▶

Auto redial as voice : Set whether to redial a voice call for unsuccessful videophone attempt.

Display setting : Set one of the images ("My side" or "Other side") or both of images ("Both sides") to appear while a videophone call.

- If you set "My side" or "Other side", the Sub screen cannot be set.

Sub screen : Set one of the images ("My side" or "Other side") to appear in the sub screen during a videophone call.

Screen size : Set the main screen view size.

Visual preference : Set quality of an image to be received from the other party.

Display light : Set lighting of the display during videophone calls.

- If you set "Terminal settings", it depends on brightness settings of Display light of Display.

Speakerphone : Set whether to use the speakerphone function at the same time as the videophone call is connected.

✓INFORMATION

- Even if Auto redial as voice is "ON", redialing may not be attempted depending on the other party and/or network conditions.
- If you make Auto redial as voice to "ON" and make a videophone call during packet communications with a connected PC, redial is made for a voice call. During a voice call or 64K data communication, no videophone calls can be made even if Auto redial as voice is "ON".
- If you redial voice calls with Auto redial as voice set to "ON", the voice call rate is applied instead of digital communication rate.

Setting substitute and hold images for videophone calls

MENU 8244

You can change the substitute image to be sent during videophone calls, Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image or Movie memo image.

- You cannot set the images below :
 - Still images larger than 176×144 in size
 - Animations, created animations
 - Still images not in JPEG or GIF formats
 - Images that are prohibited to output from FOMA terminal → P238 "File restriction" in "List of display items and changeability"

◆ Setting substitute image

<Example> Setting standard Chara-den

1 ▶ 1 ▶ Select the Image field

2

Setting standard image : 

Setting other Chara-den :  ▶ Select the List images field ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a Chara-den

Setting other still image :  ▶ Select the List images field ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a still image

- On the other party's terminal, the text message appears overlapped on the selected still image.

3

◆ Changing image for recording msg/response hold/On-hold/recording movie memo

1 ▶ 2 - 5

2 Select the Image field ▶ or ▶

- When "Select image" is selected, select the List images field and select an image.
- On the other party's terminal, the text message appears overlapped on the selected still image.

✓INFORMATION

- If Chara-den set for the substitute image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to the default Chara-den. If the still image or default Chara-den is deleted, the substitute image is reset to Default image.
- If the still image set as Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image or Movie memo image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to Default.

Setting about switching voice call and videophone call

To switch voice call and videophone call, Notify switchable mode must be started in advance. Notify switchable mode is a function for notifying the network that your terminal is available for switching voice and videophone calls.

- During a voice or videophone call, the settings for Notify switchable mode cannot be changed.
- Setting operations for this function is disabled from a location out of service area. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.
- Notify switchable mode is ON by default.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ 8 6 7
- 2 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"

- Press 3 and select "Yes" to check the current settings.

Setting actions for incoming calls during packet communication

Set reactions for a videophone call received during i-mode session.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ 8 6 4 ▶ 1 - 4

V.phone priority : A videophone call reception screen appears, and packet communication is disconnected when answering the call. When the videophone call ends, i-mode screen reappears.

Packet DL priority : Record the call in Received calls, continuing the i-mode communication.

V.phone answerphone : Connect the voice call to Voice Mail Service center.

Call forwarding : Forward the call to the specified phone number.

✓INFORMATION

- If having not subscribed to Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, actions for "Packet DL priority" are performed even with "V.phone answerphone" or "Call forwarding" set, respectively.
- When Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service is activated and Ring time is "0 Sec.", the set service is activated regardless of these settings. The call reception is not recorded in Received calls.

Using videophone call by connecting with external device

Videophone calls can be sent/received through external devices by connecting FOMA terminal to external devices such as PC using USB cable.

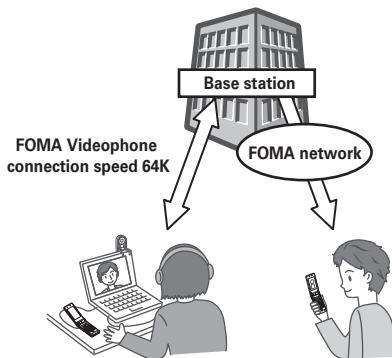
If you want to use this function, prepare an approved external device or a PC, that videophone application is installed in, and devices (commercial) such as an earphone/microphone and USB-compatible Web camera.

- This function is unavailable when FOMA terminal is not connected with the external device.
- See the instructions manual of external devices for hardware requirements, setting or operating instructions of videophone applications.
- * You can use "DoCoMo Videophone Software" as an application supporting this function.

Download it from the DoCoMo Videophone Software website to use.

(For details such as usage environment of PC, see the support website.)

<http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/>



- 1 (MENU) ▶ 8 6 6 ▶ 1 or 2

✓INFORMATION

- Videophone calls cannot be made through an external device during a voice call.
- If you are a subscriber to the Catch Phone, any incoming videophone call from an external device during a voice call is recorded as a missed call. Even when a voice call, a videophone call or a 64K data communication is received during the videophone call from the external device, the same situation occurs.

Phonebook

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal	66
Adding entries into FOMA terminal phonebook	Phonebook new entry 67
Setting receiving actions for each phonebook entry	Alert by contact 68
Adding to UIM phonebook	Phonebook(UIM) new entry 68
Making group settings	Group setting 69
Making calls using phonebook	Phonebook search 69
Editing phonebook entries	Edit phonebook 72
Copying phonebook entries	73
Deleting phonebook entries	Delete phonebook 73
Setting functions for phonebook entries	73
Making phonebook entries secret	Secret attribute 74
Checking number of phonebook entries	No. of items 74
Using simple dial to make calls	Quick dial 75
Contacting specific parties with simple procedures	Direct call 75
Storing (restoring or updating) phonebook in Data Center	Data Security Service 76

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal

F801i supports FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook. You can make voice/video phone calls or send mail or SMS from these phonebooks.

- Items saved in FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook are as follows :

○ : Supported × : Not supported

Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
The number of entries	Up to 1,000 entries ^{*1}	Up to 50 entries
Entry items	Phonebook No.	○
	Name	×
	Reading	○
	Image, Movie	×
	Group	×
	Phone number	○
	Phone number icon	×
	Mail address	○
	Mail address icon	×
	Other items ^{*2}	×

^{*1} The number of items that can be saved in a phonebook may be decreased depending on the type of data saved.

^{*2} Items that can be set are Birthday, Note, PostalCode/Address, Location info, School name, Class name and URL.

- Phonebook data saved in your UIM is available also when it is inserted to another FOMA terminal.

When making a call for a party saved in FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook, the name and phone number saved in the phonebook are displayed on the calling, ringing and talking screen. The display depends on Receive display option.

When a phone number or mail address is directly entered without searching Redial, Received calls or Phonebook that saves incoming/outgoing call information, a name saved in Phonebook appears in Recorded messages, voice memo while talking, the sender of a received mail, destination of a sent/unsent mail or party in Custom Menu, etc.

- When phonebook entries of different names with the same phone number/mail address are saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook, even if they are saved to Direct call, the first saved name is displayed.
- When phonebook entries of different names with the same phone number/mail address are saved in both phonebooks, the name saved in FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed.
- When mail is received from a sender with mail address that completely matches with that saved in the phonebook including the domain name succeeding @, the name saved in the phonebook appears. However, for a sender with i-mode terminal, the name saved in the phonebook appears even when the domain name (@docomo.ne.jp) is omitted in the mail address saved in the phonebook. If the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", add it to the phonebook omitting "@docomo.ne.jp".
- When SMS is received from a phone number that matches with one of those saved in the phonebook, the name saved in the phonebook appears.
- When a Location request of GPS is issued and its requester ID matches a phone number or mail address saved in phonebook, the requester name saved in phonebook appears.

Adding entries into FOMA terminal phonebook

You can add phone numbers and mail addresses to the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Note that, when changing the models at a sales outlet such as DoCoMo shop, data saved in FOMA terminal may not be copied to a new model terminal due to its specifications.
- Priority of the incoming/outgoing operation → P86, 87
- Maximum number of recorded items → P66

1

2 Enter a name

- Up to 16 two-byte (32 one-byte) characters can be entered.

3 Set the required items

New entry		1/2
No.000		
Hanako		NO IMAGE
Hanako		
[Select/Shoot image]		
グループなし		
[Phone number]		
[Mail address]		
[Birthday]		
[Note]		
[PostalCode/Address]		
[Location info]		
[School name]		

Phonebook number (No.000-999) : The lowest available phonebook number is assigned.

- When a phonebook number that has already been used is specified, overwriting confirmation screen appears when saving.
- When not overwriting, select "New entry" and specify another phonebook number.
- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook numbers can be omitted.

Reading : Reading of the entered name is entered.

- Up to 32 one-byte characters can be entered.
- Even if you correct the name, the reading does not reflect the change.

Select/Shoot image : Set an image or movie/i-motion that is displayed when receiving/making a call or checking the phonebook data. This item is displayed when the saved person calls with the caller ID.

Setting image :   

Folders and reading list of images → P224

- If a still image larger than 640×480 (and vice versa) dots is selected, the image shrinking confirmation screen appears.
- For created animation, the first image is displayed.

Setting still image by shooting with camera :

- The size of a still image to be shot is set to Ph.Book (96×72).

Setting movie/i-motion :   

Folders and reading list of movies/i-motion → P230

- Movie/i-motion of only image can be set.
- When a call is made, the first image of movie/i-motion is displayed.

Setting movie by recording with camera :

- The size of a movie to be recorded is set to QCIF (176×144). Sounds are not recorded.

 **Group** : "グループなし (No group)" is set by default. Press  to add a group.

Adding groups → P69

 **Phone number** : Enter up to 26 digits, and select an icon.

- Up to 5 phone numbers per person can be saved. Saving the first phone number displays items to be added.
- Pause ("P"), Timed pause ("T"), "+", "#" and sub-address delimiter ("*") can be saved.
- If "186" or "184" is prefixed when saving, SMS cannot be sent even when the number is selected as the address.

 **Mail address** : Enter up to 50 digits, and select an icon.

- Up to 5 mail addresses per person can be saved. Saving the first mail address displays items to be added.

Secret code → P74

 **Birthday** : Set Set birthday to "ON" and enter the birthday.

 **Note** : Up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters can be entered.

 **PostalCode/Address** : Up to 7 digits for a postal code and up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters for an address can be entered.

 **Location info** : Add location information according to the current location and/or location history. → P213

 **School name** : Up to 50 two-byte (100 one-byte) characters can be entered.

 **Class name** : Up to 50 two-byte (100 one-byte) characters can be entered.

 **URL** : Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.

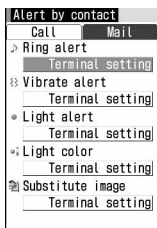
Setting receiving actions for each phonebook entry

Operations such as ring alert and light alert of voice calls, videophone calls or mail can be set for each phonebook entry saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Priority of incoming operation→P79, 80, 91

- 1 ▶ **Search the phonebook** ▶ **Place the cursor on a phonebook entry to set and items** ▶
- 2 **3** **2** ▶ **Set the required items** ▶

: Switching Call and Mail screens.



Phone alert settings screen

- When a phonebook entry is saved with "グループなし (No group)", all the items are set to "Terminal setting". If Group is selected, Substitute image is set to "Terminal setting" and other items to "Group setting".

/ **Ring alert** : When "Movie ringtone" or "Melody" is selected, select ring alert.

- Only movies/i-motion with Ring alert of the detail information specified to "Available" can be set as ring alert.
- When set to "Terminal setting", the operation depends on Call ring alert, V.phone ring alert or Mail ring alert.

/ **Vibrate alert** : Set the vibrator.

- When set to "Terminal setting", the operation depends on Vibrate alert/effect.

/ **Light alert** : Set the lighting pattern of the light.

- When set to "Terminal setting", the operation depends on Light alert.
- When "Sync melody" is set, Light color operates in "Rainbow".

/ **Light color** : Set the lighting color of the light.

- When set to "Terminal setting", the operation depends on Light alert.

Substitute image (The phone alert settings screen only) : Select a Chara-den displayed during a call.

- When set to "Terminal setting", the operation depends on Image setting/Videophone image.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select "Edit/Settings"→"Alert by contact".

Phonebook(UIM) new entry

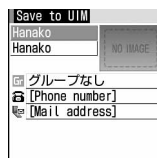
Adding to UIM phonebook

- Maximum number of recorded items→P66

- 1 **4** **3**
- 2 **Enter a name** ▶

- Up to 10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters can be entered. Up to 10 characters can be entered when one- and two-byte characters are both used or one-byte katakana is included.

- 3 **Set the required items** ▶



Reading : Reading of the entered name is entered.

- Up to 12 two-byte (25 one-byte) characters can be entered. Up to 12 characters can be entered when both one- and two-byte characters are used.
- Even if you correct the name, the reading does not reflect the correction.

Group : "グループなし (No group)" is set by default.

Phone number : Up to 26 digits can be entered.→P37

- Only one phone number can be saved. No icon can be set.
- Pause ("P"), "+", "#" and sub-address delimiter ("*") can be entered. Timed pause ("T") can be entered but cannot be saved.

Mail address : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- Only one mail address can be saved. No icon can be set.

Making group settings

For FOMA terminal phonebook, adding/deleting groups, setting incoming/outgoing operation by the group and changing the order are available. For UIM phonebook, only the group name can be changed.

- Renaming "グループなし (No group)" or setting/deleting incoming/outgoing operations is unavailable.

<Example> Adding groups

1

Changing a group name in UIM phonebook :

Place the cursor on a group and Go to Step 3

2

Deleting a group : Place the cursor on the group and

Authenticate "Yes"

The group and the phonebook entries in it are deleted. They are also canceled from Direct call.

- Even in Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is "Hide set contact"), the phonebook entries with secret attribute are deleted.
- For "グループなし (No group)", only the phonebook entry in the group is deleted.

Changing a group name : Place the cursor on the group and

Setting the incoming/outgoing operation of the group : Place the cursor on the group and

Set the required items

Setting outgoing/incoming call image → P67 Step 3 in "Adding entries into FOMA terminal phonebook"

Setting other items → P68 "Setting receiving actions for each phonebook entry"

Changing the order of the groups : Place the cursor on the group and or

3 Enter the group name

- Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.
- For UIM phonebook, 10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters can be entered. Up to 10 characters can be entered when one- and two-byte characters are both used or one-byte katakana is included.

Making calls using phonebook

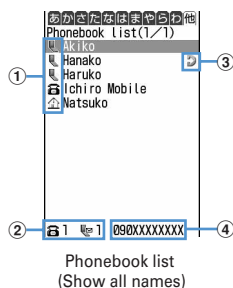
A call can be made simply by calling up the phonebook entry from the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook for the party to call.

- In Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is "Hide set contact"), the phonebook entries or groups with secret attribute cannot be searched. The same applies to Quick dial, Quick mail, Headset quick-dial and Search message.

1 Search the phonebook

The previously used phonebook (FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook) appears.

- The phonebook list of Show all names appears by default. The setting can be changed to display the search method frequently used. → P71



① Icon set for first entry

② Number of phone numbers and mail addresses saved in entry at the cursor position

③ Direct call icon

④ The first phone number of the party at the cursor position

2 Place the cursor on the party to make a call to and .

- To make a videophone call, place the cursor on a party and press , select "V.phone" from "Call type" and press .
- When operating from the details screen, display a phone number and press or .
- To make a call specifying conditions, press . → P52

❖ Using phonebook entries

Creating an i-mode mail : Place the cursor on the party and .

- When operating from the details screen, display a mail address and press  or .

Creating and sending i-mode mail → P164

Creating SMS : Place the cursor on the party and  (1 sec. or more).

- When only the phone number is saved in the phonebook entry of the selected person, pressing  can also create SMS.
- When operating from the details screen, display a phone number and press .

Creating and sending SMS → P193

Displaying sites : Place the cursor on the party and

  **1** **5**

Using Location info : Place the cursor on the party and

  **0**

The next procedure → P213 "■ Use location info menu"

Attaching phonebook data to mail : Place the cursor on the party and  **1** **3**

Creating and sending i-mode mail → P164

Searching a received mail : Place the cursor on the party and  **1** **6**  **1** or **2**

- For UIM phonebook, place the cursor on the party, press  **1** **5** and press **1** or **2**.

◆ Searching by specifying the search method

-  is displayed on the left of each entry name in the UIM phonebook list.
- When there are multiple pages in the phonebook list, use  and  to switch pages. In a search method except Show all names,  can also be used to switch pages.
- If the keypad of **0** - **9** , **#** or ***** is pressed on the phonebook list for Show all names, Group search or Name search, the line to which the keypad is assigned is displayed.

1 : あ (a) line **2** : か (ka) line **3** : さ (sa) line
4 : た (ta) line **5** : な (na) line **6** : は (ha) line
7 : ま (ma) line **8** : や (ya) line **9** : ら (ra) line
0 : わ (wa) line ***** / **#** : alphabets, numbers, reading starting with a blank space, symbols, no reading

1   **4** **1**

2 Specify the search method.

Showing all names (Japanese syllabary) :

1  **Select the line to display by** 

- Displayed in the order of the Japanese syllabary (あ (a) line → か (ka) line → … → わ (wa) line) → 他 (alphabets, numbers, reading starting with a blank space, symbols, no reading).

Searching by group : **2  Select a group**

- The entries in the specified group are displayed in the order of the reading below :
Japanese syllabary order → Alphabetical order → Number → Entries starting with blanks → Symbol → No reading

Searching by reading : **3  Enter reading** 

- Searching can be made by entering a leading part of the reading.
- You can display the phonebook list for Show all names by pressing  with no input.

Searching by frequency* : **4  **1** or **2****

Displayed in the order of number of calls or number of mails.

- The total numbers of calls and mails are counted up to 9,999.
- When resetting total number of calls/mails, place the cursor on the party, press  **9** **3** and select "Yes".

Searching by phonebook number* : **5  Enter phonebook number** 

- Zeros before single- or double-digit phonebook numbers can be omitted.
- You can display the phonebook list in phonebook No. order by pressing  with no input.

Searching by phone number : **6  Enter part of a phone number** 

Search the phone numbers containing the entered numbers, and phonebook data list of the FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed in the order of he phonebook number, and the phonebook data list of the UIM phonebook is displayed in the order of reading.

- You can display the phonebook data list in the order of phonebook No. or reading by pressing  with no input.

Searching by secret attribute* : **7**

Phonebook entries with secret attribute appear in the order of phonebook numbers.

Switching to UIM phonebook search method : **8**

- To switch to UIM phonebook search method, press **5** on a search method selection screen for UIM phonebook.

* This search method is unavailable for UIM phonebook.

❖ Searching by Rocket search

Search phonebook entry by the characters assigned to keypads **0** - **9**.

<Example> Searching for "携帯花子"(Keitai Hanako)

1 **2** (か)(ka) line 

The phonebook list of the Show all names appears.

◆ Setting preferred search method <Default search setting>

Set the search method displayed when pressing  on the stand-by display.

1 ▶ Place the cursor on the search method to give priority and

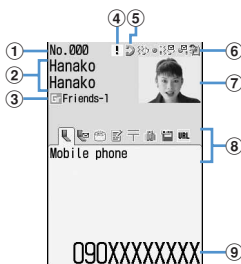
- Check mark  is displayed after the specified search method.

✓INFORMATION

- Even with Search by freq or Ph book No. search set by priority, pressing  on the stand-by display causes the UIM phonebook list for Show all names to appear if the UIM phonebook was searched previously.

◆ Checking phonebook details

1 ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Select the phonebook entry to display details



FOMA terminal phonebook details screen (Phone number)

- ① Phonebook No.
- ② Name and reading
- ③ Group icon, Group name
- ④ Set any of Accept/Reject call, Caller ID settings or secret code
- ⑤ Direct call icon
- ⑥ Icons indicating settings such as ring alert (call/mail)*1
 -  /  : Ring alert
 -  /  : Vibrate alert
 -  /  : Ring alert and Vibrate alert
 -  /  : Light alert
 -  /  : Light color
 -  /  : Light alert and Light color
 -  : Substitute image (call only)
- ⑦ Image*2
- ⑧ Saved icon, Icon type

⑨ Saved items

- *1 Settings from Alert by contact are indicated with colored icons.
- *2 The display follows the settings of View preference.
 -  : Display details screen of the previous/next phonebook entry.
 -  : Display the other items set.
 - Even when multiple phone numbers and/or mail addresses are saved, the items can be displayed by pressing .

Viewing history information : On the phone number or mail address detail screen, .

The cumulative number and the date and time of last call appear.

- If you press  on the history information screen, cumulation of calls and mails can be reset collectively.

Viewing User information :

The image, phonebook No. (FOMA terminal phonebook only), name, readings, group name, first phone number (with icon type) and first mail address (with icon type) registered in the phonebook appear.

The name and readings fully appear without cutting down.

◆ Switching details screen display <View preference>

- "Show saved image" is set by default.
- The settings are reflected to all of the phonebook entry details screens.
- View preference of Phonebook, Redial, Received calls, Mail logs and User information are reflected to each of them.

1 ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Select the phonebook entry ▶ ▶ -

- When operating from UIM phonebook, press    and press  - .

Show with image : An image appears. Up to 5 two-byte (11 one-byte) characters for name and 11 one-byte characters for readings with characters are displayed.

Show only name : No image appears. Up to 9 two-byte (19 one-byte) characters for name and 19 one-byte characters for readings with characters are displayed.

Show saved image : Settings in "Show with image" are used when there is a saved image, and settings in "Show only name" are used when not.

Editing phonebook entries

- The identical phonebook entries saved in Direct call are also edited.

◆ Editing saved data

1 ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Place the cursor on a phonebook entry to edit and

 ▶ **3** **1**

2 Edit the phonebook entry.

Setting items→P67 Step 2-3 in "Adding entries into FOMA terminal phonebook", P68 Step 2-3 in "Adding to UIM phonebook"

3

The selection confirmation screen of saving method appears. Select Overwrite or New entry.

- If overwritten, the phonebook entry already saved is discarded.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press  and select "Edit/Settings"→"Edit".
- When operating from the UIM phonebook, press  and select "Edit".
- The data may not be overwritten when a phone number in the phonebook entry of UIM phonebook contains " * ".
- If multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved and the phone number or mail address in the first entry is deleted, the second or later entry moves forward.

◆ Copying saved data

Copied item can be pasted into screen input areas such as in the mail creation screen or the phonebook data entry screen.

- The last copied item is recorded until the power is turned OFF and they can be pasted any number of times.

1 ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Place the cursor on a phonebook entry to copy and

 ▶ **6** ▶ **1** - **8**

The data of appropriate items is recorded temporarily.

- When operating from the UIM phonebook, press  **6** and **1** - **3**.
- The first saved phone number and mail address are copied.
- To copy the second saved or subsequent phone number or mail address, display the phone number or mail address to copy on the details screen, press  **6** and press **2** or **3**.

2 Display the character entry screen to paste ▶ Paste the characters

Pasting characters→P273

◆ Switching order of phone numbers and mail addresses

When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook entry, the order of the phone numbers or mail addresses is switched.

<Example> Switching the order of the phone numbers saved

1 ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Place the cursor on a target phonebook entry and

 ▶ **3** **4** **1**

- Press  **3** **4** **2** to switch the mail addresses.

2 Select a phone number to set as the first phone number.

The positions of the selected phone number and first phone number are switched.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press  and select "Edit/Settings"→"Switch order"→"Phone numbers" or "Mail addresses".

◆ Switching phonebook numbers

The order of 2 phonebook numbers of entries saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook can be switched.

1 ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Place the cursor on a target phonebook entry and ▶ **3** **4** **3** ▶ Select the phonebook entry to replace phonebook number

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press  and select "Edit/Settings"→"Switch order"→"Phonebook Nos."

Copying phonebook entries

Entries in FOMA terminal phonebook are copied to UIM phonebook and from UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook.

- If the entries of the phonebook contain the same group name as that in a copy destination phonebook, the data is copied to that group.
- The phonebook data item to be copied and the contents are as follows :

Item	FOMA terminal phonebook→UIM phonebook	UIM phonebook→FOMA terminal phonebook
Name	Up to 10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters. Up to 10 characters when one- and two-byte characters are both used or one-byte katakana is included.	The saved data is copied as it is.
Reading	Up to 12 characters. One-byte katakana characters are replaced with two-byte katakana characters.	Two-byte katakana characters are replaced with one-byte katakana characters.
Phone number	The first phone number (Up to 26 digits→P37). Only timed pause ("T") is deleted if the phone number contains timed pause ("T"). The icons are all replaced with  .	The icons are all set to  .
Mail address	The first mail address (Up to 50 one-byte characters). The icons are all replaced with  .	The icons are all set to  .

- If the number of characters exceeds the limit that can be saved in UIM phonebook, the exceeding part is deleted.

Copying data between FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook

<Example> Copying from FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook

- 1  Search the phonebook    Select the phonebook entry to copy 

- When copying from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook, press   to select a phonebook entry, and press .

Delete phonebook

Deleting phonebook entries

- When deleting all, all of the created groups are deleted.
- The identical phonebook entries saved in Direct call are canceled.
- All entries in the UIM phonebook cannot be deleted at a time.

<Example> Deleting a phonebook entry in the FOMA terminal phonebook

- 1  Search the phonebook
- 2 Place the cursor on the phonebook entry to delete and    or  "Yes"

- When "All contacts" is selected, perform authentication.

Deleting from UIM phonebook : Place the cursor on a party and   "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook details screen, press  and select "Delete contact".

Setting functions for phonebook entries

- These functions cannot be set for the phonebook entry in UIM phonebook.

◆ Setting Show/Hide caller ID to each phone number <Caller ID settings>

- This item is set to "No setting" by default.
- Priority of the method to notify a caller ID→P44

- 1  Search the phonebook  Place the cursor on a phonebook entry to set and     Authenticate  Select a phone number  - 

- When "No setting" is set, the settings in Caller ID notification are used.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press  and select "Edit/Settings"→"Advanced settings"→"Caller ID settings".

◆ Setting secret code to mail address <Secret code>

When the other party saves a secret code for its mail address (mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp) and you set that secret code for the mail address in your phonebook, the secret code is automatically added to i-mode mail created by searching the phonebook for that phone number.

- 1 ▶ **Search the phonebook ▶ Place the cursor on a phonebook entry to set and**
3 **5** **4** ▶ **Authenticate ▶**
Select a mail address

2 Enter a 4-digit secret code

Canceling : **Delete the secret code** ▶

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select "Edit/Settings"→"Advanced settings"→"Secret code".
- The set secret code does not appear on the phonebook entry details screen or in the address for creating i-mode mail. It can be checked by the same operations as secret code settings.
- If a mail address is saved in the phonebook as "mobile phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp", sending mail to the party is unavailable.

Secret attribute

Making phonebook entries secret

You can set secret attribute to phonebook entries or groups. In Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is "Hide set contact"), the phonebook entries or groups with secret attribute are not displayed.

- These functions cannot be set for phonebook entries saved in Direct call, phonebook entries or groups in UIM phonebook.
- If you change secret attribute, a confirmation screen appears for performing Contact setting when you end the phonebook and return to the stand-by display.
- Setting Privacy mode→P111

◆ Setting secret attribute for phonebook entries

- 1 ▶ **Search the phonebook ▶ Place the cursor on the phonebook entry to set and**
3 **5** **1**



- flashes when the secret attribute is set for the entry at the cursor position.

Canceling : ▶ **Search the phonebook ▶ Place the cursor on the phonebook entry and**

3 **5** **1**

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select "Edit/Settings"→"Advanced settings"→"Secrecy ON".

◆ Setting secret attribute for group

- Secret attribute is not set for phonebook entries in a group with secret attribute. However, they function similarly to those with secret attribute.
- Secret attribute cannot be set for "グループなし (No group)".

- 1 **4** **1** **2** ▶ **Place the cursor on the group to set and** **8**

- When secret attribute is set for the group at the cursor position, blinks.

Canceling : **4** **1** **2** ▶ **Place the cursor on the group and** **8**

No. of items

Checking number of phonebook entries

- The number of phonebook entries with secret attribute also appears.
- In Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is "Hide set contact"), the number of phonebook entries in FOMA terminal phonebook with secret attribute do not appear.

- 1 ▶ **Search the phonebook** ▶ **9** **2**

Quick dial

Using simple dial to make calls

You can make calls by a simple operation to parties with phonebook numbers 0-99 in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- When there are multiple phone numbers saved in a phonebook entry, a call is made to the first phone number.

<Example> Making a voice call to the phone number registered in phonebook number 2

- Enter a phonebook number (2) ▶ or

Direct call

Contacting specific parties with simple procedures

If you register parties you frequently contact in Direct call, you can make calls or send mails to them with simple procedures. In addition, you can check the other party's current location (イマドコかんたんサーチ (imadocokantan search)), send mail attached with location information URL or display a list of logs of calls and/or mail sent to or received from registered parties.

◆ Adding to Direct call

Parties to save in Direct call must be saved in FOMA terminal phonebook in advance. → P67

- Up to 5 members can be registered.
- Phonebook entries with secret attribute set or those in UIM phonebook cannot be saved.

- ▶ Select a Direct call number to save with ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Select a party ▶ "Yes"

Saving from FOMA terminal phonebook :

- ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Place the cursor on the party and ▶ 3 3 ▶ "Yes"

◆ Using Direct call

-



- Party saved
- Party at cursor position

③ Icon type

- : Voice call : Videophone call
- : Mail
- : イマドコかんたんサーチ (imadocokantan search)
- : Location information mail
- : Call histories : Sent/received message list

2 to place the cursor on the party

3 Select an icon with and perform the necessary operation.

- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved, if you select an icon, all saved phone numbers or mail addresses are displayed. Select the receiver or destination.

Making a voice call : Select

Making a videophone call : Select

Creating an i-mode mail : Select

Creating and sending i-mode mail → P164

Checking a party's location : Select

"イマドコかんたんサーチ (imadocokantan search)" is connected for searching a saved phone number. By using イマドコかんたんサーチ, the current location of the other party can be checked.

- For details of イマドコかんたんサーチ, see the DoCoMo website.

Sending mail with Location information URL attached :

- Select ▶ 1 - 4

The next procedure → P213 "■ Paste/Attach/Send location menu"

- Create and send i-mode mail.

Creating and sending i-mode mail → P164

Displaying call histories : Select

Received calls appear. Press to display redial.

Redial/Received calls → P48

Displaying sent/received mail list : Select

The received mail list appear. Press to display sent mail list.

Operating sent/received mail list → P177

Checking details of a party :

Detail screen of FOMA terminal phonebook → P71

◆ Canceling/editing/changing a party

<Example> Canceling

- ▶ Place the cursor on the party to cancel

2 (MENU) ▶ 3 ▶ "Yes"

Editing : (MENU) ▶ 1 ▶ Edit a phonebook entry
Editing phonebook→P72

Changing : (MENU) ▶ 2 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Select a party ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When canceling from FOMA terminal phonebook, press (END), search the phonebook, place the cursor on a party, press (MENU), select "Edit/Settings"→"Remove direct call" and select "Yes".

Data Security Service

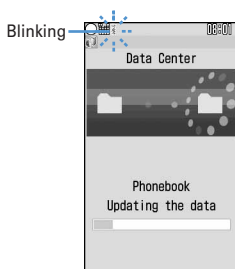
Storing (restoring or updating) phonebook in Data Center

This service saves entries of FOMA terminal phonebook to Data Center. Stored phonebook entries can be restored/updated to the FOMA terminal by connecting to Data Center.

- This is an optional subscriber service to be charged requiring subscription. When having not subscribed to this service, attempting to connect to Data Center displays the screen indicating that.
- For details of auto-update, restoration, etc., see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- Entries saved in the UIM phonebook cannot be saved in Data Center.

◆ Saving/updating phonebook

1 (MENU) ▶ 6 ▶ 5 ▶ 1 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Authenticate



⦿ : Cancel saving

Operating from FOMA terminal phonebook :

(END) ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ (MENU) ▶ 7 ▶ 2 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

2 Check the communication result.

- Display of the communication result disappears automatically in approximately 5 seconds.

✓INFORMATION

- When any other functions are running at the specified time of phonebook auto-update, auto-update is performed after returning to stand-by display. Auto-update is not performed when the FOMA terminal is turned OFF, out of service area or UIM is not inserted.
- When the auto-update of phonebook fails, no icons appear on the stand-by display. You can check it with Synchronization log.
- Actions for an incoming voice or videophone call during accessing Data Center are as follows :
 - Even for an incoming call from a caller saved in the phonebook, the caller's phone number, not the name and image, appears. The ring alert, vibrator and other functions operate as set in the FOMA terminal, but not as set in the phonebook.
 - Specified caller setting, Unregistered caller or Ring alert delay does not operate.
 - No Chaku-moji is received.
- The saved order of phonebook groups may not be reverted by restoration.
- When Safety alarm is operated during connection to Data Center, the connection terminates.

◆ Viewing logs that used Data Center <Synchronization log>

- Up to 30 synchronization logs are to be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1 (MENU) ▶ 6 ▶ 5 ▶ 2 ▶ Select the history to check

◆ Setting if you send the image saved in Phonebook <Sync setting>

1 (MENU) ▶ 6 ▶ 5 ▶ 3 ▶ Select Contact image sending field ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ (END)

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Setting operations for incoming calls and mail/messages	78

Sound settings

Changing ring alert for calls and mail/messages	Call ring alert/Mail/Msg ring alert	78
Setting alarm sound for Alarm clock and Schedule reminder	Alarm sound	79
Setting volume of various sounds such as ring alert and alarm sound	Adjust volume	79
Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms	Vibrate alert/effect	80
Setting sound for GPS positioning	GPS alert	80
Setting operation sound	Operation sound	80
Setting shutter sound	Shutter sound/Movie camera sound	81
Setting alert sound for charging	Charge alert	81
Setting on-hold tone	On-hold tone	81
Alarm announcing that call is about to be interrupted	Quality alarm	81
Setting alarm for reconnecting interrupted call	Reconnect alarm	81
Setting Low Battery alert	Low Battery alert	81
Making FOMA terminal silent	Silent mode	82

Display/Light settings

Coordinating FOMA terminal screen	Style theme	83
Changing stand-by display	Stand-by display	83
Changing images for outgoing voice/videophone calls	Calling image	86
Changing images for incoming voice/videophone calls	Incoming call image	86
Setting Contact image display from Phonebook at incoming/outgoing call	Contact image	87
Changing displays for incoming/outgoing messages and retrieving	Sent/received/retrieving mail image	87
Setting display and key light	Display light	88
Changing display colors	Color scheme	88
Changing menu design	Menu setting	88
Using Kisekai Tool		89
Changing battery/signal level icon	Battery icon/Signal level icon	91
Indicating newly arrived information such as missed calls and unread mails with lighting	Indicator light	91
Setting the lighting patterns and colors used for an incoming call/mail or during a call	Light alert	91
Displaying spot animation when there is newly arrived information ...	New announcement	92
Changing font style	Font style	93
Changing font size	Font size	93
Setting clock display	Clock format	94

Setting operations for incoming calls and mail/messages

- This setting is reflected to Call ring alert, Mail/Msg ring alert, Incoming call/Videophone receiving in Call image, Vibrate alert/effect and Light alert.

◆ Changing operations for incoming call <Call alert/Videophone alert>

1 ▶ Set the required items ▶

Changing actions for incoming videophone call :

▶ Set the required items ▶

Ring alert : Set ring alert.

- When "Melody" or "Movie ringtone" is selected, select the ring alert. When setting a movie/i-motion with sound and image for "Movie ringtone", Show image is "Sync ring alert".

Show image : Set an image to be displayed.

- When "Standard image" is set, the image set by default appears.
- When "Select image" is selected, select the List images field and select an image.
- When "i-motion" is selected, select a movie/i-motion from the movie list.

Vibrate alert : Set the operation pattern of vibrator.

Light alert : Set a lighting pattern and color of the light.

- When "Sync melody" is set for lighting pattern, the light blinks in "Rainbow" in synchronization with the ring alert.

◆ Changing operations for incoming MessageR/F <MessageR/F alert>

MENU 2734
MENU 2735

1 or ▶ Set the required items ▶

Ring alert : Set ring alert.

- When "Melody" or "Movie ringtone" is selected, select the ring alert.

Light alert/Vibrate alert :

Setting items→P78 "Changing operations for incoming call"

Ring time (sec) : Set the duration of sounding of ring alert or operation of vibrator within the range of 1-30 seconds.

◆ Changing operations for incoming mail <Mail alert>

MENU 191

1 ▶ Set the required items ▶

Setting items→P78 "Changing operations for incoming MessageR/F"

◆ Changing operations for incoming chat mail <Chat mail alert>

MENU 192

1 ▶ Set the required items ▶

Alert setting : Set if you set the operation for incoming chat mail or follow the mail incoming settings.

- Setting "Customize" allows setting the items below.

Ring alert/Light alert/Vibrate alert/Ring time (sec) :

Setting items→P78 "Changing operations for incoming call"

✓INFORMATION

- Setting created animation for Show image in Call alert (Incoming call) or Videophone alert (Videophone receiving) displays the first image.
- When movie/i-motion containing only sound (i-motion without image such as the one containing only voice of a singer) is set as the ring alert in Call alert or Videophone alert, resetting Show image to movie/i-motion containing only images or Flash graphics returns the ring alert to the default. The melody can be changed.
- Some movies/i-motion may not be set for Show image of Call alert (Incoming call) or Videophone alert (Videophone receiving). Also, movies/i-motion with sound cannot be set.
- Even when setting "Sync melody" for Vibrate alert or Light alert, the vibrator/light may not be synchronized depending on the melody.

Call ring alert/Mail/Msg ring alert

Changing ring alert for calls and mail/messages

- When a movie/i-motion is set as a ring tone, a movie and/or sound is played for incoming phone call or mail (Movie ringtone).
- These settings are also reflected to Call alert, Videophone alert, Mail alert, Chat mail alert, MessageR alert and MessageF alert.
- Melodies for ring tone stored by default→P300

<Example> Setting ring alert for incoming calls

1

2

Setting ring alert for incoming videophone call :

Setting ring alert for incoming mail, chat mail and MessageR/F :   -  

3 Select the Phone field*

- When "Melody" or "Movie ringtone" is selected, select the ring alert.
- For chat mail ring tone, "Sync msg alert" can be selected. When "Sync msg alert" is selected, mail settings are used for operation.

* Function names selected in Step 2 are displayed.

❖ Ring alert priority

When setting ring alerts for multiple functions, they sound in order of the priority below :

- ① Incoming calls melody setting of Multi number
 - ② Alert by contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Alert/image by group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ④ Call ring alert/V.phone ring alert/Mail ring alert/Call alert/Videophone alert/Mail alert
- When the other party does not notify the caller ID, the ring alert for voice call depends on Anonymous caller. A ring alert for videophone call is according to the settings of V.phone ring alert/Videophone alert.

Alarm sound

Setting alarm sound for Alarm clock and Schedule reminder

<Example> Setting Alarm clock sound

1    

2   Select the Alarm clock field  - 

- When "Melody" or "i-motion" is selected, select the alarm sound. When movie/i-motion containing sound and image is set for "i-motion", the image of the movie/i-motion is displayed.

Setting sound for Schedule reminder :

 Select the Alarm on time field or Alarm in advance field  or 

3

Adjust volume

Setting volume of various sounds such as ring alert and alarm sound

- The volumes below can be changed :

Call alert volume : Set the volume of call alert for voice and videophone calls. It is also reflected to Alarm volume of Call cost limit.

Mail/Msg alert vol. : Set the volume of ring alert for mail, chat mail and MessageR/F.

GPS alert volume : Set volume of GPS alert sound (Position location, Notify location, Location request).

Listen volume : Set the volume of incoming voice and videophone calls. The volume of play sound of answer machines or voice memos and sound effect of pasting stamp or text to an image depend on this setting.

Alarm clock sound : Set the volume of sound to be emitted when volume is set to "Phone setting" from the Set sound screen of Alarm clock. The sound volume of Countdown timer depends on this setting.

Schedule reminder : Set the volume of alarm for Alarm on time or Alarm in advance for Schedule reminder.

i-appli effect sound : Set the volume of the sound emitted from i-appli.

Operation sound : Set the volume of Keypad sound, terminal open/close sound and Wheel sound.

Melody effect sound : Set the volume of Melody. Settings to this function are also reflected to the volume of Settings of Melody. The volume of playing a melody attached to mail or MessageR/F depends on this setting.

1      - 

- When Alarm volume is selected, select  or .

2  

- "Silent" and "Steptone" cannot be set for Listen volume. "Steptone" cannot be set for i-appli effect sound, Operation sound or Melody effect sound.
- When Call alert volume is set to "Silent",  appears on the stand-by display.  appears when the vibrator for receiving is set to other than "OFF" simultaneously.

Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms

- The operation of Vibrator for receiving 64K data communication depends on the setting for receiving voice call.
- This setting is reflected to settings for Vibrate alert or Vibrate effect in Call alert, Videophone alert, Mail alert, Chat mail alert, MessageR alert, MessageF alert, Positioning alert and i-appli settings.
- If the FOMA terminal is on the desk, etc. when the vibrator operates, it may fall off because of the vibration.

<Example> Setting vibrator for incoming voice and videophone calls

1 8 1 3

2 1 1 or 2

Setting the vibrator for incoming mail, chat mail and MessageR/F : 2 1-4

- When Alert setting of Chat mail alert is set to "Same:Mail setting", a message appears indicating that Chat mail alert settings are disabled.

Setting the vibrator for GPS positioning :

3 1-4

Setting the vibrator used together with Alarm clock or schedule reminder sounding : 4 1 or 2

Setting the vibrator used for i-appli : 5

3 1-5

Vibrator is set and FOMA terminal vibrates on the incoming call/message and alarm notification.

- When you place the cursor on "Pattern A", "Pattern B" or "Pattern C", vibration occurs in the pattern at the cursor position.
- When "Sync melody" is set, the vibrator operates along with the melody set for ring alert, etc. Some melodies may not be synchronized.
- When setting the vibrator for i-appli, select "ON" or "OFF".
- If the vibrator for incoming calls is set to other than "OFF", appears on the stand-by display if the Call alert volume is "Level 1" or higher. appears when Call alert volume is set to "Silent".

❖ Vibrate alert priority

When setting Vibrator in multiple functions, the FOMA terminal vibrates in order of the priority below :

- ① Alert by contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ② Alert/image by group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Vibrate alert/effect, Call alert, Videophone alert, Mail alert

✓ INFORMATION

- Vibrator does not operate when another call is received during a call.
- Even with "OFF", vibration may occur along with Flash graphic actions.

GPS alert

Setting sound for GPS positioning

- This setting is also reflected to Positioning alert for Position settings, Loc. notify setting or Request setting.

1 8 1 1 3 1-4 4 Select the Ring alert field 1 or 2

- When "Melody" is selected, select Ring alert.

Operation sound

Setting operation sound

You can change the sound to be emitted when a key is pressed (except ,) or FOMA terminal is opened or folded. Emission of the sound can also be inhibited.

- Keypad sound and terminal open/close sounds are different from each other depending on the type of set sound.
- A change in Operation sound is reflected to the confirmation sound heard when displaying the battery level (same as Keypad sound).
- If the emission of the sound is inhibited, the sounds below are also inhibited :
 - Confirmation sound when displaying the battery level
 - End alert of data transmission/reception

1 8 1 1 5 1 1-5

✓ INFORMATION

- Even with Operation sound activated, keypad sound is not emitted when i-appli is active (except).

Shutter sound/Movie camera sound

Setting shutter sound

You can set a shutter sound to be emitted when shooting an image with Still camera or recording a movie with Movie camera (including recording sound with Sound recorder).

- This setting is also reflected to Shutter sound of Image settings and Recording settings.

1 → 8 1 1 5 → 2 or 3 → 1 - 5

Charge alert

Setting alert sound for charging

You can set if you activate the battery charged sound at the start and end of charging.

1 → 8 1 1 6 → 1 or 2

✓INFORMATION

- The alert sound for charging is not emitted in the situations below even when this function is set to "ON":
 - In Silent mode, Public mode (Drive mode), during a voice/videophone call, 64K data communication, i-mode communication, packet communication

On-hold tone

Setting on-hold tone

1 → 8 1 1 7 2 → 1 - 3

Quality alarm

Alarm announcing that call is about to be interrupted

You can set if you sound an alarm before the voice call is disconnected when signal quality deteriorates.

- If the signal quality deteriorates rapidly, the call may be disconnected before the alarm sounds.

1 → 8 1 1 7 3 → 1 - 3

✓INFORMATION

- To make settings during a voice call, press and select "Quality alarm".

Reconnect alarm

Setting alarm for reconnecting interrupted call

You can set an alarm to sound when reconnecting, under improved signal quality, a voice or videophone call that has been interrupted due to poor signal quality such as in a tunnel or behind a building.

- While the call is interrupted, the distant party hears no sound.
- The time required to make a reconnection depends on the call conditions, signal quality, etc. It normally takes about 10 seconds to reconnect.
- You are charged for the time used to make a reconnection (up to 10 seconds).
- The call may be terminated before the alarm sounds depending on the call conditions, signal quality, etc.

1 → 8 1 1 7 4 → 1 - 3

✓INFORMATION

- To make settings during a voice call, press and select "Reconnect alarm".

Low Battery alert

Setting Low Battery alert

You can set if you activate the alert when the battery is low.

1 → 8 1 1 7 5 → 1 or 2

✓INFORMATION

- When the battery becomes low during a call, the alert is emitted from the earpiece even with "OFF" set.

Making FOMA terminal silent

Sounds from the FOMA terminal can be disabled in order to prevent disturbance to the people around you by enabling the vibrator for incoming calls or muting the keypad sound. You can also set School mode to inhibit sounding and lighting for incoming calls during school hours, etc.

Starting Silent mode

1 (1 sec. or more)

After Silent mode specified in Silent mode is activated,  (General silent mode),  (Personalized silent mode) or  (School silent mode) is displayed on the stand-by display.

- If "Silent mode ON/OFF" is set in Side key shortcut, silent mode can also be started/canceled by pressing and holding  for 1 sec. or more with the FOMA terminal closed. When Silent mode starts, the light turns on once in red and the vibrator operates once. When Silent mode is canceled, the light flashes twice in blue and the vibrator operates twice.

Canceling :  (1 sec. or more)

When General silent mode is activated

An incoming call is notified with vibration, muting all sounds to be emitted from FOMA terminal such as ring tone, Keypad sound, Display turn sound or Alarm. Microphone is sensitized so that a call can be made in a small voice.

- In the cases below, the operation of Vibrate alert is "Pattern A" :
 - When receiving voice call, videophone call, mail or 64K data communication
 - During positioning when Ring alert is set to "Melody" and Vibrate alert is set to "OFF" in Positioning alert of GPS
 - When the time specified in Countdown timer elapses
 - When the date and time specified in schedule comes
- When the time specified in Alarm clock comes, vibrator operates according to the setting of Alarm clock.
- Melody is not played automatically even when sent/received mail or MessageR/F is displayed with "Auto play" set for Attachment auto-play.
- When playing a movie/i-motion with sound, the sound playing confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to play the sound and image. When "No" is selected for a movie/ i-motion with image, only image is played.
- A playing confirmation screen appears when playing a melody.
- A playing confirmation screen appears when the play function is activated.

When School mode is activated

Sounds to be emitted from FOMA terminal such as ring tone, Keypad sound, Display turn sound or Alarm are muted. The vibrator and light are disabled except when they are directly operated. Microphone is sensitized so that a call can be made in a small voice.

- Even with Security indicator "ON" and Lock functions or Lock on close "ON", the light does not operate.
- Melody is not played automatically even when sent/received mail or MessageR/F is displayed with "Auto play" set for Attachment auto-play.
- When playing a movie/i-motion with sound, the sound playing confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to play the sound and image. When "No" is selected for a movie/ i-motion with image, only image is played.
- A playing confirmation screen appears when playing a melody.
- A playing confirmation screen appears when the play function is activated.

INFORMATION

- Shutter sound is emitted even in Silent mode.
- The alarm of call cost limit does not sound in general silent mode or school mode. In personalized silent mode, Alarm volume of Call cost limit depends on the setting of "Call alert volume" of the personalized silent mode.

◆ Setting Silent mode <Silent mode>

<Example> Personalized silent mode

1  8 1 4

2 

Setting general silent mode : 

Setting school silent mode : 

- When setting general or school silent mode, operation in Step 3 is not necessary.

3 Set the required items 

Vibrate alert : Set if you allow the vibrator to operate while receiving a call or mail.

- When "ON", incoming call/mail is informed by vibration according to Vibrate alert/effect. With Vibrate alert/effect "OFF", vibration occurs as specified in "Pattern A".

Operation sound : Set keypad sound and terminal open/close sound.

Call alert volume : Set call alert volume for voice and videophone.

Mail alert volume : Set alert volume for mail.

Melody volume : Set the volume of Melody.

- This setting is also reflected to the volume of playing a melody attached to mail or MessageR/F.

GPS alert volume : Set volume of GPS alert sound.

Low battery alert : Set if you activate the alarm when the battery becomes low.

Alarm sound : Set if you emit Countdown timer sound or alarm clock sound.

- When "ON", the alarm clock sound is emitted according to the settings of Alarm clock.

Schedule sound : Set if you emit schedule reminder sound.

- When "ON", the sound is emitted according to the settings of Schedule reminder.

i-appli sound : Set if you emit i-appli sound.

- When "ON", the sound is emitted according to the settings of i-appli effect sound.

Sensitize microphone : Set if you increase the microphone sensitivity.

Style theme

Coordinating FOMA terminal screen

Screen designs of stand-by display, menu, clock, battery icon, antenna icon, etc. are coordinated with the FOMA terminal color. You can change the coordination for other colors.

◆ Setting coordination

1  8 3

2  1 - 9

- Press  to check coordination at the cursor position.

Setting Kisekae Tool :  Select a folder Place the cursor on the Kisekae Tool to set and  "Yes"

- Data in Kisekae Tool is collectively set.
Using Kisekae Tool → P89

◆ Creating original style theme

You can create 3 original style themes by customizing setting items.

1  8 3

2 Place the cursor on one of  -  and  Set the required items 

Title : Enter a style theme title.

- Up to 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte characters can be entered.

Color scheme : Set the display color scheme.

Stand-by image : Set the image to display for stand-by display. Still images, GIF animations, Animation or Flash graphics can be set.

Clock display format/Time format/Clock layout/Day

: Set if you display a clock on the stand-by display, clock design to be displayed, time format, clock layout, and display type of the day of the week. Items of Clock display format → P94 Step 1 in "Setting clock display"

Battery icon : Set the battery icon type.

Menu design : Set design of an icon for the normal menu.

- You can set the design of the first level and second level menu displayed by pressing  on the stand-by display.

Antenna icon : Set the antenna icon type.

New-arrival image : Set a spot animation used to indicate presence of newly arrived information.

Stand-by display

Changing stand-by display

You can set an image, movie/i-motion, Chara-den or i-appli on the stand-by display or set so that images in a folder are displayed at random. You can also customize the screen to display newly arrived information, calendar, schedule, etc. Clock display (→ P94) and battery and antenna icon display (→ P91) can also be set.

- Stand-by display for some of images, movies/i-motion, Chara-dens or i-appli are disabled if you do not insert the same UIM as used in downloading the data (UIM operation restriction).
- If a data in "Preinstalled" folder is set, the set stand-by display is displayed even in Personal data lock.

◆ Setting image/movie/i-motion/Chara-den as stand-by display

Image, movie/i-motion or Chara-den downloaded from an i-mode site or still image or movie shot with the FOMA terminal can be set as the stand-by display. Animations or created animation can also be set.

1

2 or

3 Select a folder ▶ Select an image, movie/i-motion or Chara-den

Setting action of Chara-den : On the Chara-den list screen, place the cursor on the Chara-den to set and ▶ On the Stand-by settings screen, set the required items ▶

Setting items → P235 Step ① in "Setting as stand-by display"

4 "Yes"

- When setting movie/i-motion as the stand-by display, the first image is displayed.
- If the selected image, movie/i-motion or Chara-den can be zoomed, a confirmation screen appears asking if you display at the same magnification or zoom. Select "Yes (Same size)" to maintain the image size or select "Yes (Large size)" to enlarge the image to the screen size to display on the stand-by display.
- If i-appli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking if you terminate the i-appli stand-by display. When selecting "Yes", the i-appli stand-by display is terminated.

✓INFORMATION

- When movie/i-motion or Chara-den is set for the stand-by display while a spot animation of New announcement is displayed, the stand-by display does not change. It is changed to the set stand-by display in the cases below :
 - When newly arrived information is confirmed
 - When settings of New announcement are deleted

❖ To play movie/i-motion, animation or Chara-den set as the stand-by display

- The operations below are available for movie/i-motion :
 - : Opening the FOMA terminal : Play
 - : Stop
 - : Mute (silent)/Cancel mute
- The operations below are available for GIF animation, created animation or Flash graphic :
 - Opening the FOMA terminal/Returning to the stand-by display/Turning power on : Play
 - : Pause/Play
- The following operations are available for Chara-den :
 - : Opening the FOMA terminal : Play
 - : Stop

✓INFORMATION

- Some movies/i-motion may not be set as the stand-by display. Movie/i-motion containing only sound (i-motion without image such as the one containing only voice of a singer) cannot be set.
- When the stand-by display is displayed, Flash graphics and/or GIF animation plays for a predetermined period of time and stops.
- If zoom display is set for GIF animation, the display may be distorted.
- You cannot set the contents as stand-by display which restrictions for the number of playing or playing period are set for.

◆ Displaying images at random <Set random image>

Display all the specified still images at random on the stand-by display.

1 ▶ Set the required items

Folder : Select the folder containing images.

Change image : Set the timing for changing images.

- When "Every 30 mins" is selected, the image is changed at minutes 00 and 30 every hour, and when "Every 60 mins" is selected, the image is changed at minutes 00 every hour.

2 ▶ "Yes"

- If i-appli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking if you terminate the i-appli stand-by display. When selecting "Yes", the i-appli stand-by display is terminated.

✓INFORMATION

- When no still image can be displayed because some specified folders are deleted or still images saved in the folder have been moved/deleted or Create animation is performed, the image set by default appears on the stand-by display and random image setting returns to the default. However, when the still image displayed on the stand-by display is moved or used for Create animation, the image is temporarily displayed until next time the image is changed.

◆ Setting i-appli stand-by display

- Only i-appli compatible with the i-appli stand-by display can be set.
- The i-appli stand-by display takes precedence over other stand-by display settings.
- Canceling operation, setting and stand-by display of i-appli → P208

1

A list of i-appli compatible with the i-appli stand-by display appears.

2 Select i-appli ▶ "Yes"

 or  is displayed when the i-appli stand-by display is set.

◆ Customizing stand-by display <Info/calendar layout>

You can divide the stand-by display to several and make settings to display newly arrived information such as unread mail or missed call, schedule, calendar, list of notes or contents of a note in individual areas.

- When the stand-by display has an image set, the set information appears overlaid on the image. It does not appear if movie/i-motion, Chara-den or i-appli stand-by display is set on the stand-by display.

1

2

Canceling Info/calendar layout : 

3 to switch patterns ▶ Select an area ▶ -

- Press  and select "Yes" to cancel all area settings.

Setting newly arrived information : ▶ Select information ▶

- When " Unread messages" is selected, unread message reception date/time and subject are displayed.
- When " MessageR"/" MessageF" is selected, MessageR/F reception date/time and the title are displayed.
- When " Missed calls" is selected, the reception date/time and the other party's phone number (or the name if it is saved in phonebook) are displayed.
- When " Recorded messages" is selected, the recording date/time and the other party's phone number (or the name if it is saved in phonebook) are displayed.

Setting Note content : ▶ Select a note

4 ▶ "Yes"

❖ Checking information on the stand-by display

1

The area is surrounded with a red cursor frame.

- When no information is shown, press  repeatedly to display it and press .

2 to move the cursor frame ▶

✓INFORMATION

- Pressing  switches hide and display of the information.
- If you set a GIF animation, created animation or Flash graphic on the stand-by display, the information is displayed by pressing  after the playing is stopped or paused.

❖ Displayed contents of various information

Each information set in Info/calendar layout appears as follows.

- The numbers of information entries and lines displayed depend on the area size.
- For each information entry, the time is displayed for the current day and the date is displayed for others.

■ New arrival

Items appear sequentially from the latest ones. When an area is selected, the heading information can be checked.

- Subjects, etc., of unread messages may not be fully displayed.

 : Unread messages

 : MessageR/MessageF

 : Missed calls

 : Recorded messages

■ Schedule

Icons, start times and contents of the schedules that do not reach the start time appear in the order of the scheduled date and time. When an area is selected, the heading schedule can be checked.

- Contents may not be fully displayed.
- When the dates of start time and end time are not the same, the icon to be displayed is .
- If the schedule with All day set to ON is on the current day, "AllDay" is displayed.

■ Calendar

A calendar of the current month appears. Select a calendar in the area to display the calendar of Scheduler.

- The current day is displayed in yellow, days off and holidays in red and Saturdays in blue. Days off and holidays follow the Scheduler settings. However, in Personal data lock, the days set in Days off settings of Scheduler do not appear in red, but displayed as set by default.
- A red mark appears on the upper-right side of the date with a schedule set. It does not appear in Personal data lock.

■ List of notes

The list of notes recorded in Notepad is displayed. Select an area to display the list of notes.

■ Notes

The beginning of a note set in Notepad is displayed. Select an area to display the details of a note.

✓INFORMATION

- In Personal data lock, you can only change settings to Missed calls for newly arrived information. You cannot select schedule, list of notes or contents of a note.

Calling image

Changing images for outgoing voice/videophone calls

MENU 8511
MENU 481

<Example> For voice call

1       ▶ Select the Display image field ▶  - 

Changing image displayed while making a videophone call :

      ▶ Select the Display image field ▶  - 

- When "Default" is set, the image set by default appears.
- When "Select image" is selected, select the Image list field and select an image.

2 

✓INFORMATION

- Setting created animation for "Select image" displays the first image.

❖ Outgoing call image priority

When setting outgoing images in multiple functions, they are displayed in order of the priority below :

- ① Image saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook*
- ② Alert/image by group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Outgoing call/Videophone dialing (V.phone dialing img.)

* When Contact image is set to "ON", it is effective.

Incoming call image

Changing images for incoming voice/videophone calls

- This setting is also reflected to Call alert of Call & Answer or Videophone alert of Videophone.

<Example> For voice call

1      ▶ Select the Show image field ▶  - 

Changing image displayed while receiving a videophone call :

     ▶ Select the Show image field ▶  - 

- When "Standard image" is set, the image set by default appears.
- When "Select image" is selected, select the List images field and select an image.
- When "i-motion" is selected, select a movie/i-motion from the movie list.
- When movie/i-motion containing sound and images is set for Call ring alert or V.phone ring alert, "Sync ring alert" is set.

2 

✓INFORMATION

- Setting created animation for "Select image" displays the first image.
- When movie/i-motion containing only sound (i-motion without image such as the one containing only voice of a singer) has been set as the ring alert, resetting Show image to movie/i-motion containing only images or Flash graphics cause "サウンド着信音1 (Tone1)" (voice call) or "ハーブ (Harp)" (videophone call) to be set as the ring alert. The melody can be changed.
- Some movies/i-motion may not be set to Show image. Also, movies/i-motion with sound cannot be set.

❖ Incoming call image priority

When setting incoming images in multiple functions, they are displayed in order of the priority below :

- ① Incoming calls melody setting of Multi number
- ② Image saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook*1
- ③ Alert/image by group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ④ Call ring alert*2/V.phone ring alert*2/Call alert/ Videophone alert

*1 When Contact image is set to "ON", it is effective.

*2 When movie/i-motion containing sound and image is set in "Movie ringtone", it is effective.

- When the other party does not notify the caller ID, the incoming image for voice call depends on Anonymous caller. An incoming image for videophone call depends on the settings of Videophone alert.
- When movie/i-motion is set for the Ring alert of Alert by contact (including the cases when setting "Terminal setting" and setting movie/i-motion for Call alert, etc.), the image or movie/i-motion set for phonebook does not appear and the movie/i-motion set for the ring alert appears. Note that, if movie/i-motion containing only sound (i-motion without image such as the one containing only voice of a singer) is set in Call alert, etc., it operates as below :
 - If a still image is set in phonebook, it is displayed.
 - If Flash graphic or movie/i-motion is set, the image set in Alert/ Image by group or Call alert is displayed instead of the image in phonebook.
- If Ring alert in Alert/Image by group for phonebook is set to "Terminal Setting" and movie/i-motion is set in Call alert, etc., the movie/i-motion set in Ring alert is displayed instead of the movie/i-motion set in phonebook by group. Note that, if movie/i-motion containing only sound (i-motion without image such as the one containing only voice of a singer) is set in Call alert, etc., it operates as below :
 - If a still image is set in Alert/Image by group, it is displayed.
 - If Flash graphic or movie/i-motion is set in Alert/Image by group, the image set in Call alert, etc. is displayed.

Contact image

Setting Contact image display from Phonebook at incoming/outgoing call

You can set if you display the image saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook for incoming/outgoing voice calls/videophone calls.

- The image saved in Phonebook is displayed when the recorded person calls with the caller ID.

1 (MENU) ▶ (8) (2) (4) (2) (5) ▶ (1) or (2)

Sent/received/retrieving mail image

Changing displays for incoming/outgoing messages and retrieving

You can set images to appear when sending mails, receiving mails (including MessageR/F) or received mails, or checking new messages.

1 (MENU) ▶ (8) (2) (4) (3) ▶ (1)-(4)

2 Select the Display image field ▶ (1)-(3)

- When "Default" is selected, the image set by default appears.
- When "Select image" is selected, select the Image list field and select an image.

Setting Image message alert : Select the Display image field ▶ (1)-(5)

- When "i-motion" is selected, select a movie/i-motion from the movie list.
- When movie/i-motion containing sound and images is set for Mail ring alert, "Sync ring alert" is set.

3 (□)

Setting display and key light

◆ Setting lighting time <Display light time>

The lighting time of display can be set. When the light is ON, the display becomes brighter and key area is lit.

- In addition to Normal use, lighting time can be set also for AC adapter connected (including DC adapter), i-mode session, Camera session, Movie camera session, i-motion and i-appli.
- This setting is also reflected to i-mode settings, Image settings, Recording settings, Settings for i-motion and Display light of i-appli settings.

<Example> Setting lighting time for Normal use

1 (MENU) ▶ 8 2 5 1

2 1 ▶ 1 - 7

- When "Always" is set, power saving mode is not set.

Setting lighting time for AC adapter connected, i-mode session, Camera session, Movie camera session, i-motion or i-appli : 2 - 7 ▶ 1 or 2

- When "Terminal setting" is set, the light remains lit for the lighting time set in Normal use.
- When "Always on" is set, the light is always lit with brightness set in Brightness and power saving mode is not set. However, while an AC adapter is connected, the light is lit in "Brightness 5" regardless of the settings in Brightness.
- When "Software" is set for i-appli, the light is lit according to the i-appli settings. Power saving mode is not set for i-appli that holds lighting always ON.

◆ Setting lighting range <Light area>

1 (MENU) ▶ 8 2 5 2 ▶ 1 or 2

◆ Setting brightness of light <Brightness>

1 (MENU) ▶ 8 2 5 3 ▶ 1 - 5

Color scheme

Changing display colors

1 (MENU) ▶ 8 2 4 1 ▶ Select a color scheme

Changing menu design

MENU 8231

You can change menu display format or icon design and create original menus.

- When you set Normal of setting item to "シンプル (Simple)", settings to Select language are unavailable. Note that item numbers are different from operation procedures described in this manual. Item number when "シンプル" is set→P299

1 (MENU) ▶ (E) ▶ Set the required items ▶ (H)

Normal : Set a display format for normal menu.

- With "Kisekai Tool" set, Kisekai Tool menu appears.
- When another item is selected and (H) is pressed with "Kisekai Tool" already set, a confirmation screen for canceling Kisekai Tool appears. If "Yes" is selected, "Kisekai Tool" becomes unavailable.
- With Select language set to English, "シンプル" cannot be set.

Custom : Set a display format for Custom menu.

Type of icons : Set design when "Tile display" is selected for normal menu display format.

- An item set from Type of icons is design of first level menu displayed first by pressing (MENU) on the stand-by display.
- You can set "Customized 1" or "Customized 2" to create an original menu by changing a menu icon.

Type of animation : Set design when "Animation" is selected for normal menu display format.

Icon display effect : Set if you display an enlarged icon when selecting an icon.

Default MENU : Select normal or custom menu to be displayed by pressing (MENU) on the stand-by display.

Active shortcut : Set a shortcut operation for custom menu.

- With "Normal" set, you can use normal menu item numbers to perform shortcut operation even when Default MENU is set to "Custom". → P33

◆ Creating original menu

You can create 2 original menus by changing menu screen icons and/or background images for normal menu.

- An icon image larger than 96×96 and a background image larger than 240×240 are scaled down for display.

1 **Select the Normal field** **Select the Type of icons field** or

2 **Select Customize** **Select a function** **Select an image from image folder list**

Menu icons of other functions are set in the same way.

- To cancel a menu icon, place the cursor on it, press and select "Yes".
- Press and select "Yes" to cancel all menu icons.

3 **Select a background image for the menu screen on the image folder list**

Canceling a background : **"Yes"**

4

✓INFORMATION

- Created animations, Flash graphics or images in "Item" folder cannot be selected. If a GIF animation is selected, first image is displayed.
- Settings to "Customized 1" or "Customized 2" of Type of icons cannot be changed in Personal data lock.

Using Kisekai Tool

Use of Kisekai Tool allows to collectively set stand-by display image, menu icons, incoming/outgoing call images, ring alerts, etc.

- Using Kisekai Tool, the items below can be set : allowable combinations of set items vary by Kisekai Tool.
 - Stand-by display, Animated menu^{*1}, Menu icon, Menu icon (background), Outgoing call image, Call alert image, Videophone call image, Videophone alert image, Outgoing message image, Mail alert image, Image message alert, Message retrieving, Battery icon, Antenna icon, Call ring alert, Videophone ring alert, Mail ring alert, Chat mail ring alert, MessageR ring alert, MessageF ring alert, Alarm clock sound, Color theme^{*2}

^{*1} For some Kisekai Tool, pressing or on the stand-by display may cause different actions to occur from ordinary ones to be carried out or short-cut operations may be disabled.

^{*2} You can set a color scheme of the screen.

◆ Changing Kisekai Tool

1

The Kisekai Tools below are saved in Kisekai Tool folders :

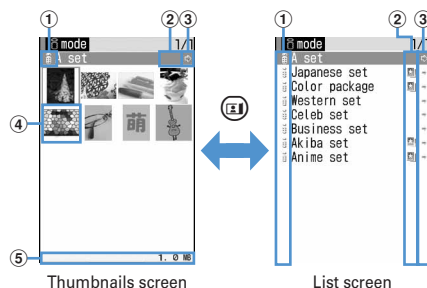
i-mode : Kisekai Tool downloaded from sites

My folder : Kisekai Tool moved from other folders

- Displayed if a folder is added.→P237

2 **Select a folder** **Place the cursor on Kisekai Tool**

A display name of the file at the cursor position and an icon indicating details appear.



① Originated

: i-mode

② File types

- (the back card is red) : Kisekae Tool finally set
- (the back card is gray) : Kisekae Tool currently set
- No icon : Kisekae Tool not set
- (lower half is gray) : Kisekae Tool partially saved

③ File restriction

- : File restricted

④ Thumbnail image

- : No preview image
- : Kisekae Tool with UIM operation restriction set
- : Kisekae Tool partially downloaded

⑤ File size (Size)

Resetting settings :

- ▶ ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ "Reset all" or "Reset menu"

- Selecting "Reset all" initializes settings of Kisekae Tool to the default.
- Selecting "Reset menu" initializes settings of "Animated menu", "Menu icon" and "Menu icon (Background)" to the default.

Setting list screen operations : Select a folder and

- ▶ ▶ or

- Set "Yes" for thumbnail display or "No" for list display.
- When operating from the folder list screen, press and select "Setting".

3 ▶ "Yes"

Data of Kisekae Tool is collectively set.

- When placing the cursor on Kisekae Tool partially downloaded and press one of , or , a confirmation screen for downloading remaining data appears. Select "Yes" to start downloading.

Viewing/editing detail information : Place the cursor on Kisekae Tool and ▶ ▶ or

Detail information→P238

Canceling settings : Place the cursor on Kisekae Tool and ▶ ▶ "Yes"

Moving/restoring data : Place the cursor on Kisekae Tool and ▶ ▶ or

Moving/restoring→P237

Deleting data : Place the cursor on Kisekae Tool and ▶ ▶ -

Deleting→P239

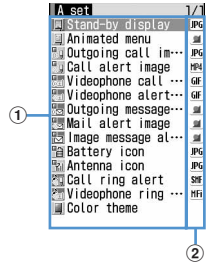
Sorting data : ▶ ▶ **Set required items** ▶
Sorting→P240

◆ Viewing Kisekae Tool settings

1 ▶ ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Place the cursor on Kisekae Tool and**

The list of the contents saved in Kisekae Tool is displayed.



① Item

An icon and name of the item are displayed.

② File format

JPG : Image in JPEG format

GIF : Image in GIF format

: SWF (Flash graphic)

MP4 : Movie in MP4 format

MFi : Melody in MFi format

SMF : Melody in SMF format

No icon : No file

- Confirm the contents also by pressing and selecting "Check info".
- Press to set Kisekae Tool.

Displaying the preview image of Kisekae Tool :

Place the cursor on Kisekae Tool and .

- You may also press on the preview screen to set Kisekae Tool.

3 **Select an item**

The data or information of item is displayed or played.

- If you place the cursor on a color theme, a screen with the color scheme and font appears.

✓INFORMATION

- Functions changed with Kisekai Tool are automatically set to "Kisekai Tool". When two or more Kisekai Tool items are set with some overlapping items, data of the Kisekai Tool item set last is used. If an item other than "Kisekai Tool" is selected on setting screens after setting Kisekai Tool, a confirmation screen for canceling Kisekai Tool appears. If you select "Yes", only corresponding items are canceled. To return to the settings of Kisekai Tool, reset Kisekai Tool.
- When the set Kisekai Tool contains data that cannot be displayed or played, only that data is not set.

Battery icon/Signal level icon

Changing battery/signal level icon

1 or

Indicator light

Indicating newly arrived information such as missed calls and unread mails with lighting

You can set if you indicate unchecked missed call (voice/ videophone call) or unread information (mail/Chat mail/ SMS), if any, by flashing the light while FOMA terminal is folded.

1 or

- When there are unchecked missed calls when this field is "ON", the light flashes at intervals of approximately 6 seconds according to Light color for Call in Light alert. When there is unread information, the light flashes at intervals of approximately 6 seconds according to Light color for Mail in Light alert. Checking a newly arrived information stops blinking.

✓INFORMATION

- If there is multiple newly arrived information, the light turns on in the priority below :
 - ① Missed call (voice/videophone call)
 - ② Unread information (mail/chat mail/SMS)
- With indicator light set to "ON", when approximately 6 hours elapsed since the last information was received or you delete (the number indicates the number of items) from the stand-by display, the light stops flashing even when you do not check the information.

Light alert

Setting the lighting patterns and colors used for an incoming call/mail or during a call

- This setting is reflected to settings for Light alert in Call alert, Videophone alert, Mail alert, Chat mail alert, MessageR alert and MessageF alert.

◆ Setting the lighting patterns and colors for incoming call/mail <Light alert>

1

2 Select Lighting pattern field ▶ Select a lighting pattern

- When "Sync melody" is set, the light flashes in "Rainbow" in synchronization with the ring alert. Synchronization may be disabled for some melodies.
- When there is newly arrived information with Indicator light set to "ON", the lighting color for the presence of newly arrived information is as set for incoming call or mail with "Sync melody" set.
- When you select "Sync melody" or "OFF", go to Step 4.

3 Select Light color field ▶ Select a lighting color

4

✓INFORMATION

- When Alert setting of Chat mail alert is set to "Same:Mail setting", a screen appears indicating that Chat mail alert cannot be selected.

◆ Light alert priority

When setting Lighting pattern and Light color for Light alert in multiple functions, light turns on in order of the priority below :

- ① Alert by contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ② Alert/image by group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Light alert/Call alert/Videophone alert/Mail alert

◆ Setting lighting and lighting color during a call <Call session light>

1 ▶ Select the Light field ▶ or

- With this field set to "ON", Color can be set.

2 Select the Color field ▶ Select a lighting color ▶

◆ Setting lighting pattern and color during GPS <GPS light alert>

1 ▶ ▶ Select Lighting pattern field ▶ Select a lighting pattern

- "Sync melody" cannot be selected. "OFF" cannot be selected for Loc. request-accept or Loc. request-verify.

2 Select Light color field ▶ Select a lighting color ▶

◆ Setting lighting for closing FOMA terminal <Open/close>

1 ▶ ▶ Select Open/close

Time+Wheel : After clock appears on the sub-display section, the light turns on according to Wheel operation. → P31 "■When displaying clock"

Time+Random : After clock appears on the sub-display section, the light turns on at random.

Time+Custom 1-10 : After clock appears on the sub-display section, the light turns on in the pattern created with ひかりクリエイター (Light creator) or downloaded light data.

Time only : Clock is displayed on the sub-display section.

OFF : Cancel Open/close.

✓INFORMATION

- Even when "Sync melody" is set for Light pattern, lighting may not synchronize depending on the melody specifications.
- When lights are ON, the phenomena below may occur. They are caused by characteristics of LEDs used for lighting or FOMA terminal, not defects of FOMA terminal.
 - The lighting color and/or brightness differs among FOMA terminals or depending on lights.
 - The actual lighting color may seem to discord from the lighting color name depending on painting color of FOMA terminal.

◆ Turning the light ON at minutes 00 every hour <Top of hour light>

1 ▶

2 Select required items ▶

Setting : When "Specified time" is selected, "Start time: " and "End time: " can be set. When an item other than "OFF" is selected, "Top of sound" can be selected.

Top of sound : When an item other than "OFF" is selected, "Volume" can be selected.

■ When Top of hour light is set

The light blinks for approximately 3 seconds at minutes 00 every hour of the set time and a clock is displayed. With Top of hour light set, Top of sound is emitted.

- If a clock or other information is displayed on the sub-display section, Top of hour light does not operate.
- The light color changes by time.

New announcement

Displaying spot animation when there is newly arrived information

When there is newly arrived information (unchecked missed calls, unread messages or unchecked recorded messages), a spot animation appears on the stand-by display. It can be set for all incoming calls, individual party or phonebook group saved in phonebook.

- Up to 16 items can be registered.

<Example> When "By specified contact" is selected

1 ▶

2 ▶ -

- When "All incomings" is selected, go to Step 4.

Deleting settings : Place the cursor on the setting to delete and  ▶  or  ▶ "Yes"

- When deleting all items, perform authentication.

Changing settings : Select the setting to change ▶ Go to Step 4

 : By specified contact (Phone)

 : By specified contact (UIM)

 : Group (Phone)

 : Group (UIM)

 : By specified contact with UIM used for setting not installed

 : Group with UIM used for setting not installed

 : All incomings

 : Action for incoming is OFF

3 Search the phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry to set ▶

- When "Group" is selected, select "In phone memory" or "In UIM" and select a group.

4 Select the Item at incoming field ▶ ▶ Select a spot animation ▶

✓INFORMATION

- When newly arrived information is Chat mail, Action for incoming from a party saved as a Chat member does not operate.
- There are 3 display patterns for each spot animation. The display pattern changes at random when the newly arrived information is updated or the stand-by display is displayed.
- When i-appli stand-by display is set, this function is disabled.
- If the same phonebook entry is saved to "By specified contact" and "Group", settings to "By specified contact" have priority.
- When new information arrives from different parties with multiple New arrival images set, Action for incoming from the latest party appears.
- In the cases below, the settings of New announcement are deleted :
 - When set phonebook data or phonebook group is deleted
 - When setting the UIM phonebook entry and replacing the UIM
- When you change settings to New arrival image for the party with a spot animation displayed on the stand-by display, changed spot animation appears on the stand-by display.

Font style

Changing font style

The font of characters to display on the menu screen, i-mode site, character entry screen, etc. can be changed.

- In addition to "フリディー桃" saved by default, you can use other Hiragana/Katakana fonts downloaded.

1 ▶ ▶ Select the Kanji/Alphameric field ▶ or

2 Select the Hiragana/Katakana field ▶ Select a font

Deleting downloaded fonts : Select Hiragana / Katakana field ▶ Place the cursor on the font

 ▶ "Yes"

- Preinstalled fonts or fonts currently used cannot be deleted.

3

✓INFORMATION

- This setting is not reflected to some functions such as camera, i-appli or i-motion.

Font size

Changing font size

MENU 873

The font size used for full-screen entry of notepad, message text, etc. or for displaying screen memo, i-mode site or mail can be changed.

<Example> Setting collectively

1  ▶    

2  ▶  - 

Setting i-mode view, Mail view :  or

 ▶  - 

Setting Text input :  ▶  - 

- Press  to display a sample font size at the cursor position.

✓INFORMATION

- When settings are made by "All listed", they are reflected to the font size for displaying phonebook list, phonebook search or phonebook search result.
- When settings are made by "All listed", the same settings are used for i-mode view, Mail view and Text input. Note that if "Maximum" or "Minimum" is set, "Large" or "Small" is used for i-mode view and Mail view, respectively.
- The font size can be changed also from the mail details screen. The settings are reflected to Mail view of this setting. → P189

Setting clock display

MENU 8212

Whether to display clock, the design, size or layout of clock display on the stand-by display can be set. The language to display the day of the week or the time display format can also be set.

1      **▶ Set the required items ▶** 

Style : Set if you display clock. When "ON" is set, select the clock style from "Analog 1-2" or "Digital 1-4".

Time format : Set the clock display format to either "24 hour" or "12 hour".

Clock layout : Set the position to display the clock.

Day : Set if you use Japanese or English to display the day of the week.

- The display depends on the Select language setting if "Terminal settings" is set.

✓INFORMATION

- On a screen other than the stand-by display, the clock appears in the upper-right of the display. This display is changed to "24 hour" or "12 hour" as set for Time format.
- When movie/i-motion, Chara-den or i-appli is displayed on the stand-by display, a clock is displayed in the task area. The format is 24-hour, and the day of the week is displayed in English.

Security Settings

Using Safety options

Safety options	96
Setting Kids' mode	Kids' mode setting 96
Changing password	Password 96
Sounding safety alarm	Safety alarm 97
Informing your current location by one-key shortcut	Silent alarm 99
Using Omamorimokon	100
Sending location information when power is turned OFF	Power OFF notice 103
Setting functions to activate by pressing and holding down side key	Side key shortcut 103
Informing low battery level with sound and light	Battery indicator 104
Network setting	104
Changing Restrict functions, etc. depending on times	Timed theme 104
Restricting functions	Restrict functions 105

Security code

Security code available with FOMA terminal	105
Changing terminal security code	Terminal security code change 106
Setting PIN code	106
Unblocking PIN/PIN2 code	107

Restricting mobile phone operations

Various lock functions	107
Preventing unauthorized use	All lock 108
Using Omakase Lock	Omakase Lock 108
Preventing making/receiving calls	Self mode 109
Disabling to use personal information	Personal data lock 110
Prohibiting keypad dial	Keypad dial lock 111
Setting operations for using or displaying personal information	Privacy mode 111
Disabling display of a caller's or sender's name, etc. of a call or mail received	Receive display option 115
Preventing inadvertent operation of side key	Side key hold 116
Locking keypad each time FOMA terminal is folded	Lock on close 116

Restricting calls/mail/data transfer

Accepting/rejecting calls from specified phone numbers	118
Setting operations for incoming calls not to notify caller ID	Anonymous caller 119
Setting not to answer calls from the party not saved in Phonebook	Ring alert delay 119
Rejecting calls from phone numbers not saved	Unregistered caller 120

Other "Security Settings"

Data Security Service	120
Other "Security Settings"	121

Safety options

You can restrict use of the functions your child uses, and set the Safety alarm and Omamorimokon.

- Safety options provide 3 menu screens. Use  to switch the screens for settings.

Displaying the current page in large numbers

Displaying the current setting to some functions



Functions that are available with Safety options are as below :

Function name	Description
Kids' mode setting	Restrict use of functions to enable your child to use FOMA terminal at ease→P96
Safety alarm	Sound the Safety alarm→P97
Silent alarm	Notify you of the current location using one-key shortcut →P99
Loss protection	Use the Omamorimokon to prevent your child from forgetting FOMA terminal→P101
Power OFF notice	Perform the location when power is turned OFF→P103
Side key shortcut	Set the functions by pressing and holding side key for 1 second or more→P103
Battery indicator	Restrict use of the function when the remaining battery is low→P104
Restrict call/mail	Restrict on outgoing/incoming calls/mail
Call/Mail lock	→P111
Anonymous caller	→P119
Reject/Accept call	→P118
Unregistered caller	→P120
Network setting	→P104
Timed theme	Lock the function at the specified intervals or set into School mode→P104
Restrict functions	Lock the mail, i-mode, i-appli or camera function→P105
Change security code	Change a terminal security code→P106

Kids' mode setting

Setting Kids' mode

In Kids' mode, you can use the kid's security code (password→P105) in addition to the parent's security code (terminal security code→P105). In addition to the previous Security code restriction, functions concerned with security control are newly restricted. And, since the functions that are necessary for a child and that require privacy protection can be used with the security code for a child, you can let your child have this terminal at ease. When your child uses this FOMA terminal, it is recommended you let your child use this terminal setting Kids' mode to "ON".

- Public mode (Drive mode) is not available in Kids' mode.
- Functions restricted in Kids' mode→P290
- When enabling Kids' mode, set PIN code ON/OFF to "OFF".

1  **9**  **Authenticate**  **On 1st page,**
  **or** 

- When set,  appears on the stand-by display.
- Public mode (Drive mode), Privacy mode and Self mode become unavailable. If Kids' mode is set to "OFF", Public mode (Drive mode) and Privacy mode return to the settings that were used before Kids' mode was set to "ON".
- If Request permit/deny is set to "Always deny" when setting Kids' mode to "ON", the "Always permit" setting screen appears.

Password

Changing password

Change the required password in Kids' mode.

- The password you want to change must not be the same as the terminal security code.

1  **8** **4** **6** **2**  **Authenticate**
Enter a new password

2 **Enter the password you entered in Step 1 in Re-enter password field** 

✓INFORMATION

- For authentication, you can enter a terminal security code instead of a password.
- For password, set a number that is easy for your child to remember.

Sounding safety alarm

You can sound alarm at high volume by a simple operation in case of emergency. Sounding the safety alarm enables you to automatically make a voice call or inform where you are using the GPS function.

❖ Before using safety alarm

- The safety alarm does not operate when the battery is exhausted.
- Turning the switch ON at power-OFF turns power ON and activates the safety alarm.
- You cannot change the volume of the safety alarm. Be aware that the safety alarm sounds at high volume.
- The buzzer may sound by mistake if the attached alarm strap is tangled with a bag or a pocket. Be careful.
- Before making a voice call, save a phone number (emergency number) of the other party in Safety alarm in advance. Up to 3 emergency numbers can be saved. Also, you can set caller ID notification and Chaku-moji.
- To notify someone of where you are using the GPS function, set Request permit/deny to "Always permit" in advance. Also set your terminal as an イマドコサーチ (imadoco-search) target. For imadoco-search, see DoCoMo website etc.

Access method (As of November, 2007)

iMenu → 料金&お申込・設定 (Charge & Subscription)
→ イマドコサーチ (imadoco-search) (Packet communication fee required)

* The access method may be changed without previous notice.

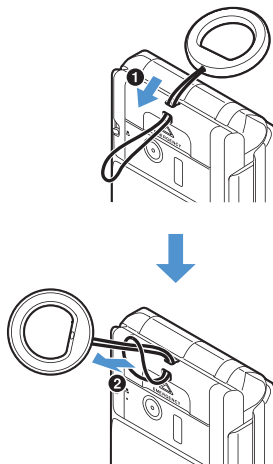


QR code for
site access

◆ Installing alarm strap

Put the strap through the safety alarm strap opening (❶), and insert the ring into the strap loop (❷).

- Do not fold FOMA terminal with the strap held inside.



◆ Setting making voice call <Safety alarm>

<Example> Directly entering an emergency number for setting

1 (MENU) ▶ (9) ▶ Authenticate ▶ On 1st page,
(2) ▶ Select Safety alarm field

2 (1) ▶ Select Emergency call to: field

Setting to turn only alarm sound ON : (2) ▶ Go to Step 7

3 (1) - (3)

Changing emergency number : Place the cursor on the emergency number and (MENU) ▶ (1) ▶ Go to Step 5

- Select the emergency number to specify the input method. Go to Step 4.

Deleting an emergency number : Place the cursor on the emergency number and

(MENU) ▶ (2) ▶ "Yes" ▶ (H) ▶ Go to Step 6 or 7

4 "Direct input"

Entering from phonebook : "View phonebook" ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Select phonebook entry ▶ (H) ▶ (H) ▶ Go to Step 6

- When multiple phone numbers are saved, select phonebook entry and select a phone number.

5 Enter the name in Name field ▶ Enter a phone number in Phone number field ▶ ▶

- Enter the name with up to 16 two-byte (or 32 one-byte) characters and the phone number with up to 26 digits, beginning with a city code.

6 Select Show caller ID field ▶ or ▶ Select Chaku-moji field ▶ or

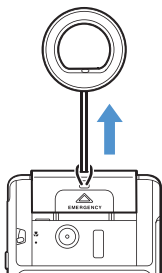
7

✓INFORMATION

- For emergency call, you cannot save emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) and saved phone numbers.
- A phone number set as an emergency number is not changed even if corrected, overwritten or deleted in the phonebook.

◆ Sounding safety alarm

1 Turn Safety alarm switch ON.



The buzzer sounds, the light blinks, and the screen below appears :



- Returning the switch stops the buzzer sound. Operations of making voice call or Location request are then continued.
- The Outgoing call image screen→Safety alarm screen are displayed sequentially. If making voice call or Location request is in the stand-by state, the Safety alarm screen appears.

■ When "Alarm+Voice call" is set

If the Safety alarm is activated, a voice call is automatically made to the emergency number.

- Making a voice call is repeated until all other parties of saved emergency numbers answer it.
- When the receiver accepts a voice call, the operations below are performed :
 - The receiver hears announcement "緊急通話です (This is an emergency call)". If Chaku-moji is set, "  防犯ブザー利用 (Safety alarm in use)  " is sent.
 - After the announcement is played 3 times, the speakerphone function is activated.

Stopping making voice call or talking :

▶ Authenticate

- You can also authenticate with a password in Kids' mode.

■ When Location request is performed

If the Safety alarm is activated, Location request is sent. This performs positioning and sends location information.

Stopping Location request : ▶ Authenticate

- You can also authenticate with a password in Kids' mode.

✓INFORMATION

- During Omakase Lock; during input of PIN code at power-ON; when PIN code is locked; or when UIM is not installed, buzzer sound is activated, but a voice call or Location request is not made to the emergency number.
- If the switch is turned ON out of service area, a voice call or Location request is made when FOMA terminal is within the service area.
- When the switch is turned ON while making/receiving a call (calling) or talking, the operations below are performed :
 - If "Alarm+Voice call" is set and the other party is an emergency receiver, making/receiving call or talking is continued, and buzzer sound is activated at step tone (the volume turns up in steps). At this time, only an incoming voice call is automatically answered. After making/receiving call or talking has ended, voice call is made to another emergency number, if any.
 - If "Alarm+Voice call" is set and the other party is not an emergency receiver, making/receiving call or talking is disconnected, and buzzer sound is activated at step tone, and voice call is made to an emergency number.
 - If "Alarm only" is set, making/receiving call or talking is continued, and buzzer sounds at step tone.
 - If the other party is an emergency call (110, 119 or 118), making call or talking is continued without activating buzzer sound. After making call or talking ends, buzzer sounds. If "Alarm+Voice call" is set, voice call is made to an emergency number.
- If the switch is turned ON during execution of another function, that function is terminated (or may be terminated without saving the currently edited or operated data).
- The Safety alarm is available in Public mode, Silent mode, All lock, Lock on close or Personal data lock.
- In Self mode, the Self mode is canceled, and a voice call or Location request is made.

- While the Safety alarm is ON, a call or data communication is received as below :
 - When "Alarm+Voice call" is set and an emergency call comes in, receiving call is continued and only an incoming voice call is automatically answered. However, if a voice call to an emergency number is migrated from dialing status to calling or talking status, receiving call is disconnected.
 - When "Alarm+Voice call" is set and a call from other than emergency number comes in, receiving call is disconnected.
 - If "Alarm only" is set, receiving call is continued (but not automatically answered).
 - Incoming data communication is rejected.
- Safety alarm continues to sound even when talking has been enabled during its operation. You can talk, but you need to return the buzzer switch as required.
- When multiple emergency numbers are saved, an outgoing call is interrupted unless the receiver answers approximately 30 seconds after calling, and a voice call is made to the next emergency number in the order of the saved numbers.
- If no answer is returned from any emergency numbers after a voice call has been made to all emergency numbers, FOMA terminal makes a voice call after standing by for approximately 1 minute. When Location request is sent, calling is placed into the stand-by state until positioning starts.
- When the emergency receiver sets the on-hold or recorded messages mode, it is assumed that the receiver has answered, and an announcement is played. When Call Rejection, Public mode (Drive mode), Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is in use, a call is made to the next emergency number, assuming that the receiver has not answered, except in certain cases.
- If Call waiting is used, the operations below are performed :
 - You can answer an incoming voice call during talking. While "Alarm+Voice call" is set, FOMA terminal answers only a voice call from the saved emergency numbers and records the others as missed calls.
 - A call received while an announcement is being played is recorded as a missed call.
- When a voice call related to the safety alarm is made, an announcement is played to the other party whenever talking is set.
- Talking cannot be recorded in voice memo while the Safety alarm is ON.
- While the Safety alarm is ON, software update does not start at the reserved date/time.
- Location request can be sent, but not be executed in some cases.
- When the battery is low, buzzer sounding is continued, but making voice call or Location request is ended.
- When not using FOMA terminal for a long time, operate it regularly and check that it runs properly.
- The safety alarm is for turning peripheral attention to you, and not for crime prevention or assuring safety. Please be notified that DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for any damage caused by use of this function.

Silent alarm

Informing your current location by one-key shortcut

Holding down  for 1 second or more enables you to notify your current location by imadoco-search.

- Set Request permit/deny to "Always permit" in advance (→P217). Also set your terminal as an イマドコサーチ (imadoco-search) target. For imadoco-search, see DoCoMo website etc.
- This function is available even when power is OFF.

◆ Setting Silent alarm

1   **Authenticate**  **On 1st page,**
  **or** 

- Setting is unavailable with Request permit/deny set to "Always deny". Set to "Always permit", and then set the Silent alarm again.

◆ Activating Silent alarm

1  **(1 sec. or more)**

The vibrator is activated, positioning starts, and the positioning result is sent.

- If power is OFF, hold down  until the vibrator is activated.

Stopping Silent alarm : On positioning screen,

-  **Authenticate**
- In Kids' mode, authentication is available also with the password.

✓INFORMATION

- If you press  immediately after turning power ON, positioning may fail even with the vibrator activated.
- Silent alarm is not available in the cases below :
 - In Omakase Lock
 - When the PIN code is locked or PIN lock is in operation completely
 - When safety alarm is ON
 - When UIM is not installed
- In Self mode, Self mode is canceled and the Silent alarm is activated.
- If power is OFF with PIN code ON/OFF set to "ON", the Silent alarm is activated after PIN code is input.

Using Omamorimokon

If the distance between the Omamorimokon and FOMA terminal exceeds the allowable range, alarm can sound or FOMA terminal can be locked (Loss protection).

Location request (imadoco-search) can be made when you have forgotten FOMA terminal.

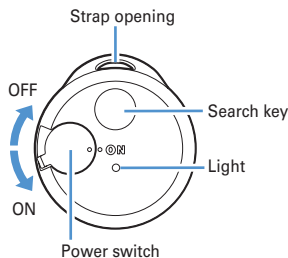
- See Omamorimokon F01 instruction manual.
- If the distance between Omamorimokon and the FOMA terminal exceeds the allowable range, the alarm sounds or the FOMA terminal is locked depending on the settings.



- Return the Omamorimokon to the allowable range to perform authentication operation or press ; the lock is canceled.



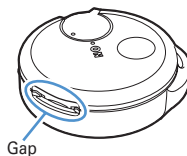
■ Name of each part of Omamorimokon



■ Replacing Omamorimokon battery

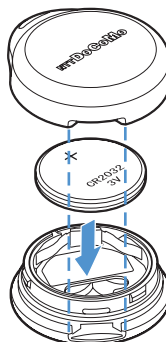
- Battery must be CR2032 or equivalent.

- ① While aligning a coin, etc. into the groove, turn it and open the case.



- ② Replace the coin battery and close the case.

- Make sure the grooves in the upper and lower cases are engaged with each other.



- * Never try to replace the battery when Omamorimokon or your hand is wet.

◆ Before using Omamorimokon

- Omamorimokon exchanges radio waves with FOMA terminal for Loss protection. Regardless of the effective range setting of Omamorimokon (Detect area), the effective range may be extremely narrowed and Loss protection may operate in the conditions below :
 - When radio waves are shut down by metallic objects etc. placed between the FOMA terminal and Omamorimokon
 - When radio waves are reflected by metallic objects etc. placed around the FOMA terminal and Omamorimokon
 - When radio waves are shut down by the human body carrying the FOMA terminal and Omamorimokon
- Turn both FOMA terminal and Omamorimokon OFF in areas where use is prohibited, such as in airplanes and hospitals.

◆ Saving Omamorimokon

- You cannot save multiple Omamorimokons at one time.
- When Omamorimokon is turned ON, once turn OFF Omamorimokon.
- Operate by putting Omamorimokon close to the FOMA terminal.

1  **9** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **On 1st page,**
 **1** ▶ **Set the power of Omamorimokon to "ON"** ▶ **On saving completion screen,** 

- Setting Omamorimokon power "ON" turns on Omamorimokon light once.
- The ID shown on the saving completion screen is unique for the saved Omamorimokon.

✓INFORMATION

- Omamorimokon cannot be saved when any other function is active.
- Omamorimokon cannot be used in Self mode.
- Do not use Omamorimokon overseas.→P18
- While Omamorimokon is saved, FOMA terminal is placed into the same state as for out of service area.

◆ Setting Loss protection <Loss protection>

- Save Omamorimokon before setting Loss protection.

1  **9** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **On 1st page,**
 **2** ▶ **Set the required items** ▶ 

Omamorimokon : Enables you to use various Loss protection settings with "Use" set.

Detect area : Set the allowable range of Omamorimokon.

Loss protection : Sounds alarm when Omamorimokon is separate from the allowable range with "ON" set.

- Set "Alert sound", "Volume", "Duration", or "In silent mode" with "ON". "Duration" can be set between 3 and 60 seconds. If you set "In silent mode" to "ON", the alarm sounds even in Silent mode.
- Even if setting "In silent mode" to "ON", the alarm does not sound in Public mode (Drive mode) or School mode.

Lock functions : Lock FOMA terminal when it is separate from the allowable range with "ON".

- Setting Lock on close to "ON" displays the Lock on close cancel confirmation screen.

imadoco? search : Setting to "ON" enables you to notify your current location by imadoco-search.

- imadoco? search cannot be "ON" with Request permit/deny set to "Always deny". Set to "Always permit", and set Loss protection again.
- For imadoco? search, see DoCoMo website etc.

◆ When Loss protection is set

- Setting Omamorimokon to "Use" displays the icons below on the Stand-by display.
 -  : Indicates that Omamorimokon is in the allowable range.
 -  (Blink) : Indicates that FOMA terminal checks whether Omamorimokon is in the allowable range.
 -  : Indicates that Omamorimokon is separate from the allowable range.
- If the distance between Omamorimokon and FOMA terminal exceeds the allowable range, alarm sounds or FOMA terminal is locked depending on settings.
- If imadoco-search is set in Loss protection, imadoco-search notifies your current location when Omamorimokon is separated from FOMA terminal beyond the allowable range for 5 minutes.
- When FOMA terminal is in the status below, the loss protection lock is activated after each function has terminated :
 - While receiving voice/videophone call or talking
 - In infrared communication
 - During Location request of GPS
 - When Alarm clock, schedule reminder or Countdown timer (including during snooze, stopping and counting down) is sounding
 - When safety alarm is ON
 - When Silent alarm is ON
 - During updating software
 - While playing melody
- If Omamorimokon is separated from the FOMA terminal beyond the allowable range for a long time, Omamorimokon may not be detected even if returning into the allowable range. In such a case, open/close the FOMA terminal or turn the power of Omamorimokon OFF and ON. Also, you can solve this situation by pressing the search button of Omamorimokon.

◆ When the remaining battery of Omamorimokon is low

- Omamorimokon does not run with the battery exhausted. Immediately replace the battery. → P100
- The remaining battery of Omamorimokon can be checked with the icon shown on the stand-by display in the allowable range. When the remaining battery of Omamorimokon is sufficient, low and exhausted, ,  and  appears, respectively.
- The standard usage period of the battery in Omamorimokon is approximately 4 months. It varies depending on operating environment or usage conditions.

◆ Searching for FOMA terminal

- You can sound the alarm of FOMA terminal by pressing the search button of Omamorimokon (Keitai search).
- This function is available with Omamorimokon set to "Use" in the search allowable range.
 - You cannot change the sound type or volume.

1 Press the search button of Omamorimokon.

With radio waves from Omamorimokon, FOMA terminal sounds alarm for approximately 30 seconds.

- The light of Omamorimokon blinks while holding down the search button of the Omamorimokon.

◆ Operations of loss protection lock

- The functions below are available even in the lock.
 - Turning power ON/OFF
 - Receiving a voice or videophone call
 - Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118)
 - Receiving i-mode mail, MessageR/F, SMS*
 - Starting Omakase Lock
 - Reactions to Location request
 - Safety alarm
 - Silent alarm
 - Power OFF notice
 - Keitai search of Omamorimokon
- * When receiving with the FOMA terminal open, none of receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are not taken.

■ Temporarily canceling the loss protection lock without Omamorimokon

Performing authentication operation on the stand-by display (In Kids' mode, authentication is available also with the password) cancels the loss protection lock. Since the setting of the loss protection lock is not canceled, returning Omamorimokon into and then placing out of the allowable range activate the loss protection lock again.

Sending location information when power is turned OFF

Make settings so that power is turned ON at the specified notify intervals for Location request while the power is OFF.

- Set Request permit/deny to "Always permit" in advance (→P217). Also set your terminal as an イマドコサーチ (imadoco-search) target. For imadoco-search, see DoCoMo website etc.
- Location information cannot be sent during full power OFF (→P42).

1  **9** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **On 2nd page,**
1 ▶ **Set the required items** ▶ 

Notify : Notify a Location request with "ON".

Notify interval : Set the interval to perform Location request.

- Setting is unavailable with Request permit/deny set to "Always deny". Set to "Always permit", and then set Power OFF notice again.

◆ When Power OFF notice is set to ON

Location request is made immediately before power is turned OFF. Power is temporarily turned ON at the specified notify intervals while power is OFF, and Location request is repeated.

Stopping Location request : On positioning screen,

 ▶ **Authenticate**

- In Kids' mode, authentication is available also with the password.

✓INFORMATION

- If power is turned OFF in the cases below, a Location request is not made :
 - When the PIN code is locked or PIN lock is in operation completely
 - When UIM is not inserted
 - When the battery is exhausted or low
- If power is turned OFF in the cases below, a Location request is stopped :
 - When Location request has been made during running of the Safety alarm
 - When Location request has been made for the Silent alarm function
- This function is available in All lock, Lock on close, Personal data lock or Self mode.
- If PIN code ON/OFF is set to "ON" while power is OFF, Location request by Power OFF notice is made after entering PIN code.

Setting functions to activate by pressing and holding down side key

MENU 877

You can set functions to activate by pressing and holding down  for 1 second or more with FOMA terminal folded.

1  **9** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **On 2nd page,**
2 ▶ **1** - **5**

Flashlight : Turns the light ON as a small light.

Safety light : Blinks the sub-display section and light.

- You can also set Check new message and Silent mode ON/OFF.
- If "No setting" is set, no function is activated.

✓INFORMATION

- Press  **8** **7** **7** to set without authentication operation.

◆ When Flashlight is set

The light turns on for 30 seconds by holding down  for 1 second or more with FOMA terminal folded.

- Opening FOMA terminal or pressing  turns the light OFF.
- Holding down  for 1 second or more while the light is ON extends the lighting time approximately 30 seconds.

◆ When Safety light is set

The sub-display section and light blink by holding down  for 1 second or more with FOMA terminal folded. Blinking is continued for 15 minutes. To stop halfway, open FOMA terminal or press .

- Holding down  for 1 second or more while the light is ON extends the operation time approximately 15 minutes.

✓INFORMATION

- If any of the function below is activated, Flashlight or Safety light ends.
 - Receiving call or mail/message
 - Alarm clock, schedule reminder
 - Silent alarm
 - Safety alarm

Informing low battery level with sound and light

This function notifies you that the battery level has changed to 1 with alarm, vibrator or light and urges you to charge. It can lock functions other than the minimum required functions to reduce battery drain.

- 1 ➤ ➤ **Authenticate** ➤ On 2nd page, ➤ **Set the required items** ➤

Show indicator : Notifies that the battery level is changed from 2 to 1 with "ON" set.

Restrict functions : Restricts the activation of functions other than the minimum required functions with "ON" set.

❖ When Restrict functions is set

When the remaining battery level reaches to 1, appears on the top of the display and the functions are restricted.

- The functions below are available in Restrict functions of Battery indicator ON :
 - Making/receiving call
 - Direct call
 - Sending/receiving mail, displaying list, settings of Mail
 - Check new message, displaying/setting MessageR/F
 - Searching phonebook, Phonebook new entry, Phonebook(UIM) new entry, Received calls, Redial, Recorded messages, Mail logs, and User information
 - GPS (Location request)
 - Silent mode ON/OFF
 - Safety alarm
 - Silent alarm
 - Loss protection

✓ INFORMATION

- The operations below are made depending on the status of FOMA terminal :
 - General silent mode : Activates only the vibrator.
 - Personalized silent mode : Operates the vibrator, etc. depend on settings. Alarm sound depends on "Low Battery alert".
 - School mode, Public mode (Drive mode) : Displays only messages on the screen.
- Alarm clock and schedule reminder do not operate even at the specified date/time in Restrict functions of Battery indicator ON.

Network setting

You can connect to site, change i-mode password, set mail address and set mail reception/rejection.

- 1 ➤ ➤ **Authenticate** ➤ On 2nd page,

The setting site appears. For the subsequent operations, follow the instructions shown on the site.

Timed theme

Changing Restrict functions, etc. depending on times

You can use Loss protection or activate Silent mode or Restrict functions at the specified time. You can select the alarm to sound once only, repeat everyday or sound on the same day every week.

- Up to 12 items can be registered.

- 1 ➤ ➤ **Authenticate** ➤ On 3rd page, ➤ **Select a title**

is displayed at the left of the title for Timed theme set.

For the active timed theme, appears on the left of the title.

Setting/canceling the timed theme : Place the cursor on the title and .

- 2 **Set the required items** ➤

Time : Enter the time to switch the theme in the 24-hour format.

Repeat : Set action of repeat switching.

- When "Day of week" is selected, select the day of week to switch in "Select Day of Week" and press .

Title : Enter up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters for title of Timed theme.

Silent mode : Select Silent mode.

LossProtect : Set whether to use Loss protection.

Keypad dial : Set whether to activate Keypad dial lock.

Restrict functions : Enable Mail lock, i-mode lock, i-appli lock or Camera lock.

✓ INFORMATION

- Items set to "No change", if any, take over the previous settings.
- When Timed theme and alarm are set to start at the same time, Timed theme starts after the alarm operates.
- Even if you change Timed theme in operation, it is not reflected until the next operation. However, the change of time is reflected immediately.
- Timed theme is not started/ended unless you return to the stand-by display.
- Even if Timed schedule is in operation, the changes to Silent mode, Loss protection, Keypad dial lock or Restrict functions except in Timed schedule are valid.

Restricting functions

You can individually restrict use of mail, i-mode, i-appli and camera functions.

- 1  9 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ On 3rd page,
2 ▶ **Select the field of function to restrict** ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ 

The functions set to "ON" becomes unavailable, and the icons below appear on the top of the display.

 : Mail lock  : i-mode lock

 : i-appli lock  : Camera lock

- The unavailable functions are as below :

Mail lock : i-mode mail, SMS, MessageR/F and Mail settings

i-mode lock : i-mode

i-appli lock : i-appli

Camera lock : Still camera, Movie camera, sound recorder and Bar code reader

Security code available with FOMA terminal

Some of the convenient FOMA terminal functions require entry of security code. In addition to the terminal security code for using some terminal functions, there are several types of security codes such as network security code for network services and i-mode password. Use these codes appropriately for FOMA terminal.

- The terminal security code, network security code or i-mode password entered is masked with "*".

Precautions related to security codes

- When setting a security code, do not use a number that can be easily known to others, such as "birthday", "a part of a phone number", "street address or room number", "1111" or "1234". Keep a separate note of the set security code.
- Be careful never to reveal your security code to others. If a security code is known to and misused by others, DoCoMo assumes no liability for damages resulted from it.
- DoCoMo never asks you about your security code.
- If you forgot your security codes, you need to bring your official certification (e.g. a driver's license), FOMA terminal and UIM to a DoCoMo Shop. For details, contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

❖ Terminal security code

The default security code is "0000", which you can change by yourself. →P106

- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is turned OFF.

❖ Password

The password is a security code for Kids' mode. The password prevents you from changing settings such as the security function, so use it as a security code for your child. You can change it from "1111" set by default. If you forgot the password, enter a new terminal security code to set again in Password. →P96

- For authentication, you can enter a terminal security code instead of a password.

❖ Network security code

Network security code is a 4-digit number used when making various applications for DoCoMo e-site and using various network services; you can set any number at subscription and optionally change it later.

If you have "DoCoMo ID/Password" for "My DoCoMo" that is a total support site for PCs, you can change your network security code from a PC.

From i-mode, you can change the code by yourself accessing "各種手続き (Various Procedures)" in DoCoMo e-site.

- For "My DoCoMo" and "ドコモeサイト (DoCoMo e-site)", see the back of this manual.

❖ i-mode password

A 4-digit "i-mode password" is required to store or delete sites in My Menu or apply to or cancel Message Service or i-mode pay sites. The default security code is "0000", which you can change by yourself. →P146
There may be passwords required by individual IPs (Information Providers).

❖ PIN code/PIN2 code

The PIN code and PIN2 code are set for the UIM. Both of the default security codes are "0000", which you can change by yourself. → P106

PIN code is a number (code) to be entered each time UIM is inserted or FOMA terminal is powered ON to confirm the user and to prevent unauthorized use of FOMA terminal. Making/receiving calls and terminal operations are enabled by entering PIN code.

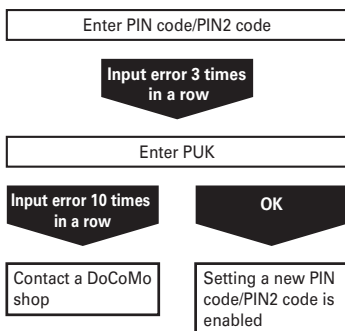
The PIN2 code is the security code to be used when requesting the issuance of a user certificate, resetting Total calls cost or changing settings of Reset call cost.

- When inserting UIM that has been used with another FOMA terminal, the PIN code and PIN2 code should be the same ones set previously. If no changes have been made to PIN code and PIN2 code, your codes are "0000".

❖ PUK (PIN Unlocking Key)

PUK is a number of 8-digit code used to unblock PIN or PIN2 lock. You cannot change PUK by yourself.

- If a wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, the UIM is locked.



Terminal security code change

Changing terminal security code

MENU 9 Authenticate, 3 on 3rd page

- 1 **Authenticate**
Enter a new terminal security code

- The terminal security code must not be the same as the password.

Change security code
New security code
New security code-check

- 2 Enter the new terminal security code in New security code-check field

Setting PIN code

◆ Setting whether to require entry of PIN code when turning power ON <PIN code ON/OFF>

If a wrong PIN code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN code is locked. Press and enter PUK.

- The PIN code entry screen is displayed only when the current setting is changed.

- 1 or **Enter PIN code**

PIN code
Enter PIN code
3 times left.

❖ When PIN code ON/OFF is set to "ON"

When the FOMA terminal is powered on, the PIN code entry screen is displayed. The stand-by display appears when correct PIN code is entered, but all operations are disabled when not.

✓INFORMATION

- When the date/time specified in Alarm clock or schedule has come with Alarm auto power ON is "ON", the power is turned ON and the alarm starts sounding before the PIN code entry screen is displayed. When is pressed to stop the alarm, the PIN code entry screen is displayed. Even with downloaded melody or i-motion is set as an alarm, default settings are applied for operation.

◆ Changing PIN/PIN2 code

- To change the PIN code, you need to set PIN code ON/OFF to "ON".

1      or
 **Authenticate**

2 **Enter the current PIN/PIN2 code** ▶ **Enter a new PIN/PIN2 code in the New PIN/PIN2 code entry field** ▶ **Enter the new PIN/PIN2 code in the New PIN/PIN2 code - check field** ▶ 

- If the PIN/PIN2 code was not correctly entered, a screen indicating the failure of authentication appears. Press  and enter the correct PIN/PIN2 code. If a wrong code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN code is locked. Press  and enter the PUK.

✓INFORMATION

- Even if PIN2 code is locked by entering incorrect PIN2 code 3 times consecutively, making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mail is enabled; if PIN code is locked by entering incorrect PIN code 3 times consecutively, these operations are disabled.

Unblocking PIN/PIN2 code

If a wrong PIN/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively on the PIN code entry screen, lock is set. If this happens, unblock and enter a new PIN code.

1 **On the confirmation screen of the PUK, "OK"** ▶ **Enter the PUK (8 digits)**

2 **Enter a new PIN/PIN2 code in the New PIN/PIN2 code entry field** ▶ **Enter the new PIN/PIN2 code in the New PIN/PIN2 code - check field** ▶ 

Various lock functions

FOMA terminal has various lock functions. You can choose the function to suit your needs.

Lock functions	Description	Page
Lock functions	Prevent unauthorized use by others when the distance between FOMA terminal and Omamorimokon exceeds the allowable range	P101
Restrict functions of Battery indicator	Lock functions other than the minimum required functions when the remaining battery level has changed to 1	P104
Restrict functions	Lock the mail, i-mode, i-appli or camera function	P105
All lock	This function disables menu operations to prevent unauthorized use by others	P108
Omakase Lock	Lock FOMA terminal to prevent unauthorized use by the third parties when it is misplaced	P108
Self mode	Disable all functions that require communications such as calls, i-mode, mail or infrared communication	P109
Personal data lock	Temporarily restrict use of i-mode, mail, personal information, etc.	P110
Keypad dial lock	Prevent from making calls using the keypads	P111
Privacy mode	Set operations for using or displaying personal information	P111
Receive display option	Set if you display information such as a name when receiving a call or mail from a party saved in the phonebook	P115
Side key hold	Disable  operation with FOMA terminal folded to prevent inadvertent operations	P116
Lock on close	Prevent unauthorized use of FOMA terminal by others by disabling keys except  and  each time the terminal is folded	P116

- Multiple lock functions can be set simultaneously.
- You can make emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) even when lock functions except Omakase Lock are set.

Preventing unauthorized use

When All lock is activated, menu operations are disabled to prevent unauthorized use by third parties.

To make an emergency call (110, 119 or 118) in All lock, enter the emergency call number on the stand-by display and press .

* The emergency call number entered on the terminal security code entry screen is marked with "*".

- UIM remains unlocked.

     ➔ **Authenticate**

"All locked." appears on the stand-by display.

Canceling : Enter the terminal security code on the stand-by display.

✓INFORMATION

- Omamorimokon becomes unavailable even if it is set to use. Canceling All lock enables Omamorimokon.
- An incoming call is received regardless of Specified caller setting.
- Even if a stand-by display is set, the image set by default appears.
- The newly arrived animation is not enabled even if newly arrived information is displayed on the stand-by display by canceling All lock.
- Pressing  with FOMA terminal folded displays the pattern for All lock on the sub-display section and then displays a clock.
- All lock takes precedence over it even if Lock on close is "ON".
- The alarm clock and schedule reminder does not operate even when the specified date and time arrives.
- The functions below are available.
 - Receiving voice/videophone calls^{*1}
 - Auto update of Data Center
 - Receiving i-mode mail, MessageR/F, SMS^{*2}
 - Starting Omakase Lock
 - Safety alarm (Sending location, sending voice)
 - Silent alarm
 - Power OFF notice
 - Reactions to location request of GPS^{*3}

*1 Only a phone number appears, but the other party's name or image saved in phonebook does not. The incoming image, ring alert and other settings are reset to default settings, and the default image (Camera-Off) appears as videophone substitute image. Chaku-moji can be received, but it does not appear on the incoming call screen. It appears in Received calls when All lock is canceled.

*2 No receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen or emitting ring alert are taken.

*3 Even when the requestor ID of Location request matches a phonebook entry, the requestor name does not appear.

Using Omakase Lock

In case FOMA terminal is misplaced, this service allows you to lock FOMA terminal by making a call to DoCoMo or by remote control from My DoCoMo. It protects your important privacy.

FOMA terminal can be unlocked upon your request, etc.

* Omakase Lock is charged service. If you request unlocking at the same time as service interruption or during interruption, no charges occur. This service supports a GPS Location request with Request permit/deny set to "Always permit" during Omakase Lock.

Setting/canceling Omakase Lock

 **0120-524-360 Office hours : 24hours**

* Omakase Lock can be set/canceled from My DoCoMo site using PC, etc.

- For details of Omakase Lock, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Procedures and After-Sales Service]".

❖When Omakase Lock is activated

"Omakase Lock active." appears on the stand-by display.

- Key operations except turning power ON/OFF, receiving voice or videophone calls, reactions to GPS Location request, or stopping Location request by Power OFF notice are disabled. Only the Safety alarm sound can be activated. UIM remains unlocked.

✓INFORMATION

- Voice calls or videophone calls are received, displaying the phone number instead of the name or image of the party saved in the phonebook. The incoming image, ring alert and other settings are reset to default settings, and the default image (Camera-Off) appears as videophone substitute image. The setting you made is restored when Omakase Lock is canceled.
- Omamorimokon becomes unavailable even if it is set to use. Canceling Omakase Lock enables Omamorimokon.
- Chaku-moji can be received, but it does not appear on the incoming call screen. The Chaku-moji appears in Received calls after Omakase Lock is canceled.
- Even when the requestor ID of Location request of GPS matches a phonebook entry, the requestor name does not appear.
- The received mails are saved in i-mode Center.
- Pressing  with FOMA terminal folded displays the pattern for Omakase Lock on the sub-display section and then displays a clock.
- When Omakase Lock is activated while other functions are active, those functions are terminated (data being edited, if any, may not be saved before the termination).
- Even with various lock functions set, Omakase Lock takes precedence over them.
- Omakase Lock is unavailable when FOMA terminal is misplaced with its power OFF, put outside the service area or in Self mode.
- You can turn power ON/OFF, but the lock is not canceled by turning power OFF.
- If you are a subscriber to Dual Network Service and using mova service, Omakase Lock is unavailable.
- Omakase Lock locks FOMA terminal on request from the subscriber of UIM installed. The FOMA terminal is locked on request from the subscriber when the holder of FOMA terminal is different from the subscriber.
- Omakase Lock is a service that locks FOMA terminal in which UIM you have subscribed to is inserted.
- Omakase Lock can be canceled only when UIM with the same phone number as the one used when activating Omakase Lock is inserted. If the lock cannot be canceled, contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

Self mode

Preventing making/receiving calls

MENU 858

This function disables all functions that require communications such as calls, i-mode, mail or infrared communication.

1  (1 sec. or more) ▶ "Yes"

 appears on the top of the display.

Canceling :  (1 sec. or more) ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- The functions below are not available.
 - Making or receiving calls
 - Direct call (including making or receiving calls, imadocokantan search and creating mail with Location information URL from Positioning alert)
 - i-mode or sending or receiving mail
 - GPS (including saving, editing and deleting service clients in LCS clients list)
 - Infrared communication and infrared remote control
 - Omamorimokon
 - Packet communication with a PC, 64K data communication or data transfer
- If you receive a call, a message is played for the caller that you are out of service area or your terminal is turned OFF. The caller can use Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service.
- i-mode mail and MessageR/F are stored in i-mode Center and SMS in SMS Center when they are received. To receive messages, perform i-mode/SMS inquiry after canceling Self mode.
- If emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) are dialed, Self mode is canceled.

Disabling to use personal information

You can temporarily restrict use of i-mode, mail, personal information, etc.

- This function cannot be activated when Unregistered caller is "ON".
- Calls made or received in Personal data lock are recorded. Making calls from Redial or Received calls is enabled.



- When "ON" is set,  appears on the stand-by display.

❖ When Personal data lock is ON

All or a part of the settings in the functions below are unavailable : UIM remain unlocked.

- Mail^{*1}, Chat mail^{*1}, SMS^{*1}
- i-mode, Check new message, MessageR/F^{*1}
- i- appli
- Phonebook, Direct call, Ans.Machine&Voice memo (Movie memo), Mail logs^{*2}
- Data Box (All functions)
- Bar code reader, Ir/PC connection^{*3}, Camera, Sound recorder, Data Center, GPS^{*4}
- Scheduler, Notepad, Alarm clock, Time schedule
- Style theme, Call ring alert, Mail/Msg ring alert, GPS alert, Alarm sound, Stand-by display, New announcement, Call image (excluding Contact image), mail sending/receiving image, Scanning function, Sound & Image, Anonymous caller, Headset key control (calling by Headset key), Reject/Accept call, V.phone dialing img., Videophone alert, Image setting^{*5}, Software update, Call cost limit, Reset, Delete all data, Default setting, Tone/Vibration message notification, Chaku-moji^{*6}, Number setting and Incoming calls melody setting of Multi number
- User information

- *1 Automatic reception is enabled, but none of receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are not taken. Mail creation from Mail logs is also disabled.
- *2 Only a mail address appears, but the other party's name or image saved in phonebook does not.
- *3 Infrared communication or data sending/receiving by USB connection is unavailable.
- *4 Reactions to a Location request are enabled.
- *5 The default image (Camera-Off) appears as videophone substitute image.
- *6 Chaku-moji can be received, but it does not appear on an incoming call screen. It appears in Received calls when Personal data lock is canceled.

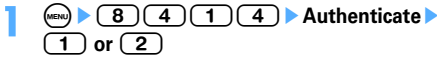
✓INFORMATION

- When making/receiving a call to/from the party saved in the phonebook, neither name nor image saved appears and only the phone number appears.
-  does not appear on the stand-by display even when Answer machine is activated, and an icon for a recorded message which has not been played is also not displayed.
- When data to which Personal data lock applies is set as the stand-by display or ring alert, the default setting becomes active in Personal data lock (when "Kisekae Tool" is set as Normal in Menu setting, tile icon appears). The setting is restored when canceled. When data saved in "Preinstalled" folder is set, however, the setting does not change even in Personal data lock.
- Even when the requestor ID of Location request of GPS matches a phonebook entry, the requestor name does not appear.
- On custom menu, icons of functions and parties with activation restricted are changed to  and person names appear as " * * * ".

Prohibiting keypad dial

MENU 9 Authenticate, 41 on 2nd page

You can set so that calls cannot be made without using Phonebook.



- When "ON" is set, appears on the stand-by display.

❖ When Keypad dial lock is ON

The operations below cannot be performed :

- Making calls from Redial or Received calls^{*1}
- Editing, adding, deleting entries or setting group of phonebook (including Direct call)
- Editing and resetting recorded user information data
- Phone To (AV Phone To) and Mail To functions
- Phonebook data or user information transfer to/from external devices
- Sending mail/Chat mail^{*1}/SMS^{*1}, sending from Mail logs^{*1}
- Reading template on the mail creation screen, creating mail from the mail template list screen or the detail view screen of mail template^{*2}
- Notify location of GPS^{*3}
- Using network services by the dial up operation
- Packet communication with a PC, 64K data communication

^{*1} Calls/messages can be made or sent to parties saved in Phonebook.

^{*2} A mail from the template that the mail address saved in the phonebook has been entered as the receiver can be created.

^{*3} Though notification to notification destinations is enabled, registering, editing and deleting notification destinations to LCS clients are disabled.

Setting operations for using or displaying personal information

You can set to require authentication each time using personal information such as phonebook, not to display a phonebook or schedule with secret attribute or not to display calls or mails sent/received from parties with secret attribute.

- Items and settings of Privacy mode are as follows :

○ : Setting — : No setting

Item	Setting		
	Show all	Authorized access	Hide set contact/ Hide secret fldrs/ Hide set schedule
Phonebook & Logs	○	○	○*
Mail & Logs	○	○	○*
My Picture	○	○	—
i-motion	○	○	—
Schedule	○	○	○*
i-αppli	○	○	—
Loc. history (GPS)	○	○	—

* Setting secret attribute is required.

Phonebook→P74, mail→P180, schedule→P255

- To enable Privacy mode setting, you need to start Privacy mode. You can also set automatic activation.
- If Contact setting is not performed after changing phonebook entry secret attribute or editing the phonebook entry, activating Privacy mode does not hide mail or SMS of the changed or edited phonebook entry. To hide them, perform Contact setting.→P114

1 (MENU) ▶ 8 4 2 1 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set the required items ▶ ▶

Phonebook & Logs : Set if you authenticate for using phonebook, etc.

- With "Hide set contact" set, phonebook entries or groups (including phonebook entries in those groups) with secret attribute, Redial, Received calls, mail or SMS for parties with secret attribute do not appear. When there is an incoming mail or SMS from a party with secret attribute set, it is received, but not notified on the screen or with ring alert. With Incoming privacy mode set, you can check newly arrived information by the battery icon.

Mail & Logs : Set if you require authentication before using mail or mail logs, etc.

- With "Hide secret fldrs" set, folders with secret attribute do not appear. When a mail is received from a party to be sorted to a folder with secret attribute, it is not notified on the screen or with ring alert. With Incoming: privacy mode set, you can check newly arrived information by the battery icon.

My Picture : Set if you require authentication before using My Picture.

i-motion : Set if you require authentication before using i-motion.

Schedule : Set if you authenticate for using schedule.

- With "Hide set schedule" set, schedules with secret attribute do not appear.

i-appli : Set if you require authentication before using i-appli.

Loc. history (GPS) : Set if you require authentication before using Loc. history of GPS.

Incoming: privacy mode : Set if you notify the presence of newly arrived information by changing the battery icon type when there is an incoming call or mail from a party of a phonebook entry with secret attribute or when a mail is received from a party to be sorted to a folder with secret attribute. Select a battery icon to appear or select "OFF".

Auto start : Set the time period till Privacy mode automatically starts when you do nothing on stand-by display.

1 (1 sec. or more)

Canceling :  (1 sec. or more) ▶ Authenticate

- When Auto start of Privacy mode setting is other than "OFF", Privacy mode is activated when the set time elapses while the stand-by display is on.

❖ When Privacy mode is activated

There are restrictions as below depending on the contents set by the items of Privacy mode.

<Except i-appli : "Authorized access">

- There is unavailable i-appli (except when Mail & Logs is set to "Authorized access") or i-appliDX.

<Phonebook & Logs or Mail & Logs : Except "Show all">

- When displaying mail group, mail sort or starting Chat mail, an authentication is required.

<Phonebook & Logs : "Authorized access">

- Authentication is required to use Redial, Received calls, Recorded messages and Voice memos.
- Only a phone number or mail address appears, but the name or image saved in Phonebook when making or receiving calls does not. The ring alert, vibrator or Substitute image set in Phonebook does not operate; they operate as set in FOMA terminal. Ring alert delay is also activated by reception from a party registered in the phonebook.
- Missed calls or Recorded messages do not appear in the newly arrived information area of Info/calendar layout.
- A mail address appears, but the name saved in Phonebook from mail or Mail logs does not.
- When sending mail with a still image shot during a call, even if a mail address of the party you are talking over a call is registered in the phonebook, that mail address is not entered as a destination.
- Even when the requestor ID of Location request of GPS matches a phonebook entry, the requestor name does not appear. The positioned history appears in location history, but the requestor name does not appear on the location history log screen.
- On the member list of Scheduler, member names do not appear.
- Persons saved to custom menu cannot be selected. The icon changes to  and a person's name appears as " * * * ".
- Headset quick-dial is disabled even if Phonebook No. of Headset key control is set.

<Phonebook & Logs : "Hide set contact">

- Newly arrived information for parties with secret attribute does not appear. No displays are given to redial, received calls, recorded messages, voice memo while talking, Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list, or Mail logs.
- Unread messages, Missed calls or Recorded messages for parties with secret attribute do not appear in the newly arrived information area of Info/calendar layout.
- Phonebook entries with secret attribute are not displayed in the Contact list of New announcement.
- Images, movies/i-motion and vibrator saved in a phonebook entry with secret attribute operate for incoming calls as set from FOMA terminal setting. The call reception screen shows a phone number, but the name.
- When the requestor ID of Location request of GPS matches a phonebook entry with secret attribute, the requestor name does not appear. The positioned history does not appear in location history.
- On the member list of Scheduler, member names of phonebook entries with secret attribute do not appear.
- On custom menu, parties of phonebook entries with secret attribute do not appear.
- If a phonebook entry with secret attribute is set to Phonebook No. for Headset key control, that Phonebook No. is disabled for Headset quick-dial.

<Mail & Logs : "Authorized access">

- Unread messages do not appear in the newly arrived information area of Info/calendar layout.
- Authentication is required when searching a mail using Phonebook or Scheduler, displaying mail logs, downloading, upgrading or deleting Message i-appli.

<Mail & Logs : "Hide secret fldrs">

- When a mail is sent or received to/from a party to be sorted to a folder with secret attribute, it is not notified with newly arrived information or Mail logs.
- Mail from a party to be sorted to a folder with secret attribute do not appear in the newly arrived information area of Info/calendar layout or Unread messages.
- When a received message compatible with Message i-appli is saved in a folder with secret attribute, even if a Message i-appli is downloaded, they are not automatically sorted to the folder for Message i-appli.

<My Picture or i-motion : "Authorized access">

- With a movie/i-motion not in "Preinstalled" folder set for a ring alert or incoming/outgoing call image, it operates as specified in default settings. Functions with a movie/i-motion in "Preinstalled" folder set, if any, operate depending on the priority of ring alert or incoming/outgoing image.
- Movie/i-motion set for the stand-by display are displayed.
- When using data in My picture or i-motion in settings for various functions, an authentication is required. A screen appears indicating that an item for some functions set for hiding is reflected after Privacy mode is canceled.

<My Picture : "Authorized access">

- If an image not in "Preinstalled" folder is set for schedule, it operates as specified in default settings.
- Still images or movies with frames cannot be shot.
- Only the default images are displayed even when Deco-mail picture or Deco-mail pictogram list is displayed during mail creation or editing signature (except when the list is displayed in the decoration selection screen of Deco-mail).

<i-motion : "Authorized access">

- If a movie/i-motion not in "Preinstalled" folder is set for alarm or schedule, it operates as specified in Alarm clock sound or Schedule reminder of Alarm sound. If a movie/i-motion not in "Preinstalled" folder is set for alarm sound, Alarm clock sound or schedule reminder, operations are carried out as specified in default settings.

<Schedule : Except "Show all">

- The Calendar set in Info/calendar layout, a red mark indicating that a Schedule is set does not appear in the upper right of a date.

<Schedule : "Authorized access">

- No schedule area appears for Info/calendar layout.
- The Calendar set in Info/calendar layout, a day set as holiday by Days off for the schedule does not appear in red, it is reset to default settings.
- Schedule reminder does not sound at the specified time.

<Schedule : "Hide set schedule">

- Schedule reminder for a schedule with secret attribute does not sound even when the specified date and time arrive.
- Schedules with secret attribute do not appear in the schedule area of Info/calendar layout. It is not included in the number displayed in No. of items.

<i-appli : "Authorized access">

- Authentication is required to select a folder for Message i-appli or to download i-appli.
- When setting i-appli on the stand-by display with Stand-by display, an authentication is required. A message appears indicating that an item set for hiding is reflected after Privacy mode is canceled.

✓INFORMATION

- If all items except Incoming : privacy mode and Auto start are "Show all", Privacy mode is not activated. If Privacy mode is already activated, it is cancelled.
- Deleting all data or perform "Delete all items" with the functions below also deletes the data hidden in Privacy mode.
 - Redial/Received calls
 - Recorded messages
 - Phonebook entry
 - Setting New announcement
 - Mail*
 - Mail logs
 - Schedule
 - Voice memo
- * Also when you perform an operation except "Delete one item" or "Delete selected item", hidden mails are deleted.
- In Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is "Hide set contact" or Mail & Logs is "Hide secret fldrs"), the newly arrived animation does not operate even if newly arrived information is displayed on the stand-by display by canceling Privacy mode.
- When Phonebook & Logs of Privacy mode is changed from "Show all" or "Authorized access" to "Hide set contact" in Privacy mode, a message appears indicating that Contact setting is to be made to reflect the privacy to mail.
- Depending on the settings of Privacy mode, when using mail or schedule from i-appli in Privacy mode or save data in My Picture, a message may appear indicating that the specified function cannot be performed.
- Once authentication is performed to use the function set to "Authorized access" in Privacy mode, no more authentication is required before returning to the stand-by display. The same situation occurs when using multiple functions set to "Authorized access".
<Example> When sending an image saved in My Picture through mail attachment in Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs and My Picture is "Authorized access"), authentication is not required to display Phonebook on a mail creation screen because it is carried out when displaying My Picture.

◆ Canceling Privacy mode temporarily

On a list screen containing hidden data, etc., you can temporarily cancel the privacy state to display hidden data.

- The temporary cancellation is active until the stand-by display reappears. You may not be able to perform temporary cancellation depending on the screen.

1 On the screen to be temporarily cancelled, (CLR) (1 sec. or more) ▶ Authenticate

◆ Hiding mails from/to senders/receivers with secret attribute in the phonebook <Contact setting>

When performing Contact setting after secret attribute of a phonebook entry is changed or a mail received via data communications is saved to FOMA terminal, secret attribute can be set to sent or received mail and SMS in correspondence with phone numbers or mail addresses in the phonebook entry with secret attribute.

- In Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is "Hide set contact"), mail or SMS with secret attribute does not appear.

1 (MENU) ▶ 8 4 2 2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- If Contact setting is not performed after changing phonebook entry secret attribute or editing the phone book entry, activating Privacy mode does not hide mail or SMS of the changed/edited phonebook entry.
- Mail and SMS to have secret attribute are as follows :
 - Sent/unsent messages or SMS with secret attribute in phonebook entries saved in destination address (TO, CC, BCC)
 - Received messages or SMS sent from phonebook entries with secret attribute
-  appears at the top of the display and the terminal is in the data transfer mode (same condition as out of service area) during Contact setting, the terminal is not available for phone calls, i-mode operation or data communication. Also, you cannot switch to other functions by pressing (MAX).
- When returning to the stand-by display after receiving an external phonebook entry with secret attribute or setting secret attribute for a phonebook entry, a confirmation screen appears asking if you reflect the secret attribute of the phonebook entry to mail. Select "Yes" to perform Contact setting. With Privacy mode inactive, a message appears prompting you to set Privacy mode.

- Performing Contact setting in the cases below causes cancellation of secret attribute for the related mail and/or SMS :
 - When secret attribute of a phonebook entry is canceled
 - When a phonebook entry with secret attribute is changed (targeted at a previous phone number or mail address)
 - When a phonebook entry with secret attribute is deleted (including deletion of the phone number or mail address of the phonebook entry)

Receive display option

Disabling display of a caller's or sender's name, etc. of a call or mail received

- You can set if you display information such as a name when receiving a call or mail from a party saved in the phonebook
- This setting takes priority over the settings of Personal data lock.
 - With "Privacy mode" not set, in Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is "Hide set contact"), this setting takes precedence in operations for incoming calls and mail/messages.
 - Incoming operations with Privacy mode and Receive display option set are as listed below.
 - : Operate depending on the priority of ring alert→ P79
 - : Operate as set in the FOMA terminal regardless of other ring alerts
 - × : Operate no incoming operation

Privacy mode ^{*1}		Receive display option (Call display)			
		Privacy mode	Phone No. only	Caller name only	Caller name+ Phone No.
Phonebook & Logs	Show all	○	○	○	○
	Authorized access	●	○	○	○
	Hide set contact ^{*2}	●	○	○	○
i-motion	Show all	○	○	○	○
	Authorized access ^{*4}	●	●	●	●

Privacy mode ^{*1}		Receive display option (Message display)				
		Privacy mode	Mail address + Subject	Name+ Subject	Ticker	No ticker
Phonebook & Logs	Show all	○	○	○	○	○
	Authorized	●	●	○	●	●
	Hide set contact ^{*2}	×	○	○	○	×
Mail & Logs	Show all	○	○	○	○	○
	Authorized	○	○	○	○	○
	Hide secret fldrs ^{*3}	×	○	○	○	×
i-motion	Show all	○	○	○	○	○
	Authorized ^{*4}	●	●	●	●	●

^{*1} Based on the premise that multiple functions are not set at the same time.

^{*2} Intended only for phonebook entries with secret attribute.

^{*3} Only for when a message is assigned to the folders with secret attribute.

^{*4} Only for when a movie/i-motion not in "Preinstalled" folder is set for ring alert in Alert by contact or Alert by group.

1 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set the required items ▶

Call display : Set if you display a name and phone number when receiving a voice or videophone call.

- With "Privacy mode" set, no names appear in Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is "Authorized access" or "Hide set contact").
- When "Caller name+Phone No." is set, a phone number and name appear for an incoming voice or videophone call.

Message display : Set how to display results of mail reception.

- With "Privacy mode" set, no names appear in Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is "Authorized access" or "Hide set contact"). In Privacy mode (when Mail & Logs is "Authorized access"), the reception result ticker shows only a message indicating mail reception.
- When "Ticker" is set, the reception result ticker shows only a message indicating mail reception.
- When "No ticker" is set, no reception result ticker appears.

Side key hold

Preventing inadvertent operation of side key

This function disables  while FOMA terminal is folded, thus avoiding accidental operations of the terminal (e.g. when carrying in a bag).

1 (1 sec. or more)

 appears on the stand-by display.

C canceling :  (1 sec. or more)

✓INFORMATION

- You can activate Quick answer machine, stop ring alert or vibrator during reception.
- Pressing  with FOMA terminal folded displays the pattern for Side key hold on the sub-display section and then displays a clock.

Lock on close

Locking keypad each time FOMA terminal is folded

When setting Lock on close to "ON", all keys except  and  are locked each time when FOMA terminal is folded. Even when Lock on close is canceled, the authentication screen appears every time FOMA terminal is opened to prevent unauthorized use by others.

To make an emergency call (110, 118 or 119) in Lock on close, enter the emergency call number from a terminal security code entry screen, stand-by display or Lock on close ON screen and press .

* The emergency call number entered on the terminal security code entry screen is masked with "*".

- Lock on close is not activated when the FOMA terminal is in the status below :
 - During a call*
 - While playing melody*
 - While sending location by GPS*
 - Reception by infrared communication
 - During sounding of schedule reminder, alarm clock or Countdown timer (including during snoozing, counting down or in stop state)
 - During updating software
 - Data sending/receiving by USB connection
- * When the operation completes with FOMA terminal folded, Lock on close is activated.

◆ Setting Lock on close "ON"

1 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set the required items ▶

Lock on close : Set if you start Lock on close automatically.

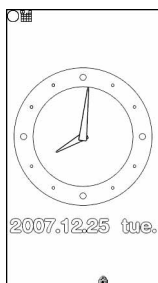
Lock after phone close : Set the time period from closing the FOMA terminal till activating auto start.

- If Lock functions is set to "ON" for Loss protection setting, a message indicating that the loss protection lock is canceled appears. Select "Yes" to set Lock on close to "ON".

◆ When Lock on close is started

Each time FOMA terminal is folded, Lock on close starts on the time set in Lock after phone close and the keys except  and  are locked. Pressing  does not operate Answer machine, Voice memo or Movie memo.

- To cancel Lock on close, open FOMA terminal and perform authentication. When the next screen appears, directly enter terminal security code or perform authentication by pressing  or .



Stand-by display appearing when Lock on close is activated from stand-by display



Stand-by display appearing when Lock on close is activated from a screen except stand-by display

✓INFORMATION

- Even with Lock on close, making a call by pressing the switch of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is available.
- When Lock on close is "ON", it is activated by turning the power OFF and ON. Lock on close is activated after Omakase Lock, if active, is canceled.
- The functions below are available.
 - Turning power ON/OFF
 - Receiving a voice or videophone call
 - Auto update of Data Center
 - Switching displaying/hiding calendar layout
 - Receiving i-mode mail, MessageR/F, SMS*
 - Starting Omakase Lock
 - Reactions to Location request
 - Safety alarm
 - Silent alarm
 - Power OFF notice
 - Keitai search of Omamorimokon
- * When receiving with the FOMA terminal open, none of receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are not taken.

◆ Indicating lock status with a light <Security indicator>

You can set if the status of the loss protection lock or Lock on close is to be notified with sub-display section and light.

1 ▶ Authenticate ▶ or

◆ When Security indicator is set

- If FOMA terminal is folded while Lock on close is "ON", "ON" appears on the sub-display section and the light blinks in blue for approximately 3 seconds. Note that when the light flashes in red for approximately 3 seconds, it indicates that Lock on close was not activated. Folding FOMA terminal blinks the red light for approximately 3 seconds depending on the Lock after phone close. When the specified time has arrived, "ON" appears on the sub-display section and the blue light blinks for approximately 3 seconds to notify that Lock on close has started.
- If Loss protection is activated while it is "ON", "ON" appears on the sub-display section, the light blinks in blue for approximately 3 seconds and the FOMA terminal is locked.

Accepting/rejecting calls from specified phone numbers

Accepting/rejecting incoming call can be set for each phone number saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- To use this function, specifying Accept/Reject call for each phone number and Specified caller setting are required. The settings and the operations of Accept/Reject call are as listed below.

Setting		Accept/Reject call for each phone number		
		Accept call	Reject call	No setting
Specified caller	Cancel settings	Accepted	Accepted	Accepted
	Reject call	Accepted	Rejected*	Accepted
	Accept call	Accepted	Rejected*	Rejected*

- * A call from a specified phone number is disconnected without activating ring alert and the caller hears a busy tone.
- This function is activated only when the other party sends caller ID.
 - Rejected calls are recorded as missed calls.
 - If Ring time is set to "0 Sec." for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the call is not stored as a received call.
 - Combination of Caller ID request service and Anonymous caller is recommended when used.

Specifying phone numbers to accept/reject <Accept/Reject call>

Accepting/rejecting incoming call is set for phone numbers saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook Place the cursor on a phonebook entry to set and 3 5 3 Authenticate Select a phone number 1 - 3

- To accept/reject calls from specified phone numbers, activate settings of Specified caller in succession to the above step.

INFORMATION

- When you change or delete the phone number with Accept/Reject call is set, this setting is canceled. Set Accept/Reject call again for the new number.

Enabling Accepting/rejecting calls from specified numbers <Specified caller>

MENU 9 Authenticate, 43 on 2nd page

- This setting applies to all phone numbers with Accept/Reject call set.
- Reject call and Accept call are not enabled simultaneously.

1 8 5 5 1 Authenticate 1 - 3

INFORMATION

- If a call without caller ID is received from a party you set Reject call, the FOMA terminals response is according to the setting in Anonymous caller regardless of this setting.
- When Accept call is selected with no phonebook data set for Accept call, a message appears indicating to reject all incoming calls. Select "Yes" to reject all incoming calls.
- Regardless of this setting, i-mode mail and SMS are received.

Setting operations for incoming calls not to notify caller ID

MENU 81113

MENU 82426

MENU 9 Authenticate, 42 on 2nd page

For each reason for hiding caller ID, you can set a receiving operation for incoming calls notifying no caller ID.

- For the ring alert and incoming call image for an incoming voice call that does not notify the caller ID, this setting takes precedence over the settings of Call alert (Incoming call).

1  **8** **5** **2** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **1** - **3** ▶ **Set the required items** 

(Incoming operation) : Set operations for incoming calls that do not notify caller ID.

- When setting "Disable settings", the ring tone set in each ring alert setting sounds.
- When setting "Call Rejection", incoming calls from other parties are rejected.
- When setting "Ring alert off", ring alert does not sound. Set an image in "Show image".
- When setting "Melody", select a melody and set an image in "Show image".
- When setting "Movie ringtone", select a movie/i-motion.

Show image : Set an image for incoming calls that do not notify caller ID.

- When "i-motion" is selected, select a movie/i-motion from the movie list.

List images : When "Select image" is selected in Show image, select the List images field and set an image.

✓INFORMATION

- When "Call Rejection" is set, the rejected calls are recorded as missed call.
- When there is an incoming videophone call without caller ID notification, the operations are performed only when "Call Rejection" is set. For other settings, the ring alert and incoming image depend on each ring alert or incoming call image setting.
- If movie/i-motion containing only sound (i-motion without image such as the one containing only singing voice of a singer) is set in "Movie ringtone" for the incoming settings, "Standard image" is set, but the image (except Flash graphic) can be changed by selecting "Select image" from Show image.

Setting not to answer calls from the party not saved in Phonebook

- This function is effective to "One-ring phone scam".
- This function cannot be set when Unregistered caller is "ON".

1  **8** **1** **5** ▶ **Set the required items** 

Delayed ring alert : Specify if you enable Delayed ring alert.

Delay time (sec) : Set the time between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing (1-99 seconds).

Missed call : Set whether to display a missed call which ends in less than the time set in Delay time in Received calls.

❖When Delayed ring alert is set

When a voice call or videophone call is received from a party not saved in Phonebook or such call is received without caller ID notification, the reception is notified only with screen display for the specified period of time. After the set time has elapsed, normal ring alert action starts.

- Before the specified time elapses, ordinary call receiving operation such as answering an incoming call or replying it with Answer machine can be performed.
- This function operates even for incoming call from the other party saved in Phonebook in Personal data lock or Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is "Authorized access").
- This function operates also when there is an incoming call from a party with secret attribute in Phonebook in Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is "Hide set contact").

✓INFORMATION

- The functions and services below are available regardless of this setting.
 - Public mode
 - Answer machine
 - Voice Mail Service
 - Call Forwarding Service
- When there is an incoming call from a party to be rejected because of settings from Specified caller or Anonymous caller, rejective operation takes priority over the settings from this function.
- When Delay time has been set to the same seconds as that for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the ring alert may sound.

Rejecting calls from phone numbers not saved

MENU 9 Authenticate, 44 on 2nd page

- Combination of Caller ID request service is recommended when used.
- This function cannot be set in Personal data lock or when Delayed ring alert of Ring alert delay is "ON".

1 **MENU** **▶** **8** **5** **5** **2** **▶ Authenticate ▶**
1 or **2**

❖ When Unregistered caller is set

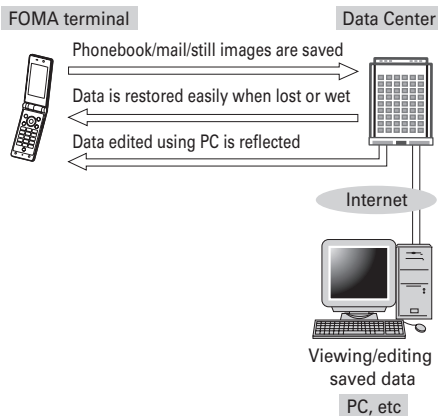
A voice or videophone call from a caller who is not saved in Phonebook is disconnected without activating ring alert and the caller hears a busy tone.

- Rejected calls are recorded as missed calls.
- Calls from a party with secret attribute saved in Phonebook without notifying its caller ID or in Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is "Hide set contact") are rejected. For the receiving operation of an incoming call from a payphone or that notifying no caller ID, this setting takes precedence over those for Anonymous caller.
- Regardless of this setting, i-mode mail and SMS are received.

Data Security Service

This service allows you to store phonebook, mail and/or images (hereinafter, referred to as saved data) saved in FOMA terminal to DoCoMo Data Center. In case data saved in FOMA terminal is lost by misplacement or wetting, you can restore saved data from Data Center through i-mode operations. You can automatically refresh phonebook data of FOMA terminal and that of Data Center at periodical intervals. You can easily edit saved data in Data Center from DoCoMo website using a PC and save the edited data in FOMA terminal.

- For details on Data Security Service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".



* Data Security Service is an optional subscriber service to be charged requiring subscription (i-mode subscription is required for the service).

- For procedures for saving or restoring phonebook, mail and images to/from Data Center, see the related pages. Phonebook→P76, Mail→P179, Image→P229

Other "Security Settings"

In addition to those introduced in this chapter, you can use the functions below and services related to Security settings :

Purpose	Function/service	Page
To reject "Nuisance calls" including malicious calls and repeating misdialed calls	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P280
To reject calls with no caller ID	Caller ID request service	P280
To perform safe and reliable data communications by using the electronic authentication service (FirstPass-compatible sites only)	FirstPass	P143 P158
Update the software if necessary	Software update	P328
Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data	Scanning function	P332
To receive only necessary mail messages selected from mass messages delivered	Receive option	P187
To register/check the safety of relatives by using i-mode when a disaster occurs	"i-mode Disaster Message Board" service	*
To change/check mail address	Change/Confirm Mail Address	
To reject mail containing URL	Preventing spam mail (Rejecting mail with URL)	
To receive/reject only mails from the specified domain	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
To receive/reject mail messages only between i-mode terminals		
To receive/reject mails from the specified address		
To reject receiving SMS	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
To reject the 200th and later i-mode mails sent from one i-mode terminal in one day.	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject unsolicited Ad mails	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To restrict the size of received mail	Limit Mail Size	
To confirm mail settings	Confirm settings	
To stop mail function temporarily	Suspend Mail	
To check approximate location of misplaced FOMA terminal	ケータイお探しサービス (Keitai-Osagashi Service)	

* See "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Camera

Before using camera	124
Shooting still images with Camera	Still camera 127
Recording movies with Camera	Movie camera 130
Setting image size and saving method of still images/movies	Image settings/Recording settings 131
Setting shooting method before shooting	132
Changing setting for shooting	134
Sending still image shot during call	136
Using Bar code reader	Bar code reader 137

Copyrights and portrait rights

The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use of photographs or movies and site (program) or website information obtained by using the FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use. Please refrain from unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. When releasing shot or recorded work on Internet websites, use with care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait rights. Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Before using camera

◆ Using camera

- Though the camera is manufactured using extremely accurate technology, some pixels and lines may always be displayed to be lighter or darker than you expect. Images shot under very low light intensity contain increased noise such as white lines, but it is not a malfunction.
- If FOMA terminal is left in a warm place or exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, images to be shot may be deteriorated.
- When attempting to take a photo of a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp, images may become dark or degraded.
- Depending on the characteristics of the lens, distorted images may be displayed.
- Shooting images under illumination flickering at high frequency such as fluorescent lamp, mercury vapor lamp or sodium vapor lamp may cause the screen to flicker or stripe patterns to appear on the screen, which is called flicker phenomena, giving different coloring for some shooting timings. Flickers or stripes may be reduced by adjusting the brightness for shooting.
- Images shot with the camera may differ from actual subjects in color and brightness, depending on conditions.

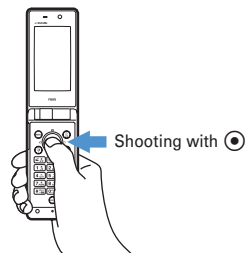
◆ Points of concern when shooting with camera

- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot clean images. Use a soft cloth to remove any such contaminants before taking photos.
- Be careful not to cover the lens with fingers when shooting images.
- Be careful of hand movement. Though FOMA terminal provides shake reduce function, it may become less effective for some shooting environment and/or object. Hold FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not move; or use of Auto timer function with FOMA terminal placed in a stable location is recommended. Shake reduce or auto timer function is only available when shooting still images.
- There is a small time lag between taking a picture and pressing . Do not move FOMA terminal for a while after pressing . If you take a fast moving subject, the image taken might slightly differ from the subject displayed in the screen when pressing .
- If you shoot the quickly moving subjects when recording a movie, the image may be blurred.
- When shooting with the in-camera, the image is displayed as mirrored image but saved as normal image. Note that you can also save the still image as mirrored image. →P127

- Images shot with the camera with i-appli are saved in the i-appli ("i-mode" folder or "Deco-mail picture" folder for some i-appli). In some cases, automatically sent to the server.
- If battery power goes out before saving shot image, the image cannot be saved.
- As the camera consumes the battery power very quickly, do not leave the camera activated for a long time or do not leave shot images unsaved for a long time.
- Some settings may require extra time for an image to be displayed on the shooting screen when starting the camera.
- There are some unavailable functions or settings when Camera is activated from Phonebook, mail or i-appli.

◆ Shooting procedure

When shooting, hold the FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not move.

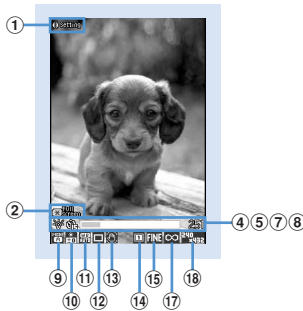


- To avoid blurring when shooting images, use of the shake reduce function is recommended. →P135
- If no operations are performed for approximately 3 minutes during shooting stand-by, camera ends.

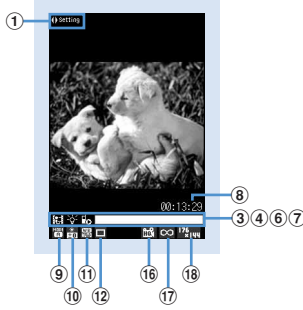
◆ Shooting screen and files

Using the FOMA terminal, shooting with various sizes or shooting modes are available. Still images and movies shot can be attached to i-mode mail to be sent.

❖ Reading shooting screen



Still image shooting screen



Movie recording screen

- ① **Shooting setting guidance**
Press to indicate that shooting settings are enabled.
- ② **Full/standard screen operation guidance**
Press to indicate that switching full/standard screen is enabled.
- ③ **Recording type →P131**
 : Video + Voice : Video only : Voice only
- ④ **Light→P133**
- ⑤ **Auto timer→P132**
- ⑥ **Compatible mode→P133**
- ⑦ **Indicator (Stand-by)**
Indicate the usage rate of the memory. Indicate the remaining time before the shutter is released during counting down of Auto timer.
Indicator (Recording movie/In pause)
Indicate the rate of the recorded image size to the file size set in Size restrictions.

- ⑧ **Counter (Shooting still image)**
Indicate the approximate maximum number of images that can be shot. Indicate the remaining time before the shutter is released during counting down of Auto timer. The total number of shot still images and the maximum number of still images to be shot are indicated during Continuous (Manual), 4 frames (Manual) shoot and continuous panorama shoot.
Counter (Recording movie)
During shooting stand-by, the approximate maximum recording time is indicated. While recording, indicate the elapsed time and remaining time (approximate) with the Size restrictions set.

- ⑨ **Scene mode/effect→P134**
- ⑩ **Brightness→P134**
- ⑪ **White balance→P134**
- ⑫ **Frame→P134**
- ⑬ **Auto correction→P135**
- ⑭ **Continuous shooting→P128, 129**
- ⑮ **Quality→P135**
- ⑯ **Quality→P135**
- ⑰ **Size restriction→P135**
- ⑱ **Image size→P135**

When recording movies in landscape mode (→P133), **STANDBY** (stand-by), **REC** (recording) or **PAUSE** (pausing) indicating camera status and the counter appear. The counter indicates the approximate maximum recording time during stand-by, and the approximate remaining time with the Size restrictions set while recording.

❖ Still image/Movie files

Still image file

File format	Extension
JPEG (Exif format, compatible with PRINT Image Matching III ^{*1})	jpg

Movie file

File format	Encoding method	Extension
MP4 (MobileMP4)	Movie : MPEG4 Sound : AMR	3gp
ASF ^{*2}	Movie : MPEG4 Sound : G.726	asf

^{*1} "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch" of Scene mode/effect is not supported.

^{*2} The file type for Quality "XQ".

- Shooting date/time is automatically set to Display name/Title/File name.
 - An extension is added to a file name, but it does not appear on FOMA terminal.
 - The file name can be changed after shooting. →P238
- Still image file or movie file can be attached to a message to send and also be sent to PCs and other terminals using infrared communication or DoCoMo keitai datalink.

❖ Number of still images saved

The number of savable still images varies by Image size, Size restrictions, Quality or the recording conditions.

- Setting Image size, Size restrictions, Quality→P131
- The table below indicates the number to be displayed in the counter of the still image shooting screen in the default state.

■ Number of still images that can be saved in F801i (approximate)

Image size	Quality		
	Economy	Standard	Fine
Ph.book (96×72)	Approx. 524	Approx. 524	Approx. 524
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Approx. 524	Approx. 524	Approx. 524
QCIF (176×144)	Approx. 524	Approx. 524	Approx. 524
QVGA (240×320)	Approx. 524	Approx. 443	Approx. 277
Standby (240×432)	Approx. 524	Approx. 416	Approx. 251
H-VGA (640×480)	Approx. 242	Approx. 184	Approx. 101
V-VGA (480×640)	Approx. 242	Approx. 184	Approx. 101
SXGA (960×1280)	Approx. 111	Approx. 68	Approx. 38

❖ Recording time of movies

The movie recording time available varies by Size restrictions, Quality, Image size, Recording Type or the recording conditions.

- Setting Size restrictions, Quality, Image size and Recording Type→P131
- The table below indicates the time to be displayed in the counter of the movie recording screen in the default state.

■ Recording time per 1 movie with Size restrictions set (approximate)

- Restriction size for Msg attach:Large/Small→P135
- Each shoot time is the same regardless of the destination to save to.
- If setting Size restriction to "None", each shoot time becomes the same as the total shoot time.

Size restrictions : Msg attach:Small

Image size	Recording Type	Quality			
		LP	STD	HQ	XQ
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Video + Voice	Approx. 83 sec.	Approx. 52 sec.	Approx. 37 sec.	Approx. 19 sec.
	Video only	Approx. 100 sec.	Approx. 63 sec.	Approx. 42 sec.	Approx. 20 sec.
QCIF (176×144)	Video + Voice	Approx. 56 sec.	Approx. 29 sec.	Approx. 20 sec.	Approx. 10 sec.
	Video only	Approx. 63 sec.	Approx. 32 sec.	Approx. 21 sec.	Approx. 10 sec.
QVGA (320×240)	Video + Voice	Approx. 30 sec.	Approx. 15 sec.	Approx. 10 sec.	Approx. 4 sec.
	Video only	Approx. 32 sec.	Approx. 16 sec.	Approx. 11 sec.	Approx. 4 sec.

Size restrictions : Msg attach:Large

Image size	Recording Type	Quality			
		LP	STD	HQ	XQ
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Video + Voice	Approx. 340 sec.	Approx. 214 sec.	Approx. 152 sec.	Approx. 80 sec.
	Video only	Approx. 411 sec.	Approx. 257 sec.	Approx. 172 sec.	Approx. 84 sec.
QCIF (176×144)	Video + Voice	Approx. 228 sec.	Approx. 118 sec.	Approx. 81 sec.	Approx. 41 sec.
	Video only	Approx. 258 sec.	Approx. 129 sec.	Approx. 86 sec.	Approx. 42 sec.
QVGA (320×240)	Video + Voice	Approx. 121 sec.	Approx. 62 sec.	Approx. 42 sec.	Approx. 16 sec.
	Video only	Approx. 129 sec.	Approx. 65 sec.	Approx. 43 sec.	Approx. 16 sec.

■ Recording time of movies that can be saved in F801i (approximate)

The value with Size restrictions set to "None". When Size restrictions is set, the total savable recording time may differ.

Image size	Recording Type	Quality			
		LP	STD	HQ	XQ
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Video + Voice	Approx. 56 min.	Approx. 35 min.	Approx. 25 min.	Approx. 13 min.
	Video only	Approx. 68 min.	Approx. 42 min.	Approx. 28 min.	Approx. 14 min.
QCIF (176×144)	Video + Voice	Approx. 38 min.	Approx. 19 min.	Approx. 13 min.	Approx. 415 sec.
	Video only	Approx. 43 min.	Approx. 21 min.	Approx. 14 min.	Approx. 426 sec.
QVGA (320×240)	Video + Voice	Approx. 20 min.	Approx. 10 min.	Approx. 418 sec.	Approx. 163 sec.
	Video only	Approx. 21 min.	Approx. 10 min.	Approx. 433 sec.	Approx. 165 sec.

Shooting still images with Camera

MENU 631

Various ways of shooting such as continuous shooting or frame shooting are available.

- Shooting method can be selected before shooting. → P132
- The settings for shooting can be changed. → P134
- Shutter sound is emitted even when "Silent" is set for volume settings or in Silent mode or Public mode.
- Maximum number of saved items → P335

1

Still camera starts and enters shooting stand-by state. The light flashes in blue.

2 Point the camera at the object and .

The shutter sound is emitted, the light is lit in red and a still image is shot.

3 Check the shot still image.

Saving immediately : Go to Step 4.

Recording again without saving : 

Switching view to actual size : 

- Press  to check images by scrolling the screen.
- Press any of , , ,  or  to cancel.
- Only images of H/V-VGA (640×480, 480×640) or larger can be displayed in actual size display.

Creating a mail with a still image attached : 

A saving confirmation screen appears. Selecting "Yes" saves it and displays the mail creation screen.

- Depending on the Image size or file size, a confirmation screen for conversion to H/V-QVGA (320×240, 240×320) appears. → P169
- Depending on Image size and Size restrictions, file size adjustment confirmation screen appears. Selecting "No limit" causes the image to be saved without size adjustment and selecting "Msg attach:Small" causes the image to be reduced to less than 90 Kbytes in size and saved.
- When the file size is less than 90 Kbytes, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the message appears.

Setting as the stand-by display :

   ▶ "Yes"

The still image is saved and set for the stand-by display.

- For image size of QCIF (176×144) or less, select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)".

- If i-appli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-appli stand-by display appears.

Adding to phonebook entry (only for image size of Ph.book (96×72)) :    or  ▶ "Yes"

The still image is saved and the phonebook data entry screen appears.

- To update phonebook, select the party to add.

Changing the title :    ▶ **Change the title and **

- Up to 31 characters can be entered (Up to 30 characters for continuously shot images).

Rotating :

An image rotated 90 degrees counterclockwise and clockwise for shooting with out-camera and in-camera, respectively, appears.

- Press  or  to rotate further by 90 degrees.

  ▶ "Yes"

The rotate still image is saved.

- Images cannot be rotated in the cases below :
 - When the frame is set
 - For Continuous(Auto)/(Manual)
 - For Panorama

Adjusting brightness and color balance : 

The edit screen appears. → P228

- Images cannot be adjusted in the cases below :
 - When the Image size is H/V-VGA (640×480, 480×640) or larger
 - When the frame is set for 4-frame shooting
 - When the image is shot using continuous panorama shooting
 - When Scene mode/effect is "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch"

Switching the normal display/mirror display (only while shooting with the in-camera) :

Saving as mirror image (only while shooting with the in-camera) :   

- When a setting frame image to a shot still image, the still image cannot be saved as mirror image.

Displaying the list of images saved :  

4

The shot still image is saved in "Taken picture" folder of My Picture.

Checking the saved still image :  ▶ **Select a still image**

Procedure for displaying sites → P224 Step 2-3 in "Displaying image"

- After checking, press  twice to return to the still image shooting screen.

✓INFORMATION

- Saving shot still images may take a long time depending on the image size or quality.
- When an image with the size of H/V-VGA (640×480, 480×640) or larger is shot with Reduce shake:Auto, extra time is required before the operations below are enabled.
 - Pressing to display image in the actual size
 - Pressing to create new mail
 - Functions that can be initiated by pressing (except title editing by **3** **1** and save destination listing by **8**)
- When the memory for images is not enough or the number of image data exceeds the maximum number of saved items, follow the instructions on the screen and delete unnecessary images or set smaller Image size or lower image quality before shooting.
- Shooting still image during a voice call may interrupt the call.

◆ Shooting continuously <Continuous shooting>

Still images can be shot continuously. There are 4 types of continuous shooting :

Continuous (Auto) : Shoot automatically and continuously the specified number of images (up to 9 still images).

Continuous (Manual) : Shoot manually and continuously the specified number of images (up to 9 still images).

4 frames (Auto) : Shoot automatically 4 frames and makes 1 still image.

4 frames (Manual) : Shoot manually 4 frames and makes 1 still image.

- Still images can be shot at interval of approximately 0.4 seconds in Continuous (Auto) or 4 frames (Auto).
- The number of images to be continuously shot can be set in Continuous shot photos for Image settings.
- Continuous (Auto) and Continuous (Manual) are available for Image sizes listed below.
 - Sub-QCIF (128×96)
 - QCIF (176×144)
 - QVGA (240×320)
 - Standby (240×432)
- 4 frames (Auto) and 4 frames (Manual) are available when the Image size is any one listed below.
 - QVGA (240×320)
 - Standby (240×432)

1 ▶ Place the cursor on the icon of continuous shooting using ▶ Switch the type of continuous shooting using and

The position of continuous shooting icon → P125

: Continuous (Auto) : Continuous (Manual)

: 4 frames (Auto) : 4 frames (Manual)

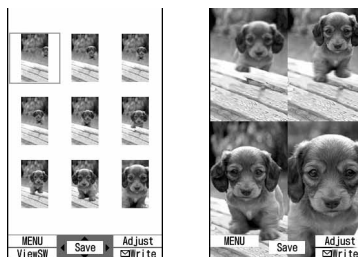
: OFF (Shoot 1 image)

2 Point the camera at the object and .

The shutter sound is heard for shooting 1 image, and the light flashes in red, yellow, green, blue, purple and orange repeatedly in order.

- For Continuous (Manual) or 4 frames (Manual), each time you press , an image is shot.
- After starting shooting with Continuous (Auto) or 4 frames (Auto), folding the FOMA terminal does not stop it.
- During shooting with Continuous (Manual) or 4 frames (Manual), folding the FOMA terminal or pressing stops the shooting, and allows you to go to Step 3. For 4 frames (Manual), the screen returns to the still image shooting screen and still images already shot are discarded.

3 Check the continuously shot still images.



Continuous shooting

4 frames

For Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)

- Each time you press , individual display and thumbnail display switch.
- While an individual display, pressing switches to previous or next still image.
- Only one image shot with Continuous (Manual) is not displayed in thumbnails.

4

The continuously shot images or images shot with 4 frames are saved as a single image data in "Taken picture" folder in My Picture. Continuously shot images are saved in the created animation format. Operations available on the confirmation screen for still image or operations to save still images → P127 Step 3-4 in "Shooting still images with Camera"

Saving only the displayed still image (during shooting with the out-camera in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)) : (1 sec. or more) ► "Yes"

- A still image at cursor position is saved for thumbnail display.

Saving only the displayed still image after switching normal/mirror (during shooting with the in-camera in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)) : (1 sec. or more) ► "Save normal" or "Save mirror"

- A still image at cursor position is saved for thumbnail display.

Selecting selected still images to be saved from still images shot continuously (for thumbnail display in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)) :

① ► **5** **2** ► **Select the still images to save**

- Appears with all the still images selected. Cancel the selection of the still images you do not save by pressing .
- Press to zoom in the still image at the cursor position. Press or **CLR** to return to thumbnail display.

② ► **"Yes"**

The selected still images are saved.

- When shooting with the in-camera, a confirmation screen appears asking if you save the image as normal or mirror.

Saving all still images shot continuously as mirror images (during shooting with in-camera in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)) :

► **5** **3**

✓INFORMATION

- When saving 1 or selected images shot by Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual), the images not selected are discarded.
- The images of the created animation format can be separated to still images by the cancellation function. At this time, individual still image file names are appended numbers "-1" - "-9" to their ends. →P226
Still image file name→P125
- If a call comes in, the date and time specified in Countdown timer, Alarm clock or the schedule comes while recording, the operations below are performed respectively.
 - During continuous (Auto) or 4 frames (Auto), recording continues and a confirmation screen appears after the call or alarm ends.
 - In Continuous (Manual), recording is terminated and a confirmation screen appears.
 - In 4 frames (Manual), recording is terminated and still images already shot are discarded.
 - No ring alert or alarm sound is emitted till the shutter sound ends.
- Shooting in Continuous (Manual), 4 frames (Manual), or Panorama is disabled with Auto timer set.
- Continuous shooting is set separately for the in- and out-cameras.

◆ Making continuous panorama shooting <Panorama>

2-8 still images continuously shot changing the FOMA terminal direction toward the object can be connected to form 1 still image.



Approximately one fifth area of the previously shot image is transparently displayed on the left or top of the shooting screen.



- Image size, maximum image size and maximum number of shot images are as shown below.

Image size		Maximum image size	Maximum number of shot images
QVGA (240×320)		1,584×320	8
		2,112×240	
Standby (240×432)		1,200×432	6
		2,160×240	
H-VGA (640×480)		2,176×480	4
		1,632×640	
V-VGA (480×640)		1,632×640	4
		2,176×480	

* or appears at the bottom left of the display.

The green arrow indicates the direction for shooting the next image.

- Continuous panorama shooting cannot be operated in the cases below :
 - When Still camera is started from Phonebook or i-apply
 - Shooting with in-camera
 - Frame in use
 - During i-apply
 - When Size restrictions has been set to "Msg attach:Small" or "Msg attach:Large"
 - When Auto timer is set
 - When Scene mode/effect is "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch"

1 ► **6** **5**

The continuous shooting icon changes from to .

- Press to switch the direction of continuous panorama shooting.

Canceling : ► **6** **6**

2 Point the camera at the object and .

Shutter sound is heard and still images are shot. Successively shift the FOMA terminal rightward or downward, and perform shooting. Each time you press , the light flashes in red, yellow, green, blue, purple and orange in order.

- During continuous panorama shooting, approximately one fifth area of the previously shot still image is transparently displayed on the connection side. Shoot the next image overlaying the transparent area.
- With guide line activated, the transparent area for the next shooting can be confirmed.

Displaying guide line→P133

Stitching : Shoot 2 or more images and

- If the maximum number images are shot, they are automatically stitched.
- If you shoot 1 image and press , shooting is terminated and the shot image is discarded.

Stopping :

The shot images are discarded.

3 Check the still image of continuous panorama shooting.

Switching view to actual size :

- Press  to scroll the screen.
- Press any of , , ,  or  to cancel.

Auto scroll :

- Press  to pause/restart scrolling the screen.
- Press any of , , ,  or  to stop.

4

A single image is composed and saved in "Taken picture" folder of My Picture.
Operations on the confirmation screen of still images or operations when saving still images→P127 "Shooting still images with Camera" Step 3-4

✓INFORMATION

- Images may not be connected smoothly depending on the object or how to shoot.
- When there is an incoming call or the date and time specified in Alarm clock or schedule has come during continuous panorama shooting, the shooting stops and the shot still images up to that point are discarded.

Movie camera

Recording movies with Camera

MENU 632

Movies with sound can be recorded.

- Shooting method can be selected before shooting.→P132
- The settings for shooting can be changed.→P134
- A shutter sound is emitted even when volume setting is "Silent" or in Silent mode or Public mode.
- Maximum number of saved items→P335

1 (1 sec. or more)

Movie camera starts and enters shooting stand-by state. The light flashes in blue.

2 Point the camera at the object and .

-  appears on the display and recording starts after a shutter sound is emitted. The light flashes in red.
- Press  to pause. If you pause, the shutter sound is emitted, the light turns on in green and  is switched to . If you press  again, the shutter sound is emitted and the recording is restarted.

3

A shutter sound is emitted and recording movie ends.

- When file size reaches the limit value, recording ends.
- Recording ends even in pause.

4 Check the recorded movie.

- The recorded movie can be played by pressing .

Saving immediately : Go to Step 5.

Recording again without saving :

Attaching recorded movie to mail :

- A saving confirmation screen appears. Selecting "Yes" saves it and displays the mail creation screen.
- Recorded movies cannot be attached to mail in the cases below :
 - If the file size of the movie is larger than 2 Mbytes
 - When Quality is "XQ (Extra high)"

Setting as the stand-by display (Stand-by i-motion)

:  ►   ► "Yes"

The movie is saved and set for the stand-by display.

- When the movie can be enlarged, you can select "Yes (Same size)" to display without changing the size and select "Yes (Large size)" to fit the screen size on the stand-by display.
- If i-appli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-appli stand-by display appears.

- When Quality is "XQ (Extra high)", setting for the stand-by display is unavailable.

Adding to Phonebook entry : ► ► or ► "Yes"

The movie is saved and the phonebook data entry screen appears.

- The movie can be added to phonebook data, only when Recording Type is set to "Video only".
- When Quality is "XQ (Extra high)", setting for the image of phonebook data entry is unavailable.
- To update phonebook, select the party to add.

Changing the title : ► ► Change the title and

- Up to 31 characters can be entered.
- When Quality is "XQ (Extra high)", the title cannot be changed.

Displaying the list of movies saved : ►

5

The recorded movie is saved in "Taken video" folder of i-motion.

Checking the saved movie : ► Select the movie to check

Procedure for displaying movie→P230 Step 2-3 in "Playing movie/i-motion"

- Press twice to return to the movie recording screen.

✓INFORMATION

- When FOMA terminal is folded during recording, the recording is stopped. The confirmation screen appears when the FOMA terminal is opened again.
- Depending on data you record, recording may be stopped before the file size reaches the limit set for Size restrictions.
- Data may not be saved when the battery runs out during shooting or recording data.
- When the memory for movie/sound is not enough or the number of movie/sound data exceeds the maximum number of saved items, follow the instructions on the screen and delete unnecessary movies/sound or change the setting of size restriction before shooting.
- When there is an incoming call or the date and time specified in Countdown timer, Alarm clock or schedule comes while shooting or recording, the shooting or recording immediately stops and a confirmation screen appears.
- When the battery is almost exhausted during shooting or recording, shooting or recording is stopped.
- If an alarm or battery alarm sounds during shooting/recording and shooting/recording is stopped, the alarm or battery alarm may be recorded at the end of the saved movie.

Image settings/Recording settings

Setting image size and saving method of still images/movies

Shooting conditions such as image size, quality, type of recording and size restrictions can be set.

- Functions that can be set differ depending on still images and movies.
- Default settings
Image size : For Still camera (OUT camera) "Standby(240×432)", (IN camera) "QCIF(176×144)", For Movie camera "QCIF(176×144)" Size restrict/Size restrictions : "None" Quality : "Fine" Quality : "HQ(High quality)" Recording Type : "Video + Voice" Continuous shot photos : 9 images Auto save : "No" Shutter sound : "Standard" key assign : "Camera switch" Set lighting : "Always on"

<Example> Changing Image settings

1 ► ►

Changing Recording settings : (1 sec. or more) ► ►

2 Set the required items ►

Image size : For still images, a setting screen appears and you can check the applicable functions (→P135). The settings are separate for the IN/OUT cameras.

Size restrict : Set the size restriction of the file to be saved (→P135). For still images, the settings are separate for the IN/OUT cameras.

Quality : Set only for shooting still images.→P135

Quality : Not set for shooting still images. The setting is separate for movie and sound recorder.→P135

Recording Type : Not set for shooting still images. If "Voice only" is set, the sound recorder is set.→P244

Continuous shot photos : Set only for shooting still images. The number of images to be continuously shot can be set for Continuous (Auto) and Continuous (Manual).→P128

Auto save : Set to "Yes" to save the shot still image/movie or recorded sound without displaying the confirmation screen.

Shutter sound : Select the sound to be emitted when shooting or recording. Placing the cursor on the shutter sound emits each sound.

key assign : Set a function to be assigned to . For "Camera switch", switching between the in-camera and out-camera is set (→P133). For "Movie camera" and "Still camera", switching between the movie camera and still camera is set (→P133).

Set lighting : Follows "Normal use" of Display light time with "Phone settings" set (→P88) and remains always on with "Always on" set.

✓INFORMATION

- On the Still image settings screen, press  to display the number of images that can be shot. The displayed value is the number of images that can be shot with the in-camera when the cursor is on "Image size:IN camera" or "Size restrict:IN Cam" and with the out-camera when not. The number displayed here is an approximate value.
- On the Recording settings screen, press  to display the recording time available for movie/sound. The recording time of movie/sound displayed here is an approximate value.
- The image size of SXGA (960×1280) for still image and "Msg attach:Small" for size restriction cannot be set at the same time.
- The setting of shutter sound is reflected to Shutter sound and Movie camera sound in System sound.→P81

Setting shooting method before shooting

Various ways of shooting such as Zoom, Auto timer, Macro shooting and Light are available for camera of the FOMA terminal.

- Shooting after setting→P127 "Shooting still images with Camera", 130 "Recording movies with Camera"

◆ Zooming

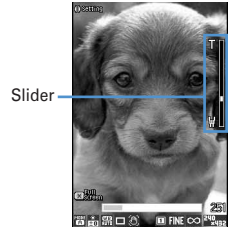
Change shooting magnifications and shoot an object by zooming.

- The image sizes and available magnifications are as shown below.

Type of Camera	Image size	Maximum magnification display (times)	
		Shooting still image	Recording movie
Out-camera	Ph.book (96×72)	Approx. 16.0 (32 scales)	—
	Sub-QCIF (128×96)		Approx. 16.0 (8 scales)
	QCIF (176×144)	Approx. 12.0 (32 scales)	Approx. 12.0 (7 scales)
	H-QVGA (320×240) (portrait)	—	Approx. 4.0 (3 scales)
	H-QVGA (320×240) (landscape)	—	Approx. 8.0 (5 scales)
	QVGA (240×320)	Approx. 8.0 (32 scales)	—
	Standby (240×432)	—	—
	H-VGA (640×480)	Approx. 3.0 (32 scales)	—
	V-VGA (480×640)	Approx. 4.0 (32 scales)	—
	SXGA (960×1280)	Approx. 2.0 (6 scales)	—

Type of Camera	Image size	Maximum magnification display (times)	
		Shooting still image	Recording movie
In-camera	Ph.book (96×72)	Approx. 2.0 (2 scales)	—
	Sub-QCIF (128×96)		Approx. 2.0 (2 scales)
	QCIF (176×144)		
	H-VGA (640×480)	—	—

1 On the movie recording screen, .



Each time you press the key, the slider scale shifts and zooming factor changes.

During still image shooting

The range available is from  (Standard) to  (Maximum zoom) for out-camera, and 1 (Standard) and 2 for in-camera.

During movie recording

The values available are ×1 (Standard), ×2, ×4, ×6, ×8, ×10, ×12, and ×16.

◆ Using Auto timer <Auto timer>

Since the shutter is automatically released after the specified time elapses, you can take your own picture and avoid blurring of images due to hand movement.

1 On the still image shooting screen,

   - 

 -  appears indicating the number of seconds before the shutter is released.

Canceling :   

2 Point the camera at the object and .

Synchronized with the countdown sound, the light flashes in green. An approximate remaining time before shooting and the remaining number of seconds are displayed on the indicator and counter. Frequencies of the countdown sound and light flashing go faster when the remaining time is reduced to a few seconds.

When the countdown finishes, the shutter sound is emitted, the light turns on in red and a still image is shot.

The position of Auto timer icon→P125

Canceling : 

✓INFORMATION

- The countdown stops in the cases below :
 - When the FOMA terminal is folded
 - When a call comes in
 - When the date and time specified in Countdown timer, Alarm clock or schedule comes
 - When is pressed
- Auto timer cannot be used in the cases below :
 - In Continuous (Manual) shooting
 - In 4 frames (Manual) shooting
 - In Panorama shooting

◆ Turning on/off the light

- You cannot turn light on with the In-camera.

1 On the movie recording screen, .

The light is turned on in white and appears.

◆ Shooting nearby object <Macro shooting>

You can focus on the subject approximately 6-10 cm away from the camera.

- Macro shooting is unavailable for shooting with the in-camera.

1 On the shooting screen, switch the Macro switch to .

- To cancel, switch the Macro switch to .

◆ Switching to Compatible mode

Playable movie can be recorded regardless of the model of the FOMA terminal.

- Size restrictions is limited to "Msg attach:Small", Quality is limited to "HQ(High quality)" or lower, and Image size is limited to "QCIF(176×144)" or smaller.

1 On the movie recording screen, .

The camera is switched to Compatible mode and appears.

Canceling : On the movie recording screen,



◆ Switching Full screen mode and Standard screen mode

The Full screen displays no icons or guide area and is convenient for checking the object.

1 On the still image shooting screen, .

◆ Switching portrait/landscape recording

- Switching is enabled only in shooting stand-by state.

1 On the movie recording screen, .

- You can switch only when shooting with the out-camera and the image size is QVGA (320×240).

◆ Switching in-camera and out-camera

1 On the still image shooting screen or movie recording screen, .

- Even when the camera is switched, settings of Scene mode/effect, etc. are kept.
- Even when movie shooting is in pause, switching in- and out-cameras is enabled if their image sizes are the same.

✓INFORMATION

- You cannot switch to the in-camera when recording a movie with Quality set to "XQ (Extra high)".
- When key assign (→P131) is set to Movie camera/Still camera, press and hold for 1 second or more to switch.

◆ Switching still image shooting and movie recording

1 On the shooting/recording screen, (1 sec. or more).

✓INFORMATION

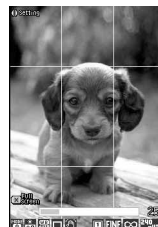
- When key assign (→P131) is set to Movie camera/Still camera, switching with (1 sec. or more) is disabled, but switching with is enabled.

◆ Displaying guide line

1 On the still image shooting screen, .

Guide line appears.

- You can switch Guide line ON/OFF each time you press .
- Guide line cannot be displayed when a frame is set for the image.



Guide line display

Changing setting for shooting

Settings of Scene mode/effect, Brightness, White balance, Frames, Auto correction, Quality, Size restrictions, Image size and Adjust flicker can be changed.

- When "Voice only" is set in Recording Type for recording movies, the settings except Quality and Size restrictions cannot be changed.

◆ Setting using icons on display

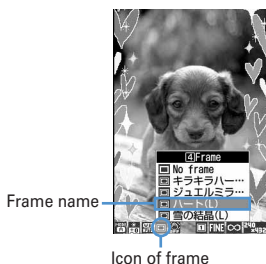
You can change settings for shooting by placing the cursor on an icon at the bottom of the shooting screen.

<Example> Setting Frames

1 On the shooting/recording screen, Place the cursor on the frame icon

- During shooting stand-by, you can also press  to select the frame icon.

2 to switch the frame.



Canceling :  (1 sec. or more)

- When the cursor is placed on the frame icon, selecting "No frame" cancels the frame.

3

◆ Setting shooting modes

Shooting modes can be applied to still images/movies being shot according to the shooting conditions or your preference.

 : Auto  : Portrait*1  : Landscape
 : Night scene*1  : Backlight  : Sport
 : Texts*1  : Monotone  : Sepia
 : Monochrome sketch*1, 2, 3
 : Colored sketch*1, 2, 4

*1 Cannot be set for movie recording.

*2 This is disabled when Camera is activated from i-αppli.

*3 Make the still image look as if it is sketched by pencil.

*4 Make an image like a pencil sketch with watercolors.

✓INFORMATION

- On the shooting screen, press  to enable selecting a shooting mode from a list. Below the shooting mode list, description of the shooting mode at the cursor position appears.
- When set to "Night scene" for Still camera, continuous shooting/4 frames in Auto is unavailable.
- Only images of Standby (240×432) or smaller can be set to "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch" for Still camera.
- When set to "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch" for Still camera, Continuous shooting/4 frames/Panorama are unavailable.
- When set to other than "Auto", settings of "White balance" cannot be changed. The setting of "Brightness" is kept until changed to "Auto".

◆ Adjusting brightness

Adjust brightness of still images or movies to be shot in 5 levels : -2 to +2.

✓INFORMATION

- Adjusting brightness may not have sufficient effects for the display depending on the still image or movie to be shot.

◆ Adjusting white balance

When shooting under natural and/or artificial light, a color tone matching the atmosphere can be adjusted.

 : Auto  : Sunlight  : Cloudy  : Fluorescent light
 : Bulb light

✓INFORMATION

- This adjustment can be set only for "Auto" set for Scene mode/effect.

◆ Shooting with frame added

Frames saved in FOMA terminal or downloaded from sites can be added for shooting.

 : Frame  : No frame

The frames saved in the FOMA terminal by default are applicable to image sizes QCIF (176×144), QVGA (240×320) and Standby (240×432).

- Frame is available when the Image size is as follows :
 - Sub-QCIF (128×96)
 - QCIF (176×144)
 - QVGA (240×320)*
 - Standby (240×432)*
- * Only for shooting still image
- Frame is not available when Camera is started from Phonebook, mail creation screen or i-αppli.

❖INFORMATION

- On the shooting screen, you can select frame from the frame list by pressing (3) (1).
- When a frame size shifted 90 degrees from the display image size is selected, the frame appears rotated clockwise 90 degrees. To rotate the frame 180 degrees, press (3) (3).
- A frame downloaded and saved from a site while shooting may be unavailable unless it is updated by returning to the shooting screen and pressing (3) (4).

❖Reducing camera shake

During still image shooting, blurring that is easily caused by handheld shooting can be corrected.

Auto : Correct the blurring.

OFF : Cancel the setting.

❖INFORMATION

- In the cases below, the setting becomes OFF.
 - For Continuous(Auto)/(Manual)
 - For 4 frames (Auto)/(Manual)
 - For Panorama
 - Shooting with in-camera
 - When Still camera is started from i-appli
 - During i-appli
- Auto correction function cannot completely correct camera shake. The effect depends on the object and/or shooting conditions. It may become less effective for excessive camera shake or object movement.

❖Setting quality of still image/movie

- The number of shooting images and recording time depend on Quality. →P126

During still image shooting

FINE : Fine **ST** : Standard **ECO** : Economy

During movie recording

XQ (Extra high) **HQ** (High quality)

STD (Standard) **LP** (Long play)

❖Restricting file size

- Set Size restrictions to other than "None" when the file shot/recorded is attached to the i-mode mail to be sent.

During still image shooting

When the file size becomes larger than the limit, the file is shrunk and saved.

None : No restriction for file size.

Msg attach:Large : Restrict file size to 2 Mbytes.

Attach to i-mode mail without changing file size.

Msg attach:Small : Restrict file size to 90 Kbytes. This file size is suited for being attached to i-mode mail.

During movie recording

When file size reaches the limit value, recording ends.

None : No restriction for file size.

Msg attach:Large : Restrict file size to 2 Mbytes. A movie of this file size can be sent to terminals which supports large capacity mail.

Msg attach:Small : Restrict file size to 500 Kbytes. A movie of this file size can be sent to terminals which does not support large capacity mail by attaching to i-mode mail.

❖INFORMATION

- Size restrictions setting may be changed automatically depending on Image size for still image.

❖Setting image size

- You can set the image sizes below :

During still image shooting

96x72 : Ph.book **128x96** : Sub-QCIF
 176x144 : QCIF **240x176** : QVGA*1
 240x320 : Standby*1,2 **640x480** : H-VGA*2,3
 480x640 : V-VGA*1,2,3 **960x720** : SXGA*1,2,3

During movie recording

128x96 : Sub-QCIF **176x144** : QCIF **320x240** : QVGA*1

*1 These image sizes are enabled only when shooting with the out-camera.

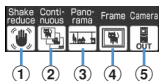
*2 When attaching to i-mode mail, a confirmation screen for converting into QVGA size appears.

*3 Cannot be selected when Scene mode/effect is set to "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch".

- The maximum size of an image file that can be sent to i-mode terminal is 2 Mbytes.

✓INFORMATION

- Size restrictions setting may be changed automatically depending on Image size for still image.
- When making settings from the still image settings screen after pressing **(MENU)** **(9)** on the still image shooting screen, the icons below appear on the image size selection screen. These icons indicate the functions available for the image size on which the cursor is placed. Icons of unavailable functions are displayed in gray.



Icons appearing on image size set screen

- ① Shake reduce
 - ② Continuous shooting
 - ③ Panorama
 - ④ Frame
 - ⑤ Out-camera/in-camera
- : Available to shoot with out-camera/in-camera
- : Available to shoot with out-camera only
- Pressing **(MENU)** on the image size selection screen displays the number of images that can be shot. The number displayed here is an approximate value.

◆ Adjust flicker

Adjusting flicker of still image or movie to shoot can suppress the flicker phenomena in which Fringe patterns occur under illumination such as fluorescent lights.

- Reflected to the flicker adjustment settings of Videophone and Bar code reader.
- This setting is kept even when Camera is ended.

1 On the still image shooting screen or the movie recording screen,

(MENU) **(2)** **(3)** **(1)** - **(3)**

Auto : Make automatic adjustment to eliminate flickering. Usually, set Auto.

50Hz (East-Japan) : Make adjustment to match the power frequency in eastern Japan.

60Hz (West-Japan) : Make adjustment to match the power frequency in western Japan.

- If flickering still remains in "Auto", set "50Hz (East-Japan)" or "60Hz (West-Japan)" according to the area you stay.

✓INFORMATION

- Even with Adjust flicker set to other than "Auto", flicker may persist in a place with a strong light source such as a fluorescent light.
- When the shake reduce function is used with Adjust flicker set to "Auto", Adjust flicker may not function satisfactorily. In such a case, it is recommended to set Adjust flicker according to the area you stay.

◆ Restoring default shooting/recording settings

- The settings of Scene mode/effect, Brightness, White balance and Adjust flicker are reset to the default settings.

1 On the still image shooting screen or the movie recording screen,

(MENU) **(2)** **(4)** **(Yes)**

Sending still image shot during call

When shooting a still image during a voice call, you can attach it to i-mode mail and then send it to the party you are talking with.

1 During a call, **(Shoot a still image)**

Shooting method→P127 "Shooting still images with Camera"

- The shot still images are displayed as thumbnails after the continuous shoot. Press **(X)** to place the cursor on a still image to be sent.

2 **(Yes)**

The shot still image is saved and the mail creation screen appears.

- Depending on the image size or file size of the shot still image, a confirmation screen for conversion to H/V-QVGA (320×240, 240×320) appears.→P169
- Depending on Image size and Size restrictions, a file size adjustment confirmation screen for the shot still image appears. Selecting "No limit" causes the image to be saved without size adjustment. Selecting "Msg attach:Small" causes the image to be reduced to less than 90 Kbytes in size and saved in FOMA terminal.
- When the shot or saved still image file is less than 90 Kbytes in size, a confirmation screen of pasting to message appears.
- When the mail address of the other party is saved in Phonebook, it is automatically entered as the destination.
- When returning to the shooting screen without creating i-mode mail, press **(CLR)**. To stop shooting, press **(CLR)** on the shooting screen.

3 Edit the i-mode mail

When the i-mode mail has been sent, the screen returns to the shooting stand-by state. Press **(CLR)** or **(X)** to stop the shooting and return to the talking screen.

Using Bar code reader

Data such as text and number contained in JAN, QR, NW7 or CODE39 code can be read using the camera. The scanned data can be added to Phonebook or Bookmark or used for Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions.

- Store up to 5 scanned data.
- Bar code reader can be used only with the out-camera.
- QR code may not be scanned depending on the version (type and size).
- NW7 and CODE39 codes have a large width and may be unfocused and fail in recognition when trying to display the entire code on the screen. Such code is easily recognized when FOMA terminal is brought close to the center of the code until it is focused.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, low print quality and the strong reflection of light may disable code reading.
- Activate Bar code reader from the character entry screen and enter the scanned data directly. → P272

❖ JAN code



JAN code is a bar code representing a number with vertical lines (bars) of different widths. The bar code of 8 digits (JAN8) or 13 digits (JAN13) can be read.

JAN code shown above represents the numeral data "4942857315721".

❖ QR code



QR code is the 2-dimensional codes representing a string of alphanumeric, kanji, hiragana, katakana, pictograms or data such as melody and image with the vertical and horizontal patterns.

QR code shown above represents the text data "株式会社 NTTドコモ".

❖ NW7 code



NW7 code is a bar code representing alphanumeric characters with vertical lines (bars) of different widths. Bar code with up to 20 characters, a 2-character start symbol and a 2-character end symbol can be read. NW7 code shown above represents numeral data "A123456789012A".

❖ CODE39 code



CODE39 code is a bar code representing alphanumeric characters and symbols with vertical lines (bars) of different widths. Bar code with up to 20 characters, a 2-character start symbol and a 2-character end symbol can be read.

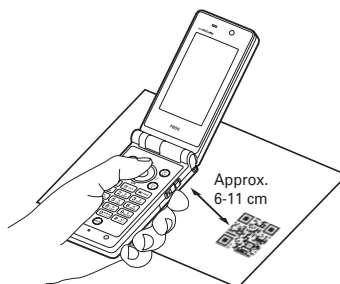
CODE39 code shown above represents numeral data "*123456ABC*".

◆ Scanning code



Bar code reader starts and  appears indicating that the bar code is being scanned.

- When distance between the camera and the code to be scanned is short, switch the Macro switch to  to change the camera into Macro shooting mode, and place the camera approximately 6-11cm away from the code to scan.



- During Bar code reader stand-by, the operations are enabled :
 : Zoom ON  : Zoom OFF
 : Switching of Light ON () and Light OFF (No icon)
- Switch the Macro switch to  before scanning large size codes. The readability of code may be raised by setting zoom OFF.

Switching to normal still image shooting or movie recording : (MENU) ▶ (3) ▶ (1) or (2)

- When Bar code reader has not been started from Camera or the stand-by display, the switching is unavailable.

Adjusting flicker : (MENU) ▶ (1) ▶ (1)-(3)

Select the power supply frequency of your area. When selecting "Auto", the power supply frequency is adjusted automatically.

- This setting is kept even when Camera is ended.
- Reflected to the flicker adjustment settings of Videophone and Camera.

2 Adjust the camera to the code.

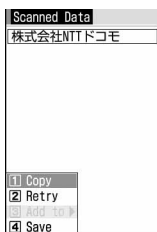
The code is automatically scanned. A confirmation sound is played when code scanning is complete and the scanned data is displayed.



- If scanned data exceeds 11,000 one-byte characters or 5,500 two-byte characters, exceeded characters do not appear, but can be saved.

Rescanning code : (□)

3 (MENU) ▶ (4)



The scanned data is saved.

- When 5 data items have already been saved or the memory for data is not enough, a confirmation screen of deleting saved data appears.

Copying text information in scanned data :

(MENU) ▶ (1) ▶ Select a copying area

Copy/Paste information→P273

✓INFORMATION

- During Bar code reader stand-by, (📷) icon is changed to (📞).
- If the code is hard to read, it may be read by adjusting the distance between the code and out-camera, the angle or direction of the out-camera, etc.

- With Call alert volume and Mail/Msg alert vol. in Adjust volume are both "Silent" or in Silent mode or Public mode, no confirmation sound is emitted when scanning code.

❖ Scanning divided QR codes

When one data item is divided into multiple (up to 16) QR codes, scan them one by one following the instructions on the display.



Indicates the remaining number of QR codes to be scanned and total number of QR codes.

The number of squares displayed is the same as that of QR codes. The squares already scanned are displayed in blue, those not yet scanned in gray and the one scanned the last in green.

- Press (CLR) and select "Yes" to cancel scanning.

◆ Using scanned data after saving

<Example> Adding data to the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook

1 (MENU) ▶ (6) (1) ▶ (□) ▶ Select the scanned data

Deleting scanned data : Place the cursor on the scanned data (MENU) ▶ (3) ▶ (1) or (2) ▶ "Yes"

- When "All codes" is selected, perform authentication.

2 Place the cursor on the data to add to Phonebook and (MENU) ▶ (3) ▶ (1) or (2) ▶ (1) or (2)

The phonebook data entry screen appears with the selected data entered.

Adding all data to Phonebook at a time : "Add to phonebook" ▶ (1) or (2)

The phonebook data entry screen appears with name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday, note, postal code/address and URL entered.

Sending i-mode mail : Mail address or "Compose message"

The mail creation screen with the mail address entered appears.

- Mail address, subject and text are already entered when "Compose message" is selected.

Connecting site or Internet website : Select a

URL ► "Yes"

Saving URL as bookmark :

① Place the cursor on the URL and   

- Select "Add bookmark" to save.

② Select a folder where the bookmark is saved.

The next procedure→P147 Step 2 in "Recording in Bookmark"

- When "Add bookmark" is selected, the site name is entered for the title.

Starting i-appli : "Start i-appli".

Making a voice or videophone call : Select a phone number ► Set a condition for dialing ►  ► "Yes"

Making a call under set conditions→P52

Saving a still image file : Select a still image file ► "Save"

The next procedure→P150 Step 2 and the following steps in "Downloading images"

However, select the destination to save from either folder of "Deco-mail picture" or "Data transfer" of My Picture.

- Selecting "Display" displays the still image file.

Saving melody data : Select a melody data ► "Save"

The next procedure→P151 Step 3 in "Downloading melodies"

Note that the destination to save is "Data transfer" folder of Melody.

- Selecting "Play" plays the melody data.

✓INFORMATION

- Bar code reader can also be activated while the camera or the i-appli that supports bar code reader is activated. When Bar code reader is activated from i-appli, the scanned data is saved and used by i-appli.
- The file name of the scanned data is reading date/time + file number + extension. Extension is "jan" for JAN code, "qr" for QR code, "nw7" for NW7 code and "c39" for CODE39 code. When there is already a data saved on the same date/time, the file number is incremented by 1. The file name cannot be changed.

i-mode/i-motion

i-mode	142
Displaying sites	
Displaying sites	142
Reading and operating sites	144
Using My Menu	My Menu 145
Changing i-mode password	Change i-mode password 146
Displaying websites	Go to location 146
Recording websites and sites for quick browsing	Bookmark 147
Saving site contents	Screen memo 149
Downloading data such as images and melodies from sites	
Downloading various data (files) from sites	150
Useful functions of i-mode	
Useful functions of i-mode	152
Making i-mode settings	
Making i-mode settings	i-mode settings 153
Using Message Service	
When MessageR/F is received	Receive MessageR/F 155
Displaying MessageR/F stored in FOMA terminal	MessageR/MessageF 156
Using Certificate	
Operating certificate	157
Using i-motion	
i-motion	160
Downloading i-motion from sites	160
Setting Auto play of i-motion	i-motion setting 161

i-mode

With i-mode, you can use online services such as site (Program), Internet or i-mode mail by way of the display of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal).

- i-mode is an optional subscriber service to be charged requiring subscription.
- For details of i-mode, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Before using i-mode

- The contents of sites (programs) and Internet websites are usually protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data imported to your i-mode terminal from a site (program) or website cannot be altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.
- When inserting a UIM except yours or you turn on FOMA terminal without UIM, still images/i-motion/ melodies downloaded from sites, attached files sent/received by mail (still image, movie or melody, etc.), screen memos and Message R/F for some models cannot be displayed or played.
- When data with UIM operation restriction is set for the stand-by display or ring alert, replacing UIM with another one or turning the power ON with no UIM inserted changes the settings back to the default.

◆ Access Restriction Service

There are 3 service menus for access restriction from i-mode to site enable necessary i-mode access restriction for your child.

- Access Restriction Service is an optional free subscriber service requiring subscription.

◆ キッズ i モードフィルタ (Kids' i-mode Filter)

You can access only the i-mode menu site.

- You cannot access sites on マイボックス (My box) (excluding ドコモプレミアクラブ・サイト (DoCoMo premier club site)).

◆ i モードフィルタ (i-mode Filter)

You cannot access general sites relevant to dating sites, sites showing pornography, etc.

◆ Time Restriction

You can restrict access to all sites using i-mode for the duration from the night-time to the early morning (22:00-06:00 on the next morning).



* The display shown here is an example.

We arrange a site that provides access to contents for kids. The contents are displayed in easy phrases and with easy characters (hiragana characters) to use easily for kids.

To use キッズ i メニュー (Kids' iMenu), Access Restriction Service subscription is required.

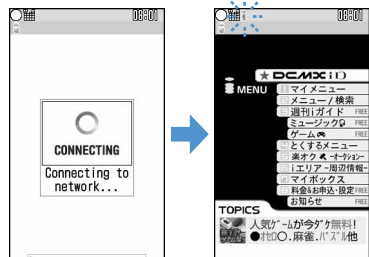
Displaying sites

MENU 21

You can connect to i-mode to view various sites.



Blinking while using i-mode

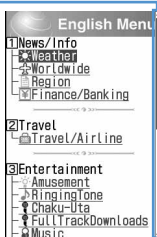


- On the connecting screen, (C): Canceling connecting
- Items with numbers such as 1 or 2 may be selected by pressing the keypads corresponding to the item (Direct key function).

2 "English iMenu" ▶ "Menu List"

Scroll bar

- The current position relative to the whole display appears temporarily while downloading a page or when all lines are not displayed during a screen scrolling etc.



- You can set if you display the scroll bar. → P145
- while downloading a page : Stopping downloading a page

3 Select an item to view.

The site is connected. Display the desired pages using the same procedure.

4 When you quit viewing a site, ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- Press and select "iMenu" to return to iMenu (in Japanese) during a site display.
- When the serial number of your mobile phone/UIM is required from the site, a confirmation screen appears whether to send data. When "Yes" is selected, the serial number of your mobile phone/UIM is sent. The serial number of your mobile phone/UIM sent are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify you when providing you with customized information or judging whether the contents provided by the IP (Information Provider) are available on your mobile phone.

Since the serial number of your mobile phone/UIM is sent to the IP (Information Provider) via Internet, there is a possibility that it could be captured during transmission by third parties. This operation causes none of your phone number, address, age or gender to be informed to the IP (Information Provider).

- When displaying a site including an image, the icons below may appear instead of the image :

: When Image is "Not display" in Image & Effect

: When the image data is invalid or the image cannot be found, or when the image cannot be received because FOMA terminal goes out of service area during image reception.

: When displaying is disabled for an incorrect URL of the image, etc.

◆ Connecting to SSL page

Sites compatible with SSL (SSL page) can be displayed.

- Some SSL pages may not allow connection when date and time have not been set.
- Establishment of SSL sessions may require electronic information called "Certificate" for the connected site and FOMA terminal issued by the same certification organization. → P157
- To connect to FirstPass compatible site, you need to download a user certificate for the site from the FirstPass center and save it on UIM.

1 Display a message indicating the start of SSL session.

appears at the top of the display.

Displaying certificate while SSL page is displayed :

▶ 9 2

- When proceeding from an SSL page to an ordinary page, a confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to display the ordinary page, disappears from the top of the display.

◆ Connecting to FirstPass compatible page

1 Select the User Certificate to send ▶ Enter the PIN2 code

The user certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page appears.

- When correct PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the SSL session is disconnected.

✓INFORMATION

- When connecting to an SSL page, the certificate selection screen may appear. If it appears, select a certificate to send.
- The packet communication fee charged when connected to the FirstPass compatible page is included in the Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full service. Note that the data communication fee charged when the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC is not included in the Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full service.

◆ Reconnecting to the page displayed before <Last visited URL>

MENU 24

The URL of the site or website displayed before is recorded in the FOMA terminal. Using Last visited URL allows you to reconnect quickly to the page displayed before.

- Up to 10 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1

2 Select a URL to display.

Deleting a URL : Place the cursor on the URL and

"Yes"

Deleting selected URLs : Select

URLs "Yes"

Deleting all URLs :

Authenticate "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When operating during a site display, press and select "Go to location" → "Last visited URL".
- Some URL may not be displayed or different website may be displayed.

Reading and operating sites

The basic operations available during a site display are explained below.

◆ Displaying Flash graphics

Flash graphics can be displayed on FOMA terminals. Flash graphics enhances the expressive power of the site.

- Flash graphics are not displayed when Image of Image & Effect are "Not display".
- While Flash graphics are displayed, the operations may differ from ordinary sites.
- Some Flash graphics may be operated even when is not displayed on the guide area.
- When you save Flash graphics in Data Box or Screen memo, it may look differently depending on the saving destination.
- Even when a Flash graphic is displayed, it may not operate correctly, or may not be saved if an error occurs while being played.
- Some Flash graphics have sound effects. The volume depends on Melody effect sound in Adjust volume. To disable sound effects, press and set "OFF" for Sound effect setting. Note that the sound effect of the Flash graphics set for the stand-by display or incoming call screen is not emitted.

- Even if Vibrate effect is set to "Sync melody", it is not synchronized with the sound effects of Flash graphics. Note that, even when set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal may vibrate.
- If no operation is performed for 30 seconds or more while Flash graphic is played, it is brought to a pause. To restart playing, press any key except , , , , or .
- To operate Flash graphics again, press .
- If the Flash graphics do not fit the screen size, the operation starts when the entire graphic is displayed by scrolling the page.
- Some Flash graphics may use terminal data. You can set if you use terminal data from Use phone information of Image & Effect.

◆ Selecting linked pages and items

During an i-mode connection, the operations below are available depending on sites :

Linked page

Items used to jump to a related page from the currently displayed page. Placing the cursor on a linked item highlights it.

Character entry field

Select a field to enter characters.

Radio button operation

Select only one item from selections.

- : Unselected
 : Selected

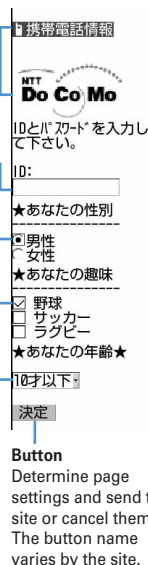
Check box

Select multiple items from selections.

- : Unselected
 : Selected

Pulldown menu

When selecting this menu, the selections hidden are displayed.



Button

Determine page settings and send to a site or cancel them. The button name varies by the site.

✓INFORMATION

- For some pulldown menus, multiple items can be selected by repeating the operation of pressing and selecting items on the selection screen. If you press after selecting items, the screen where all selected items are displayed reappears.
- Contents entered using radio button, check box, pulldown menu or character entry field are not reflected in saved bookmark or screen memo, etc.

◆ Displaying next or previous pages

FOMA terminal records the display history of up to 20 pages. A storage area in the terminal that temporarily stores the display history of pages is called "Cache" and the recorded pages in the cache can be displayed by pressing  without making communications.

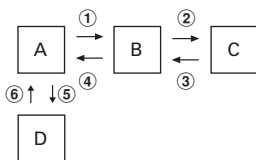
- When the terminal cache size has been exceeded or when displaying a page which has been set by the site to forcibly read the latest information, communications are started.
- This function is unavailable while being connected to the FirstPass center (→P158).



Indicate you can proceed to the next pages already displayed.

Indicate you can return to the previous pages already displayed.

✓INFORMATION



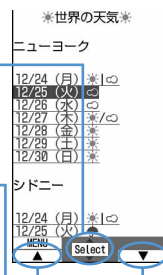
- When displaying Page A→B→C in the order (①, ②), return to Page A (③, ④), and proceed to Page D (⑤), the display history of Page A→B→C is erased. Return to Page A from Page D (⑥) but you cannot then return to Page B (①).
- Information such as entered characters or settings is not stored in the cache.
- When terminating i-mode, the whole display history stored in the cache is deleted.
- The procedure for operating page may differ when Flash graphic appears.

◆ Scrolling screen

- You can scroll the screen up and down by pressing . Hold down to scroll continuously.

When all lines are not displayed or the cursor can be moved to a link item, ▲ or ▼ appears in the guide area.

Scroll the page by screen. Hold down the key to scroll continuously.



◆ Reloading information

If page information could not be received correctly, you can perform reload to receive the page information again.

1 During site display,   5

◆ Displaying URL

Display the URL of the currently displayed site.

1 During site display,   9  1

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the list of Last visited URLs, URL history, Bookmark, i-mode shortcuts or Screen memo, press .

◆ Switching the scroll bar display

1 During site display,   9  8

- You can switch the scroll bar ON/OFF each time you press  9  8.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the screen memo display, press  and select "Display"→"Show scroll bar" or "Hide scroll bar".
- When operating from the Message/R/F details screen, press  and select "Show scroll bar" or "Hide scroll bar".

My Menu

Using My Menu

You can register frequently accessed sites in My Menu, which allows you to quickly access the site next time.

- Up to 45 sites can be recorded in My Menu. To record sites, i-mode password is required.
- When submitting an application to a pay site, the site is automatically recorded in My Menu.
- Only i-mode sites can be registered in My Menu. However, some sites cannot be registered in My Menu. Register sites or websites unable to register to bookmarks.

◆ Registering sites in My Menu

1 Display a site to be registered in My Menu▶ "マイメニュー登録 (Resister My Menu)"

- The page structure varies by the site. Press the keypad corresponding to the item or select the applicable item.

- 2 Select the i-mode password entry field ▶ Enter the i-mode password ▶ Select "決定 (OK)"

- The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default.

◆ Displaying sites from My Menu

- 1 ▶ ▶ "English iMenu" ▶ "My Menu" ▶ Select a site to display

Change i-mode password

Changing i-mode password

Your i-mode password is required to register/delete sites in/from My Menu, subscribe to or cancel Message Service and i-mode pay sites, or make mail settings. i-mode password is set to "0000" by default. Change it to another 4 unique numbers for the sake of safety. Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

- If you forget your i-mode password, it is reset to "0000" at the DoCoMo Shop after checking your official certification (e.g. a driver's license).

- 1 ▶ ▶ "English iMenu" ▶ "Options" ▶ "Change i-mode Password" ▶ Select the Current Password entry field ▶ Enter the current i-mode password

Change i-mode
Password
Current Password
▽
New Password
▽
New Password
(Confirmation)
▽
Select
※You will use
your i-mode
password to
subscribe and
unsubscribe
sites and set

- 2 Select the New Password entry field ▶ Enter a new i-mode password

- 3 Select the New Password (Confirmation) entry field ▶ Enter the i-mode password entered in Step 2 ▶ "Select"

Go to location

Displaying websites

MENU 231

You can connect to the Internet and access i-mode compatible websites. Specify websites by entering the address (URL) to connect to.

- 1 ▶

- From the second time, the URL previously entered for connection appears.

- 2 Enter a URL ▶

- Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.
- In alphabet input mode, repeatedly press to enter ".", "/", "-", etc. and to enter ".com", ".ne.jp", ".co.jp", "http://www." or ".html", etc.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating during a site or website display, press and select "Go to location" → "Enter URL".
- Operations performed during a website display are the same as on i-mode sites.
- A message appears when received data exceeds maximum size for a page. Pressing clears the message and displays the received data.

◆ Displaying pages using URL history <URL history>

MENU 232

URLs of websites connected by entering URL are recorded in FOMA terminal. Use this URL history to connect to websites.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1   

2 Select the URL of website to display.

Deleting a URL : Place the cursor on the URL and

   ► "Yes"

Deleting selected URLs :    ► Select URLs ►  ► "Yes"

Deleting all URLs :

   ► Authenticate ► "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When operating during a site display, press  and select "Go to location" → "URL history".

◆ Displaying characters correctly <Switch encode>

When characters of sites or websites do not appear correctly, they may appear correctly by changing the character encode. Character encode is an encoding scheme developed for making characters available on computers.

1 While the site or website is displayed,

- The character encode is switched each time     is pressed in the order below : Auto switch → SJIS → EUC → JIS → UTF8. Press     to switch to "Auto switch".
- When displaying a site or website, "Auto switch" is set.

Bookmark

Recording websites and sites for quick browsing

You can record frequently visited websites in Bookmark and thereafter display them simply by selecting bookmarks.

- Maximum number of recorded items → P335
- A URL to be recorded in Bookmark may contain up to 256 one-byte characters. URLs of some websites may not be recorded in Bookmark.

◆ Recording in Bookmark

1 Display the site or website to record in Bookmark ►    ► Select a folder to add to

2 Enter a title name ► 

- Up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters can be entered.
- If you save the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed on the bookmark list.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the list of Screen memos, screen memo display or Last visited URLs, URL history, press  and select "Add bookmark".
- When the maximum allowable number of saved bookmark entries is to be exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking if you overwrite. To save the bookmark, follow the instruction on the screen and select a bookmark to overwrite.

◆ Displaying site or website from Bookmark

MENU 22

1   ► Select a folder

- Icon definitions :
 -  : No bookmarks
 -  : Bookmarks exist

2 Select a bookmark to display.

Icon definitions → P148 Step 3 in "Saving bookmarks in i-mode shortcuts"

✓INFORMATION

- When operating during site or website display, press  and select "Bookmark" → "Display".

◆ Creating/deleting folders

- Up to 20 items can be registered.
- If there is only one folder, the folder cannot be deleted.

<Example> Creating

1 ►

2 ►

Changing folder setting : Place the cursor on the folder and ►

Changing the order of the folder : Place the cursor on the folder and ► or

Deleting : Place the cursor on the folder and ► ► **Authenticate** ► "Yes"

3 Enter a folder name ►

- Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

◆ Changing bookmark title

1 ► ► **Select a folder** ► Place the cursor on the bookmark to change the title and

The next procedure→P147 Step 2 in "Recording in Bookmark"

◆ Connecting to sites or websites using simple key sequence <i-mode shortcuts>

When a bookmark is set to Shortcut, you can quickly display the site or website from the stand-by display.

❖ Saving bookmarks in i-mode shortcuts

- You can record 1 bookmark for each key of the keypad, up to 10 bookmarks in total.

1 ► ► **Select a folder**

2 Place the cursor on the bookmark to record and .

Canceled : Place the cursor on the bookmark and ►

3 Select a destination to save.

The icon numbers (-) correspond to the keypads (-) used for i-mode shortcuts.

- On the bookmark list, the icon for the recorded bookmark switches from to .
- When a destination already set is selected, a confirmation screen appears whether to overwrite data.

❖ Displaying a site or website using i-mode shortcut

1 - ►

A site or website corresponding to the keypad appears.

❖ Operating from i-mode shortcut list

MENU 281

<Example> Setting Shortcut

1 ►

2 Place the cursor on Not recorded and

►

Displaying sites : Select a bookmark

Canceled : Place the cursor on the bookmark and

► ► "Yes"

3 Select a folder ► Select a bookmark to save

◆ Deleting bookmark

1 ►

2 Select a folder.

Deleting all bookmarks :

► ► **Authenticate** ► Go to Step 4

3 Place the cursor on a bookmark to delete and

►

Deleting selected bookmarks :

► ► **Select bookmarks** ►

Deleting all the bookmarks in the folder :

► ► **Authenticate**

4 "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- If you delete a bookmark saved as i-mode shortcut, the i-mode shortcut is also canceled.

◆ Moving bookmark

You can move saved bookmarks to another folder.

1 ► ► **Select a folder**

2 Place the cursor on a bookmark to move and

►

Moving selected bookmarks :

► ► **Select bookmarks** ►

3 Select a folder to move the bookmark to.

◆ Sorting bookmarks <Sort>

The bookmark list can be sorted temporarily. When the list display is closed, sorting is restored to "By access date".

- You can sort all folders.

1 ▶ ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ ▶ ▶ -

✓INFORMATION

- When a mixture of bookmarks with titles containing one- and two-byte characters, alphabetic characters and/or kanji and those displayed with URLs are sorted "By title", the result may not be in the order of Japanese syllabary.

◆ Attaching bookmark data to an i-mode mail

1 ▶ ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Place the cursor on the bookmark to be attached and** ▶

The next procedure → P164

Screen memo

Saving site contents

Site screens in a display can be saved as screen memo.

- Maximum number of saved items → P335

◆ Saving screen memo

- The maximum size of a screen memo file that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.

1 **Display the site to save as screen memo** ▶ ▶

2 **Enter a title name** ▶

- Up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters can be entered.
- If you register the screen memo without entering a title, "No title" appears in the screen memo list.

✓INFORMATION

- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, a confirmation screen appears asking if you overwrite. To save the screen memo, follow the instruction on the screen and select a screen memo to overwrite. Protected screen memos cannot be overwritten.

◆ Displaying screen memo

MENU 25

1 ▶ ▶ **Select a screen memo to display**

- Icons used for the screen memo list are defined as follows :

: Ordinary screen memo

: Protected screen memo

- Operation of the screen memo display is the same as during site display except for a part.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating during a site display, press and select "Screen memo" → "Display". At this time, the character encode restored to "Auto switch" by returning to site display if it is changed.
- To operate Flash graphic again on screen memo display, press and select "Display" → "Retry".
- If the Flash graphics do not fit the screen memo display, the operation starts when the entire graphic is displayed by scrolling the page.

◆ Changing screen memo title

1 ▶ ▶ **Place the cursor on the screen memo to change the title and**

The next procedure → P149 Step 2 in "Saving screen memo"

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the screen memo display, press and select "Rename title".

◆ Protecting screen memo

By protecting, they can be prevented from being erroneously erased or being overwritten because of the lack of the memory space.

- Maximum number of protected items → P335

<Example> Protecting a screen memo

1 ▶

2 **Place the cursor on a screen memo to protect and** ▶

- The icons of the protected screen memo changes from to .

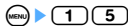
Protecting selected screen memos :

▶ ▶ **Select screen memos** ▶

Unprotecting a screen memo : Place the cursor on the screen memo and ▶

Unprotecting selected screen memos :

▶ ▶ **Select screen memos** ▶



✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the screen memo display, press and select "Protect" or "Release".

◆ Deleting screen memo

<Example> Deleting a screen memo

1 **5**

2 Place the cursor on a screen memo to delete and **2** **1**

Deleting selected screen memos :

2 **2** Select screen memos

Deleting all screen memos at a time :

2 **3** Authenticate

3 "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the screen memo display, press and select "Delete".

◆ Sorting screen memo <Sort>

The screen memo list can be sorted temporarily. When the list display is closed, sorting is restored to "By date".

1 **5** **8** **1** or **2**

✓INFORMATION

- When a mixture of bookmarks with titles containing one- and two-byte characters, alphabetic characters and/or kanji and those displayed with URLs are sorted "By title", the result may not be in the order of Japanese syllabary.

Downloading various data (files) from sites

You can download data (files) from sites and store them in FOMA terminal.

- The data (file) and the maximum size of each data that can be saved are as shown below.
 - Image : 100 Kbytes
 - Melody : 100 Kbytes
 - Dictionary : 32 Kbytes
 - Chara-den : 100 Kbytes
 - Kisekai Tool : 2 Mbytes
 - Font : 100 Kbytes
- While downloading, press to stop downloading.
- However, some data (file) may not be displayed, played or set correctly.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, you cannot save the data (files). To save data, follow the instruction on the screen and delete data (files) in FOMA terminal.
- Maximum number of saved items → P335

◆ Downloading images <Save image>

Saved images can be viewed from the folder in My Picture or set as the stand-by display. You can use Deco-mail pictograms when creating mail or editing signature. You can save JPEG and GIF format images, GIF animation and SWF (Flash graphics).

1 Display the site containing an image **6** **1** Select an image to save

- When placing the cursor on the image to save, the image is surrounded by frames and the file name and the file size displayed.

Saving background image of site : Display the site containing a background image **6** **2**

2 Set the required items.

- Some items may not be selected depending on the image.
- For images that cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal ("File restricted" appears in File restriction), items except Display name cannot be changed.

Display name : Up to 36 characters can be entered.

File name : Up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, ".", "-", " " or "_" can be entered. "." cannot be used for the first character of the file name.

Comment : Up to 100 characters can be entered.

Use as frame : Set if you enable pasting an image as a frame image.

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vice versa) sizes larger than 352×288 or 240×432 cannot be set as frame option.

Use as stamp : Set if you enable pasting an image as a stamp image.

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vice versa) sizes larger than 240×432 cannot be set as stamp option.

File restriction : When sending images to the other mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set if you restrict sending images to the other mobile phone from received party mobile phone.

- You cannot change File restriction for images downloaded from sites.

3 ▶ **Select a destination to save**

- Images satisfying all of the conditions below are saved to "Deco-mail pict" folder.
 - Size of 20×20 and 90 Kbytes or smaller
 - Mail attachment or output from FOMA terminal are enabled
 - JPEG or GIF format
- If you press , the list of the destinations that the images are used for appears and they can be set for stand-by screen, etc. → P225

✓ **INFORMATION**

- When displaying a site including an image wider than the display, the image is reduced.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vice versa) sizes larger than 640×480 in GIF format or 1,728×2,304 in JPEG format cannot be saved in the FOMA terminal. Some JPEG images cannot be saved depending on the JPEG type.

◆ **Downloading melodies <i-melody>**

A saved melody can be played from folders in Melody or set as a ring alert.

- Melody in SMF or MFi format can be saved.

1 **Display the site containing a melody ▶ Select a melody to download**

2 **"Save"**

Playing : "Play"

Stopping saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

3 **Enter a display name ▶**

The downloaded melody is saved in "i-mode" folder of Melody.

- Up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters can be entered.

◆ **Downloading dictionaries**

The stored dictionaries can be used for entering text to FOMA terminal.

- Setting dictionary → P274

1 **Display the site containing a dictionary ▶ Select a dictionary to download**

2 **"Save" ▶**

The downloaded dictionary is saved in "DL dictionary" in "Other".

Stopping saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

◆ **Downloading Chara-den**

The saved Chara-den can be sent instead of your image for a videophone call or can be set on the stand-by display.

1 **Display the site containing a Chara-den ▶ Select a Chara-den to download**

2 **"Save"**

Displaying : "Display"

Stopping saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

3 **Set the required items ▶**

The downloaded Chara-den is saved in "i-mode" folder of Chara-den.

- Up to 36 characters for display name, up to 100 characters for comments can be entered.

◆ **Downloading Kisekai Tool**

Saved Kisekai Tool can be set as a stand-by display image, menu icon, incoming/outgoing call image, ring alert, etc.

- Setting Kisekai Tool → P89

1 **Display the site containing Kisekai Tool ▶ Select Kisekai Tool to download**

2 **"Save"**

Displaying : "Preview"

Stopping saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

3 **Enter a display name ▶**

The downloaded Kisekai Tool is saved in "i-mode" folder of Kisekai Tool.

- Up to 36 characters can be entered.
- When  is pressed, a confirmation screen appears whether to set Kisekai Tool.

✓INFORMATION

- When downloading or communication is interrupted, a confirmation screen appears whether to resume the process. Select "Yes" to restart downloading. When "No" is selected, a confirmation screen appears whether to save data partially when it is possible. If partial saving is impossible, data already downloaded is deleted. The rest of partially saved Kisekæ Tool can be downloaded. →P90 Step 3 in "Changing Kisekæ Tool"

◆ Downloading fonts

Saved fonts can be used for characters used for displaying menu screens, i-mode sites, character entry screens, etc.

- Setting font→P93

1 Display the site containing fonts ▶ Select a font to download

2 "Save" ▶

The downloaded fonts are saved in "Font style" of Font & Language.

Stopping saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

Useful functions of i-mode

Using phone number, mail address or URL on the current screen, you can make a voice/videophone call (Phone To/ AV Phone To), create i-mode mail (Mail To), or access sites or websites (Web To).

- Some functions may not be used in certain sites or websites.

◆ Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/ Web To function

1 Display a site or website ▶ Place the cursor on a phone number, mail address or URL

- Only the information which the cursor can be placed on can be selected.

2

Phone To (AV Phone To) : Set a condition for dialing ▶  ▶ "Yes"

Making a call under set conditions→P52

Mail To : Create and send i-mode mail.

The i-mode mail to the selected mail address can be created and sent.

Creating and sending i-mode mail→P164

Web To :

A site or website is connected.

- When a URL is selected from message text, etc., a confirmation screen appears whether to access the site.

✓INFORMATION

- When multiple addresses are listed, Mail To function may not be available.

◆ Copying URL

You can copy URL from the currently displayed site, website or screen memo. Copied characters can be pasted in the fields in the mail creation screen or phonebook data entry screen.

- The last copied characters are recorded until the power is turned OFF and they can be pasted into other locations any number of times.

<Example> Copying URL of a site

1 Display URL of a site ▶ ▶

Displaying URL→P145

2 Select a copying area.

Copying/Pasting method→P273

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the list of Last visited URLs, URL history, i-mode shortcuts or Screen memos, press  and select "Copy URL". When operating from the bookmark list, press  and select "URL disp/type/copy" → "Copy URL". If you are operating from those screens, the entire URL is copied.

◆ Attaching URL to i-mode mail

You can send i-mode mail with attaching URL or website from the currently displayed site.

1 Display a site ▶ ▶

The next procedure→P164

◆ Adding phone number and mail address into phonebook <Phonebook new entry>

Phone numbers or mail addresses that the cursor can be placed on the current screen (site, screen memo, MessageR/F) can be added.

- You may be able to add the data except displayed item in certain sites.

<Example> Saving new phone number displayed on the site screen

1 Display a site containing a phone number.

2 Place the cursor on the phone number to add and

Adding data to existing phonebook entry :

- 1 Place the cursor on the phone number and
- 2 Select phonebook entry to update.

3 Save the name or mail address, etc.

Phonebook new entry→P67, 68

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from screen memo, press and select "Phonebook" → "Add to phonebook" or "Update phonebook"; when operating from the MessageR/F details screen, press and select "Store" → "Add to phonebook" or "Update phonebook".

◆ Adding URL in phonebook

You can add URL from a bookmark list or screen memo list, etc.

<Example> Adding data from the bookmark list

- 1 ► ► Select a folder
- 2 Place the cursor on the bookmark to add and

Adding to existing phonebook entry : Place the cursor on the bookmark and

- ► Select phonebook entry to update

3 Save the name or mail address, etc.

Phonebook new entry→P67

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the URL display screen of Last visited URL, press and select "Add to phonebook" or "Update phonebook".
- When operating from the screen memo list, press and select "Phonebook" → "Add to phonebook" or "Update phonebook".

◆ Using location information

You can select a link item of a location information on the current screen (site, screen memo or MessageR/F) to view a map, activate GPS-compatible i-appli or make mail attachment.

- You can also send location information by selecting a link item for sending location information.→P213 ■ Paste/Attach/Send location menu"

<Example> Viewing a map from a link item of location information on the site screen

- 1 Display a site containing a location information link item ► Select location information

- 2 Select "Read map" ► "OK"

Starting GPS compatible i-appli : "Run i-appli" ► "OK" ► Select i-appli

Attaching location information to mail : "Paste to mail" ► "OK"

The next procedure→P164

i-mode settings

Making i-mode settings

Various functions about i-mode communication can be set.

◆ Setting connection time out <Connection timeout>

MENU 282

Set the timeout for connection with the i-mode Center. If connection is not normally established, it is automatically interrupted after the set period of time.

- 1 ► ► -

✓INFORMATION

- If you set "Unlimited", connection with the i-mode Center may be interrupted due to radio wave conditions, etc.

◆ Changing i-mode Host (ISP connection communication) <Host selection>

MENU 27

- * You do not have to change the settings when using DoCoMo i-mode service.

ISP connection communication

You can connect to the various providers (ISP) by changing the host of i-mode terminal of DoCoMo. Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP connection communication.

- Note that, packet communication fee for ISP connection is not covered by the Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full service. Please be forewarned.
- You cannot make settings or changes for the host during communication.

* You do not need to additionally subscribe to DoCoMo.

Provider subscription

- You need to separately subscribe to the provider to use ISP connection communication. Contact the provider for details of service such as site, Internet connection, mail function, etc.
- Information fee may be charged for some services, but DoCoMo never charges you for it.
- Your phone number may be notified to the provider for some sites you visit.
- Up to 10 hosts can be registered.

1 8 7

- The host used after i-mode subscription varies by the region where the subscription was made.

2 Place the cursor on User host to edit and .

Restoring settings for using i-mode : "i-mode (UIM)"

Changing to the previously set host : Select the host

3 Authenticate ▶ Set the required items

- You can delete all the contents entered for the items all at once by pressing .

Host name : Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Host number : Up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Host address : Up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

4 Select the edited host

✓INFORMATION

- When Host number or Host address is changed, Auto-send settings are canceled.

◆ Setting Display light

MENU 283

Set the display light to be used to display the sites or screen memos or MessageR/F.

1 8 3 1 or 2

- If you set "Terminal setting", Display light time (Normal use) of Display light of Display is used.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from a site, website or screen memo display, press and select "Display" → "Set lighting".
- This setting is also reflected to Display light time of Display light of Display (during i-mode session).

◆ Setting image display and sound effect <Image & Effect>

MENU 285

Set the images to be used to display the sites, screen memos or MessageR/F and the sound effect of Flash graphics.

1 8 5 ▶ Set the required items

Image : Set if you display images.

- When "Not display" is set, appears instead of image, Flash graphics or GIF animation.
- When "Display" is set, Animation and Use phone information can be set.

Animation : Set if you display GIF animation.

- When "Not display" is set, the first image of the GIF animation appears.

Use phone information : Set if you use data saved in the FOMA terminal for displaying Flash graphics.

Sound effect setting : Set if you play sound effects of Flash graphics.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from a site or screen memo display, press and select "Display" → "Set image & effect".
- If "Not display" is set for Image, also the images attached to received i-mode mail using the Web To function are not saved or displayed.
- The image settings are not reflected to images attached as attached files or those in texts of MessageR/F.

- Sound effect setting is not reflected to MessageR/F.
- If you set Use phone information to "Yes", the battery level, Received signal level, time information, Melody effect sound in Adjust volume, Select language and model information may be sent to IPs (Information Providers), causing such information to be known by the third party.

Receive MessageR/F

When MessageR/F is received

- Maximum number of saved items → P335

1 Receive MessageR/F.

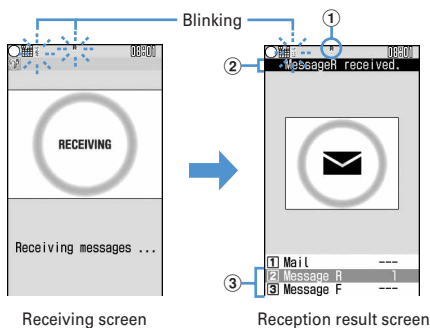
and (blue) or (green) blink and "Receiving messages..." appears.

MessageR/F ring alert, the light and light of round illumination panel is lit/flashed and the reception result screen appears.

The received MessageR is saved in "MessageR" folder. The received MessageF is saved in "MessageF" folder.

- While receiving MessageR/F, : Cancel receiving

It may be received depending on the receiving conditions.



Receiving screen

Reception result screen

① Icon

(blue) : Unread MessageR exists

(green) : Unread MessageF exists

② Reception result ticker

③ The number of received MessageR/F

- The contents of unread MessageR/F appears after the reception result screen appears, and if you do not press any key for about 15 seconds, the previous screen reappears.

When reception has failed

"X" appears on the right side of "Message R" or "Message F" on the reception result screen. To receive again, perform i-mode message.

✓ INFORMATION

- When multiple mail and/or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the terminal operates depending on the conditions set for the mail or MessageR/F received last.
- When MessageR/F is received, the MessageR/F in the i-mode Center is deleted.
- In the cases below, received MessageR/F is stored in the i-mode Center.
 - When the power is OFF
 - During a videophone call
 - Safety alarm is ON (Sending location, sending voice)
 - Silent alarm is ON (Sending location)
 - Loss protection is ON (Sending location)
 - Power OFF notice is ON
 - In Omakase Lock
 - In Self mode
 - Accessing Data Center
 - During FirstPass center connection
 - When reception has failed
 - Out of i-mode service area
 - When receiving SMS
 - In infrared communication
 - When storage area is filled with MessageR/F unread or protected
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, a new MessageR/F overwrites the chronologically oldest message except for unprotected unread messages.
- If there is not enough storage space available because storage is filled with unread and protected MessageR/F, reception of MessageR/F is stopped, (red) or (red) appears on the screen. To receive mails, displaying the contents of unread MessageR/F (→ P156), deleting unnecessary MessageR/F (→ P157) or unprotecting (→ P157) is required.
- If there are remaining MessageR/F in the i-mode Center, or appears. It may not appear even when there are MessageR/F. When the i-mode Center reaches the maximum number of mail items that can be stored, the icon changes to or .

◆ Displaying new MessageR/F

1 On the reception result screen, ② or ③.

1 Mail	1
2 Message R	1
3 Message F	---

- Press to display i-mode mail.

2 Select MessageR/F.

- Playing when a melody is attached → P189
- Displaying MessageR/F → P156

◆ Displaying MessageR/F automatically <Auto-display>

MENU 2731

Set if you automatically display the contents (for about 15 seconds) when the screen returns from the reception result screen to the screen prior to the reception after receiving MessageR/F.

1 -

✓INFORMATION

- If you do not press any key during automatic display, MessageR/F is saved in unread status.
- Auto-display is available only when received automatically on the stand-by display.

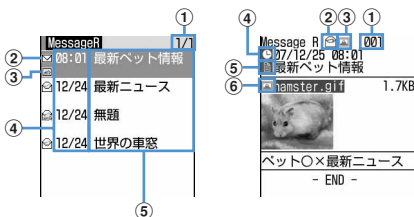
MessageR/MessageF

Displaying MessageR/F stored in FOMA terminal

MENU 271
MENU 272

1 or Select MessageR/F to display

◆ MessageR/F list/details screen



MessageR list screen

MessageR details screen

- ① Page/Total pages (list screen), MessageR/F No. (details screen)
- ② Status icon
 : Unread : Read : Protected
- ③ Attachment icon
List screen
 : Image : Melody
 : Multiple files are attached
Details screen
 : Image : Melody
 : Multiple files are attached
- ④ Reception date and time
 - On the list screen, the time appears on the reception day and the date appears on the other day.
- ⑤ Title

⑥ Attachment icon (Detail)

- : Image
- : Image (Cannot be attached to mail nor output from FOMA terminal)
- : Image (Data error)
- : Melody
- : Melody (Cannot be attached to mail nor output from FOMA terminal)
- : Melody (Data error)

◆ Displaying/saving attached files

1 Display the list of MessageR/F.

Icon definitions→P156 "MessageR/F list/details screen"

2 Select MessageR/F with an attached file.

3 Place the cursor on the file name of the attached file to save and

The next procedure for image→P150 Step 2 and the following steps in "Downloading images"

The next procedure for melody→P151 Step 3 in "Downloading melodies"

Displaying/Playing : Select a file name.

- When an attached file is an image, Display/Not display of image is switched.

Displaying title : Place the cursor on the file and

- An attached file of image cannot be operated.

✓INFORMATION

- When saving an image or a background image contained in a message text, press and select "Save image" → "Select image" or "Save Background" and select the image to save.

◆ Protecting MessageR/F <Protect message>

By protecting, they can be prevented from being erroneously erased or being overwritten because of the lack of the memory space.

- Maximum number of protected items→P335
- Unread MessageR/F cannot be protected.

<Example> Protecting a MessageR/F

1 Display the list of MessageR/F.

2 Place the cursor on the MessageR/F to protect and

The MessageR/F is protected and the icon changes from  to .

Protecting selected MessageR/F :

Unprotecting MessageR/F : Place the cursor on the MessageR/F and   

Unprotecting selected MessageR/F :

Unprotecting all MessageR/F :   

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the MessageR/F details screen, press  and select "Protect" or "Release".

◆ Deleting MessageR/F <Delete message>

<Example> Deleting MessageR/F

1 Display the list of MessageR/F.

2 Place the cursor on the MessageR/F to delete and

Deleting only read MessageR/F :   

Deleting selected MessageR/F :

Deleting all MessageR/F at a time :

3 "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the MessageR/F details screen, press  and select "Delete".

◆ Selecting type of MessageR/F to display <Display by type>

You can display only the MessageR/F of specified type in the list of MessageR/F temporarily. When the list display is closed, sorting is restored to "Display all".

1 Display the list of MessageR/

F    - 

- Protected MessageR/F does not appear when selecting "Display read only".

◆ Sorting MessageR/F <Sort>

The list of MessageR/F can be sorted temporarily. When the list display is closed, sorting is restored to "By date".

1 Display the list of MessageR/

F    or 

✓INFORMATION

- When a mixture of bookmarks with titles containing one- and two-byte characters, alphabetic characters and/or kanji and those displayed with URLs are sorted "By title", the result may not be in the order of Japanese syllabary.

Operating certificate

You can perform the operation of the certificate required for the SSL session.

◆ Displaying certificate and setting certificate validity/invalidity <Manage certificate>

MENU 2841

- The certificates below are required for connecting to SSL page :
 - CA Certificate** : The certificate issued by the certifier. It is stored in FOMA terminal by default.
 - DoCoMo Cert** : A certificate required for connecting to the FirstPass center and FirstPass compatible sites and saved on UIM by default.
 - User Certificate** : A certificate required for connecting to the FirstPass compatible sites. After requesting to issue to the FirstPass center and downloading it, the certificate is saved on UIM.
 - Original certificate** : A certificate issued from companies or local governments, etc.; it is saved to FOMA terminal when downloaded. The downloaded certificate can be used in the supported sites.
- If blue UIM is inserted in FOMA terminal, certificates except CA Certificate do not appear.

<Example> Setting validity/invalidity

1

- Icon definitions :

: CA Certificate
 : DoCoMo Cert/User Certificate
 : Original certificate
 : Validated certificate

2 ▶ **Select the certificate to set** ▶

- DoCoMo Cert2 cannot be set.

Displaying : Select a certificate.

✓INFORMATION

- Certificate contents displayed
 User
 CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name or discrimination number
 O= : (Organization) Company name, etc.
 C= : (Country) Country name
 Issued by
 CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name or discrimination number
 OU= : (Organization Unit) Departments or other positions in the company, etc.
 O= : (Organization) Company name, etc.
 Expiration date
 Serial number
- For a certificate with owner, issuer and/or expiration date items left blank, only their item names are displayed.

◆ Setting FirstPass <Certificate download>

MENU 2842

Connect to the FirstPass center, request to issue the user certificate and download it.

- The screens to appear and operations to be performed during connection to the FirstPass center are subject to change.
- Messages cannot be sent/received and MessageR/F cannot be received during connection to the FirstPass center.

1 ▶ **"English" ▶ "Request your certificate"**

FirstPass	FirstPass
・FirstPassをご利用いただくためには、1-サ 証明書の発行申請、ダウンロードが必要です。	1 Request your certificate
・1/2へを選択して、1-サ 証明書の発行申請、ダウンロードを行ってください。	2 Download your certificate
・当サイトの閲覧/ご利用にあたっての「ネット通信料は無料です。」	3 Other settings
	4 The usage regulation (Japanese only)
次へ/English	

Invalidating the issued user certificate :

① **"Other settings" ▶ "Revoke your certificate" ▶ Select the certificate to send**

② **Enter the PIN2**

code ▶ "Continue" ▶ "Continue" ▶ "Continue"

2 **"Download" ▶ Enter PIN2 code**

The completion screen appears and the user certificate is issued.

FirstPass
You have requested a certificate. Refer to the usage regulation for more details.
Continue/Menu

- When PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the application for issuing is canceled.

3 **"Download" ▶ "Continue"**

The completion screen appears and the user certificate is downloaded.

FirstPass	FirstPass
Requesting a certificate is completed.	1 CN=XXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Download the certificate.	OU=DoCoMo Secure Network
Download/Menu	Secondary
	D=NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
	C=JP
	Issuer:
	OU=DoCoMo Secure Network
	Secondary
	D=NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
	C=JP
	Expiration:
	XXXX/XX/XX XX:XX:XX
	Serial Number:
	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
	XXXXXXXXXX
	Continue/Menu

- The downloaded user certificates can be checked in "Manage certificate". → P157

✓INFORMATION

- No packet communication fee applies for connection to FirstPass center.
- The user certificate certificates that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. Downloaded user certificate is registered on UIM and it can be used in the supported site.

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and the FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other's certificate for authenticating each other.
- FirstPass is possible to be used for Internet communication from a FOMA terminal and Internet communication in the condition the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC. To use FirstPass with PC, FirstPass PC software in the CD-ROM attached is needed. For details, see "簡易操作マニュアル (Manual for simple use)" in CD-ROM. To view "簡易操作マニュアル" (PDF format), Adobe® Reader® (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe® Reader® is not installed in your PC, install Adobe® Reader® from the attached CD-ROM. For details of usage, see "Adobe Reader Help".
- Before requesting a user certificate, read "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.
- Use of a user certificate requires entry of the PIN2 code. All operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Take extreme care not to let the UIM or PIN2 code used improperly by any third party.
- If the UIM is misplaced or stolen, contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual to have the user certificate nullified.
- In no circumstances shall DoCoMo be put under any obligation by or held responsible for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that arises must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.
- Neither DoCoMo nor certification organizations provides any guarantee for security, etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

◆ Downloading original certificate

- Up to 5 original certificates and up to 10 route and interim certificates in total can be saved; the total size of these certificates cannot exceed 35 Kbytes.

1 Display the site containing certificates ▶ Select a certificate to download

-  while downloading : Stopping download

2 "Save"

- The downloaded certificates can be checked in "Manage certificate". → P157
- When password entry is requested, enter the password of the certificate in the password entry field and select "OK".

✓ INFORMATION

- An original certificate is issued from individual companies or local governments, etc. The downloaded certificate is available to sites applicable to it.
- A packet communication fee is required for downloading original certificates.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, you cannot save the data. Follow the instruction on the screen and delete saved certificates.
- If blue UIM is inserted in FOMA terminal, Original certificate cannot be downloaded.

◆ Changing certificate control name

You can change the control name of a downloaded original certificate.

1 ▶ ▶ Place the cursor on the certificate to change the control name and

2 Enter the name ▶

- Up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Restoring to the control name used when downloading : 

◆ Deleting Certificate

You can delete original certificates downloaded.

1 ▶ ▶ Place the cursor on the certificate to delete and ▶ "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

◆ Changing certificate host <Certificate host>

MENU 2843

If you use services except the FirstPass, set the host for certificate. If you change this setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

1    

2 Select the Host field  

- Press  and go to Step 5 to restore settings for connecting to FirstPass.

3 Enter the host in the User host field.

- Up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

4 Enter the URL in the User host URL field.

- Up to 100 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

5 

◆ Setting whether to skip password entries <Skip password>

MENU 2844

When using an original certificate, enter terminal security code for authentication. You can set if you skip entry of terminal security code when reusing an original certificate already authenticated.

1       or 

i-motion

Movie and sound can be downloaded from sites or websites and played/saved. Saved movie and sound can be played as i-motion and be set for Movie ringtone. The vocals of singers can be used for a ring alert as well as melodies (some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone).

- i-motion items can be categorized to 2 types listed below. The data types cannot be changed or selected when downloading.

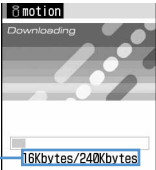
Type	Playing action
Normal type (can be saved*)	Play while downloading i-motion data (Up to 10 Mbytes). After completion of receiving, the i-motion can be operated in the same way as i-motions playable after downloading all data.
	Play after downloading all i-motion data (Up to 10 Mbytes).
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	Play while downloading i-motion data (Up to 10 Mbytes). Deleting i-motion data after playing.

* Some i-motion may not allow saving.

Downloading i-motion from sites

- Maximum number of saved items→P335

1 Display the site containing the i-motion  Select i-motion



The amount of data received/
total amount of data

The download starts, and then a message appears indicating completion when the download ends.

- During downloading, press  and select "Yes" to stop downloading.

For i-motion with file size of 500 K-10 Mbytes that can be saved partially, a confirmation screen appears whether to resume downloading. If you select "Yes", downloading is resumed, and if you select "No", a confirmation screen appears whether to save data partially. The rest of partially saved i-motion can be downloaded. →P231 INFORMATION in "Playing movie/i-motion"

- When a streaming type i-motion is selected, a confirmation screen appears whether to play i-motion.

- The operations below can be performed while playing i-motion playable while being downloaded. After completion of playing, the i-motion can be operated in the same way as i-motions playable after downloading all data.
 - ⏸ : Pause/Play (Normal type)
 - 🔊 : Adjust volume.
 - ⏮ : Streaming type is interrupted by selecting "Yes" on the confirmation screen, and Normal type is stopped (Pressing ⏸ while stopped plays the i-motion from the beginning)
 - ℹ : Display detail information
- * Even when pausing or stop the play, the data download continues.
- Key operations (except **CLR**) for playing back i-motion playable after downloading all data → P231 Step 3 in "Playing movie/i-motion"

2 "Save"

- i-motion of streaming type cannot be saved.

Replaying : "Play"

Displaying detail information : "File property"

Stopping saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

- For streaming type i-motion, if you select "Back", the site screen reappears.

3 Enter a display name ▶ ℹ

The downloaded i-motion is saved in "i-mode" folder of i-motion.

- Up to 36 characters can be entered.
- If you press **ℹ**, the list of the destinations that the i-motions are used for appears, and they can be set for stand-by screen, etc. → P233

✓INFORMATION

- Only i-motion files in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format can be downloaded and/or played. Downloading or playing of i-motion files in ASF format is disabled.
- Even if text is included in i-motion, the text cannot be played.
- The replay restrictions such as number of playable times or expiration of playing may be set for i-motion files.
- When i-motion is played while the data is being downloaded, play may be temporarily stopped in waiting for data reception. The playing is automatically resumed when data reception starts.
- When i-motion is played while the data is being downloaded, it may become unable to play, or image may be blurred depending on the condition such as signal quality. i-motion can be played after the download if the data is normally received. However, some i-motion may allow download of data but may not be played correctly.
- When i-motion data is improper, reception of i-motion may be canceled.
- Even when Ring alert or Receive display appears as "Available" in detail information displayed before saving i-motion used from i-αpli, saving of it may be disabled. The i-motion cannot be set as Ring alert or Movie alert.

- When playing streaming type i-motion while the data is being downloaded, if you fold the FOMA terminal, a call comes in, Loss protection is activated, the set date/time of the alarm clock or schedule comes, etc., downloading is interrupted and the playing is stopped. When playing normal type i-motion while the data is being downloaded, if you fold the FOMA terminal, the playing is stopped while downloading remains continued.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, a confirmation screen appears whether to delete unnecessary movies. To save images, follow the instruction on the screen and delete saved movies/i-motion.

i-motion setting

Setting Auto play of i-motion

MENU 286

Set if you automatically play normal type i-motion while or after downloading.

1 **Q** ▶ **8** **6** ▶ Select Auto replay setting
field ▶ **1** or **2** ▶ **ℹ**

✓INFORMATION

- Press **ℹ** and select "Display" → "i-motion setting" to operate from the site screen.
- Even when "Auto Play OFF" is set, i-motion can be played by selecting "Play" on the download completion screen.
- For streaming type i-motion, a confirmation screen appears whether to play i-motion regardless of this setting.

Mail

i-mode mail	164
Creating i-mode mail/Deco-mail	
Creating and sending i-mode mail	Compose message 164
Creating and sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail 165
Using mail templates	167
Attaching files	Attachment (Sending) 169
Saving i-mode mail and sending later	Save i-mode mail 170
Creating mail quickly	Quick mail 170
Receiving and handling i-mode mail	
When i-mode mail is received	Mail auto receive 171
Selecting i-mode mail to receive	Receive option 172
Checking for i-mode mail	Check new message 172
Replying to i-mode mail	Replying to i-mode mail 173
Forwarding i-mode mail	Forwarding i-mode mail 173
Downloading Receive option attachment file	174
Operating auto receive attachment files	Attachment (receiving) 174
Deleting attachment	Deleting attachment 176
Operating Inbox/Outbox	
Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox	Inbox/Outbox 177
Useful functions of Mail	
Using message logs	Mail logs 183
Useful functions of Mail	184
Setting Mail	
Setting mail function of FOMA terminal	Mail settings 185
Using Chat mail	
Creating and sending chat mail	Creating and sending chat mail 190
Using SMS	
Creating and sending SMS	Creating and sending SMS 193
When SMS is received	Receive SMS 194
Checking for SMS	Check new SMS 194
Setting SMS	SMS settings 195
Saving SMS in UIM	SMS saved to UIM 195

i-mode mail

Only by subscribing to i-mode, i-mode mails can be exchanged not only with i-mode terminals but also via Internet.

In addition to message text, you can attach up to 10 files (images, etc.) of up to 2 Mbytes in total to a mail.

Moreover, Deco-mail is available, a font color, size and background color of message text can be changed, and many Deco-mail pictograms that can be inserted similarly to pictograms are preinstalled, allowing you to easily create and send expressive mails.

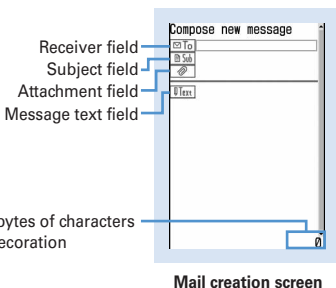
- For details of i-mode mail, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Compose message

Creating and sending i-mode mail

✉ 2
MENU 12

1 (1 sec. or more)



2 Select the receiver field.

3 Select entry method ▶ Enter the address

Entering mail address from Mail logs : "Sent msg log" or "Received msg log" ▶ Select Mail logs to send mail

Entering from phonebook : "View phonebook" ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry to send mail

Entering from mail group : "Mail group" ▶ Select a mail group

- If the total of already entered address and mail group address exceeds 5 addresses, the mail group cannot be added.

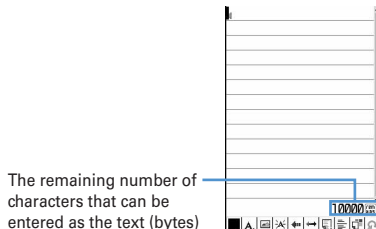
Inputting directly : "Direct input" ▶ Enter the address

- Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.
- The mail address "@docomo.ne.jp" can be omitted for mail sent to i-mode terminals.

4 Select the subject field ▶ Enter the subject

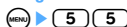
- Up to 15 two-byte (30 one-byte) characters can be entered.

5 Select the message text field ▶ Enter the message text



- Up to 5,000 two-byte (10,000 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Pasting URL of location information :



The next procedure → P213 ■ Paste/Attach/Send location menu"

- When location information is pasted, location information URL are entered to the text, respectively, and  is added before the URL. Entered URLs and icons are counted as text characters.
- Location info. is available only when the receiving device is an i-mode terminal.

Adding signature :  5 6

6

- To stop transmission, press  on the connecting screen or press  on the sending screen. Note that the i-mode mail may be sent depending on the operation timing. The sent mail is saved in "Unsent messages" folder of Unsent messages.
- When you are out of the service area, a confirmation screen appears asking if you set Auto-send, provided that the number of Auto-send mail is less than 5. When selecting "Yes", i-mode mail with Auto-send set is saved in "Unsent messages" folder of Unsent messages.

✓INFORMATION

- When transmission is complete correctly, the i-mode mail is saved in a folder of Outbox. When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, the unprotected sent mails are overwritten chronologically.
- When Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) is used, the mail is sent as Deco-mail.

- When i-mode mail containing pictograms is sent to a mobile phone of a telecommunication carrier (au, SoftBank or Tu-Ka) except DoCoMo, the pictograms are automatically converted to similar pictograms on the receiver's terminal. Note that, the pictograms may not be displayed correctly on the receiver's terminal depending on the models and/or functions of the receiver's terminals and they may be converted to ■ if there are no applicable pictograms.
- Depending on the signal quality, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Even when i-mode mail is sent correctly, an error message "Transmission failed." may appear depending on the signal quality.
- When transmission fails, i-mode mail is saved in "Unsent messages" folder of Unsent messages.
- Error messages for address unknown, etc. may not be received when mails are sent to addresses except DoCoMo.
- When the memory for Unsent messages is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, i-mode mail cannot be created or send. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail and/or SMS from the folder in Unsent messages.
- When a mail exceeding 10,000 bytes in process of creation is automatically saved due to other functions being started, etc., some part of it may not be saved.

◆ Adding address <Add address>

i-mode mail can be sent to up to 5 addresses at the same time (Simultaneous sending).

- There are 3 types of receivers as below :
 - ✉ To : Main receiver
 - ✉ Cc : Receiver(s) other than the main receiver to inform the contents of the mail
 - ✉ Bcc : Receiver(s) to inform the contents of the mail without making the mail address displayed on other receivers' terminals
- When no receiver addresses are entered in ✉ To, the mail cannot be sent.

1 On the mail creation screen, place the cursor on the receiver field and Select the entry method

- When selecting "Mail group", go to Step 3.

Changing address type : On the mail creation screen, place the cursor on the receiver field and **9** Select the address type

Deleting the added address : Place the cursor on the address on the mail creation screen and **8** "Yes"

2 Select address type.

3 Enter the address.

✓ INFORMATION

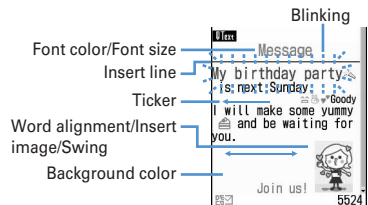
- The mail address entered in the receiver fields of "TO" and "CC" can be seen on the receiving side. However, it may not appear depending on terminals, devices or mailing software, etc.

Deco-mail

Creating and sending Deco-mail

You can create i-mode mail by changing the text font size or background color, or inserting a still image shot, Deco-mail picture or Deco-mail pictograms preinstalled by default (Deco-mail).

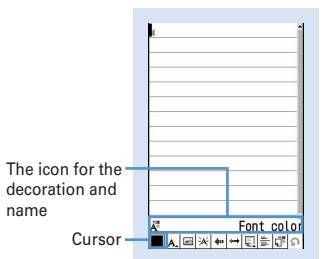
■ Decoration example



- Deco-mail can be created in two ways : one is entering characters after selecting a decoration type (→P166) and the other is selecting a decoration type after entering characters (→P166).
- Deco-mail of 100 Kbytes or less in size can be sent. Up to 20 types of images up to 90 Kbytes in total can be attached to message text of 100 Kbytes.
- If Deco-mail exceeding 10,000 bytes is sent to a Deco-mail compatible i-mode terminal of a model except those* listed below, it is received by the receiver's terminal as a mail containing URL for viewing.
 - * 903i series, 904i series, 905i series, 703i series (except P703iμ), 704i series (except P704iμ), F801i
- When Deco-mail is sent to a Deco-mail incompatible i-mode terminal, mail containing URL is received by the receiver's terminal. For Deco-mail exceeding 10,000 bytes in size, terminals of some incompatible models may receive only the text, but cannot receive viewing URLs.

◆ Entering characters after specifying decoration

1 On the mail creation screen, select the message text field ▶



Decoration selection screen

2 Select decoration ▶ Enter characters

Selecting the decoration icon on the decoration selection screen causes the decoration to be selected.

Operation of decoration → P166 "Operating procedures on the decoration selection screen of Deco-mail"

Setting multiple decorations : Place the cursor on the decorations and  ▶ Enter characters

- Ticker, Swing and Word alignment cannot be set at the same time.

Canceling the selected decoration and entering characters : Place the cursor on the character entry position and  ▶  ▶ Enter characters

- Decorations that can be canceled are Font color, Font size, Blink, Ticker, Swing and Word alignment.

Changing a decoration :  ▶   ▶ Select the start position

The next procedure → P167 Step 2 and the following steps in "Specifying decoration after entering characters"

Canceling all decorations :  ▶  

3 ▶ ▶ Check the decoration

You can check the decoration set to the text and the accurate bytes of the remaining data amount you can enter on the lower-right screen.

4 ▶ ▶

✓ INFORMATION

- A decoration can also be selected by pressing  on a message text entry screen and selecting "Decorate mail".

❖ Operating procedures on the decoration selection screen of Deco-mail

Function	Operating procedure/supplement
 Font color	Select a Font color ▶ Enter characters • Select from 20 default colors or 64 colors of "Other color". • The pictogram font colors can also be changed (except for Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D)). • The font color can be restored to the original by specifying the range. → P166
 Font size	Select a Font size ▶ Enter characters • Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) cannot be changed.
 Insert image	① Select the insertion source • If you select "Use still camera", a still image smaller than H/V-VGA(640×480, 480×640) size can be shot and inserted. • If you press  instead of , you can display Deco-mail picture list. • Deco-mail pictogram can be inserted also in the procedure for entering pictogram. → P271 ② Select a folder ▶ Select an image
 Blink	Enter characters • Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) cannot be set.
 Ticker	Enter characters • Enter characters between  and .
 Swing	Enter characters • Enter characters between  and .
 Word alignment	Select word alignment ▶ Enter characters • If characters are already entered at the cursor position, a line feed occurs and the display position is set.
 Insert line	Lines (ruled lines) are inserted in the color specified with  (Font color).
 Background color	Select a background color • Select from 20 default colors or 64 colors of "Other color".
 Undo	Only last set decoration or the character entry is canceled.

◆ Specifying decoration after entering characters

- "Insert line", "Insert image" and "Background color" cannot be operated. Specify decoration first and then operate them. → P166

1 On the mail creation screen, select the message text field ▶ Place the cursor on the start position of the decoration and

2 Select the end point.

Selecting from the starting position to the beginning of the sentence :

Selecting from the starting position to the end of the sentence :

Selecting the whole sentence :

3 Select the decoration.

Changing font color : Select a font color

- The color of separating line (ruled line) is also changed.
- To change the color back to the default, select "Default".

Changing font size : -

Blinking characters :

- Press to cancel.

Displaying characters by ticker :

- Press to cancel.

Swinging characters to display :

- Press to cancel.

Changing word alignment : -

- Display position of image is also changed.

Canceling all decorations in a selected range :

Copying :

Cutting :

Returning to the previous setting :

- Only last set decoration or character entry is canceled.

Decorating characters continuously : Repeat Step 3

Procedures for checking or canceling decoration → P166 Step 2-3 in "Entering characters after specifying decoration"

4

✓INFORMATION

- Even when the decorated characters are deleted, only decoration data remains and the number of characters permitted may be fewer. Cancel decoration first and then delete them. To delete characters with decoration data on the right of the cursor position, press and hold for 1 second or more.
- On the mail creation screen or the preview screen, the operation such as blink, ticker, swing and animation is automatically stopped after a certain period.
- When mails are exchanged with other than FOMA terminal supporting Deco-mail, such as PC, the decoration may not be correctly displayed.

Using mail templates

A mail template is a predefined form of i-mode mail. An i-mode mail can be easily created by modifying one of such forms.

In addition to templates stored by default, mail templates created by yourself or templates downloaded from sites are also available.

◆ Using template for creating a mail <Load template>

1 On the mail creation screen,

Select a template to read

Icon definitions → P177 "Inbox message list screen"

2 Edit the mail

✓INFORMATION

- When you attempt to load a template from the mail creation screen with items already being entered, a confirmation screen appears asking if you delete the existing contents before loading the template.

◆ Viewing templates and creating mail

MENU 18

1 Select a template.

2 Edit the mail

◆ Creating and saving template <Save as template>

Created or sent/received i-mode mail can be saved as template.

- Saving i-mode mail as a template is disabled in the cases below :
 - When the total size of the text and decoration data exceeds 10,000 bytes
 - When the total size of the text, decorations and attached files exceeds 100 Kbytes
- Sent/received i-mode mail without text cannot be saved. Address and title are not saved.
- Maximum number of saved items→P335

1 On the mail creation screen,

 **6** **2** ▶ "Yes"

Saving sent/received i-mode mail as template : On the mail detail view screen,  **4** **5**

2 Set the required items.

Display name : Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.

File name : Up to 36 characters using one-byte alphanumeric characters, ". ", "- " and "_ " can be entered. ". " cannot be used for the first character of the file name.

3

The template is saved in Template.

- To overwrite to an existing template, press , select the template to be overwritten and then select "Yes". Note that the templates set by default cannot be overwritten.

✓INFORMATION

- If saving a template containing an image that cannot be sent as mail, the image may be deleted.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, a confirmation screen for deletion appears. To save the template, follow the instruction on the screen and delete a saved template.

◆ Downloading template

- The maximum size of each mail template that can be saved is 200 Kbytes.
- Maximum number of saved items→P335

1 Display a site ▶ Select a mail template to download

- Pressing  while downloading : Stop download

2 "Save"

The next procedure→P168 Step 2 and the following steps in "Creating and saving template"

Displaying : "Preview"

Stopping saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

✓INFORMATION

- When an unavailable file is attached, a confirmation screen for deleting the attached file before saving appears.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, a confirmation screen appears asking if you delete. To save the template, follow the instruction on the screen and delete saved template.

◆ Changing detail information of template

- Preinstalled templates cannot be changed.

1 **8**

2 Place the cursor on the template and

 **4** **2**

The next procedure→P168 Step 2 and the following steps in "Creating and saving template"

- You can also change it by pressing  during the display of detail information.

◆ Deleting template

- Preinstalled templates cannot be deleted.

<Example> Deleting a template

1 **8**

2 Place the cursor on the template to delete and

 **2** **1**

Deleting selected templates :

 **2** **2** ▶ Select templates ▶ 

Deleting all templates :

 **2** **3** ▶ Authenticate

3 "Yes"

Attachment (Sending)

Attaching files

- You can send i-mode mail with files attached.
- Up to 10 files of up to 2 Mbytes in total can be attached.
 - Files prohibited from attaching to mail and outputting from FOMA terminal (except images and melodies with "File restricted" set for File restriction with your terminal) or files whose function of UIM operation restriction is set cannot be attached.
 - Attachable file types are as shown below :

File type	Condition of attachment
Image*1	• JPEG and GIF format images and GIF animation can be attached (created animation cannot be attached).
Movie/i-motion/sound*2	• Only MP4 format movie/i-motion can be attached (ASF format or partially downloaded movie/i-motion cannot be attached). • Movies/i-motion with replay restriction set cannot be attached.*3
Melody	• Only melodies in SMF or MFI format can be attached.
Schedule data	—
Bookmark data	—
Phonebook entry	—

1 When sending a JPEG image larger than 10,000 bytes to an i-mode terminal other than the ones shown below, it is reduced in the i-shot Center to a size that the receiving terminal supports. To an i-mode terminal with mova service, only one JPEG image can be sent. A URL for image viewing is granted to the receiver's terminal, so that the image can be downloaded by selecting the URL.

2 Movie/i-motion with images may be converted to continuous still images and played depending on receiver's terminals or devices. When sending data to i-mode terminal except the ones shown below, a movie recorded in Compatible mode is recommended.→ P133

When a receiver's terminal is an i-mode terminal of a model except those* listed below, movies/i-motion are saved in i-motion mail Center and the terminal receives i-mode mail containing URL for i-motion viewing.

Sound recorded with the sound recorder or Record voice is attached as movie/i-motion containing only sound. i-mode terminals with mova service cannot receive movies/i-motion containing only sound.

* 903i series, 904i series, 905i series, 703i series (except P703iμ), 704i series (except P704iμ), F801i

*3 Files may not be attached to the mail even when replay restriction is not set.

- 1 On the mail creation screen, select the attachment field ▶ Select a file to attach
- The selected file is displayed in the attachment field of the mail creation screen.

- Selecting an image ("1 Image")
- For JPEG image larger than QVGA (240×320, 320×240), confirmation screen for converting into QVGA size appears.
 - For an image with location information, a confirmation screen for pasting location URL to the message text appears. Select "No" to attach only the image.
 - When "Activate camera" is selected as an attachment source, you can shoot and attach a still image.

- Selecting a movie/i-motion ("2 i-motion")
- When "Activate camera" is selected as an attachment source, you can shoot and attach a movie.

- Selecting "3 Melody"
- Melodies are saved in "Mail attach melody" folder by default.→ P300

- Selecting voice ("7 Record voice")
- Sound data can be recorded and attached to mails.
- Procedure for recording sound→P244 Step 2-5 in "Recording sound"

2 Edit mail

- ✓INFORMATION
- Attachments not supported by the receiver's terminals may be deleted by the i-mode Center or may not be displayed/played correctly.
 - Sending an attachment file of a certain size may take time.

Changing/removing attachments

<Example> Canceling attachment

- 1 On the mail creation screen, place the cursor on the attachment field to cancel.
- 2  ▶ "Yes"
- Changing attachment :  ▶ Retry attaching files→ P169

Saving i-mode mail and sending later

◆ Saving i-mode mail

i-mode mail in the process of creation can be saved instead of sending.

- Maximum number of saved items→P335

1 On the mail creation screen, **3**

i-mode mail is saved in "Unsent messages" folder of Unsent messages.

✓INFORMATION

- When the memory is not enough, a message appears indicating that i-mode mail cannot be saved. To save the i-mode mail, delete unnecessary mails from Unsent messages before saving.

◆ Automatically sending mail from a place where radio waves reach <Auto-send>

You can set so that i-mode mail created out of service area is automatically sent when moving to a place where radio waves reach.

- Up to 5 mails can be registered.

1 On the mail creation screen, **2**

-  appears at the top of the display.
- i-mode mail with Auto-send set is saved in "Unsent messages" folder of Unsent messages.

❖When moving to a place where radio waves reach

Automatically sent. During automatic sending,  blinks. When transmission is complete correctly, the i-mode mail is saved in a folder of Outbox and  disappears.

- When transmission is interrupted or failed,  flashes instead of . i-mode mail is left in "Unsent messages" folder of Unsent messages.

Place the cursor on i-mode mail failed in automatic sending in Unsent messages and press  **5** **2** to display the reason for unsending.

- When all of unsending mails failed in Auto-send in "Unsent messages" folder are deleted through edition, cancellation, deletion or move of such messages to a folder for Message i-appli or replacement of UIM,  goes off.

✓INFORMATION

- When failed because the terminal is out of service area, sending the mail is retried up to 2 times.
- Not sent automatically while creating a mail or editing signature.

❖Canceling Auto-send setting

- 1  **4** ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Place the cursor on the i-mode mail to be canceled and**  ▶ **"Yes"**

✓INFORMATION

- Auto-send setting is canceled also in the cases below :
 - When the mail creation screen appears by selecting Auto-send message saved in "Unsent messages" folder
 - When Auto-send message saved in "Unsent messages" folder is moved to a folder for Message i-appli
 - When UIM is replaced
 - When Host number or Host address is changed in Host selection

◆ Editing/sending sent/saved i-mode mail

Sent i-mode mail and SMS, i-mode mail and SMS saved or failed to be sent can be edited and sent.

1 **4** or **5** ▶ **Select a folder**

- For SMS,  appears.

2 **Select the mail to edit.**

Re-editing the sent mail : Place the cursor on the mail and 

3 **Edit the mail** ▶

Quick mail

Creating mail quickly

i-mode mail and SMS can be sent by simple operation to the parties with phonebook number 0-99 in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved in the phonebook entry, the destination is the first mail address for i-mode mail and the first phone number for SMS.

<Example> Sending an i-mode mail to the mail address of phonebook number 23

1 **Phonebook number (**2** **3**)** ▶

The i-mode mail creation screen destined for the mail address saved in phonebook number that you entered appears.

Creating and sending i-mode mail→P164

Creating SMS : Phonebook number ▶  **(1 sec. or more)**

The SMS creation screen destined to the phone number saved in phonebook number that you entered appears.

Creating and sending SMS→P193

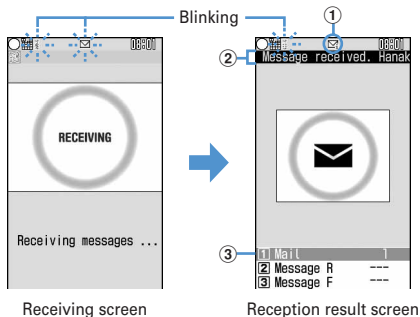
When i-mode mail is received

- Maximum number of saved items→P335

1 Receive an i-mode mail.

and blink and "Receiving messages..." appears. Mail ring alert sounds, the light is lit or flashed and the reception result screen appears. The received i-mode mail is saved in a folder of Inbox.

- While receiving a mail, : Cancel receiving
The mail may be received depending on the receiving conditions.



① Icon

- : Unread i-mode mail exists
- : Unread i-mode mail and SMS exists

② Reception result ticker

③ Number of received i-mode mails

- If you do not press any key for approximately 15 seconds after the reception result screen appears, the previous screen automatically reappears.

When reception failed

"X" appears on the right side of "Mail" on the reception result screen. To receive again, perform i-mode inquiry.

✓INFORMATION

- When multiple mail and/or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the terminal operates depending on the conditions set for the mail or MessageR/F received last.
- An i-mode mail of up to 100 Kbytes including attachment files can be automatically received. Attachment files exceeding 100 Kbytes can be manually downloaded from i-mode Center.→P174
- Extremely large i-mode mail may be returned with an error message to the sender without being accepted in the i-mode Center.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, the unread or unprotected received mails are overwritten chronologically. A large number of existing mails may be deleted depending on the size of the received mail.

- In the cases below, received i-mode mail is stored in the i-mode Center :

- When the power is OFF
- During a videophone call
- When Safety alarm is ON (Sending location, sending voice)
- When Silent alarm is ON (Sending location)
- When Loss protection is ON (Sending location)
- When Power OFF notice is ON
- In Omakase Lock
- In Self mode
- Accessing Data Center
- During FirstPass center connection
- When reception has failed
- Out of i-mode service area
- When receiving SMS
- When Receive option is "ON"
- In infrared communication
- When storage area is filled with mail unread or protected

- If there is not enough memory space available because memory is filled with unread and protected mail, reception of i-mode mail is stopped, and appear on the screen.

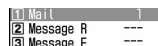
To receive mails, changing unread mail to read mail (→P181), displaying the contents of unread mails (→P177), deleting unnecessary mails (→P182) or unprotecting (→P182) is required.

- If there are remaining i-mode mail in the i-mode Center, or appears. It may not appear even when there is i-mode mail. When the i-mode Center reaches the maximum number of mail items that can be stored, the icon changes to or .

- You may not automatically receive i-mode mail soon after sent. Perform i-mode inquiry.

◆ Displaying newly-received i-mode mail

1 On the reception result screen, .



- If or is pressed, MessageR/F can be displayed.

2 Select a folder ▶ Select a mail

- Playing when a melody is attached→P189
- Reading Inbox message details screen→P178

Selecting i-mode mail to receive

You can check the subject of i-mode mail stored in the i-mode Center to select if you receive or delete i-mode mail without receiving it.

- To use Receive option, Receive option must be set to "ON" in advance.

❖ When mail arrives at i-mode Center

"You have ☒ at i-mode center" appears on the display.

- Even when i-mode mail is stored in i-mode Center, ring alert, vibrator, etc. do not operate.
- Pressing any key except or clears "You have ☒ at i-mode center".

✓ INFORMATION

- In All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock, Lock on close, loss protection lock and Mail lock, no messages appear.
- If you perform Check new message, all the messages are received. To inhibit reception of mails, deselect "Mail" from the inquiry items for Check msg option.
- SMS and MessageR/F are received automatically even when Receive option set to "ON".

◆ Selecting mail to receive

MENU 163

1

You are connected to the i-mode Center and can view the list of i-mode mail stored.



- Icons displayed at the end of the mail are defined as follows:

: Image is attached.

: Melody is attached

: i-motion is attached

: ToruCa is attached^{*1}

: File other than above is attached^{*2}

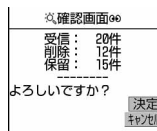
^{*1} Since the file is not supported by this FOMA terminal, it is deleted when received at the i-mode Center.

^{*2} Files not supported by this FOMA terminal cannot be displayed or saved.

2 "保留 (Hold)" for each mail ▶ Select from "受信 (Receive)", "削除 (Delete)" or "保留 (Hold)"

- When "保留" is selected, the mails are stored at the i-mode Center as they are.
- To delete all mails stored at the i-mode Center, select "削除 (Delete)" of "iモードセンターから全てのメールを (All mails from i-mode Center)".
- For more than one page, select "前ページ (Previous page)" and "次ページ (Next page)" at the end of the mail list to view the previous and next page respectively.

3 "受信/削除 (Receive/Delete)" ▶ "決定 (Select)"



Check new message

Checking for i-mode mail

MENU 161

MENU 26

You can make inquiry for any i-mode mail delivered while you were out of service area or the power was turned OFF.

MessageR/F can also be checked at the same time if it is set in Check msg. option.

- Depending on the signal quality, you may not be able to perform i-mode message.

1

- During i-mode message, the light flashes in Rainbow. When there are no newly received i-mode mail after i-mode message, the light flashes in red. When i-mode message failed, the light flashes in yellow.
- Operation on the reception result screen is the same as for Mail auto receive. → P171

✓ INFORMATION

- If "Check new message" is set under Side key shortcut setting, checking new messages is possible also by pressing and holding for 1 second or more with FOMA terminal folded.

Replying to i-mode mail

You can reply the received i-mode mail or SMS.

- You may not reply to some received mails.
- You cannot reply to received SMS sent from "User unset", "Payphone" or "Not support".

1 1 Select a folder Place the cursor on the mail to reply to and

The Reply format screen appears.

- For a mail sent to multiple addresses, the selection screen of the receiver appears. Select "Sender" or "All".
- The Reply format screen does not appear in the cases below. Go to Step 3.
 - When Activate quick reply is "OFF"
 - When no quick reply template is registered
 - When replying to SMS

2

Quote characters (>) and the text of the received mail are entered.

Using Quick reply :  - 

The selected quick reply format is inserted before the quoted text.

3 Edit the mail

The senders mail address or phone number of the received mail is entered in the receiver field, the subject of the received mail is entered in the subject field with "RE:" affixed at the beginning (only i-mode mail), and text of received mail and Quote characters (>) are entered in the message text field.

- The status icon of Inbox changes from  to , or from  to .

✓INFORMATION

- You can set if you use Quick reply when replying and set the text of the Quick reply. →P188
- You can set if you quote the message when replying; quote characters added at the beginning of the quoted message. →P188
- When pressing  and selecting "Reply/Forward" on the received mail list screen or details screen, "Reply" (received message text not quoted) or "Reply with quote" (received message text quoted) can be selected regardless of the settings of Reply format.
- The received mail attachments are not attached for replies.
- The link item that can activate melody or i-appli is not attached to reply mail and also is not quoted as characters.

- If file restriction is set to the image attached to the message text, it is not quoted for replies. When the number of images in the message text exceeds the limit of 20 types and 90 Kbytes in total after quotation, a message appears showing that the excessive images are deleted. Pressing  deletes the excessive images and displays mail creation screen.

Forwarding i-mode mail

Forwarding i-mode mail

You can forward received i-mode mail or SMS to other addresses. i-mode mail is forwarded as i-mode mail and SMS is as SMS.

1 1 Select a folder Place the cursor on the mail to forward and

The subject of the received mail is entered in the subject field with "FW:" affixed at the beginning (only i-mode mail) and the text of the received mail is entered in the message text field.

- When a received mail with an attachment is forwarded, the attachment is also set. Note that a Receive option attachment file being or not acquired is not set.

2 Edit the mail

- The status icon of Inbox changes from  to , or from  to .

✓INFORMATION

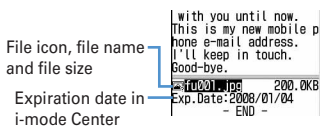
- When operating from the Inbox message details screen, press  and select "Reply/Forward" → "Forward".
- When the link item that can activate i-appli or the melody that appears in the mail text are included in the received mail text, it is not set to forwarding mail and are not quoted as characters.
- Regarding attachments to received mail (image and melody), files that cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal are not attached to forwarded mail.
- When forwarding the received mail including images that exceeds 90 Kbytes in total, a message appears indicating that excessive images are deleted. Press  to display the mail creation screen with excessive images deleted.

Downloading Receive option attachment file

You can download receive option attachment files that are being or not yet downloaded in the received i-mode mail.

- When the total size of text and attachment file exceeds 100 Kbytes, a part or all of attachment file is received as a receive option attachment file.
- The maximum size of each file that can be downloaded is 2 Mbytes.
- When there is an attachment file which is being or not yet downloaded, its storage period in the i-mode Center appears on the received message details screen.

1 [Menu] [1] Select a folder Select i-mode mail with an attachment file not yet downloaded



Icon definitions→P178 "Inbox message details screen"

2 Select the file name.

- If you press [Menu] and select "No" while downloading, downloading is terminated and the downloaded portion is saved.
- Operations after downloading are the same as those of an attachment file automatically received.→P174

✓INFORMATION

- When the memory in FOMA terminal is not enough for Receive option attachment file to be downloaded, downloading fails. Retry downloading after deleting files attached to received i-mode mail (→P176), displaying the contents of unread mails (→P177), changing state of unread mails to read (→P181), unprotecting (→P182) and/or deleting unnecessary mails (→P182).
- Read mails may be deleted when downloading a Receive option attachment file of a certain size.
- When downloading interrupts because of out of service area, etc., resuming confirmation screen appears. When "No" is selected, the downloaded portion is saved automatically and [Menu] appears as attachment icon.

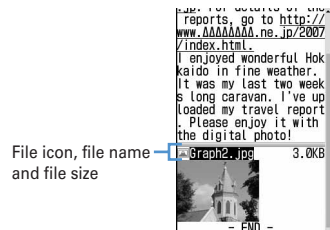
Attachment (receiving)

Operating auto receive attachment files

You can display/save the file attached to an i-mode mail.

- The files below cannot be displayed, played or saved on this FOMA terminal. Note that you can only forward them.
 - Melody exceeding 100 Kbytes
 - Multiple phonebook data
 - Multiple schedule data
 - Multiple bookmark data
 - Files not supported by this FOMA terminal
- Maximum number of saved items→P335
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, you cannot save the data (files). To save the data, delete the data (files) in the FOMA terminal.

<Example> i-mode mail with an image attached



Icon definitions→P178 "Inbox message details screen"

◆ Displaying/saving image

1 [Menu] [1] Select a folder Select i-mode mail with an image attached

2 Place the cursor on the file name of the image to save and [Menu] [6] [3]

The next procedure→P150 Step 2 and the following steps in "Downloading images"

Saving image of Deco-mail :

[Menu] [4] [4] Select the image

The next procedure→P150 Step 2 and the following steps in "Downloading images"

Switching display/not display for image : Select the file name.

Displaying title : Place the cursor on the file name of the image and [Menu] [6] [2]

✓INFORMATION

- Select the file name of the image to display the image attached to Deco-mail.
- An image whose horizontal width is larger than the display size is displayed being scaled down.
- This FOMA terminal may not be able to display some images saved.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vice versa) sizes larger than 640×480 in GIF format or 1,728×2,304 in JPEG format cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal. Some JPEG images cannot be saved depending on the JPEG type.
- An image attached to a sent mail can be operated in the same way.

◆ Playing/saving i-motion from i-motion mail

1 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode mail with i-motion attached

2 Place the cursor on i-motion to save and 6 3

The next procedure→P161 Step 3 in "Downloading i-motion from sites"

Playing : Place the cursor on the i-motion and

  6  1

Checking the title : Place the cursor on the i-motion and   6  2

✓INFORMATION

- This FOMA terminal may not be able to play some i-motion.
- A movie/i-motion attached to a sent mail can also be operated in the same way.
- Playing i-motion attached to a mail on a PC requires i-motion compatible software. For details, see the DoCoMo website.

◆ Playing/saving melody

1 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode mail with melody attached

- There are 2 types in received melody. One is attached after the text, and the other is attached to the text.

2 Place the cursor on the melody to save and 6 2

The next procedure→P151 Step 3 and the following steps in "Downloading melodies"

Playing : Place the cursor on the melody and

  6  1

Checking the title : Place the cursor on the melody and   6  5

- For the melody attached to the text, place the cursor on the melody and press   6  4.

✓INFORMATION

- Some melodies may not be played correctly depending on the receiver's terminal or the received melody.
- When the character of the text is mistakenly recognized as the data of the melody, place the cursor on the melody and select  →"Attachment"→"Display data" so that it can be displayed as a character. Press  on the first line of the data-displayed melody to redisplay the melody.
- Melody attached to a sent mail can be operated in the same way.

◆ Displaying/saving phonebook data

1 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode mail with phonebook data attached

2 Select the phonebook data to save.

Displaying : Place the cursor on the phonebook data and   6  1

Checking the file name : Place the cursor on the phonebook data and   6  2

3

The saved phonebook data is placed in FOMA terminal phonebook.

✓INFORMATION

- Phonebook data attached to a sent mail can be operated in the same way.

◆ Displaying/saving schedule data

1  ▶ **1** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode mail with schedule data attached

2 Select the schedule data to save.

Displaying : Place the cursor on the schedule data and  ▶ **6** **1**

Checking the file name : Place the cursor on the schedule data and  ▶ **6** **2**

3 

The saved schedule data is stored in Scheduler.

✓INFORMATION

- Schedule data attached to a sent mail can be operated in the same way.

◆ Displaying/saving bookmark data

1  ▶ **1** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode mail with bookmark data attached

2 Select the bookmark to save.

Displaying : Place the cursor on the bookmark data and  ▶ **6** **1**

Checking the file name : Place the cursor on the bookmark data and  ▶ **6** **2**

3 Enter the title name ▶ 

The saved bookmark data is saved in the first folder of Bookmark.

- Up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters can be entered.
- If saving the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed on the bookmark list.

✓INFORMATION

- Bookmark data attached to a sent mail can be operated in the same way.

Deleting attachment

Deleting attachment

You can delete the file attached to received mails.

- You cannot delete melody or image attached to the message text and link item to activate i-appli.

1  ▶ **1** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode mail with a file attached

2 Place the cursor on the file name of the file to delete and  ▶ **6** **4**

- To delete all attached files at a time, place the cursor on the file name and press  **6** **5**.

Deleting attached melodies or receive option

attachment files : Place the cursor on the file name of the melody or receive option attachment file and  ▶ **6** **3**

- To delete all attached melodies or Receive option attachment file at a time, place the cursor on the file name of melodies or Receive option attachment file and  **6** **4**.

3 "Yes"

- The file name of the deleted attachment is displayed in a light color and cannot be selected.

✓INFORMATION

- A file attached to a sent mail can be operated in the same way.

Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox

MENU 11
MENU 14
MENU 15

Received/sent/unsent i-mode mail and SMS can be checked.

- "はじめてまして (Welcome)" mail is saved in "Inbox" folder by default.
- Maximum number of saved items→P335

<Example> Displaying received mails

1 1

Displaying Outbox folder list : 5

Displaying Unsent messages folder list : 4

2 Select a folder.

The received mail list is displayed.

- Select a folder for Message i-appli to activate the corresponding i-appli. To display a mail without starting i-appli, place the cursor on the folder for Message i-appli and press 1.

3 Select a mail to display.

- Useful functions of Mail→P184

◆ Reading folder list screen

◆ Inbox folder list screen



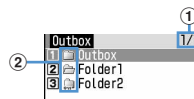
① Usage rate of the memory

② Page/Total pages

③ Folder

- : No mail
- : No unread mail
- : No unread mail or no mail (secret attribute ON)
- : No unread mail or no mail (used in Message i-appli)
- : Unread mail exist
- : Unread mail exist (secret attribute ON)
- : Unread mail exist (used in Message i-appli)

◆ Outbox/Unsent folder list screen



① Page/Total pages

② Folder

- : No mail
- : Mail exist
- : Secret attribute ON
- : Message i-appli

◆ Message list/details screen

◆ Inbox message list screen



① Page/Total pages

② Status icon

- : Unread : Unread (unable to reply)
- : Read : Read (unable to reply)
- : Read (replied) : Read (forwarded)
- : Protected : Protected (unable to reply)
- : Protected (replied) : Protected (forwarded)
- * For replied and forwarded, indication priority is given to the last operation icon.

③ Attachment/SMS/Notification/Message i-appli

- : Image : i-motion
- : Melody
- : Phonebook
- : Schedule data
- : Bookmark data
- : Files cannot be displayed on this FOMA terminal
- : Multiple data are attached
- : SMS
- : SMS report request, Missed call notification or Notify recorded message
- : Message to be used in Message i-appli
- : i-appli To

* When "Display 1 row" is set in Message list, appears for the mail with attachment.

④ Sender

When saved in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

⑤ Reception date and time

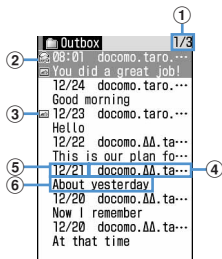
The time is displayed on the reception day and the date is displayed on other than the reception day.

⑥ Subject

It may not appear depending on the i-mode mail. For SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed.

- For SMS sent from an overseas sender, the sender address is preceded by "+".

❖ Outbox/Unsent messages list screen



① Page/Total pages

② Status icon

No icon : Unprotected

: Protected

: Auto-send set

: Failed in Auto-send

: Protected + Auto-send set

: Protected + failed in Auto-send

③ Attachment/SMS/Message i-appli icon

→ P177 "Inbox message list screen"

* When Message list for the sent message list is "Display 1 row", if there is an attachment file, appears at the end of data and time.

④ Receiver

If the receiver is saved in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

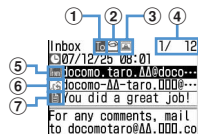
⑤ Sent/Saved date and time

The time is displayed on the reception day and the date is displayed on other than the reception day.

⑥ Subject

For SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed.

❖ Inbox message details screen



① Address type icon

: Receiver (and only for i-mode mail)

For i-mode mail, you can check which Address type is applied to you as a receiver.

② Status/Notification icon

→ P177 "Inbox message list screen"

③ Types of attachment/SMS icon

Types of attachment

: Image : i-motion

: Melody

: Phonebook

: Schedule data

: Bookmark data

: Files that cannot be displayed on this FOMA terminal

: Multiple files are attached

: i-appli (i-appli To)

: Invalid data attached

* Depending on the conditions of attachment files, icons below appear in addition to those above.

: Copyrighted (Mail attachment or output from FOMA terminal disabled)

: Data error/Data exceeded

: Receive option attachment file not yet downloaded

: Receive option attachment file being downloaded

: Downloading of Receive option attachment file disabled

SMS icon

: SMS

④ Mail No./Number of msgs

⑤ Reception date and time

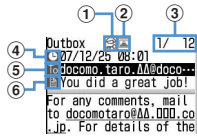
⑥ Address type of Sender's/Broadcast address

: Sender : Sender (unable to reply)

: Receiver (only for i-mode mail)

: Receiver (unable to reply) (only for i-mode mail)

⑦ Subject



- ① **Status icon**
→P178 "Outbox/Unsent messages list screen"
- ② **Attachment/SMS icon**
→P178 "Inbox message details screen"
- ③ **Mail No./Number of msgs**
- ④ **Sent date and time**
- ⑤ **Address type icon**
To Cc Bcc : Receiver (Cc and Bcc only for i-mode mail)
- ⑥ **Subject**

✓ **INFORMATION**

- Characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with spaces or other characters.
- When the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, the excessive characters are deleted.
- When the message exceeds the number of characters that can be received, "/" or "/" is inserted at the end and the remainder of the message is deleted automatically.
- When receiving a mail decorated on PCs, operations by i-mode terminals may not be the same as those on PCs.
- When the attached file is larger than the receivable data size (attachable data size→P169) or depending on files, it is deleted at the i-mode Center and cannot be received. When an attachment is deleted, a message [添付ファイル削除 (Attachment deleted)] is displayed below the title.
- Either a melody or an link item to start i-appli attached to the message text is valid. If multiple data are attached, the attached data become invalid. (?) appears for the attachment icon in this case.
- The subject and sender of received SMS, SMS report request, missed call notification and Notify recorded message are displayed as follows :

Item	Subject	Sender
SMS	Received SMS	Phone numbers
SMS report request	SMS report request	SMS Center
Notify missed call	Notify missed call	DoCoMo SMS
Notify recorded message	Answer videophone	DoCoMo MSG

For SMS sent, "Sent SMS" appears as a subject.

- * When the phone number is saved in the phonebook, the name appears on the sender's terminal.
- * When the caller ID is not notified, the characters below are displayed in the sender field :
"User unset" (Message was sent with setting not to notify the caller ID)
"Payphone" (Message was sent from a payphone)
"Not support" (Message was sent using a procedure that does not provide caller ID information)

- For i-mode mail or SMS copied by infrared communication and sent/received while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), ⌚ may appear succeeding the date and time.

◆ **Storing mail in Data Center <Data Security Service>**

By using Data Security Service, i-mode mail and SMS can be stored in Data Center on the network.

- Data Security Service→P120
- This is an optional subscriber service to be charged requiring subscription. When having not subscribed to this service, attempting to connect to Data Center displays the screen indicating that.
- Up to 10 mails can be stored by one operation.
- When saving i-mode mail, files attached, if any, are deleted. Note that, images or melody in the message (except those whose mail attachment or output from FOMA terminal is prohibited) are not deleted.
- SMS report request cannot be stored.
- For details of restoration, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]". Restored mails are protected except for the cases below :
 - When received mail or SMS saved in Data Center is unread
 - When the number of protected mails reached the limit
- Logs saved in Data Center can be viewed.→P76

- 1 ▶ 1 or 4 - 5 ▶ **Select a folder**
- 2 ▶ 4 4 ▶ **Select the mail to save**
Storing an unsent mail : ▶ 4 2 ▶ **Select a mail**
- 3 ▶ **"Yes" ▶ Authenticate**
 - : Cancel saving
- 4 **Check the communication result.**
 - Display of the communication result disappears automatically in approximately 5 seconds.

◆ **Creating/deleting folders**

- You can set secret attribute to a created folder. In Privacy mode (when Mail & logs is "Hide secret fldrs"), mail folders with Secret attribute set to "ON" are not displayed.
- Setting Privacy mode→P111

❖ Creating folders

- In Inbox, up to 40 folders can be created in addition to "Inbox" folder and folder for Message i-appli.
- In Outbox or Unsent messages, up to 20 folders in addition to "Outbox" "Unsent messages" folder and the folder for Message i-appli can be created respectively.
- Folder settings for "Inbox" "Outbox" "Unsent messages" folders and the folder for Message i-appli cannot be changed.

1 ► 1 or 4 - 5

2 ► 1

Changing folder setting : Place the cursor on the folder and ► 3

Changing the order of the folder : Place the cursor on the folder and ► 7 or 8

3 **Set the required items** ►

Folder name : Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Secret attribute : Set if you display a folder in Privacy mode (when Mail & Logs is "Hide secret fldrs").

❖ Deleting folders

- "Inbox", "Outbox" and "Unsent messages" folders cannot be deleted.
- Folders including protected mails cannot be deleted.
- A folder for Message i-appli cannot be deleted if the i-appli for the folder exists.

1 ► 1 or 4 - 5 ► **Place the cursor on the folder to delete and**
 ► 2 ► **Authenticate** ► "Yes"

◆ Checking number of mail items <Check No. of msgs>

The number of unread, read and protected mails saved in Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages can be checked for each folder.

1 ► 1 or 4 - 5 ► **Place the cursor on the folder to check number of items and**
 ► 5

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the mail list screen, press , and select "Display" → "Check No. of items".

◆ Displaying mail address <Display address>

- The mail address cannot be checked from the unsent message details screen.

1 ► 1 or 5 ► **Select a folder** ► **Select the mail to check**

2 ► 3 2

✓INFORMATION

- You can check also by selecting a sender or an address to check on the mail details screen.
- When operating from the received/sent/unsent mail list, place the cursor on the mail to check the address and press and select "Display" → "Display address". When there is more than one address, all mail addresses are displayed for sent mail and unsent mail, addresses except yours ("TO:" "CC:") are displayed for received mail.
- When operating from the details screen of mail template, press and select "Display" → "Display address".

◆ Moving received/sent/unsent mail to another folder <Move message>

<Example> Moving a mail

1 ► 1 or 4 - 5 ► **Select a folder**

2 **Place the cursor on the mail to move and**
 ► 4 1 1

Moving selected mails :

► 4 1 2 ► **Select mails** ►

Moving all i-appli in the folder :

► 4 1 3

3 ► **Select the destination folder** ► "Yes"

◆ Searching for mail

You can search for mails by a sender/receiver of received/sent mails registered in Phonebook or by a sent/received date.

<Example> Searching by phonebook

1 > 1 or 5

2 > 9 1 > Search by phonebook

- Place the cursor on the phonebook entry or date to display the mails.
- When searching sent mails by phonebook, broadcast mails are also searched (the first destination appears on the screen).

Searching by sent/received date :

> 9 2 > Search for the date

3 Select the phonebook entry to search for mail.

Mails searched from all mails are listed.

- From the search result screen, the same operations as on the mail list are enabled.
- Press 0 to cancel searching.

Searching by sent/received date : Select the date to search for mail.

- Mails can also be searched by pressing and entering a date.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the list of received/sent mails, press and select "Search message" → "With phonebook" or "With scheduler". In such a case, only the mails in the folder are searched.

◆ Sorting received/sent mail <Sort>

The sorting order of the mail list in Inbox and Outbox can be changed temporarily. When the list display is closed, sorting is restored to "By date".

1 > 1 or 5 > Select a folder

2 > 7 4

Sorting sent mails : > 5

3 1 - 4

The sorting order of the mail list changes temporarily.

✓INFORMATION

- For sorting "By sender" or "By address", even when the mail address is saved in the phonebook, mails are not sorted by the name saved in the phonebook but in the mail address order.
- When the one- and two-byte characters are mixed in the titles of mails, the sort result "By title" may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- If SMS is included, as the beginnings of SMS are displayed in the list screen, the result of sorting by "By title" does not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.

◆ Changing read/unread state of received mail

- Read/unread state of received mails protected cannot be changed.

<Example> Changing a mail from unread to read

1 > 1 > Select a folder

2 Place the cursor on the received mail to change the state and > 5 1

Changing a mail from read to unread : Place the cursor on the mail and > 5 2

Changing selected mails from unread to read :

> 5 3 > Select mails > > "Yes"

Changing selected mails from read to unread :

> 5 4 > Select mails > > "Yes"

Changing all mails in a folder to read :

> 5 5 > "Yes"

Changing all mails in a folder to unread :

> 5 6 > "Yes"

◆ Protecting received/sent mail <Protect mail>

By protecting received or sent or unsent mails, they can be prevented from being erroneously deleted or being overwritten because of the lack of the memory space.

- Maximum number of protected items→P335
- Unread mail cannot be protected.

<Example> Protecting a mail

1 [Envelope] ▶ **1** or **4** - **5** ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Place the cursor on the mail to protect and**

[MENU] ▶ **3** **1**

- The status icon changes to one of the followings :
Inbox : [Read] (Read), [X] (Unable to reply), [Reply] (Replied), [Forward] (Forwarded)
Outbox : [Read]
Unsent message : [Unsent]

Protecting selected mails :

1 [MENU] ▶ **3** **2**

2 **Select a mail** ▶ [Select]

- Each time you press [MENU], you can select/deselect all mails collectively.

Protecting all mails in a folder : [MENU] ▶ **3** **3**

Unprotecting a mail : **Place the cursor on the mail and** [MENU] ▶ **3** **4**

Unprotecting selected mails :

[MENU] ▶ **3** **5** ▶ **Select mails** ▶ [Select]

Unprotecting all mails in a folder : [MENU] ▶ **3** **6**

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the message detail view screen, press [MENU] and select "Protect" or "Cancel protection".
- When "Protect all" is selected, mail is protected in the chronological order, most recent first, until the limit is reached.

◆ Deleting mail <Delete mail>

❖Deleting received mail

You can delete mails in the method below :

○ : Available X : Unavailable

Deletion method	Screen for starting operation		
	Folder list	Mail list	Detail view
All messages	○	X	X
	• Deletes all mails (including unread mails)		
Read in folder	○	○	X
	• Deletes read mails in folder		
All in folder	○	○	X
	• Deletes all mails (including unread mails) in folder		
7days/ 14days/ 30days past in fldr	○	○	X
	• Deletes all mails in folder that has been stored for longer than a specified number of days (including unread mails)		
One item	X	○	○
	• Deletes a selected mail		
Selected items	X	○	X
	• Deletes selected mails		

1 [Envelope] ▶ **1**

- To delete all mails, press [MENU] **4** **6**, perform authentication and go to Step 4.

2 **Select a folder** ▶ [MENU] ▶ **2**

- To delete a received mail, place the cursor on the received mail to delete and press [MENU] **2**.

3 **1** - **7**



Deleting selected mails : **2** ▶ **Select mails** ▶ [Select]

Deleting all mails in a folder : **4** ▶ **Authenticate**

4 "Yes"

❖ Deleting sent/unsent mail

You can delete mails in the method below :

○ : Available × : Unavailable

Deletion method	Screen for starting operation		
	Folder list	Mail list	Detail view
All messages	○	×	×
	• Deletes all mails		
All in folder/ All items	○	○	×
	• Deletes all mails in folder		
One item	×	○	○*
	• Deletes a selected mail		
Selected items	×	○	×
	• Deletes selected mails		

* Delete only sent mails.

<Example> Deleting a mail

1 [Envelope] ➡ [4] or [5]

2 Select a folder ➡ Place the cursor on the mail to delete and [MENU] ➡ [2] [1]

Deleting selected mails : [MENU] ➡ [2] [2] ➡ Select mails ➡ [OK]

Deleting all mails in a folder : Select a folder ➡ [MENU] ➡ [2] [3] ➡ Authenticate

Deleting all mails : [MENU] ➡ [4] [2] ➡ Authenticate

3 "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the folder list, press [MENU] and select "Delete message".
- When operating from the message detail view screen, press [MENU] and select "Delete".

Mail logs

Using message logs

This function is used to record the destination, sender's address and other data of sent/received mail as mail logs. You can create a mail or save in the phonebook.

- Up to 30 items can be recorded for each of sent mails and received mails. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When multiple mails are sent to the same destination, only the latest item is recorded in Sent msg log.
- Message logs of i-mode mails or SMS that cannot be replied to are not recorded.

◆ Displaying message logs

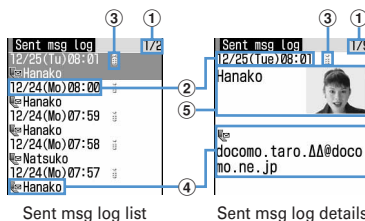
MENU 471

MENU 472

<Example> Displaying Sent message logs

1 [Globe] ➡ [Log]

- Select the party to display details screen.



- ① Page/Total pages (list screen), Log No./Number of items (details screen)
- ② Sent/received date and time
- ③ Message log type
[i-mode icon] : i-mode mail
[SMS icon] : SMS
- ④ Mail address icon in Phonebook (i-mode mail)/phone number icon (SMS) (if saved in Phonebook), mail address (i-mode mail)/phone number (SMS)
• When the mail address or phone number is saved in the phonebook, the name saved in the phonebook is displayed on the sent/received msg log list.
- ⑤ Name, Image
• When the mail address or phone number is saved in the Phonebook, the name or image saved in the phonebook entry is displayed.

Displaying received message logs : [Globe] ➡ [Log]

❖ Using message logs

Creating i-mode mail : Place the cursor on the log to send mail to and  ► **Edit the mail** ► 

- For SMS log, a mail creation screen with a phone number set as destination appears if no mail addresses are saved in the phonebook, and the mail creation screen with a mail address set as destination appears if it is set.

Creating SMS : Place the cursor on the log and  (1 sec. or more) ► **Edit SMS** ► 

- For i-mode mail log, SMS cannot be created unless a phone number is saved in the phonebook.

Adding to phonebook :

① **Place the cursor on the log to add to Phonebook and**

 ► **4** or **5** ► **1** or **2**

- When adding to existing phonebook entry, select the phonebook entry.

② **Save the name or mail address, etc.**

Phonebook new entry→P67, 68

Making calls :  or 

Displaying redial/received call logs : 

❖ Switching message log details screens <View preference>

1 **On the sent/received msg log details screen,**

 ► **9** ► **1** - **3**

Setting items →P71 "Switching details screen display"

◆ Deleting message logs

<Example> Deleting a log

1 **On the sent/received msg log list, place the cursor on the message log to delete and**

 ► **6** **1**

Deleting selected logs : On the sent/received msg log list,  ► **6** **2** ► **Select message logs to delete** ► 

Deleting all logs : On the sent/received msg log list,

 ► **6** **3** ► **Authenticate**

2 "Yes"

Useful functions of Mail

◆ Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/ Web To function

1 **On the mail details screen, place the cursor on the phone number, mail address or URL information.**

- Only information which the cursor can be placed on can be selected.

The next procedure→P152 Step 2 in "Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To function"

✓INFORMATION

- This function may not be available for mails received from PC or others.
- This function is not available for mails stored in Data Center.

◆ Copying texts

You can copy characters in an i-mode mail or SMS.

Copied characters can be pasted in entry fields in the mail creation screen or phonebook data entry screen.

- The last copied item is recorded until the power is turned OFF and they can be pasted any number of times.

1  ► **1** or **5** ► **Select a folder** ► **Select a mail to copy** ►  ► **2**

- To copy a selected item, place the cursor on the item to copy and press  **2**.

2 **Select a copy option.**

Copy text : Copy a specified range of characters.

Copying→P273 Step 2 and the following steps in "Copying/cutting characters"

Copy title : Copy the title.

Copy selected item : Copy selected items (mail address, phone number, etc.).

Pasting method→P273

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the details screen of mail template or the details screen of SMS in UIM, press  and select "Copy" or "Move/Copy".
- For SMS stored in UIM, you can copy the message text, address or sender.
- Deco-mail copied contains only text, but not decoration.
- Text in the Date To format can be saved as schedule after being pasted to Notepad.→P262

◆ Making call from mail <Phone call>

A call can be made to a sender of a received mail or destination of a sent/unsent mail if the mail address and the phone number are saved in the phonebook in advance (If SMS or the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the call can be made without the saved mail address or phone number).

<Example> Making a call

1 > **1** or **4** - **5** > **Select a folder** > **Place the cursor on the mail to make a call** > **6**

- When the mail has multiple destinations, select a mail address of the party to be called.
- When operating from the Inbox/Outbox message details screen, place the cursor on a sender or a receiver, press **7**.

2 **Set a condition for dialing** >

Making a call under set conditions→P52

◆ Adding phone number, mail address and URL in the phonebook

You can add the phone number, mail address and URL into the phonebook from the message text of an i-mode mail or SMS.

<Example> Adding a phone number

1 > **1** or **5** > **Select a folder** > **Select a mail to save**

2 **Place the cursor on the phone number to add and** > **4** **1** > **1** or **2**

- Only phone number, mail address or URL which the cursor can be placed at can be added.

Adding to existing phonebook entry : Place the cursor on the phone number to add and > **4** **2** > **1** or **2** > **Select phonebook entry to update**

3 **Save the name or mail address, etc.**

Phonebook new entry→P67, 68

✓INFORMATION

- You can operate also from the SMS details screen in UIM.
- Adding URL may not be made from Deco-mail.
- When multiple addresses are listed in the mail text, you may not be able to save them.

◆ Adding URL as bookmark

If there is a URL in the text of the i-mode mail or SMS, you can directly add the URL from the message detail view screen.

1 > **1** or **5** > **Select a folder** > **Select a mail to add** > **Place the cursor on the URL and** > **4** **3** > **Select a folder to add to**

The next procedure→P147 Step 2 in "Recording in Bookmark"

✓INFORMATION

- You can operate also from the SMS details screen in UIM.
- Adding URL may not be made from Deco-mail.

Mail settings

Setting mail function of FOMA terminal

◆ Sorting mail automatically into designated folders <Sort method>

MENU 193

You can set sort methods and automatically sort received/sent i-mode mail and SMS to specified folders.

- Up to 30 methods for Inbox and Outbox can be registered.
- Ordinary mails can also be sorted to the folder for Message i-appli, but Message i-appli sorting method takes precedence.

◆ Setting sort methods

- To set and activate sort method, turn Auto sort "ON".→P187
- Sent/received mails cannot be not sorted.

1 > **9** **3** > **1** or **2**

"ON/OFF" of Auto-sort

Registered sort criteria
(In the order of priority levels)

List of methods		1/1
Auto sort : ON		
01	Not in phonebook	
02	docomo. taro. ΔΔ@do...	
03	Information	

- Icon definitions :
 : Sent mail address
 : Received mail address
 : Phonebook number : Not in phonebook
 : Subject : Group
 : No method

2 (MENU) ▶ (1) ▶ Set a sort method

Specifying mail address :

Sort mails from specified mail addresses.

The mail address specifies the entire address including the character succeeding symbol @.

Addresses exceeding 50 one-byte characters cannot be specified.

- If you save and specify the same mail address in the FOMA terminal and UIM phonebook, it is sorted as the mail address of the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- If the specified mail address is i-mode terminal, you can omit the domain (@docomo.ne.jp) to sort the mails. Note that, if the specified mail address is "Phone number @docomo.ne.jp", save only the mobile phone number excluding the domain (@docomo.ne.jp).
- When specifying phone numbers, you can sort SMS as well.
- To select from message logs
(1) (1) (1) or (1) (2) ▶ **Select a message log to specify**
- To select from phonebook
(1) (1) (3) ▶ **Select the phonebook entry to specify**
- To enter directly
(1) (1) (4) ▶ **Enter a mail address** ▶ (田)

Specifying subject :

Sort mail having a subject that includes the specified characters (up to 15 two-byte (30 one-byte) characters).

You cannot sort SMS by subject.

- (1) (2) ▶ **Enter the subject** ▶ (田)

Specifying phonebook number :

Sort mail by mail address or phone number of the specified phonebook number in the FOMA terminal phonebook. i-mode mail are sorted by checking mail address with that in the phonebook as sort method. SMS are sorted by checking phone numbers with that in the phonebook.

- (1) (3) ▶ **Enter the phonebook number** ▶ (田) ▶ (●)

Specifying group :

Sort mail by mail address or phone number saved in the group of the phonebook.

- (1) (4) ▶ (1) or (2) ▶ **Select a group**

Specifying Not in phonebook :

Sort mail from mail address or phone number not saved in the phonebook.

- (1) (5)

Specifying No method :

Sort all mail into the folder specified in Step 3 without setting methods.

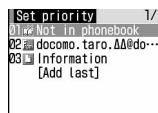
- (1) (6)

3 Select the folder to sort.

- When the folder for Message i-appli is selected, a message appears informing you that mail in the selected folder is used for the i-appli. Select "Yes" to set the folder for sorting.

4 Select a priority level.

A new method is added to the selected row.



- To add the first method, select "Add last".
- Methods are sorted sequentially from the one with the highest priority level.
- When registered methods are changed, "Move to last" is displayed instead of "Add last".

✓INFORMATION

- If multiple conditions are set, judgment is made from the condition with higher priority and sorted to the folder that matched for the condition first. A mail that was not matched for any condition is saved in the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.

❖ Checking, changing or deleting sorting methods

<Example> Checking sort methods

1 > 9 > 3 > 1 or 2

2 Select sort methods to be checked.

Changing sort methods :

① Place the cursor on the sort method and

> 2

Operations for specifying sort method→P186
Step 2-4 in "Setting sort methods"

② "Yes"

Changing sort priority : Place the cursor on the sort method and > 5 > Select the position to move

- To move to the end of the list, select "Move to last".

Deleting :

① Place the cursor on the sort method and

> 3 or 4

- When "Delete all" is selected, perform authentication.

② "Yes"

❖ Enabling/disabling sorting automatically

- To start the sorting, the method setting is required in addition to "ON" setting of Sort method.

1 > 9 > 3 > 1 or 2

2 > 6 > 1 or 2

◆ Setting mail signatures <Signature>

MENU 194

❖ Setting whether to insert signature automatically

You can set if you automatically insert the signature when composing, replying or forwarding mail.

1 > 9 > 4 > 1 > 1 or 2

❖ Registering signature

1 > 9 > 4 > 2 > > Enter the signature >

- Up to 4,999 two-byte (9,998 one-byte) characters can be entered.

✓INFORMATION

- The background color set for the signature is not reflected when decorations and/or characters are already entered in the message text, or when replying or forwarding an i-mode mail by quoting the text in the received message.
- The signature is included in the total character count for the message text.
- When Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) is used, the message is sent as Deco-mail.
- Signature cannot be inserted to SMS in the cases below :
 - When Font type in SMS settings is "English"
 - When replying to or forwarding SMS when Font type is "English"
 - When a signature has been decorated
 - When the text exceeds 70 characters by inserting signature

◆ Setting items of i-mode inquiry <Check msg option>

MENU 164
MENU 2732

When i-mode message is performed, items to be received can be specified by selecting from i-mode mail and MessageR/F.

1 > 6 > 4 > Select the type of inquiry >

- You cannot save unless you select any of the items.

◆ Setting to select and receive only necessary mail <Receive option>

MENU 1972

1 > 9 > 7 > 2 > 1 or 2

- When setting to "ON", a message of the inability of automatic reception appears. Press .

✓INFORMATION

- When Receive option is "ON", Chat mail is not available.

◆ Adding address to mail group <Mail group>

MENU 196

By registering multiple mail addresses in a mail group, i-mode mail can be sent to multiple receivers by a simple operation.

- Up to 20 mail groups can be added. Up to 5 mail addresses can be added for 1 mail group.

1 ► **9** **6**

2

Creating a mail :

The next procedure→P164

Editing mail group names : Place the cursor on the mail group and ► **2**

Copying mail group : Place the cursor on the mail group and ► **3**

Deleting mail group : Place the cursor on the mail group and ► **4** ► **1** or **2** ► "Yes"

- When "All items" is selected, perform authentication.

Operating mail address registered in a mail group :
Select a mail group ► Go to Step 5

3 **Enter the mail group name** ►

- Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.
- Press to add other mail group continuously.

4 **Select a mail group for registering a mail address.**

5 ► **Set the required items**

Address Type : Set "TO", "CC" or "BCC".

Address : Enter mail address to save.

- Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.
- When entering from message log or phonebook, press , and press **1**-**3**, and select a destination.

Editing registered mail address : Place the cursor on the mail address (or name) and ► **1** ► Edit

Deleting a registered mail address : Place the cursor on the mail address (or name) and ► **2** ► "Yes" ► Go to Step 7

Displaying details of registered mail address :
 ► **3** ► When finishing checking

6

- To add another mail address, repeat the operation from Step 5.

7

✓INFORMATION

- If no mail address is set for TO as address type, mail cannot be sent.

◆ Setting whether to quote message when reply <Reply format>

MENU 1951

You can set if you quote the body of the message when replying to an i-mode mail or SMS. And, you can set the type of quote characters added to the quoted message.

1 ► **9** **5** **1** ► **Set the required items** ►

Quote : Set if you quote message when replying to a mail.

Quote characters : Up to 1 two-byte (2 one-byte) characters can be entered.

- The quote characters are included in the total character count for the body of the message.
- When a character that cannot be sent has been set, the default quote character is used.

◆ Setting Quick reply <Activate quick reply>

MENU 1952

You can set if you use Quick reply to reply to i-mode mail.

1 ► **9** **5** **2** ► **1** or **2**

◆ Registering quick reply format <Quick reply presets>

MENU 1953

- Up to 5 formats can be registered.

1 ► **9** **5** **3**

2 **Selecting a format** ► Enter a text ► ► "Yes"

- Up to 20 two-byte (40 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Viewing the message text : Place the cursor on the message text and .

Deleting format : Place the cursor on the format and ► **1** ► "Yes"

Resetting all formats :

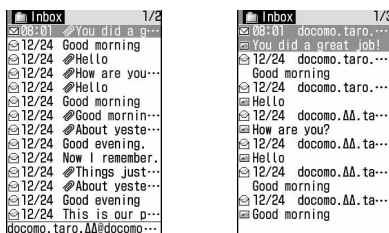
► **2** ► Authenticate ► "Yes"

Adding new format : "<New reply format>" ► Enter a text ►

◆ Setting display style of mail list <Message list>

MENU 1975

The display style of the list of mails in Inbox and Outbox can be set to 1-row display or 2-row display.



1-row display

2-row display

- When setting to Display 1 row, a sender of the mail at the cursor position is displayed for the Inbox, or a receiver (the first entry) of the mail at the cursor position for the Outbox is displayed at the bottom of screen.
- The list display style of Unsent messages and SMS in UIM is displayed in 2 rows regardless of this setting.

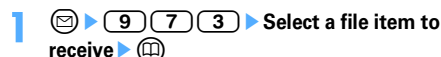


◆ **Setting if you receive attachments automatically <Incoming msg. attach>**

MENU 1973

You can set in advance if you receive files attached to i-mode mail depending on file types.

- Files set not to receive automatically are received as receive option attachment files. → P174



- "Tool data" indicates the data of phonebook, bookmark and schedule.
- "Other" is the file that cannot be displayed on this FOMA terminal.

✓INFORMATION

- Images or melodies attached to message text are automatically received regardless of this setting.

◆ Setting whether to play melodies automatically <Attachment auto-play>

MENU 1974

MENU 2733

When i-mode mail or MessageR/F with attached melody is displayed, you can set whether the melody is automatically played.



✓INFORMATION

- When a received mail, sent mail, mail template or MessageR/F with an attached melody is displayed with "Auto play" set, the attached melody is played once with the volume set in Melody effect sound of Adjust volume. When multiple melodies are attached, the melodies are played sequentially. Press **(CLR)** to stop playing the melody halfway.
- When MessageR/F is automatically displayed, the melody is not automatically played even with "Auto play" set.

◆ Selecting type of mail to display <By display type>

You can display only the mails of specified type in the received and sent mail lists temporarily. When the list display is closed, sorting is restored to "Display all items".

- You cannot select the display type for Unsent messages and SMS in UIM.



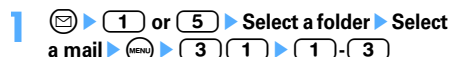
Mails of the selected display type are displayed.

- For Inbox, you can also select "Read item only" and "Protected item only".
- For "Read item only", protected received mails are not displayed.

◆ Changing mail font size

You can change the font size to display mails from among 3 types of "Large" (24 dots), "Medium (standard)" (20 dots) and "Small" (16 dots).

- "Medium (standard)" is set by default.
- You cannot change the font size for Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) when creating or editing a mail.



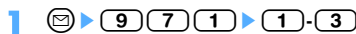
✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the details screen of mail template or SMS details screen in UIM, press and select "Display"→ "Font size".
- The changed font size remains until the setting is changed again.
- Setting of this function is reflected to Mail view in Font size.

◆ Setting mail reception notification for terminal in operation <Display priority>

MENU 1971

You can set if you display a receiving screen, reception result screen or auto-sending screen by priority when i-mode mail, SMS or MessageR/F is received during FOMA terminal operation.



Continue operation : Display none of the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen.

Show message : Display the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen.

Open:Cont/Close:Show : Continue operation when the FOMA terminal is open and prioritizes reception notification when the terminal is folded.

✓INFORMATION

- When "Continue operation" is set during displaying the menu, receiving or reception result screen appears, the ring tone sounds and the light go on. The auto-sending screen also appears.
- Even with "Show message" set, no receiving or reception result screen appears and none of ring tone and light operates when receiving i-mode mail, SMS or MessageR/F during voice call, camera operation, streaming-type i-motion play, i-appli operation or alarm sounding. Also auto-sending screen does not appear.

Creating and sending chat mail

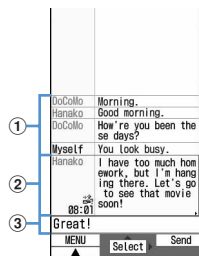
Creating and sending chat mail

MENU 13

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation on one screen.

- Chat mail is not available when Receive option is "ON" or when the mail memory has no sufficient empty space.
- When chat mail is sent to a terminal incompatible with chat mail, the receiver's terminal receives a mail with title "チャットメール (Chat mail)".
- A mail that includes "チャットメール" in the title can be received as a chat mail.

❖ Reading the chat mail screen



Chat mail screen

① Send/receive logs

Up to 100 logs from the latest one are displayed.

- When and/or appears in the guide area, you can scroll the screen by pressing . Press or to scroll the screen by pages. Pressing on the chat mail screen displays the first line and pressing displays the last line.
- The sender's nickname appears on the left side.

② Details field

Displays details of the latest chat mail. The details of the chat mail in mail logs can be displayed by pressing .

- The maximum number of characters the chat mail can display is 250 two-byte (500 one-byte) characters.
- When not all characters can be displayed in the view detail field, appear at the left and right bottom of the field. The page in the field can be changed by pressing .
- The sender's nickname and the date or time the mail was sent/received (time for the current day and date for another day) are displayed on the left side. appears for a mail that contains unregistered broadcast address as a chat member. When mail copied by infrared communication is sent or received while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), may appear.

③ Message text

◆ Adding/Editing chat member <Chat member setting>

- Up to 5 members can be registered.

1 3 "Yes"

- When any member is already registered, the chat mail screen appears. To add member to the registration, press  7.

2

Deleting a Chat member : Place the cursor on the member and  2  "Yes"  Go to Step 4

Displaying details :  3  Check 

Switching all member to mail group :

 5  Select a mail group  "Yes"  Go to Step 4

3 **Set the required items**

Address : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- If a member to be registered has a secret code, register the member by searching the phonebook in which the secret code is registered or by entering only the phone number of the member.
- When entering from message log or phonebook, press , and press 1 - 3, and select a destination.

Nickname : Up to 4 two-byte (8 one-byte) characters can be entered.

- When the mail address in Address field matches the mail address registered in the phonebook, the registered name (the first 4 two-byte (8 one-byte) characters) is displayed.
- When no nickname has been entered on the chat mail screen, on the chat mail screen the first 8 characters preceding symbol @ are displayed.

Font color : Select color for nickname.

4

- Press  and repeat Step 3 to add another member.

◆ Setting personal data

Your nickname and the font color can be set to display on the chat mail screen.

1 **On the Chat mail screen,** 8 **Set the required items**

Nickname : Up to 4 two-byte (8 one-byte) characters can be entered.

- "Myself" appears on the chat mail screen when no nickname is entered.

Text color : Select color for nickname.

◆ Creating and sending chat mail

- When sending chat mail, all registered members are set as receivers. Members can be selected on the send screen. All members are selected at the end of Chat mail or when the member information has been changed.
- The sent chat mail is saved in a folder of Outbox.

1 3

- Press "Yes" when a confirmation screen appears asking if you add members.

2 **Select the message text field** **Enter the message text**

- Up to 250 two-byte (500 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Copying and pasting the text from the chat mail log

: Place the cursor on the chat mail to copy and

 6

Copying/Pasting method of characters → P273

Selecting members to send :  3  **Select members** 

3

- When the chat mail has been sent correctly, it appears in the chat mail screen.

Replying to all broadcast address members of the received mail :  2  2

✓ INFORMATION

- If sending of chat mail failed or chat mail was not sent, it is saved in "Unsent messages" folder of Unsent messages. In "Unsent messages" folder, only one chat mail item can be saved. If sending fails again, the chat mail saved in "Unsent messages" folder is overwritten. And, the chat mail saved in "Unsent messages" folder is displayed in the message text field when Chat mail is activated. To resend chat mail, send from the chat mail screen.

◆ Receiving chat mail <Receiving chat mail>

❖ When Chat mail has not been started

When chat mail or mail with a title containing "チャットメール (Chat mail)" is received, it is saved in a folder of Inbox.

- When chat mail is received from a party registered as a chat member, starting Chat mail loads the chat mail automatically to the chat mail screen.
- When receiving mail from a party not registered as a chat member, register that party as a chat member in the steps below to load the chat mail to the chat mail screen.

- 1 ➤ **1** ➤ **Select a folder** ➤ **Place the cursor on the received mail to load and** ➤ **7** ➤ **5** ➤ **"Yes"** ➤ **Select members to register** ➤ **Edit**

Setting chat member → P191 Step 3 and the following steps in "Adding/Editing chat member"

2 "Yes"

✓ INFORMATION

- When operating from the received message detail view screen, press and select "Display" → "Start chat mail". And, you can operate sent mail with "チャットメール (Chat mail)" contained in the title in the same way.
- Deco-mail or HTML mail received from PC, etc. cannot be read into the chat mail screen.

❖ When Chat mail has been started

When you receive a chat mail or mail with a title containing "チャットメール" from the party registered as a chat member, a message indicating the log update appears, and the mail is loaded into the chat mail.

- When the FOMA terminal is open, even if you receive chat mail, mail or Message/R/F, ring alert or vibrator does not operate.
- When you receive a mail from a party not registered as a chat member, the mail is saved in a folder of Inbox. Follow the operations in "When Chat mail has not been started" to load the mail into the chat mail screen. → P192

❖ When receiving chat mail stored in i-mode Center

You can make inquiry for any chat mail delivered while you were out of service area, the power was turned off or other cases. At this time, if the i-mode Center stores i-mode mail, it is received at the same time.

- 1 **On the chat mail screen,** ➤ **1**

If there is chat mail, a message appears indicating that the log is updated and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

❖ Displaying broadcast addresses

Broadcast addresses of received chat mail, if any, can be displayed for check.

- 1 **On the chat mail screen, place the cursor on the chat mail to check the broadcast address and** ➤ **4**

- For other receivers of broadcast address not registered as a member, "Not recorded" is displayed in the nickname field; and, if a mail address is saved in the phonebook, the name is displayed. Press to display mail address.

Adding an unrecorded receiver of Broadcast address to the chat member : **On the broadcast address list screen, place the cursor on the broadcast address to record and** .

The next procedure → P191 Step 3-4 in "Adding/Editing chat member"

Copying broadcast address : **On the Broadcast address list screen, place the cursor on the broadcast address to copy and** ➤ **2**

❖ Deleting all data of the chat mail log

- Unprotected chat mail in Inbox or Outbox folder are deleted.

- 1 **On the chat mail screen,** ➤ **9** ➤ **"Yes"**

✓ INFORMATION

- The procedure for replying to chat mail as i-mode mail is the same as that for i-mode mail.
- Even if the chat mail screen contains information (phone numbers, mail addresses or URL), Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To or i-appli To cannot be used. And, attached file is not displayed. If you end without deleting chat mail and display the chat mail from a folder in Inbox, these functions can be used.
- When chat mail has been deleted from the folder in Inbox, the nickname appears as "-----", date or time as "--/--" and the text as "Deleted." on the chat mail screen.

- The chat mail displayed on the chat mail screen is set as Read in the folder of Inbox.

◆ Quitting Chat mail

1 On the chat mail screen, or ► "Yes" or "No"

- Select "Yes" to delete all chat mail items. In this case, unprotected chat mail in Inbox or Outbox folder are deleted.
- Select "No" to display the previous chat mail next time you start Chat mail.

Creating and sending SMS

Creating and sending SMS

MENU 171

Send a character message to a mobile phone number as the destination.

- SMS can be sent to or received from parties using overseas service providers except DoCoMo. For the service areas and overseas service providers, refer to the DoCoMo's website.
- Maximum number of saved items → P335
- Reading Inbox/Outbox/unsent SMS list/details screen → P177

<Example> Creating/sending by entering address directly

1 ► ► Select the receiver field

2 "Direct input" ► Enter the address

Up to 20 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

- For a destination using an overseas service provider except DoCoMo, you can send SMS after entering 21 characters maximum including "+".
- For a destination using an overseas service provider except DoCoMo, enter "+" (Press and hold  for 1 sec. or more), "country code" and "mobile phone number of the destination" in this order or enter "010", "country code" and "mobile phone number of the destination" in this order. (Also enter "+" or "010" when replying to SMS from an overseas sender). Omit "0", if any, at the beginning of the mobile phone number.

Entering from mail logs : Select "Sent msg log" or "Received msg log" ► Select Mail logs to send SMS

Entering by searching phonebook : "View phonebook" ► Search the phonebook ► Select a phonebook entry to send SMS

3 Select the message text field ► Enter the message text

- When "Japanese" is set for Font type in SMS settings, up to 70 characters can be entered. When "English" is set, up to 160 characters including one-byte alphanumeric and symbols (except for ` , ° , [ ] , , , ` , * and °).
- Press  to enter line feed (except one-/two-byte number input mode). A line feed is counted as a character of message text. The line feed is replaced by a space on the other party's terminal.

Inserting signature :  ►  

4

- To save SMS without sending it, press  . The SMS is saved in "Unsent messages" folder of Unsent messages.

✓ INFORMATION

- When transmission is completed correctly, the SMS is saved in a folder of Outbox. When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, the unprotected sent mails are overwritten chronologically.
- Depending on the signal quality, font type or the terminal of the other party, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- The type of font and whether to receive SMS report request are set in SMS settings in advance. You can also change the settings of SMS report request and Keep in SMS center after starting creation of SMS.
- When Font type is Japanese, if you use one-byte katakana, the receiver may not be able to display them correctly. If you use pictograms,  is replaced with , and each of pictograms except  is replaced with a space.
- When Font type is English and symbols (| ^ { } [] ~ ¥) are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced. Moreover, symbol (`) can be entered and sent, but it is replaced with a space on the receiver's terminal.
- When transmission fails, the SMS is saved in "Unsent messages" folder of Unsent messages.
- If setting SMS report request to "Request" and send SMS, you receive SMS report request that notifies you that the other FOMA terminal received the SMS. SMS report request is saved in the folder in Inbox.
- Even if Activate/Deactivate of caller ID notification is "Not notify", caller ID is sent to the receiver when SMS is sent.
- When the memory for Unsent messages is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, SMS cannot be created. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail and/or SMS from the folder in Unsent messages.

◆ Editing/Sending sent or saved SMS

Sent SMS and SMS saved and unsent or failed to be sent can be edited or sent. → P170

When SMS is received

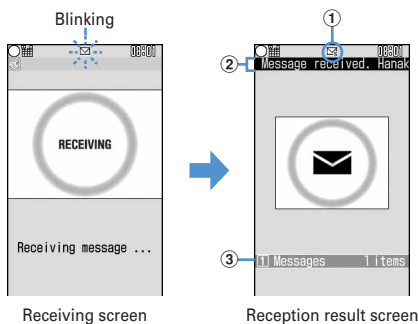
- Maximum number of saved items → P335

1 Receive SMS.

☐ blinks and "Receiving message ..." appears. Mail ring alert sounds, the light is lit or flashed and the reception result screen appears.

The received SMS is saved in a folder of Inbox.

- While receiving SMS, ☐ : Cancel receiving
The SMS may be received depending on the receiving conditions.



Receiving screen

Reception result screen

① Icon

- ☐ : Unread SMS exists
- ☐ : Unread i-mode mail and SMS exists

② Reception result ticker

③ Number of received SMS

- If you do not press any key for approximately 15 seconds after the reception result screen appears, the previous screen automatically reappears.

Reading received SMS immediately : On the reception result screen **1** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select SMS to display

- You can reply to/forward received SMS. → P173

When the reception has failed :

"X" appears on the right side of "Messages" on the reception result screen. To receive again, perform Check new SMS.

✓INFORMATION

- When multiple mail and/or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the terminal operates depending on the conditions set for the mail or MessageR/F received last.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, the unread or unprotected received mails are overwritten chronologically.
- While receiving i-mode mail or MessageR/F, automatic reception of SMS is unavailable. Perform Check new SMS.
- When SMS is received from parties of overseas service providers except DoCoMo, "+" is prefixed to the mail address of the sender. When the phone number with prefix "+" is saved in Phonebook, the name saved in the phonebook entry is displayed.
- When Message scan of Set scan is "Valid", if you receive and try to display SMS with a phone number or URL, a warning message appears.
- If there is not enough storage space available because storage is filled with unread and protected mails, reception of SMS is stopped, ☐ or ☐ appears on the screen. To receive mails, changing unread mail to read mail (→P181), displaying the contents of unread mails (→P177), deleting unnecessary mails (→P182) or unprotecting (→P182) is required.
- When UIM already contains the maximum number of SMS (20), SMS may not be received even though there is space available in Inbox folder. At this time, ☐ or ☐ appears on the screen. Move to FOMA terminal (→P197) or delete SMS in the UIM. →P197
- If received SMS has a specification to save to UIM, it is saved directly to UIM. Note that, when the number of SMS saved in UIM has reached 20, SMS cannot be received. Delete unnecessary SMS and perform Check new SMS.

Check new SMS

Checking for SMS

MENU 162

You can make inquiry for any SMS delivered while you were out of service area, the power was turned OFF or other cases.

- Depending on the signal quality, you may not perform Check new SMS from SMS Center.



✓INFORMATION

- Receiving SMS may take time.
- You can also dial "* 143 #" to perform Check new SMS.

Setting SMS

MENU 174

You usually do not need to change SMSC, Address and Type of Number settings.

1 ▶ Set the required items ▶

Font type : Select message of Japanese or English language to be sent. The maximum number of characters that can be sent differs depending on the font type.

SMS report request : Select if you request SMS report request when sending SMS.

Keep in SMS center : Select the storage period of sent SMS in the Short Message Center in cases the receiver cannot receive the SMS.

- When "0 day" is set, SMS is deleted from the SMS Center after resending of it is repeated for a certain period of time.

SMSC : Select SMSC when using SMS services except DoCoMo.

Address : When setting "Others" in SMSC field, enter a mail address of up to 20 one-byte characters.

Type of Number : Select from "international" or "unknown".

- If selecting "Others" in SMSC field and setting numbers in the Address field, setting to "unknown" is required.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the SMS creation screen, press  and select "SMS settings". Only SMS report request and Keep in SMS center can be set. The settings are effective only for SMS being created.
- Settings of Font type, Keep in SMS center, SMSC and Type of Number are saved in the UIM.

Saving SMS in UIM

◆ Moving/Copying SMS into UIM

- Unsent SMS cannot be saved in the UIM.
- When moving or copying a sent SMS, if there are corresponding SMS report requests, they are moved or copied together. You cannot move or copy only sent SMS or only SMS report request.
- Maximum number of saved items → P335

<Example> Moving a SMS

1 or ▶ Select a folder

2 Place the cursor on the SMS to move and

Moving selected SMS :

    ▶ Select the SMS ▶ 

Copying a SMS : Place the cursor on the SMS and

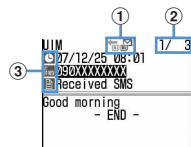
Copying selected SMS :

    ▶ Select the SMS ▶ 

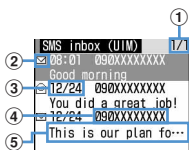
3 "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the received message detail view screen or the sent message detail view screen, press  and select "Move/Copy" → "Move to UIM" or "Copy to UIM".
- When protected SMS is moved/copied to UIM, its protection is canceled in the move/copy destination.



1 [Envelope icon] [7] [2] or [3]



① Page/Total pages

② Status icon

[Envelope icon] : Unread (able to reply) [Envelope icon with X] : Unread (unable to reply)

[Envelope icon with checkmark] : Read (able to reply) [Envelope icon with X and checkmark] : Read (unable to reply)

[Envelope icon with checkmark and X] : SMS report request, Missed call notification or Notify recorded message

[Envelope icon with X and checkmark] : SMS error

③ Sent/received date and time

The time is displayed on the reception day and the date is displayed on other than the reception day.

The date and time of sent SMS are deleted except for sent SMS with SMS report request set.

④ Sender/Receiver

When saved in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

⑤ Top of the message

The SMS report request is displayed as "SMS report request", Missed call notification as "Notify missed call" and recorded message notification as "Answer videophone".

- Read/Unread icon in the list indicates whether the SMS in the UIM was displayed. The status of unread/read before moving or copying is also carried over.
- For SMS sent from an overseas sender, the sender address is preceded by "+".
- For the SMS which contains error, [X] or [X with checkmark] appears. For SMS with [X with checkmark] displayed, the reception date/time appears as "--/--" (only on the day of reception), and the sender or the top of the message is not displayed. SMS with [X with checkmark] displayed is SMS that detail cannot be displayed.

① Icon

[Envelope icon] : Received (able to reply) [Envelope icon with X] : Received (unable to reply)

[Envelope icon with checkmark] : Sent

[Envelope icon with checkmark and X] : SMS report request, Missed call notification or Notify recorded message

[Envelope icon with X and checkmark] : SMS in UIM

② Mail No./Number of msgs

③ Icon

[Clock icon] : Date and time [To icon] : Receiver

[From icon] : Sender [X with checkmark] : Sender (unable to reply)

The SMS report request is displayed as "SMS Center", Missed call notification as "DoCoMo SMS" and recorded message notification as "DoCoMo MSG".

[Document icon] : Subject "Received SMS" "Sent SMS" "SMS report request" "Notify missed call" "Answer videophone"

- When sent SMS is moved or copied to UIM, the sent date and time are deleted from the sent SMS in the UIM. Note that for sent SMS with SMS report request set, the sent date and time are displayed.
- For the SMS which contains error, [X with checkmark] appears instead of [From icon] and other than [X with checkmark] does not appear.

✓INFORMATION

- From SMS in the UIM, you can also reply to or forward received SMS, resend SMS already sent, change the font size, save in the phonebook and perform other operations. The operation is the same as that of received/sent SMS.
- When performing reply/forward, resend, etc. from the SMS in the UIM, the sent SMS are saved in a folder of Outbox of FOMA terminal.
- For SMS copied by infrared communication and received while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), [Clock icon] may appear succeeding the receiving date and time.

◆ Moving/Copying SMS in UIM to FOMA terminal

- When moving or copying a sent SMS with SMS report request, the corresponding SMS report request is moved or copied to the folder of Inbox together. You cannot move or copy only sent SMS or only SMS report request.

<Example> Moving a SMS to the FOMA terminal

1  ► **7** ► **2** or **3**

2 Place the cursor on the SMS to move and

 ► **3** **1**

Moving selected SMS :  ► **3** **2** ► Select the SMS ► 

Copying a SMS : Place the cursor on the SMS and

 ► **3** **3**

Copying selected SMS :  ► **3** **4** ► Select the SMS ► 

3  ► Select the destination folder ► "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the SMS detail view screen in UIM, press  and select "Move/Copy" → "Move to phone" or "Copy to phone".
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, SMS cannot be moved or copied. Unprotected i-mode mail and/or SMS, if any, are not overwritten. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail and/or SMS from folders of Inbox and Outbox.

◆ Deleting SMS from the UIM

- When deleting a sent SMS, the corresponding SMS report request in UIM is also deleted at the same time.

<Example> Deleting a SMS

1  ► **7** ► **2** or **3**

2 Place the cursor on the SMS to delete and

 ► **2** **1**

Deleting selected SMS :  ► **2** **2** ► Select the SMS ► 

Deleting all SMS :  ► **2** **3** ► Authenticate

Deleting all SMS report request :

 ► **2** **4** ► Authenticate

3 "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the SMS detail view screen in UIM, press  and select "Delete".

i-αppli

i-αppli	200
Downloading i-αppli	200
Starting i-αppli	201
Starting i-αppli quickly	206
Automatically starting i-αppli	207
Starting i-αppli from site or mail	i-αppli To 207
Operating i-αppli stand-by display	i-αppli stand-by display 208
Managing i-αppli	208
Using various functions from i-αppli	210

i-αppli

Downloading i-αppli from sites makes a FOMA terminal more convenient. For instance, various games can be downloaded to the i-mode terminal, direct registration to phonebook and schedule from i-αppli can be made or Data Box including saving and obtaining image can be operated with some i-αppli.

- For details of i-mode, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

✓INFORMATION

- Any image or movie saved by i-αppli or i-αppliDX is saved in "i-mode", "Deco-mail picture" or "Deco-mail pict" folder of My Picture, "i-mode" folder of i-motion or added album respectively, or in the i-αppli.
- When ring tone is saved by i-αppliDX, it is saved in "i-mode" folder of Melody or in the i-αppli.

Downloading i-αppli

You can download i-αppli from sites and store it in FOMA terminal.

- Not saved if downloading of i-αppli fails due to poor signal quality, etc.
- The maximum size of i-αppli that can be saved is 1 Mbyte.
- Maximum number of saved items→P335

1 Display the site with the i-αppli ▶ Select i-αppli

The selected i-αppli is downloaded.

- While downloading, press  and select "Yes" on a confirmation screen to stop the download.
- When download or communication is interrupted, a confirmation screen for resuming may appear. Select "Yes" to restart downloading. If "No" is selected, a confirmation screen for partial saving appears whenever it is possible. If partial saving is impossible, data already downloaded is deleted. The rest of partially saved i-αppli can be downloaded.→P201 Step 3 in "Starting i-αppli"

When Software info disp. is "ON"

i-αppli information and a confirmation screen for the download appears.

- The detail information of the i-αppli to be downloaded can be displayed by pressing .

When downloading i-αppli that uses the saved data and the serial number of your mobile phone/UIM

Downloading confirmation screen appears.

- With "Guide" displayed on the guide area, press  to check details of the data used by the i-αppli.

When the selected i-αppli is already downloaded

A message indicating that the item is already downloaded appears. When the new version of the i-αppli is released, an upgrading confirmation screen appears.

When the selected i-αppli is already downloaded with a different UIM

An overwriting confirmation screen appears.

2 Select a destination to save.

- Some i-αppli shows setting screens for Set stand-by disp. (i-αppli stand-by), Use network and/or Use location info. (Location usage setting).
Setting items →P202 Step 1 in "Setting operating condition of i-αppli"

3 "Yes"

The downloaded i-αppli starts.

- Select "No" to return to the site screen.
- When setting the stand-by display to "Yes", a confirmation screen for setting stand-by display appears.

✓INFORMATION

- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, follow the instructions on the screen and delete stored i-αppli. Note that, even when the download fails, deleted i-αppli is not restored.

◆ Downloading Message i-αppli

When Message i-αppli is downloaded, the folders for Message i-αppli are automatically created in the folder list of Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages. The automatically created folder name is set to the name of the Message i-αppli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

- Up to 5 items of Message i-αppli can be saved (included in the maximum savable number, 100, of i-αppli).
When the maximum number of saved items is reached, follow the instructions on the screen and delete stored folder for Message i-αppli.
- If Message i-αppli that uses the same mail folder has already been saved in the FOMA terminal, it cannot be downloaded.

✓INFORMATION

- If Message i-appli is tried to be downloaded again while only the relevant Message i-appli folder remains, a confirmation screen for using the existing mail folder appears. If you do not use, delete the folder and download the Message i-appli.
- If a received message that supports Message i-appli to be downloaded has already been saved in the FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen for moving the received message to the folder created automatically at the time of the downloading appears.

◆ Viewing i-appli information when downloading <Software info disp.>

You can set if you display i-appli information when downloading i-appli.

1 or

Starting i-appli

MENU 31

1 (1 sec. or more)

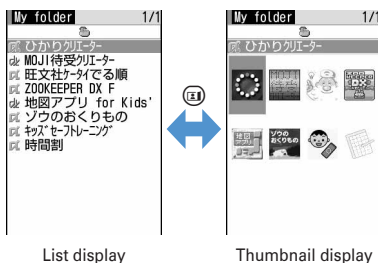
Displaying only GPS compatible i-appli : →P214

2 Select a folder.

- Icon definitions :
 : No i-appli
 : i-appli exists

3 Select i-appli to start.

<Software list>



- Icon definitions :
 : Message i-appli
 : i-appliDX
 (orange) : i-appli
 (Without background color) : i-appli that can be set for i-appli stand-by display
 (Background color in green) : i-appli set for i-appli stand-by display
 : i-appli with Auto start setting
 (Upper half in gray, lower half in orange) : i-appli partially saved

: i-appli unavailable due to UIM operation restriction function

: i-appli of stopped condition by IP (Information Provider)

: i-appli downloaded from SSL page

: i-appli set as one-key shortcut

: i-appli set as two-key shortcut

: GPS compatible i-appli

- When Set NW transmission of the i-appli to be started is set to "Confirm every session", a connection confirmation screen appears.
- When partially saved i-appli is selected, a confirmation screen appears asking if you download the remaining part. The i-appli can be started after the remaining part is downloaded; when download is disabled, the i-appli partially saved may be deleted.
- To quit i-appli, operate in the procedure specified for each i-appli. You can also quit i-appli by pressing and then selecting "Yes".

✓INFORMATION

- Display area may differ by i-appli.
- On a full-screen display giving 432 vertical dots, each pressing of switches displaying and hiding the battery icon.
- The volume of sound emitted during i-appli operation can be adjusted. Note that some i-appli have no sound. →P79
- Images used on i-appli (shot using the camera from i-appli, obtained using the i-appli infrared communication function) or the data you entered may be sent to the sever via the Internet.
- Partially saved i-appli is allowed displaying software description, deletion and folder change.
- If Time schedule is deleted when you try to start it by pressing , a confirmation screen for downloading appears.
- i-appli is interrupted when any of the conditions below occur. Upon completion of the current operation, i-appli restarts; selecting "i-appli" after pressing allows to restart i-appli while continuing the current operation (except for the ones marked with *). Some i-appli may not return to the state of interruption.
 - When a voice call comes in
 - When a videophone call comes in*
 - When loss protection lock is activated, Lock on close*
 - When the date and time specified in Countdown timer, Alarm clock or schedule has come
 - When the function is switched over to another function
- When you are out of service area or the saved data cannot be used, i-appli may not start or not operate correctly.

- For certain i-αppli, the IP (Information Provider) may access i-αppli saved in the mobile phone and directly set operation disabled state. In such a case, i-αppli startup, stand-by display settings, upgrading, etc. are disabled, enabling only deletion and software description display. To resume using i-αppli, notification of i-αppli enabled must be received; contact the IP (Information Provider).
- For certain i-αppli, the IP (Information Provider) may send data to i-αppli saved in the mobile phone.
- When the IP (Information Provider) requests i-αppli for stopping or restarting or sends data to i-αppli, FOMA terminal makes communications and  blinks. In this case, no communication fee is charged.
- For i-αppli builders :
If i-αppli does not operate normally while building, trace information may help. Press     on the stand-by display to display Trace information. Note that Trace information does not appear if i-αppli that records Trace information is not in the software list.
To delete Trace information, press  and select "Yes".

◆ Displaying history when operation finishes without using saved data <Security error hist.>

When i-αppli ended with an error because i-αppli cannot use the saved data, the name of the i-αppli, date and time, and cause of security error are recorded.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1    

- To delete histories, press  and select "Yes".

◆ Displaying i-αppli Description <Software description>

1  (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Place the cursor on the i-αppli to check detail information and 

- Displayed items differ depending on i-αppli.
- To check the site certificate of the i-αppli downloaded from SSL page, press  on the Software description screen.

◆ Setting operating condition of i-αppli <Software settings>

- You cannot select the item not supported by the i-αppli.

1  (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Place the cursor on the i-αppli to set and   ▶ Set the required items ▶ 

Set i-αppli display : Set if you set i-αppli as stand-by display.

- Only one i-αppli can be set.

Set NW transmission during i-αppli display : Set if you allow automatic communication while the i-αppli stand-by display is running.

Set NW transmission : Set if you allow automatic communication while the i-αppli is running.

Use icons : Set if you enable icons for mail, MessageR/F, battery, Silent mode and signal level for i-αppli.

Start from browser : Set if you allow to start the i-αppli from site (i-αppli To).

Start from mailer : Set if you allow to start the i-αppli from mail (i-αppli To).

Start from Location Service menu : Set if you allow to start the i-αppli from the link item of location information in site or MessageR/F (i-αppli To).

Start from external : Set if you allow to start the i-αppli from external device (i-αppli To).

Allow ring tone/image changes by software* : Set if you allow i-αppli to automatically change the settings of a ring alert, stand-by display image, etc.

Confirm all changes* : Set if you display a confirmation screen each time the settings of ring alert or images are changed.

Allow access to phone book/call records by software* : Set if you allow i-αppli to refer to phonebook, redial or received call logs automatically.

Location usage setting* : Set if you enable GPS compatible i-αppli to use location information automatically.

* This setting is available only for i-αppliDX.

✓INFORMATION

- When setting Set i-αppli display to "Yes", setting confirmation screen appears on the stand-by display. However, when the i-αppli is already set for the stand-by display, a confirmation screen does not appear.
- If you set "No" for Set NW transmission, the i-αppli may not be started or timely information such as stock prices or weather forecast may not be provided by i-αppli.
- If you set "Yes" for Use icons, since presence/absence of icons for unread messages, unread MessageR/F, remaining battery level, Silent mode and antenna may be sent to IPs (Information Providers) through the Internet, it may give the information to a third party. Some i-αppli requiring icons may not operate when "No" is set.

◆ Setting operations while i-appli is active

❖ Setting Display light



Terminal Setting : The light is turned ON according to Display light time (Normal use) in Display light of Display.

Software : The light is turned ON according to the i-appli.

✓INFORMATION

- i-appli stand-by display light depends on Display light of Display.
- The light does not turn on while i-appli is running in Public mode even with "Software" set.
- This function is also reflected to Display light time (i-appli) in Display light of Display.

❖ Setting vibrator

Set if you allow the Vibrate alert operation by i-appli.



✓INFORMATION

- This setting is also reflected to i-appli effect in Vibrate alert/ effect of Alerts & Sounds.

◆ Starting another i-appli from i-appli

Some i-appli can start specified i-appli and allow to enjoy i-appli without returning to the software list.

1 Start another i-appli from i-appli.

✓INFORMATION

- If no i-appli to be started is specified, select i-appli.
- If i-appli to be started is specified but not on the Software list, it must be downloaded.

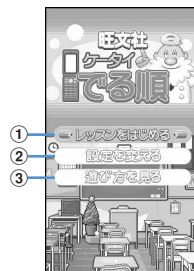
◆ Using preinstalled i-appli

- The i-appli below are stored by default :
 - 旺文社ケータイでる順 (Obunsha mobile learning)
 - ZOOKEEPER DX F
 - キッズセーフトレーニング (Kids' safe training)
 - 時間割 (Time schedule)
 - MOJI待受クリエイター (MOJI stand-by creator)
 - ひかりクリエイター (Light creator)
 - 地図アプリ for Kids' (Map application for kids')
 - ソウのおくりもの (Elephant's gift)
- If you delete pre-installed i-appli, you can download the software from the site. →P300

❖ 旺文社ケータイでる順 (Obunsha mobile learning)

A learning game to play by solving various puzzles. You can play match-up with another person.

■ Title screen



① Solving various puzzles and displaying your logs.

② Resetting game settings and log.

③ Displaying operating instructions.

⬇ (2) (8) : Move the cursor vertically.

⬆ (5) : Determine the item.

⏏ : Exit i-appli.

■ How to play

Select "レッスンを始める (Start the lesson)", then select from various learning methods and solve the puzzles.

Before starting the lesson, select "遊び方を見る (View playing instruction)" to check the operation procedure.

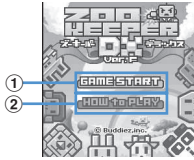
©FUJITSU LIMITED 2007

©Obunsha Co.,Ltd.2004

❖ ZOOKEEPER DX F

Change animals to align a group of 3 or more animals of the same kind vertically or horizontally and catch them. This is an exciting action puzzle game with a time limit.

■ Title screen



① Pressing **○** starts the game.

② **⊗** to select "HOW to PLAY", "STORY", "HI SCORE", "CREDIT" or "OPTION".

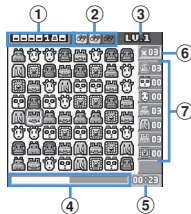
- The basic rules can be checked by selecting "HOW to PLAY".
- While the animal is disappearing with "OPTION" set to "Ultimate", other animals can be replaced.

⊞ / **⊗** : Select sound ON/OFF.

⊞ / **#** : Exit i-appli. (While playing the game, the game pauses/returns.)

■ How to play

To replace an animal, select the animal to be changed, press **○** (or **5**) and press the **⊗** (or **2** **4** **6** **8**) according to the direction of the animal to be replaced. When 3 or more animals of the same kind are aligned vertically or horizontally and they disappear, points are scored. The level goes up to 12 at the highest depending on how far you fulfill your quota.



① Indicate points.

② Indicate the remaining number of using the binoculars.

③ Indicate the current game level.

④ Indicate the remaining time.

⑤ Indicate the elapsed time.

⑥ Indicate the quota of each kind of animals to be captured.

⑦ Indicate the number of each kind of animals captured.

⊗ : Move the cursor horizontally or vertically.

○ : Determine/cancel the animal to move.

1 : Select the binoculars.

- The erasable animals are enlarged.

©Buddiez, inc.

❖ キッズセーフトレーニング (Kids' safe training)



* The displays shown here are examples. Some may differ from actual displays.

Children can learn important tips to avoid the risks by way of a quiz. Answer 5 questions drawn from each of the 5 categories. 5 categories contain "Manners, morals and rules on using mobile phones", "Cautions on using mobile phones", "Answering to mail or call", "Troubles related to mobile phone usage", and "General security information". Correct answers with descriptions are displayed so that children can easily learn important tips on using a mobile phone.

©SUSPORT

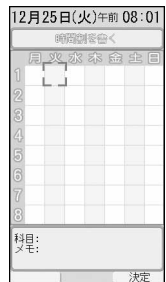
❖ 時間割 (Time schedule)

You can save the time schedule of your school so that you may jot down your homework or stuffs to carry, or view it anytime.

■ Registration of time schedule

At the first activation, the description on the application setting appears. If you continue pressing **○**, the setting screen of application appears, then make registration.

When registration is completed, the description on entering time schedule appears. If you continue pressing **○**, the entry screen of time schedule appears, then make registration.



⊗ : Move the cursor horizontally or vertically.

⊞ : Register time schedule.

○ : Set a subject.

⊗ : Sound ON/OFF

■ Time schedule screen

When registration is completed, the time schedule screen is displayed at the activation from next time to check.



● : Check mark ON/OFF

⌂ : Display the menu.

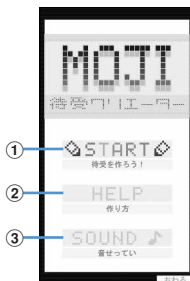
⏏ : Exit i-appli.

- Display the menu and select "ヘルプ (Help)" to view how to create time schedule.

❖ MOJI待受クリエイター (MOJI stand-by creator)

Create an image for stand-by display.

■ Title screen



① Create an image.

② Display creating instructions.

③ Set sound.

⌂ (2 8) : Move the cursor vertically.

● (5) : Determine the item.

⏏ : Exit i-appli.

■ How to create

Select "START", and follow the instructions on the screen to enter characters and select dots, font color and background to save. They can be set to stand-by display after being saved.

Saving procedure→P150 Step 2 and the following steps in "Downloading images"

❖ ひかりクリエイター (Light creator)

You can create color and pattern (Light data) for the light of FOMA terminals. The data saved in FOMA terminal can be set for Open/close and Light alert of Light alert, Alarm clock, etc. You can also download the light data or send/receive the data among F801i using infrared communication.

- Up to 20 items in i-appli and up to 10 items in a FOMA terminal can be saved.

■ Title screen



① Follow the instruction on the screen for easy creation.

② Select a creating method to create brightness of color or display light time freely.

③ Edit the saved light data.

④ Download the light data from sites.

- A packet communication fee is required.

⑤ Send/receive the light data among F801i.

⑥ Save the light data to a FOMA terminal.

⑦ Exit i-appli.

⌂ : Move the cursor vertically.

● : Determine the item.

■ Creating by かんたん作成 (Easy creation)

Select "かんたん作成", select color, design and speed, create and save.

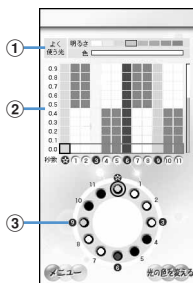
■ Creating by マニュアル作成 (Manual creation)

Select "マニュアル作成".

新しく作る (Create new data) : The edit screen appears.

Set a light pattern each for 12 lights.

When the creation is completed, select "ひかりデータを保存する (Save light data)" on the menu to save it.



① Indicate the brightness and the color set to "この光をよく使う光にする (Set this light as often-used light)" on the color setting menu.

② Set the lighting pattern of the light.

③ Indicate the light of the FOMA terminal. Turns on in the pattern of the line at the cursor position.

⊗ : Move the cursor horizontally or vertically.

⊙ : Turn on/off the light.

• To set the number of seconds, place the cursor on the bar of the top line and press ⊙, then place the cursor on the number of seconds to set with ⊗ and press ⊙.

Ⓔ : Display the menu.

Ⓔ : Display the color setting menu.

お手本データから作る (Create from typical data) : Select typical data to display an edit screen. Following steps are the same as in "新しく作る".

カプセルのデータから作る (Create from capsule data) : Select saved data from the light data list to display an edit screen. Following steps are the same as in "新しく作る".

◆ 地図アプリ for Kids' (Map application for kids')

This i-appli uses GPS function. →P214

◆ ゾウのおくりもの (Elephant's gift)



* The image shown here is an example. It may differ from an actual image.

This application is a story of elephants depicting love from parent to child. The story is based on the book "ぞうのせなか (Elephant's back)" (By Yasushi Akimoto (Author), Izuru Aminaka (Illustration), Kodansha Ltd.). Distinctive functions of the terminal such as "ことばのバトンモード (Baton message mode)" are incorporated. You can also set the illustrations for stand-by display to view cute elephants any time.

©秋元康事務所 (Akimoto Yasushi Office)

©Izuru Aminaka

Starting i-appli quickly

i-appli can be started by a simple operation from the stand-by display.

◆ Setting i-appli to one-key/two-key shortcut

- You can register one item of one-key shortcut.
- You can register one item of two-key shortcut for each key of keypad, up to 10 items in total.

<Example> Setting two-key shortcut

1 ⊗ (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder

2 Place the cursor on the i-appli to set and

(MENU) ▶ (8) (2)

Setting i-appli shortcut : Place the cursor on the i-appli to set and (MENU) ▶ (8) (1)

- Same operations are required also for canceling.

3 Select a destination to save.

- Icon numbers (07-09) correspond to keypads (0)-(9) used to activate two-key shortcut.
- When a destination already set is selected, overwriting confirmation screen appears.

✓INFORMATION

- The i-appli registered to the one-key shortcut can be checked by Software information.
- When **3** **2** **6** is pressed on the stand-by display, Shortcut list can be displayed. Displaying Detail info or Cancel two-key s.cut is possible from submenu of the list.

◆ Starting i-appli using one-key/two-key shortcut

<Example> Starting i-appli using two-key shortcut

1 - ▶ (1 sec. or more)

Starting i-appli using one-key shortcut : (1 sec. or more)

Automatically starting i-appli

◆ Specifying whether to start automatically <Auto start>

Set all i-appli, which are set to "ON" for User in Set auto start info., at once to start automatically.

1 ▶ **3** **2** **2** ▶ **1** or **2**

◆ Setting date and time of Auto start <Set auto start info.>

Set the conditions such as ON/OFF of auto start or start time for each i-appli and display the preset details.

- The conditions that can be set depend on the i-appli.
- Some i-appli may not be able to start automatically.
- When Auto start is "OFF", auto start information cannot be saved.

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Place the cursor on the i-appli to set and

▶ **5** ▶ Set the required items ▶

User : Select if you perform Auto start with the conditions below.

Time : Enter the time to automatically start the i-appli.

Repeat : Set the condition for repetitive Auto start of the i-appli.

Weekly : Set the day of the week for Auto start when "Weekly" is set for Repeat.

Date : Set the date for Auto start when "Onetime" is set for Repeat.

Software : Specify if you automatically start at the intervals preset for the i-appli.

i-appli 1-4 : Depending on i-appliDX, up to 4 conditions of Auto start can be set while it is running. Specify if you enable those settings.

✓INFORMATION

- Even with Auto start set, automatic activation does not occur in the cases below, causing to appear on the stand-by display (appear with the lock deactivated in i-appli lock ON) and to be recorded in Start failure hist.
 - When the screen except the stand-by display appears
 - UIM operation restriction is set (except for preinstalled i-appli)
 - When UIM cannot be detected
 - When the interval of Auto start is too short
 - When loss protection lock, Battery Indicator lock, i-appli lock, All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock or Privacy mode is ON (when i-appli is "Authorized access")
 - When the i-appli usage is stopped by IP (Information Provider)
- When multiple i-appli are set to automatically start at the same time by changing "Repeat", only one of them can be started at the set time. Though the information of i-appli not started is recorded in Start failure hist., does not appear on the stand-by display.

◆ Displaying history when Auto start of i-appli fails <Start failure hist.>

When Auto start of the i-appli fails, appears on the stand-by display and the name of the i-appli, date and time, and causes are recorded.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When displaying Start failure hist. or when the next Auto start is successful, on the stand-by display disappears.

1 ▶ **3** **3** **1**

- To delete histories, press and select "Yes".

i-appli To

Starting i-appli from site or mail

1 Select a link item enabling to start i-appli of the site or i-mode mail ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- i-appli not saved in FOMA terminal cannot be started with i-appli To. Some i-appli can be started immediately after being downloaded from a site, without saving.
- Partially saved i-appli cannot be started from mail with i-appli To.
- For i-appli that start just after downloaded from sites, a confirmation screen may appear asking if you make communication while they are activated.
- Some i-appli program may not be saved in the FOMA terminal.
- If the i-appli is set not to start with i-appli To, the i-appli cannot be started. →P202

Operating i-appli stand-by display

When i-appli is set for the stand-by display, you can start the i-appli from the stand-by display to operate.

- While displaying i-appli stand-by display,  (α in gray) or  (dx in gray) appears on the top of the display.
- Setting i-appli stand-by display → P85, 202

Starting i-appli of i-appli stand-by display

On the i-appli stand-by display,

 ▶ Operate the i-appli

 (α in orange) or  (dx in orange) on the upper part of the display flashes.

✓INFORMATION

- When FOMA terminal is turned ON while setting the i-appli stand-by display, a confirmation screen appears asking if you display the i-appli stand-by display. The display starts when "Yes" is selected or no operations are performed for approximately 5 seconds. Selecting "No" cancels i-appli stand-by display.

Note that when the power is turned ON by Auto power ON, the i-appli stand-by display automatically appears, without displaying the confirmation screen.

- When setting i-appli that performs communication, to i-appli stand-by display, it may not operate correctly depending on conditions such as signal quality.
- When Battery Indicator lock, i-appli lock, All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock or Privacy mode is ON (when i-appli is "Authorized access"), i-appli stand-by display is temporarily cancelled.
- When an error that cancels i-appli stand-by display occurs, a confirmation screen for canceling the i-appli stand-by display appears. Selecting "Yes" cancels the i-appli stand-by display, and record it in Abnormal exit hist.

Quitting i-appli and returning to the i-appli stand-by display

While running i-appli,  ▶ "End"

An icon on the top of the display changes from  to , or from  to .

The procedure to exit i-appli and return to the i-appli stand-by display depends on the i-appli.

- When selecting "Cancel", the i-appli stand-by display is canceled.  or  on the upper part of display disappears.

✓INFORMATION

- To cancel from the software list, place the cursor on the i-appli set on the i-appli stand-by display, press  and select "i-appli display" → "Cancel".

Displaying exit history of i-appli stand-by display <Abnormal exit hist.>

When an error that cancels i-appli stand-by display occurs, the name of the i-appli, date and time can be recorded.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1  ▶   

- To delete histories, press  and select "Yes".

Managing i-appli

Various functions such as i-appli upgrade, creating folder and deleting unnecessary i-appli for easier use of i-appli are available.

Upgrading i-appli <Upgrade>

When the i-appli is updated, upgrade is available.

1  (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Place the cursor on the i-appli to upgrade and  ▶  ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When upgrading i-appli, data such as game scores stored in i-appli may be erased.
- Some i-appli may inquire the DoCoMo server about the availability depending on the length of time of use and number of times of use. If the server gives a notice of the i-appli having been updated, it can be upgraded after confirming if you upgrade it.
- Some i-appli is automatically upgraded.

Creating/deleting folders

❖ Creating folders

- Up to 20 items can be registered.

1  (1 sec. or more)

2  ▶ 

Changing folder name : Place the cursor on the folder and  ▶ 

Changing the order of the folder : Place the cursor on the folder and  ▶  or 

3 Enter a folder name ▶ 

- Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

❖ Deleting folders

- If there is only one folder, the folder cannot be deleted.

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Place the cursor on the folder to delete and

- To delete a folder with any i-appli stored in it, perform authentication.

2 "Yes"

- If any Message i-appli is contained in the folder, a confirmation screen for deleting the mail folder appears.
 - "Yes" : Delete the mail folder and all mails stored in the folder.
 - "No" : Delete i-appli only.

Note that, if there is any protected mail in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-appli or mail folder even if "Yes" is selected.

✓INFORMATION

- When only the i-appli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i-appli is left undeleted, the mail can be viewed from the submenu of the mail folder list. → P177
- When the folder for Message i-appli to be deleted is being used (including displaying list), the i-appli may not be deleted.

◆ Moving i-appli to another folder

<Example> Moving 1 item

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder

2 Place the cursor on the i-appli and

Moving selected i-appli :    ▶ Select i-appli ▶ 

Moving all i-appli in the folder :   

3 Select a folder to move to ▶ "Yes"

◆ Deleting i-appli

<Example> Deleting an item

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder

2 Place the cursor on the i-appli and

Deleting selected i-appli :    ▶ Select i-appli ▶ 

Deleting all i-appli in the folder :

   ▶ Authenticate

3 "Yes"

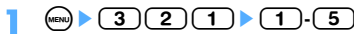
- When attempting to delete Message i-appli, a confirmation screen appears asking if you delete the message folder.
 - "Yes" : Deletes the message folder and all messages stored in the folder.
 - "No" : Deletes i-appli only.

Note that, if there is any protected mail in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-appli or mail folder even if "Yes" is selected.

✓INFORMATION

- To delete all i-appli items in folder from the i-appli folder list, place the cursor on a folder, press  and select "Delete" → "Delete software".
- When only the i-appli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i-appli is left undeleted, the mail can be viewed from the submenu of the mail folder list. → P177
- When the folder for Message i-appli to be deleted is being used (including displaying list), the i-appli may not be deleted.

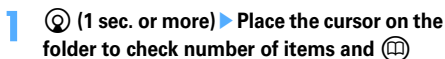
◆ Sorting i-appli <Sort software>



✓INFORMATION

- When operating from Software list, press and select "Sort".
- For download time and access time, the time set for Date & time is recorded.
- If one- and two-byte characters/alphanumeric are included in the name of i-appli, the result of sort "By name" may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- The access frequency is carried over when the i-appli version is upgraded.
- The access frequency does not include the number of starts as i-appli stand-by display.
- Pressing "By software size" sorts the i-appli by total of the software size and scratchpad to be used for i-appli from large to small.

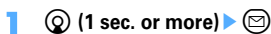
◆ Checking number of i-appli in folder <Software in folder>



Icon definitions→P201 Step 3 in "Starting i-appli"

◆ Checking current settings of i-appli <Software information>

The settings such as storage size of i-appli, i-appli count and i-appli stand-by display can be checked.



Storage : Total size of the i-appli saved is displayed with a bar and value.

Software count : Total number of i-appli saved is displayed.

i-appli display : Name and destination folder to save of i-appli set as i-appli stand-by display are displayed.

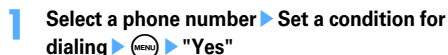
One-key shortcut : Name and destination folder to save of i-appli registered for one-key shortcut are displayed.

Auto start : Name of i-appli, name of destination folder to save i-appli and start time of i-appli set for the next Auto start are displayed.

Using various functions from i-appli

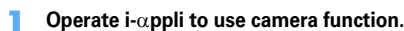
- Downloading i-appli that supports each function in advance is required.
- Some i-appli may need different operation or be unavailable.

◆ Making a call from i-appli



Making a call under set conditions→P52

◆ Using camera function from i-appli



✓INFORMATION

- When activating camera from i-appli, the still image/movie is saved in i-appli (in "i-mode" or "Deco-mail picture" folder of My Picture, "i-mode" folder of i-motion or added album). In some cases, automatically sent to the server.

◆ Using Bar code reader from i-appli



- The scanned data is used by i-appli and saved.

◆ Using infrared communication from i-appli

- Infrared communication may not be made depending on the other party's device even though it has infrared communication function.



- i-appli can also be executed by receiving i-appli starting data via infrared communication.

GPS Function

Precautions for using GPS	212
Checking your current location	Position location 212
Using GPS compatible i-appli	214
Providing your current location information when requested	Location request 217
Notifying your current location information	Notify location 219
Displaying histories of location information checked	Loc. history 220
Setting GPS	221

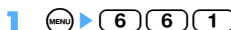
Precautions for using GPS

- This function cannot be used as a navigation device for aircraft, vehicles or persons or as high-precision location surveying GPS. DoCoMo is not liable to any purely economic damages including troubles, if any, caused by missing opportunities of viewing positioning results or making communications due to failures or malfunctions of FOMA terminal or external events such as power interruption (including battery exhaustion) in using FOMA terminal for purposes including but not limited to the above.
- Because GPS is managed by U.S. Department of Defense, GPS wave conditions may be controlled (accuracy degraded or wave stopped) for security reasons of the U.S. And, wave conditions differ depending on satellite locations; therefore, positioning operations in the same location under the same environmental conditions may not yield the same result.
- GPS uses waves transmitted from satellites and it may be disabled or become hard to receive waves in the conditions below, causing to have an error of 300 m or more in location information :
 - Under or inside forest, on street of large buildings or in an area packed with many houses
 - Inside or beneath a building
 - Underground, in a tunnel or underwater
 - Near a high-voltage cable
 - Inside an automobile, train, etc.
 - Bad weather such as heavy rain or snow
 - Covered with hand, etc., or placed in a bag, etc.
 - FOMA terminal closed
 - Surrounded by obstacles or persons
- When using Location request and Notify location functions, check instructions and precautions given in website of GPS service providers and DoCoMo. And, you may be charged for using these functions.
- The GPS location except Position location is not available in out of service area.

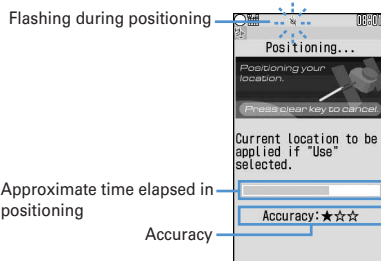
Position location

Checking your current location

- No packet communication fee applies for Position location. Note that a packet communication fee is required separately with map displayed using location information.
- Positioning is disabled during positioning with Location request or Notify location.
- In out of service area, positioning may be enabled in a location with a wide view, but it may function abnormally, e.g., taking long time or positioning disabled under certain environmental conditions.



Positioning is started. During positioning, the light is lit.



- Accuracy icon definitions :
 - ★★★ : Nearly accurate location information (with an error of less than 50 m)
 - ★★☆ : Comparatively accurate location information (with an error of less than 300 m)
 - ★☆☆ : Approximate location information (with an error of 300 m or more)
- * Accuracies are merely approximate indications. Actual accuracies may be different depending on the environmental wave and other conditions.
- During positioning, press **(CLR)** or **(⏏)** to stop it.
- While "Use" is displayed in the task area, press **(⏏)** to use the current location information.

2 Select a function from Use location info menu after positioning.

Operating Use location info menu → P213 "■ Use location info menu"

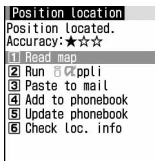
✓INFORMATION

- A message may appear indicating that positioning takes time. Select "Yes" to continue positioning which takes time. Select "Retry" to retry positioning in Quality mode regardless of the setting of the positioning mode.

◆ Using location information

■ Use location info menu

This menu appears after executing Position location, selecting "Use location info" from the Loc. history submenu or selecting Location information from a phonebook or User information detail view screen.



1 On the menu screen, (1) - (6).

Read map : (1) ▶ "OK"

Connect to a map site and display a map using Location information. After a map appears, you can check periphery information using i-area. For details on i-area, see the DoCoMo website.

Run i-appli : (2) ▶ Select i-appli
i-appli starts.

Paste to a mail : (3)

A mail creation screen appears with a Location information URL placed in the mail message.

- When a menu is displayed from Position location or Loc. history, "位置メール (Location mail)" appears in the subject field.
- A Location information URL pasted to a mail can be displayed only on i-mode compatible terminals.

Adding to phonebook : (4)

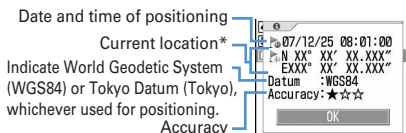
A new phonebook entry screen appears.

Update phonebook : (5) ▶ Select phonebook entry to update

Location information is added to the selected phonebook entry and an entry screen appears.

Check loc info : (6)

Display the screen shown below.



* The information is shown in degrees (°), minutes (′), and seconds (″). "N", "S", "E" and "W" indicate a north latitude, south latitude, east longitude and west longitude, respectively.

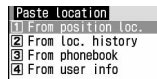
■ Paste/Attach/Send location menu

Appears for pasting/attaching/sending Location information of individual items in the cases below :

Paste location menu : Selecting on Direct call, selecting "Quote phrase/Ph.bk" → "Paste location" after pressing while entering message text or editing signature

Attach location menu : Selecting "Location info" from new data entry, data edit or User information edit screen of FOMA terminal

Send location info menu : Selecting a link item for sending Location information from i-mode



1 From Paste/Attach/Send location menu, (1) - (4)

Using Location information of Position location :

(1) ▶ "Yes" from confirmation screen after activating Position location

Using Location information of Loc. history :

(2) ▶ Select Loc. history ▶ "Yes"

Using Location information of phonebook :

(3) ▶ Select a phonebook entry from FOMA terminal phonebook list with Location information entered ▶ "Yes"

Using Location information of User information :

(4) ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

◆ Setting actions to be taken after Position location <Post-Position task>

If Position location has been set in the custom menu, set actions of the terminal to be taken after activating Position location by pressing and holding a keypad for 1 second or more on the stand-by display.

1 ▶ (6) (6) (4) (1) ▶ (1) - (5)

Read map : Connect to a map site and display a map based on the positioned location information.

Run i-appli : Display a list of GPS compatible i-appli.

Paste to mail : Display the mail creation screen with "位置メール (Location mail)" entered in the subject field and location information URL entered in the message text.

Add to phonebook : Display a screen for selecting "Add to phonebook" or "Update phonebook". You can add new phonebook entry with location information set or add location information to an existing phonebook entry.

Confirm each time : Display accuracy and Location information menu. → P213

Using GPS compatible i-appli

- Using GPS compatible i-appli sends location information to the Information Provider of the i-appli to be used.
- When using the GPS function with GPS compatible i-appli, "Location usage setting" of i-appli to be used must be set to "Yes".
- GPS compatible i-appli "地図アプリ for Kids" (Map application for kids') is saved by default.

1 Select GPS compatible i-appli to start

- To exit GPS compatible i-appli, use the procedure specified for each i-appli.

◆ Using 地図アプリ for Kids'

In "地図アプリ for Kids" (Map application for kids'), with GPS function and map, you can view the map of your current location or specified location, or use navigation from the current location to a destination either by walking or by public transportation.

If you register your home location in advance, the terminal can navigate you back home and you feel safe even when you are lost.

- A packet communication fee is required separately. We would recommend you use this software with Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai full service.
- If this software has been deleted from the terminal, you can download it from the site "i エリアー周辺情報 - (i-area - Local Information -)".
- Note that, we do not guarantee the accuracy or timeliness of the content such as maps and route information.
- The display shown here is an example. Some may differ from actual displays.

❖ Basic service and additional service

There are basic service and additional service for this software.

Basic service : The service provided by DoCoMo for free.

Additional service : The charged service provided by ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD.

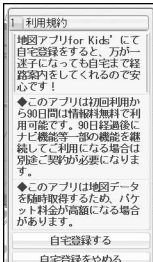
- You can use all of the additional services for 90 days from the day the application is first started (except when it is started for registering the home location in the initial settings of the FOMA terminal) for free. To use the additional services on the 91st day or later, you must subscribe for "ゼンリン (ZENRIN)  地図+ナビ (Map + Navigation)" provided by ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD (charged).

You do not need to download the software again after signing up for subscription. You can continue to use the software.

Menu	Description	Till 90th day	91st day or later
今いる場所 (Current location)	• View the map of current location using GPS function.	Free	Free
場所をさがす (Search for location)*1	• Search for the desired location by entering free word or category. • View the map of a registered location to this software, or previously-searched location.	Free	Free
待合せ (Get-together)  メール (mail)	• Send the map of a registered location via mail.	Free	Charged
	• Send the displayed map via mail.	Free	Free
足あと (Footpoint)	• Display your track on the map. • Display the locations positioned by GPS in the past on the map, by prefecture, city, town or village with color indication.	Free	Free
地図であそぼ (Play with map)	• Display the selected prefecture, city, town or village from the list with color indication.	Free	Free
せってい (Settings)	• Check how to use the map display, navigation display, etc.	Free	Free
道案内 (Navigate)	• Use navigation to the destination with walking directions and ride transfer information.	Free	Charged
家に帰る (Return home)	• Use navigation to the registered home location with easy steps.	Free	Charged
電車の時間 (Train timetable)	• View the train transfer information or train timetable. • Check the train route on the map, and set a reminder before leaving.	Free	Charged

❖ Registering your home location in initial settings of FOMA terminal

In the initial settings of the FOMA terminal, activate this software to register your home location. Once your home location is set, you can use the service of this software that navigates you back home with easy steps.



Default setting screen



Screen for registration of user's home

❖ "地図アプリ for Kids' (Map application for kids')" TOP screen menu and key operations

Menus appear on the TOP screen. Closing the menu displays the map of previously-searched location.

- When you activate this software first, the terms of service and precautions for usage appear.

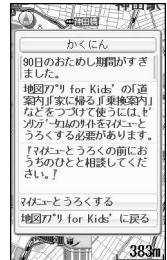


TOP screen

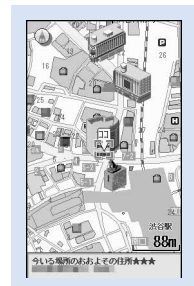
■ From 91st day onwards without subscription

On the 91st day or later when you first activate this software, messages appear indicating that some of the functions are no longer available and inviting you to subscription. Also, when you select any of the additional service menu, the same messages appear.

- To proceed to the subscription, from this software, go to the site "ゼンリン 地図+ナビ".



❖ Map screen and key operations



©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

Map display screen

- On the map display screen, the operations below are enabled :
 - (MENU) : Display the TOP menu.
 - (ZOOM IN/OUT) : Display the zoom in/out bar. (Press (ZOOM IN) to zoom out and press (ZOOM OUT) to zoom in.)
 - (QUICK ACCESS) : Display the quick access menu.
 - (SCROLL) : Scroll the map horizontally or vertically.
 - (CLR) : Close the menu. Return to the first search result location.
 - (ROTATE) : Rotate the map counterclockwise.
 - (NORTH) : Display the map with north upward.
 - (CLOCKWISE) : Rotate the map clockwise.
- On the quick access menu, the operations below are enabled :
 - (LOCAL INFO) : Check the local information around the displayed location.
 - (DEPARTURE) : Set a departure location and search for a route to the center of the map.
 - (MAIL) : Send the URL of the displayed map via mail.
 - (REGISTER) : Register the location information of the center of the map to this software.
 - (CLOSE) : Close the quick access menu.

❖ Searching for a route and navigating to destination with voice and screen

Search for the route by setting the start and goal points. Route information appears with directions for walking and public transportation. After the route is found, navigation to the destination is followed with voice and screen guidance.

1 While this software is active, (MENU) ▶ 7

2 Set "スタート地点 (Start point)" using any of the operations below :

今いる場所 (Current location) : Position the current location and make settings.

家 (Home) : Set the home location information.

きろくした場所 (Registered location) : Set from the location information saved in this software.

昔見た場所 (Location seen before) : Set from the maps displayed before.

地図でえらぶ (Select by map) : Set departure location by the map.

駅やお店 (Stations and stores) : Set by searching for stations and stores.

住所をえらぶ (Select address) : Set by selecting address.

ジャンルから (From category) : Set by selecting the category.

スタート地点のかくにん (Check start point) : Check the information of departure location.

3 Set "ゴール地点 (Goal point)".

- Set using the same operation as Step 2.

4 Set "時間せってい (Set time)" using any of the operations below :

今出発する (Make a departure now) : Search for the route by current time.

出発する時間を決める (Specify departure time) : Search for the route by specifying the departure time.

到着する時間を決める (Specify arrival time) : Search for the route by specifying the arrival time.

終電 (さいしゅうでんしゃ) を使う (Use the last train) : Search for the route by using the last train.

5 "道案内する (Navigate)"

Up to 5 routes are displayed. The icons appear to represent the features of different transfer routes of public transportation.

早 : Faster to the destination

安 : Cheaper transportation cost

楽 : Easier transfer

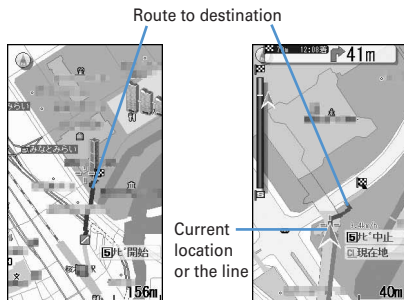
オススメ : Meeting all conditions of 早/安/楽

6 Select a route ▶ "道案内・道じゅんかくにん (Navigate/Check route)" ▶ "道案内 (Navigate)" ▶ "はい (Yes)"

Start the navigation to the destination.

Checking route : Select a route ▶ "道案内・道じゅんかくにん (Navigate/Check route)" ▶ "道じゅんかくにん (Check route)" ▶ "はい (Yes)"

❖ Route/navigation screen and key operations



©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

Route display screen

Navigation display screen

- On the route and navigation screens, you can perform the operations below :

(MENU) : End navigation and display the TOP menu.

2 : Switch to "交差点モード (Intersection mode)".

5 : Stop/resume navigation.

(CLR) : Return to the current location.

⊙/⊞/⊛/✱/0/# : Perform same operation as for map display screen.

- On the quick access menu, the operations below are enabled :

⊙ : Delete route.

⊞ : Display route search results and make settings for navigation.

⊛ : Close the quick access menu.

❖ Using settings/help

1 While this software is active, (MENU) ▶ 6

- The functions below are available.

会員情報かくにん (Check membership information) : View subscription information of "ゼンリン 地図+ナビ".

家の場所をへんこう (Change the home location) : Check/change the registered home information.

使い方の説明 (How to use)/よくある質問 (FAQ)/や

くそくごと (Rules) : Check How to use, FAQ and terms of use.

Providing your current location information when requested

This is a service related to Location request; you can set so that location information is provided upon request from other set parties.

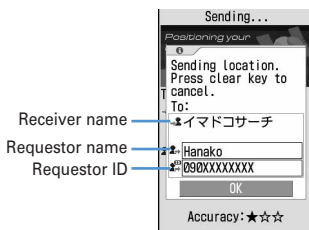
- To use a service related to Location request, a subscription to the service provider may be required. You may be charged for using the service.
- To use a service related to Location request, you must set Request permit/deny to "Always permit". And, you may be required to make usage settings by services.

◆ When Location request is issued

<Example> When "許可 (Permit)" is set for usage settings by services

Positioning is made and location information is sent. ✨ flashes, the GPS alert sound is emitted and the light goes lit or vibrator operates.

- Press **[CLR]** or **[END]** to stop Location request. Location information may be sent depending on the timing.



- When the requestor ID matches the phone number or mail address registered in phonebook, the name registered in phonebook appears.
- Requestor ID may not be displayed.
- When "毎回確認 (Check each time)" is set for usage settings by services, a screen shown below appears. Select "Yes" to start positioning.



✓INFORMATION

- Sending Location information requires no charge.
- Location request is disabled during positioning with Position location or Notify location, while FOMA terminal is out of service area or during Self mode, i-mode communication with i-appli or infrared communication. If the battery is exhausted or Omakase Lock is activated during positioning, it is stopped.
- Information may not be delivered by Location request to the requestor depending on wave conditions.
- If "毎回確認" is set for usage settings by services when Location request is issued during Public mode (Drive mode), location information is not sent. If "許可 (Permit)" is set, a screen appears and location information is sent, but the GPS alert sound is not emitted, and the light or vibrator does not operate.
- When Location request is issued from the other party using イマドコかんたんサーチ (imadocokantan search), the terminal operates as follows:
 - Each time Location request is issued, a confirmation screen for Location request appears. Select "Yes" to immediately send the rough positioning result to the other party. After the positioning is complete, the positioning result in higher accuracy is sent to the other party.
 - Once "Yes" is selected in the confirmation screen for Location request, rough positioning result is sent to the other party even if Location request is interrupted halfway. This is recorded in Loc. history, but the location information does not appear.

◆ Enabling/disabling Location request <Request permit/deny>

You can set if you provide location information when there is a request from other parties.

- This function can be set to "Always permit" or "Always deny" also from initial settings. → P42
- If either of the setting of Silent alarm, Power OFF notice, and imadoco? search of Loss protection is "ON", "Always deny" cannot be set.

1 **[MENU]** **[6]** **[6]** **[6]** **[1]** **[1]** **[3]** **▶ Authenticate ▶**

- With "Always permit" set, location information may be sent and notified to the searcher without operations.
- [GPS]** appears on the stand-by display with "Always permit" or "Permission period" set.

Setting permission period : (3) ▶ Set the required items ▶ (1)

Start : Set time for "Always permit".

End : Set time for "Always deny".

- You can set the next day exceeding 24:00.

Repeat : Set repetition of operation of the set time.

- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of week to perform Location request and press (2).

Date : Set a period of time to perform Location request. When "Specify start date" or "Specify start/end" is set, the items below can be set :

Start : Set day for "Always permit".

End : Set day for "Always deny".

❖ Operations of Location request with Permission period set

When Permission period is set from Request permit/deny, "Always permit" is activated in periods listed below.

- The column titled "Always permit" period shows periods (with years omitted) in which "Always permit" is active if Permission period is set at 9:00, January 3, 2008.
- If Repeat is set to "Day of week", the function is activated only on the specified day of week in the period specified in the field for "Always permit" period.

■ When time after the current time is set as Start

<Example> Start : "10:00", End : "18:00"

Repeat	Date	"Always permit" period
None	—	01/03 10:00-18:00
Every Day/ Day of week	None	01/03 or later 10:00-18:00
	Specify start date Start : 2008/01/01	01/03 or later 10:00-18:00
	Specify start date Start : 2008/02/01	02/01 or later 10:00-18:00
	Specify start/end Start : 2008/01/01 End : 2008/01/31	01/03-01/31 10:00-18:00
	Specify start/end Start : 2008/02/01 End : 2008/02/29	02/01-02/29 10:00-18:00

■ When time before the current time is set as Start

<Example> Start : "08:00", End : "18:00"

Repeat	Date	"Always permit" period
None	—	01/03 09:00-18:00
Every Day/ Day of week	None	01/03 09:00-18:00 01/04 or later 08:00-18:00
	Specify start date Start : 2008/01/01	01/03 09:00-18:00 01/04 or later 08:00-18:00
	Specify start date Start : 2008/02/01	02/01 or later 08:00-18:00
	Specify start/end Start : 2008/01/01 End : 2008/01/31	01/03 09:00-18:00 01/04-01/31 08:00-18:00
	Specify start/end Start : 2008/02/01 End : 2008/02/29	02/01-02/29 08:00-18:00

■ When time after the current time is set as Start and one on the next day is set as End

<Example> Start : "10:00", End : "02:00"

Repeat	Date	"Always permit" period
None	—	01/03 10:00 -01/04 02:00
Every Day/ Day of week	None	01/03 or later 10:00-02:00 next day
	Specify start date Start : 2008/01/01	01/03 or later 10:00-02:00 next day
	Specify start date Start : 2008/02/01	02/01 or later 10:00-02:00 next day
	Specify start/end Start : 2008/01/01 End : 2008/01/31	01/03-01/31 10:00-02:00 next day (until 02/01 02:00)
	Specify start/end Start : 2008/02/01 End : 2008/02/29	02/01-02/29 10:00-02:00 next day (until 03/01 02:00)

- When time before the current time is set as Start and one on the next day is set as End

<Example> Start : "08:00", End : "02:00"

Repeat	Date	"Always permit" period
None	—	01/03 09:00 -01/04 02:00
Every Day/ Day of week	None	01/03 09:00 -01/04 02:00 01/04 or later 08:00-02:00 next day
	Specify start date Start : 2008/01/01	01/03 09:00 -01/04 02:00 01/04 or later 08:00-02:00 next day
	Specify start date Start : 2008/02/01	02/01 or later 08:00-02:00 next day
	Specify start/end Start : 2008/01/01 End : 2008/01/31	01/03 09:00 -01/04 02:00 01/04-01/31 08:00-02:00 next day (until 02/01 02:00)
	Specify start/end Start : 2008/02/01 End : 2008/02/29	02/01-02/29 08:00-02:00 next day (until 03/01 02:00)

◆ Making settings for using service <Service settings>

1 (MENU) ▶ 6 6 6 3

- For next procedure, contact a related service provider.

◆ Changing host of service usage setup site <Service host URL>

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

1 (MENU) ▶ 6 6 6 4 ▶ Set the required items ▶

Host : Select a host.

- When "User setting" is selected, the items below can be set :

User host : Enter a host.

- Up to 99 one-byte characters can be entered.

User host URL : Enter a URL.

- Up to 100 one-byte characters can be entered.

Notify location

Notifying your current location information

You can notify current location information to others (service providers applicable to Notify location function).

- To use Notify location, a subscription to a service provider applicable to Notify location function may be required. And, you may be charged for using the service.
- Notify location requires usage fee.
- Notify location is disabled during positioning with Position location or Location request, when FOMA terminal is out of service area or in Self mode. Notification by entering a service client is disabled in Keypad dial lock.

<Example> Notifying by entering a service client

1 (MENU) ▶ 6 6 5 1

2 2 ▶ Enter a service client ID in service client ID field ▶

Up to 12 one-byte characters can be entered.

During positioning, flashes and the light goes lit. The GPS alert sound is emitted and the vibrator operates on completion of positioning.

- Positioning is stopped when is pressed while a message is being displayed indicating that a location and phone number are sent or (CLR) or is pressed during positioning.
- Even if positioning is interrupted halfway, location information may be sent to the other party depending on the timing.

Notifying to saved service client : 1 1 - 5 ▶

3 Check send result ▶

❖ Saving service client to LCS clients list

For Notify location, a service client can be selected from a list of those saved, if any. You can also set so that your current location is notified to saved service client ID of a specified party by making a voice or videophone call.

- Up to 5 service clients can be saved.
- No LCS client can be saved, edited or deleted with UIM not inserted.

1 ▶ "<New LCS client>"

- When checking a service client already saved, select the service client to check and press  to edit.
- When deleting a service client already saved, press  and select "Delete". Similarly from a submenu, saving to phonebook or sending by infrared communication is enabled.

2 Set the required items

- When "Quote phonebook" is selected from the submenu, a service client name and phone number can be quoted from a phonebook.

Service client name : Enter the other party's name.

- Up to 16 two-byte (32 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Service client ID : Enter a number specified by a service provider you subscribed to.

- Up to 12 one-byte characters can be entered. Numerals, "#" and "*" are available.

Phone number : Enter a phone number of the other party. Set Notify when calling when a phone number is entered.

- Up to 26 one-byte characters can be entered. Numerals, "P", "T", "+", "#" and "*" are available.

Notify when calling : Set if you notify your location to a saved service client ID when making a voice or videophone call to that client.

- Set "ON" to notify the location when making a call.
- Set "Confirm each calling" to display a confirmation screen asking if you notify the location when making a call.

✓ INFORMATION

- Information may not be delivered to the other party depending on wave conditions.
- Even with Notify location set in LCS clients list, location cannot be notified in the cases below :
 - When a call is made without notifying caller ID
 - When call is not connected because the other party is busy or out of service area

Loc. history

Displaying histories of location information checked

You can display histories of positioning performed by **Position location**, **Location request** or **Notify location** function. Using location information in the log, you can save location information in phonebook or create a message containing location information URL.

- Up to 50 location histories are saved. When exceeding the limit, items are overwritten chronologically.

1

 : Position location

 /  (Gray) : Location request/positioning failure

 /  (Gray) : Notify location/positioning failure

2 Select a history to display.

Using Location information : Place the cursor on a history to use and  

The next procedure→P213 "■ Use location information"

Deleting an item : Place the cursor on a history and

   ▶ "Yes"

Deleting selected items :    ▶ Select histories  ▶ "Yes"

Deleting all items :

   ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

❖ Reading Loc. history log screen

Page/Total pages

Loc. history log 1/2	
	07/12/25 08:01:00 Position location
	N XX' XX' XX.XXX" EXXX' XX' XX.XXX"
	Datum : WGS84
	Accuracy : ★★☆☆

Loc. history log details screen for Position location

 : Positioning date/time and function

 : Receiver name for Location request/Service client name for Notify location

 : Service client ID for Notify location

 : Location information

 : Requestor name for Location request

 : Requestor ID for Location request

- From a submenu, you can display the Use location info menu to use location information or delete histories. When phone number or mail address information of the requestor ID is contained in Location request history, the information can be saved to phonebook.

✓INFORMATION

- When positioning with Position location is stopped or fails, it is not saved in history. And, you cannot use location information from histories of failing positioning with Location request or Notify location.
- With a list for Loc. history displayed from other functions such as i-appli, you cannot use or delete location information from a submenu. And, histories of failing positioning with Location request or Notify location are displayed.
- Location information, if any, saved in histories of Location request or Notify location may not be sent to a service provider depending on wave conditions.
- When the requester ID of a Location request matches a phone entry, the requester name saved in phonebook appears.
- Location information recorded in the location history may vary from that sent for Location request or LCS client, depending on the wave and other conditions.

Setting GPS

◆ Setting positioning mode

- In "Standard mode", positioning is performed in a short period of time.
- "Quality mode" takes time for positioning. As a result, it may provide higher accuracy than "Standard mode".

<Example> Setting positioning mode for Position location

1 (MENU) ► 6 6 4 2

Setting positioning mode for Notify location :

(MENU) ► 6 6 5 2 2

Setting positioning mode for Location request :

(MENU) ► 6 6 6 2

2 1 or 2

◆ Setting actions in positioning <Positioning alert>

<Example> Setting actions for Position location

1 (MENU) ► 6 6 4 3

Setting actions for Notify location :

(MENU) ► 6 6 5 2 3

Setting actions for Loc. request-accept :

(MENU) ► 6 6 6 5 1

Setting actions for Loc. request-verify :

(MENU) ► 6 6 6 5 2

2 Set the required items ► (□)

Ring alert : Set if you sound melody.

- When "Melody" is set, select a melody.

Vibrate alert : Set a vibrator operation pattern.

Ring time (sec) : Set time in range of 0-30 seconds.

- Set time in range of 0-20 seconds in Positioning alert for Loc. request-verify.

Light alert : Set a lighting or flashing pattern and color of the light.

- "Sync melody" cannot be selected. And, "OFF" cannot be selected in Loc. request-accept or Loc. request-verify.

✓INFORMATION

- When positioning is made again or retried with Position location due to wave conditions, etc., only lighting/flashing of the light occurs.

Data Display/Edit/Management

Making full use of image

Displaying image	224
Editing still images	226
Storing images in Data Center	Data Security Service 229
Setting operating conditions of image	Settings 229

Making full use of movie/i-motion

Playing movie/i-motion	230
Editing movie/i-motion	233
Setting operating conditions of movie/i-motion	Settings 234

Making full use of Chara-den

Displaying Chara-den	235
Setting operating conditions of Chara-den	Settings 235

Making full use of melody

Playing melodies	236
Setting operating conditions of melody	Settings 236

Managing various data

Using album	237
Viewing/editing data detail information	Detail information/Edit detail information 238
Deleting data	239
Sorting data	Sort 240
Checking storage space of FOMA terminal	Memory status 240

Making full use of infrared communication

Infrared communication	240
Sending by infrared communication	Send Ir data 241
Receiving by infrared communication	Receive Ir data 242
Using infrared remote control function	243
Setting operations for data exchange	Data exchange settings 244

Making full use of Sound recorder

Recording voice with Sound recorder	Sound recorder 244
Changing record settings	245

Displaying image

- Images (JPEG or GIF format), animations (GIF animations or Flash graphics), and created animations can be displayed on FOMA terminals. Note that, images with horizontal and vertical (or vice versa) sizes larger than 640×460 in GIF format or GIF animation, or images larger than 1,728×2,304 in JPEG format cannot be displayed on the FOMA terminal.

5 1 Select a folder

- The folder contents are as given below.

Taken picture : Images shot with Camera or cut out of movies/i-motion

i-mode : Images downloaded from a site, mail or i-appli

Deco-mail picture : Images stored by default, downloaded from sites or mail or read with Bar code reader

Deco-mail pict : Images stored by default or Deco-mail pictograms downloaded from sites, etc.

- When images conforming to Deco-mail pictogram standards (image size 20×20 and file size 90 Kbytes or smaller, mail attachment or output from FOMA terminal enabled, JPEG or GIF format) are received, they are directly saved to this folder. Images not conforming to the standards cannot be saved.

Item : Frame images saved by default or frame or stamp images downloaded from sites

Preinstalled : Images stored by default

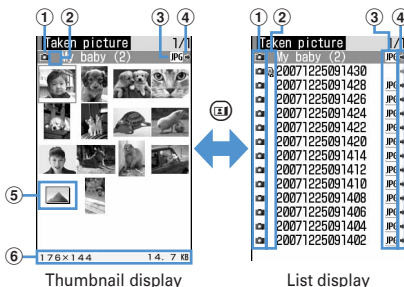
Data transfer : Images read with Bar code reader or acquired from external devices

My album : Images moved from another folder

- Displayed when album is added.→P237

2 Place the cursor on an image.

A display name of the file at the cursor position and an icon indicating details appear.



① Originated

- : Preinstalled
- : i-mode, Mail, i-appli
- : Camera : Frame, stamp
- : Data transfer

② Type of image

- No icon : Still image : Created animation
- : GIF animation/Flash graphic

③ File format

- No icon : Created animation
- : Image in GIF format/GIF animation
- : Image in JPEG format
- : SWF (Flash graphic)

④ File restriction

- ➔ (Gray) : File restricted
- ➔ (Blue) : File unrestricted

⑤ Images unavailable for thumbnail display

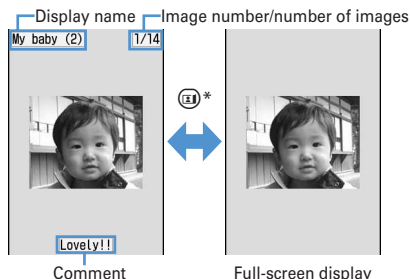
- : No preview image
- : Images with UIM operation restriction set

⑥ Image size and Size

- Show the size of an image at the cursor position.

3 ●

The image display screen shows the display name and a comment of the image.



* For full-screen display, press any of **[MENU]**, **[F1]**, **[CLR]**, **[F2]** to return to the original display.

- Press **[F1]** to switch to previous or next image.
- The operations below are available while playing GIF animation, created animation or Flash graphics (except in full-screen display).
 - : Pause/Play
 - [F1]** : Slow play (Only during pause of created animation)
 - [MENU]** **[7]** : Play from the beginning

Attaching to mail : **[F2]**

Attachable files → P169

- When the still image size is less than 90 Kbytes, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the message text appears.
- Depending on the image or file size, a confirmation screen appears for converting to QVGA size.

✓INFORMATION

- An still image larger than the screen size is displayed with reduced magnification. With full-screen display, an image is automatically scrolled. While scrolling, ● can be used to pause/restart.
- For a JPEG format image larger than the screen size, on the image list place the cursor and press **[MENU]** **[0]** or press ● in the image display screen to display with an actual size. While viewing with actual size, ● can be used to scroll. Press any of **[CLR]**, **[MENU]**, **[F1]**, **[F2]** or **[F3]** to return to the original display.

◆ Displaying slideshow

Display images in a folder sequentially in a full-screen.

- You can use Settings to change the rate, display order, etc. → P229

1 **[MENU]** **[5]** **[1]** ▶ **Place the cursor on the folder and** **[MENU]** **[5]**

- When display of all images is complete or you press one of **[CLR]**, **[MENU]**, **[F1]**, **[F2]**, **[F3]**, the folder list screen reappears.

◆ Setting images to the stand-by display or phonebook

<Example> Setting to the stand-by display

1 **[MENU]** **[5]** **[1]** ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Place the cursor on the image and** **[MENU]** **[2]**

2 **[1]** ▶ **"Yes"**

- For an image smaller than the screen size that can be enlarged, select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)".
- If i-appli stand-by display is set, a confirmation screen for cancellation appears.

Adding to phonebook : **[2]**

Phonebook new entry → P67

Updating phonebook entry : **[3]** ▶ **Select a phonebook entry**

Setting as Calling image : **[4]** ▶ **[1]** or **[2]**

Setting as Video-phone image : **[5]** ▶ **[1]** - **[7]**

- Images with size larger than 176×144 or images that cannot be output from FOMA terminal can be set only for outgoing/incoming image.

Setting as Mail image : **[6]** ▶ **[1]** - **[4]**

- The images set to Mail image are also displayed when MessageR/F or SMS is sent or received.

Setting to menu icons : **[7]** or **[8]** ▶ **[1]** - **[0]**

Selected image is set to the menu icon of "Customized1" or "Customized2" for Type of icons or background.

- Created animations, Flash graphics or images in "Item" folder cannot be set for menu icon.

◆ Creating animation

You can select up to 9 still images from a same folder to create an animation.

- You cannot save still images larger than 640×480.
- Still images saved cannot be displayed or edited individually. In addition, unless canceled, they cannot be saved to external devices or attached to i-mode mail to send.

1 (MENU) ▶ (5) (1) ▶ Select a folder

2 (MENU) ▶ (4) (1)

Canceling created animation : Place the cursor on created animation and (MENU) ▶ (4) (2)

3 Select images to save to Create animation.

Selected images are numbered ①-⑨ in the order of selections.

(MENU) : Cancel all selections

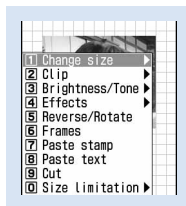
4 (Ⓜ) ▶ Enter a display name ▶ (Ⓜ)

- Up to 36 characters can be entered.
- For a image list, the first image appears.

Editing still images

- The still images below cannot be edited :
 - Still images in "Item" or "Preinstalled" folder
 - Still images with mail attachment or output to terminals except FOMA terminals inhibited (except still images with File restriction set to "File restricted" on the local terminal)
 - Still images with the vertical or horizontal size less than 8 dots
- When the edited still image appears with a PC, etc., the areas displayed transparent, if any, appear in white.
- When saving an image, if the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, a confirmation screen for deletion appears. To save the image, follow the instruction on the screen and delete saved image.

1 (MENU) ▶ (5) (1) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Place the cursor on a still image and (Ⓜ) (MENU) ▶ Take actions P226-P228 using edit items



Edit menu screen

2 When editing completes, (Ⓜ) ▶ "Save"

The edited still image is saved as a new still image in the same folder.

- When the image size after editing is 20×20 and the file size is 90 Kbytes or less, the image is saved to "Deco-mail pict" folder.
- Select "As frame/stamp" to save the image for frame or stamp.

✓INFORMATION

- When the image size is larger than the display area as edited, the image is displayed with reduced magnification. However, images are displayed with the same magnification in Paste stamp, Paste text and Zoom in/out.
- After editing, the file size may become larger.

❖ Changing image size

You can zoom in/out an image or resize it as specified.

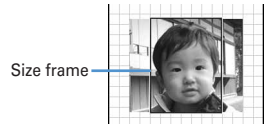
- The image quality may be deteriorated.
- You can edit an image of up to 1,728×2,304 (352×288 or 240×432 for zoom in/out) dots.

<Example> Changing to a specified size

1 On the edit menu screen, (1).

2 (1)-(9)

- When the specified size and the still image have different aspect ratios, a size frame appears. Press (Ⓜ) to attain the specified size by cutting off an area of the size frame.



- ⊗ : Move the size frame vertically and horizontally
- (MENU) : Change the whole image to the specified size without holding the aspect ratio
- (Ⓜ) : Change the whole image to the specified size holding the aspect ratio

Zooming in/out : (0) ▶ (Ⓜ) ▶ (Ⓜ)

- Zoom in/out by 5%, holding the aspect ratio. Press (MENU) to zoom out by 20% and press (Ⓜ) to zoom in by 20%.
- The new image size and scale factor appear in the upper right corner of the screen.
- You can zoom in up to 432 horizontal or vertical dots and zoom out up to 8 horizontal or vertical dots.

❖ Cutting out to arbitrary size

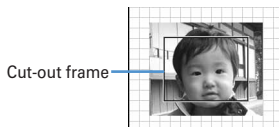
You can change to a predetermined or arbitrary size.

- You can edit an image of 16×16 dots or more or 1,728×2,304 (specifiable range 1,224×1,632) dots or less.

<Example> Cutting out to a specified size

1 On the edit menu screen, **(2)**.

2 **(1)** - **(9)** ➤  to adjust the position of the clipping frame



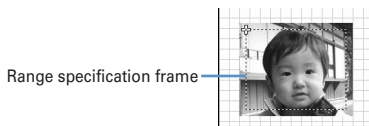
 : Specify cut-out range

 : Change the vertical/horizontal position of the cut-out frame

 : Change a cut-out size

Cutting out a specified range :

(1) **(0)**



(2)  to select the start position and .

The upper left position of the frame specifying the range is set and  appears on the lower right of that frame.

(3)  to select the end position and .

The range specification frame becomes a clip frame.

3 

❖ Changing brightness and tone

- You can edit an image of 480×640 dots or less.

<Example> Adjusting brightness

1 On the edit menu screen, **(3)**.

2 **(1)** ➤  to adjust brightness

Brightness increased or decreased by 1 level.

 /  : Adjust brightness to the highest/lowest

Setting monotone : **(2)**

Setting sepia : **(3)**

3 

❖ Applying special effects

The special effects below are applied :

Soften : Soften an image

Spherical : Swell a still image spherically from the center

Emboss : Turn to leaden color and emphasize roughness

Spiral : Make a still image spiral around its center

Shiny : Attach glistening marks

Mosaic : Put mosaics

Sketch(monochrome) : Make a still image look as if it is sketched by a pencil

Sketch(color) : Make an image like a pencil sketch with watercolors

- You can edit an image of 480×640 dots or less.

1 On the edit menu screen, **(4)** ➤ **(1)** - **(8)**

- With "Sketch(monochrome)" or "Sketch(color)" selected, the operations below are enabled. If you press , the effect is fixed.

 : Adjust the effect.

 : Change line thickness.

 /  : Minimize/Maximize the effect.

❖ Reversing/Rotating

- You can edit an image of 480×640 dots or less.

1 On the edit menu screen, **(5)** ➤  to reverse or rotate a still image

 /  : Rotate left or right 90 degrees.

2 

❖ Adding frame

- You can edit an image of 352×288 or 240×432 dots or less.

1 On the edit menu screen, **(6)**.

The image set as a frame option in Edit detail info of the image and a frame of the same size as the still image being edited appear.

2 **Select a frame.**

 : Change frame

 : Rotate frame 180 degrees

3 

❖ Pasting stamps

- You can edit an image of 352×288 or 240×432 dots or less.

1 On the edit menu screen, (7) ▶ Select a stamp

The image set as a stamp option in Edit detail info of the image and a stamp smaller than the still image being edited appear.

2 🎯 to adjust the position and (⦿).

A beep sound is heard and stamp is pasted.

(MENU) : Delete all stamps

- You can successively paste the stamp to other locations.

3 (📄)

❖ Pasting text

- You can edit an image of 352×288 or 240×432 dots or less.

1 On the edit menu screen, (8) ▶ Set the required items ▶ (📄)

- Text of up to 20 two-byte (40 one-byte) characters can be entered.
- With "By character" set for Paste method, a character is pasted each time you press (⦿). After the last character is pasted, the first character reappears.

2 🎯 to adjust the position to attach and (⦿).

A beep sound is heard and text is pasted.

(MENU) : Delete all text

- Paste text in the other location continuously.

3 (📄)

❖ Cutting any section out

Section of the color approximate to the selected color can be cut out.

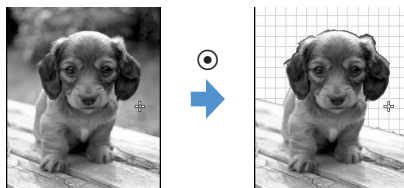
- You can edit an image of 240×432 dots or less.

1 On the edit menu screen, (9).

🎯 specifying color to cut out appears in the center of the screen.

2 🎯 to place 🎯 on the color you want to cut out and (⦿).

The section with the color approximate to that indicated by 🎯 is cut out. Cut other sections continuously.



3 (📄)

❖ Limiting file size for saving

- You can edit an image of 1,728×2,304 (480×640 for Msg attach:Small) or less dots. Images with file size of 2 Mbytes or less cannot be set to "Msg attach:Large".

1 On the edit menu screen, (0) ▶ (1) or (2)

The image is saved with a size 90 Kbytes or less for Msg attach:Small, 2 Mbytes or less for Msg attach:Large.

◆ Adjusting brightness and color balance

- You can edit an image of 352×288 or 240×432 dots or less.
- Some still images may not change efficiently by adjustment.

1 (MENU) ▶ (5) (1) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Place the cursor on the still image and (📄) ▶ (📄)

An adjustment mode appears in the upper-right corner of the screen.

2 (MENU) ▶ (1) - (7)

- You can also change adjustment mode by pressing (⦿).

Close-up : Make appropriate adjustment for still objects or plants.

Near view : Make appropriate adjustment for background.

Distant view : Give vivid brightness and contrast to a landscape image

Beautiful skin : Make human skin look white and smooth on a portrait image.

Tanned : Make human skin look tanned on a portrait image.

Pale : Make human skin look pale on a portrait image.

- Drunk** : Make human skin look ruddy on a portrait image.
- : Adjust the correction effect
- : Adjust effect to the minimum/maximum

3

Data Security Service

Storing images in Data Center

By using Data Security Service, images saved in My Picture of Data Box can be stored in Data Center on the network.

- Data Security Service→P120
- This is an optional subscriber service to be charged requiring subscription. When having not subscribed to this service, attempting to connect to Data Center displays the screen indicating that.
- An image file exceeding 100 Kbytes cannot be saved or restored.
- Up to 10 messages can be stored by one operation.
- For details of restoration, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- Logs saved in Data Center can be viewed.→P76

1 5 1 ▶ Select a folder

2 5 4 ▶ Select an image ▶ ▶ "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

- : Cancel saving

3 Check the communication result.

- Display of the communication result disappears automatically in approximately 5 seconds.

✓INFORMATION

- Data in "Item" folder or "Preinstalled" folder of My Picture cannot be selected.

Settings

Setting operating conditions of image

- By default, Scale up image and Slide show random are set to "No", Slide show speed to "Normal" and other items to "Yes".

1 5 1 ▶ 4 ▶ Set the required items ▶

Display icons : Set if you use thumbnail display on the image list.

Display title : Set if you display the title on the image display screen.

Display number : Select if you display the number of images and all images in the folder or album on the image display screen.

Display comments : Set if you display comment on the image display screen.

Scale up image : Set if you zoom in an image to fully display on the display area holding the image aspect ratio. Even with "Yes" set, the image is not enlarged in full-screen display.

Scale down image : Set if you zoom out an image to fully display on the display area holding the image aspect ratio. Even when "No" is set, the image is zoomed out in a full-screen display in which "No" is set for Auto scroll mode.

Sound effect : Set if you play sound effects set to an image. Even with "Yes" set, sound effects are not played in a slide show.

Auto scroll mode : Set if you automatically scroll a still image that does not fit to a full-screen display.

Slide show speed : Set a display rate.

Slide show random : Set if you display a slide show at random.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the image list or image display screen, press and select "Settings".

Playing movie/i-motion

- Movies/i-motion in the formats below with image size of 48×48-320×240 can be played on FOMA terminals.

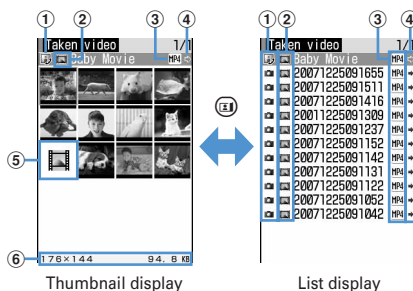
File format (Extension)	Encoding format	
MP4 (MP4, 3GP)	Movie	MPEG4, H.263, H.264
	Sound	AMR, AAC, HE-AAC, Enhanced aacPlus
ASF (ASF)	Movie	MPEG4
	Sound	G.726

1 Select a folder

- The folder contents are as given below.
 - Playlist** : Playlist of movie/i-motion
Creating/playing playlists→P232
 - Taken video** : Movies recorded with Camera, movies cut out of movie, Movie memos and sound recorded with Sound recorder
 - i-mode** : i-motion downloaded from sites or mail, i-motion cut out of i-motion
 - Preinstalled** : Movies stored by default
 - Data transfer** : Movies/i-motion acquired from external devices
 - My album** : Movies/i-motion moved from other folders
- Displayed when album is added.→P237

2 Place the cursor on a movie/i-motion.

A display name of the file at the cursor position and an icon indicating details appear.



① Originated

- : Preinstalled
- : i-mode, mail, i-appli
- : Camera : Data transfer
- : Videophone call

② Replay restriction

- : No restriction
- : Restriction on the number/expiration/period

③ File type

- (White)/ (Blue) : MP4/MP4 with bookmark
- : MP4 partially saved
- (White)/ (Blue) : ASF/ASF with bookmark

④ File restriction

- (Gray) : File restricted
- (Blue) : File unrestricted

⑤ Movie/i-motion unavailable for thumbnail display

- : Movies/i-motion containing only sound (i-motion without image such as the one containing only voice of a singer), i-motion partially downloaded, i-motion unavailable for replay due to the replay restriction, sound recorded with Sound recorder
- : Movie/i-motion with thumbnail images unavailable
- : Movie/i-motion with UIM operation restriction set

⑥ Image size and Size

- Show the size of movie/i-motion at the cursor position.

Attaching to mail :

Attachable files→P169



① Play status

: In play : In stop : In pause

② Playing time/Total playing time

A number and bar appear.

③ Play volume

④ File type

: Sound : Movie

⑤ Zooming in/out display

: Zoomed in display : Zoomed out display

- For the movie/i-motion larger than the screen size, the confirmation screen appears for playing in a reduced scale.
- For the movie/i-motion with a bookmark set, the confirmation screen appears for playing from the bookmark. Select "No" to play from the beginning or play stopped position.

- During playing, the operations below are enabled :

: Adjust volume

: Pause/Play/Play from the beginning (In stop)

: Reverse/Fast play

: Rewind for 10 seconds (Starting playing from the beginning if the time from it is less than 10 seconds)

: Fast forward for 30 seconds (Starting playing from a point 1 second before the end position if the time to the end position is less than 30 seconds)

: Stop

: Return to list screen

- While playing a movie/i-motion containing chapter information, press to play from previous chapter, and press to play from next chapter. Select → "Chapter list" → desired chapter to play from the selected chapter.
- In pause, press to display a tab for specifying position on the play position indicator. Press again to move the tab and press to play from the specified position.

A tab for specifying position can be operated as shown below.

: Move per minute.

(2 sec. or more) : Move per 5-minute (only for movies/i-motion of 20 minutes or more).

- When playing is paused by pressing or or other functions, the play stop position is saved to play from the position next time. Information of play stop position for up to 5 movies/i-motion is saved. When newer information is saved, older information is deleted. When playing while downloading data or in preview play, play stop position cannot be saved.

Setting bookmark : During play, ▶ "Yes"

- In pause, : Cancel
- Setting is enabled when playing i-motion in Data Box or playing from the list displayed by pressing on the movie recording screen. However, bookmarks cannot be set in i-motion with replay restrictions is set.

Switching the vertical/horizontal position of display

- Each time you press , the horizontal/vertical position of the display is switched.
- For movies/i-motion of 320×240 image size, the display is switched to the vertical display → horizontal display → horizontal (wide) display.

✓ INFORMATION

- "-:--:-" may appear as the full play duration on the play screen for some i-motion. The operations below are available :
 - Fast forward play, fast forward for 30 seconds, rewind play, rewind for 10 seconds
 - Playing from bookmark or play stop position
 - Playing using tab for specifying position
 - Playing from the beginning of next chapter, playing from the beginning of previous chapter or playing by Chapter selection
- When i-motion with replay restriction set is selected, the replay restriction status appears. When replay is disabled due to the replay restriction, a message appears for confirming deletion (except before the replay period). When replay period or expiration is restricted, replaying is not enabled by changing the date and time of the FOMA terminal.
- When i-motion failed or interrupted in downloading and partially downloaded is selected, a confirmation screen for confirming to download the remaining data appears. When it cannot be downloaded by retry, data partially saved is deleted. i-motion partially downloaded cannot be downloaded again after the replay period or replay expiration. A confirmation screen for confirming deletion appears, allowing to delete i-motion partially saved.

◆ Creating/playing playlists

Using playlists, you can manage a play order, etc. of a group of titles of movies/i-motion.

- Maximum number of recorded items→P335
- 1 playlist can contain up to 100 titles. Titles of movies/i-motion with UIM operation restriction or replay restriction (except ones not expired and within period) set or partially saved cannot be saved.
- When creating, if the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is reached, a confirmation screen for deletion appears. To save, follow the instruction on the screen and delete saved movies/i-motion.

❖ Creating playlist

1 ► ► Select "Playlist" folder

2 ►

When no playlist is created : "Yes"

Changing a name : Place the cursor on a playlist and

► ► Enter a name ►

- It can be changed with up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters.

Deleting a playlist : Place the cursor on a playlist and

► ► "Yes"

Deleting selected playlists :

► ► Select playlists and

► "Yes"

Deleting all playlists :

► ► Authenticate ► "Yes"

3 Enter the playlist name ►

- "playlistYYYYMMDD (year, month and day of creation)" is preset. It can be changed with up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters.

4 Select a folder ► Select a movie/i-motion ► ► "Yes"

❖ Adding titles of movies/i-motion to playlist

1 ► ► Select "Playlist" folder ► Select a playlist

2 ►

Canceling a title : Place the cursor on a title and

► ► "Yes"

Canceling selected titles :

► ► Select titles and

► "Yes"

Canceling all titles :

► ► Authenticate ► "Yes"

3 - ► Select a folder ► Select a movie/i-motion ►

- When "One item" is selected, go to Step 4 without pressing .
- When you select "All items" and select a folder containing movie/i-motion data, a title of movie/i-motion that can be saved in the folder is selected.

4 "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- Removing a title of movie/i-motion in a playlist does not delete the data itself. When the data itself is deleted, it is canceled from the playlist.

❖ Playing playlist

Using playlist, you can continuously play movies/i-motion starting from the selected title.

- While playing, operation of playing from the bookmark position or play stop position, playing using chapter information, fast forward/rewind or tab for specifying position is unavailable.

1 ► ► Select "Playlist" folder ► Select a playlist ► Select a movie/i-motion to play first

- On the screen for playing, the icons below appear beside ones normally appear :

/ : Repeat play available/unavailable

- During playing, the operations below are available :

: Pause/Play

: Adjust volume

: Play from the beginning of data (press within 3 sec. from playing to play previous data)

: Stop

: Play next data

❖ Sorting play order in playlist

- 1 ▶ Select "Playlist" folder ▶ Select a playlist ▶ ▶ Place the cursor on a title and or

◆ Setting movie/i-motion to stand-by display or phonebook

- Movies/i-motion containing only sound (i-motion without image such as the one containing only voice of a singer) or i-motion with replay restrictions cannot be set for the stand-by display.
- Movie/i-motion containing only images can be set as the incoming call image and in Phonebook.
- Only the movie/i-motion for which "Available" is set for Ring alert and Receive display in detail information can be set as ring alert and incoming call image. The movies/i-motion which have been transferred to external devices and returned to the FOMA terminal cannot be set.

<Example> Setting to the stand-by display

- 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Place the cursor on a movie/i-motion and

- 2 ▶ "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)"

Operations to be performed when set to stand-by display→P84

Adding to phonebook :

Phonebook new entry→P67

Updating phonebook entry : ▶ Select a phonebook entry

Setting to Ring alert : ▶ -

- When "Contact alert:Call" or "Contact alert:Mail" is selected, select a phonebook entry from a phonebook list→press .

Setting to Movie alert (voice or videophone call)/

Received mail image : ▶ -

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the title list of Playlist, press and select "Use selected movie".

Editing movie/i-motion

Movie/i-motion saved in i-motion can be edited by cutting out a still image or any range.

- The movies/i-motion below can be edited :
 - Movies shot with your FOMA terminal
 - Movies/i-motion with no file restrictions except movies recorded with your FOMA terminal
- i-motion with replay restriction, movie/i-motion stored by default or movie in ASF format cannot be edited. Downloaded i-motion may not be edited depending on encoding formats.
- Edited movie/i-motion is saved as new data to the folder where the original data is saved. The data cut out as a still image is saved in "Taken picture" folder of My Picture. It also applies when movie/i-motion is attached to mail after editing.

◆ Cutting out still image (Capture)

Specify a range and cut out as a still image.

- The size of the still image cut out is same as display size during play.

- 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a movie/i-motion

- 2 At the cutting position,

- 3

- To capture again, press , resume a play and repeat Step 2 and 3.

Attaching to mail :

- When the file size is 90 Kbytes or less, a confirmation screen appears asking if you paste it to the message.

◆ Cutting out movie/i-motion

Cut out from the beginning to the specified location.

- You can edit the movies/i-motion with file size of 11 K-2,048 Kbytes.

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Place the cursor on a movie/i-motion and



appears below a replay time.

- When data containing a ticker (text) is cut out, the ticker (text) is deleted.

2 at the cutting position



 : Retry

- For a file larger than 500 Kbytes, press  and select "Msg attachment S" to cut out a file of 500 Kbytes, select "No settings" to cut out a file approximately 1,000 bytes smaller than the maximum size. For a file of 2,048 Kbytes, press  and select "Msg attachment L" causes the movie/i-motion to be cut out a file of 2,047 Kbytes.
- When data is cut out up to the end without pressing , the end point is set at the position approximately 1,000 bytes smaller than the maximum file size.

3 Enter a display name ▶

- Up to 36 characters can be entered.

Playing : 

Attaching to mail : 

◆ Specifying file size for cutting out movie/i-motion

Cut out a specified file size from the beginning.

- You can edit the movies/i-motion with file size of 11 K-2,048 Kbytes.
- File size which you can specify is 10 K-2,047 Kbytes. The maximum file size varies by the movie/i-motion to be cut out.

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Place the cursor on a movie/i-motion and

- When data containing a ticker (text) is cut out, the ticker (text) is deleted.

2 Enter size to cut out.

- For a file larger than 500 Kbytes, press  and select "Msg attachment S" to enter 500, and for a file of 2,048 Kbytes, press  and select "Msg attachment L" to enter 2,047.

3 Enter a display name ▶

- Up to 36 characters can be entered.

Playing : 

Attaching to mail : 

Settings

Setting operating conditions of movie/i-motion

- By default, View thumbnails is set to "Yes", Size adjustment to "Normal", Repeat play to "ON", Backlight to "Always on" and Volume to "Level 20".

1 ▶ Set the required items ▶

View thumbnails : Set if you use thumbnail display on the image list.

Size adjustment : Set if you zoom in/out an image to fully display on the display area holding the image aspect ratio.

Repeat play : Specify if you repeat playing during playlist play.

Backlight : Specify lights operation during play. If you set "Terminal settings", it depends on Display light time (Normal use) of settings of Display light of Display.

- This setting is reflected to Display light time (i-motion) of Display light of Display.

Volume : Specify the sound volume during play.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from movie/i-motion list, press and select "Settings".

Displaying Chara-den

Chara-den is a character to display on the screen instead of your own image when using videophone call. The character can be moved by pressing keypads during a videophone call. Also, a Chara-den can be set on the stand-by display to take specific actions when a missed call, etc. exists.

- Using Chara-den during videophone call → P61

1 5 4 ▶ Select a folder

- The folder contents are as given below.
 - i-mode** : Chara-den downloaded from sites
 - Preinstalled** : Chara-den stored by default
 - My folder** : Chara-den moved from other folders
- Display when album is added. → P237

2 Place the cursor on Chara-den.

The display name of Chara-den and an icon indicating details of the Chara-den are shown.



① Originated

: Preinstalled : i-mode

② File restriction

➔ (Gray) : File restricted

Making a Videophone call : ▶ **Enter a phone number or press** **and select from a phonebook** ▶

- To make a call specifying conditions, enter a phone number and press . → P52

Setting as Substitute image :

Setting as stand-by display :

① 3 ▶ Set the required items ▶

- When "Action" or "Action of Parts" is set, you can select an action from the actions list. Selection is disabled for some Chara-den.
- When "Input" is selected, specify an action by entering digits to the entry field.

- If actions are set for Missed call or Unread message, but there are no Missed call or Unread message, the action set as ordinary occurs. When there are Missed call and Unread message with both set, both actions are repeated alternately; but if Interval is set to "OFF", the action for Missed call occurs only once.
- When Interval is "OFF", the action occurs only once.
- ② **"Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)"**
 - If i-appli stand-by display is already set, a confirmation screen appears for terminating the i-appli stand-by display.

3

: Zooming in/out display

: Activate the related action

: Stop the action

: List actions

(1 sec. or more) : Switch Action/Action of Parts

- The current action type is indicated with icons below appearing in the lower-left corner in the screen.

Action : Action

Parts : Action of Parts

Settings

Setting operating conditions of Chara-den

- By default, Display size is set to "Large" and Set lighting to "Terminal settings".

1 5 4 ▶ 4 ▶ Set the required items ▶

Display size : Set enlarged/same size display.

Set lighting : Specify lights operation during play. If you set "Terminal settings", it depends on Display light time (Normal use) of settings of Display light of Display.

Playing melodies

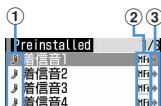
- Melodies in SMF or MFi format can be played on FOMA terminals.

1 5 3 Select a folder

- The folder contents are as given below.
 - i-mode** : Melody acquired from a site or mail
 - Preinstalled** : Melodies for ring tone stored by default → P300
 - Mail attach melody** : Melodies for mail attachment stored by default → P300
 - Data transfer** : Melody read with Bar code reader or acquired from external devices
 - My album** : Melodies moved from another folder
- Displayed when album is added. → P237

2 Place the cursor on a melody.

A display name of the melody and an icon indicating details appear.



① Originated

: Preinstalled, Mail attach melody
 : i-mode, Mail : Data transfer

② File type

MFi : MFi SMF : SMF

③ File restriction

⇒ (Gray) : File restricted
 ⇒ (Blue) : File unrestricted

Attaching to mail :

3

In the melody play screen, the display name of melody being played, played position or icon indicating sound volume are displayed.



① Melody number/number of melodies

② Current play position

③ Play volume

- The operations below are available :
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Play previous/next melody
 - CLR** : Stop

◆ Setting melody for ring alert

- Melodies in "Mail attach melody" folder cannot be set as ring alert.

1 5 3 Select a folder Place the cursor on the melody to set and

2 1 8

- When "Contact alert:Call" or "Contact alert:Mail" is selected, select a phonebook entry from a phonebook list → press .

Settings

Setting operating conditions of melody

- By default, Volume is set to "Level 4", Light pattern to "Light pattern 1", Light color to "Lime", Vibrate to "OFF", Play position to "Play all" and Play background to "Standard".

1 5 3 5 Set the required items

- When Light pattern is set to "Sync melody", Light color operates in "Rainbow". Some melodies are not available to "Sync melody".
- When "Play portion" is set for Play position, the melody is partially played. Some melodies are not available to "Play portion".
- When Play background is set to "Select", you can select an image saved in Image folders.

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the melody list and the melody play screens, press and select "Settings".

Using album

Add albums to each folder list of My Picture, i-motion, Melody, Chara-den, Kisekae Tool in Data Box, and use for organizing data.

- For Chara-den and Kisekae Tool, it is displayed as "Folder".
- The fixed folder set by default cannot be renamed or deleted.

◆ Adding album

- Up to 100 items can be added to My Picture of Data Box and up to 10 data items of each data type can be added for other.

<Example> Adding an album of My Picture

1 (MENU) ▶ 5 1

2 (MENU) ▶ 1

- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens of Melody. Select "Create album".

Deleting an album : Place the cursor on an album and (MENU) ▶ 2 ▶ "Yes"

- When the data is saved, perform authentication.
- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens of Melody. Select "Delete album".

Renaming album : Place the cursor on an album and (MENU) ▶ 3

- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens of Melody. Select "Rename album".

3 Enter an album name ▶ (ID)

- Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.

◆ Moving/copying data to album

❖ Moving data

- Data saved in "Preinstalled", "Deco-mail pict" or "Mail attach melody" folder cannot be moved.

<Example> Moving data of My Picture

1 (MENU) ▶ 5 1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Place the cursor on data and (MENU) ▶ 5 1

- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens of Melody and Kisekae Tool. Select "Move"→"Move to album" for melody or "Move to folder" for Kisekae Tool.
- To move the data of Chara-den, select "Move".

3 1 - 3

Moving selected items : 2 ▶ Select data ▶ (ID)

4 Select destination album ▶ "Yes"

❖ Restoring data to fixed folder

- Data of Chara-den cannot be restored to the fixed folder.

<Example> Restoring album data in My Picture to fixed folder

1 (MENU) ▶ 5 1 ▶ Select an album

2 Place the cursor on data and (MENU) ▶ 5 2

- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens of Melody and Kisekae Tool. Select "Move"→"Restore to folder".

3 1 - 3

Restoring selected data items : 2 ▶ Select data ▶ (ID)

4 "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- Operation in "Deco-mail picture" folder to return to the fixed folder causes the images stored by default to move to "i-mode" folder.

❖ Copying data

In My Picture and i-motion, data can be copied to the same album or folder.

- The data below cannot be copied :
 - Data in "Preinstalled" folder
 - Created animation in My Picture, images in "Item" folder
 - i-motion with replay restrictions
 - Data with File restriction set to "File restricted" (except data with File restriction set to "File restricted" on the local terminal)

<Example> Copying data of My Picture

- 1    ▶ Select a folder
 - 2 Place the cursor on data and   
- Data is saved to the same album or folder as the source.

✓INFORMATION

- Returning copied data in album to fixed folder moves the source data to the fixed folder.

❖ Playing album

You can play all melody in the album collectively.

- 1    ▶ Place the cursor on an album and  
- While playing album, the operations below are available :
 -  : Play previous/next data
 -  : Adjust volume
 -  ,  : Stop

Detail information/Edit detail information

Viewing/editing data detail information

Data detail information such as display name and file size can be checked. Some information can be changed.

❖ Viewing detail information <Detail information>

<Example> Viewing the detail information of image

- 1    ▶ Select a folder
 - 2 Place the cursor on the image and   
- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens of Chara-den and Kisekae Tool. Select "Detail info"→"View".

❖ Changing detail information <Detail information>

<Example> Changing the detail information of image

- 1    ▶ Select a folder
 - 2 Place the cursor on an image and    ▶ Set the required items 
- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens of Chara-den and Kisekae Tool. Select "Detail info"→"Edit/Change".

❖ List of display items and changeability

Detail information contains items given below.

Display name : Title displayed on FOMA terminal

- A melody can be changed within 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters and others within 36 characters.

Title(Original)/Original title/Title : Original title of data

- If no title is set, "---" appears.
- It does not appear for an image.

File name : File name displayed when attaching to mail

- Only for image, movie/i-motion or melody, up to 36 one-byte characters including alphanumeric characters, ".", "-", and "_" can be changed. A dot "." is not allowed for the first character of a file name.

File restriction : For a file sent by mail attachment, you can set restriction of transfer from the receiver mobile phone to another mobile phone.

- You can change only image, movie/i-motion and melody. Data downloaded from sites, etc. or movie in ASF format cannot be changed.

Format/File format : Type of file

- This does not appear for Chara-den or Kisekae Tool. It appears as "---" for Flash graphics.

Display size : Display size of data

- This does not appear for Flash graphics, melody or Kisekae Tool.

Size(Bytes) : Actual file size of data

Size on disk(Bytes) : Size of memory used for data saving

Saved date & time : Data saving date/time

Originated : Data source

■ Items displayed for image and Chara-den

Comment : Data description, etc.

- You can change within 100 characters.

■ Items displayed for an image

Type : Type of image

Msg attach size(Bytes) : Attachment size of mail attachable data

Use as frame : Indicate if you enable pasting an image as a frame.

- You can change only JPEG or GIF images.
- For an image with size larger than 352×288 or 240×432 or an image composed with an image of "Item" folder, the setting cannot be changed to "Yes".
- Even when "Yes" is set, the image is saved in the original folder, not in "Item" folder.

Use as stamp : Indicate if you enable pasting an image as a stamp image.

- You can change only JPEG or GIF images.
- For an image with size 240×432 or larger or an image composed with an image of "Item" folder, the setting cannot be changed to "Yes".
- Even when "Yes" is set, the image is saved in the original folder, not in "Item" folder.

■ Items displayed for movie/i-motion

Creator : Creator information

- For movie recorded with the local terminal, the name of User information appears. If no name is saved, "--" appears.
- You can change within 256 characters.

Copyright : Author's name/release date, etc.

- You can change within 256 characters.

Description : Data description

- You can change within 256 characters.

Sound : Sound data type

Ring alert : Set whether the sound can be set to ring alert

- A movie recorded with your own FOMA terminal by setting Quality:Movie camera to other than "XQ(Extra high)" and Recording Type to "Video + Voice" or "Voice only", or a movie cut out of that movie becomes "Available".

Receive display : Set whether the sound can be set to receive display

- For movie recorded with the local terminal with Recording type set to "Video only" that the size is up to 320×240 or a movie cut out of it is set to "Available".

Replay restriction : Restriction on replay

■ Items displayed for a melody

Playing time : Data play time

Deleting data

- Data saved in "Preinstalled" (except Chara-den) or "Mail attach melody" folder cannot be deleted.

<Example> Deleting a data item from My Picture

- 1    ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Place the cursor on data and   
Deleting selected items :    ▶ Select data ▶ 
Deleting all items :    ▶ Authenticate
• Submenu item numbers vary by list screens of Melody and Kisekae Tool. Select "Delete" and operate.

3 "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- If you delete created animation, the original images composing Created animation are also deleted.
- If data set for stand-by display or ring alert is deleted, each setting returns to default or standard. When data set to phonebook is deleted, the operation depends on the settings of the ring alert or incoming/outgoing image.
- Deleting a Kisekae Tool already set returns items related to it to default states.
- When data stored by default is deleted, it can be downloaded from the site.→P300

Sorting data

You can change the order of data in the list screen.

<Example> Sorting data of My Picture

1    ▶ Select a folder

2   ▶ Set the required items 

- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens of Melody and Kisekai Tool. Select "Sort".
- The orders by item when set by "Ascending" order are shown below. Selectable items vary by data.

Display name : One-byte numeric → one-byte capital letter → one-byte small letter → Hiragana → two-byte Kana → Kanji → Pictogram → two-byte numeric → two-byte capital letter → two-byte small letter → one-byte kana

Saved date & time : Ascending order of date and time

Size : Ascending order of size

Stored in : In the order the files were moved to the album

Originated : Preinstalled → i-mode → Frame/Stamp → Camera → Data transfer

✓INFORMATION

- Display names are sorted in the Unicode order. The sorting order for one-byte or two byte symbols differ vary by types. If one- and two-byte characters are mixed in display names, the sort result may not match the Japanese syllables.
- When data is moved to the album of movie/i-motion or melody for the first time, data is sorted by Stored in.

Memory status

Checking storage space of FOMA terminal

Storage, empty and other spaces are displayed for individual data types. Before downloading data, check the empty space.

1      ▶ Place the cursor on a data type

Infrared communication

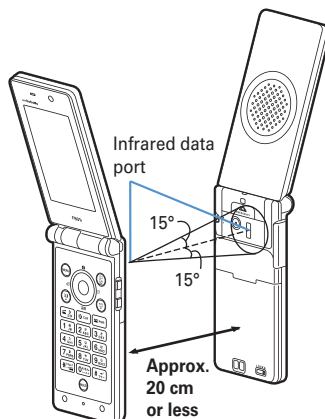
You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs equipped with the infrared communication function. i- α pli compatible with infrared communication is also available.

❖Precautions for use

- Infrared communication cannot be used with packet communication, 64K data communication or data transfer by connecting with PC at the same time.
-  appears at the top of the display and the terminal is in the data transfer mode (same condition as out of service area) during infrared communication or while operating INBOX, the terminal is not available for phone calls, i-mode operation or data communication. Also, you cannot switch to other functions by pressing .
- The infrared communication function of FOMA terminal conforms to IrMC1.1. Even if the other party's terminal conforms to IrMC1.1, some data may not be received/sent depending on the data type.

◆ Using infrared communication

- The maximum communication range for infrared communication is about 20 cm. Keep the FOMA terminal pointing at the other device's infrared data port and do not move it until data sending/receiving completes.
- The infrared ray radiation angle is 15 degrees or less from the center.



✓INFORMATION

- Infrared communication may not be performed properly in areas exposed to direct sunlight or directly under fluorescent lights.

Sending by infrared communication

You can send data individually or collectively by data types.

- The data below can be sent :

Data types	Precaution
Phonebook/ User information	• Images may not be sent depending on the other party's model. • User information is also sent by Send all Ir data. Secret attribute of phonebook group is canceled and individual phonebook entries are sent with secret attribute set. • When Ph.book image sending is "ON" for Data exchange settings, still images of the phonebook entry are also sent.
Schedule	—
Received/sent/ unsent messages	• The attached data in a message (link items to activate i-appli) is deleted.
Note	—
Bookmark	• Folder settings may not be reflected depending on the other party's terminal.
LCS client	—
Image	• A display name with up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters is sent with excessive characters deleted. • Data larger than 500 Kbytes cannot be sent.
Movie/i-motion	
Melody	—

- You cannot send data whose output from FOMA terminal is inhibited (except data with File restriction set to "File restricted" on the local terminal or data in "Data transfer" folder).
- When data is sent to i-mode terminal except F801i or to infrared communication device, items that cannot be saved by the receiver are discarded.
- When data containing pictograms is sent to a terminal except i-mode terminal, the data may not be displayed correctly. If the receiving terminal is an i-mode terminal not supporting Pictogram 2, Pictogram 2 may not be displayed correctly.

Sending single data item

- The device of the other party must be ready for receiving.

<Example> Sending a phonebook entry

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Place the cursor on a phonebook entry and

 8 1 ▶ "Yes"

- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens. Select "Send Ir data" and operate.

✓INFORMATION

- When sending via infrared communication on the User information screen, press . When operating from details screen, press  and select "Send Ir data".

Sending all data items

You can send all data of a selected function.

- The same authentication password must be entered on the sending and receiving sides. Decide a 4-digit authentication password in advance.
- The device of the other party must be ready for receiving.
- Images, movies/i-motion, melodies or User information are not applicable to Send all Ir data.

1  6 2 ▶ 2 1 -
8 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Enter 4-digit authentication password ▶ "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from a folder or data list screen or a calendar or Day view screen of schedule, press  and select "Send all Ir data" or "Send Ir data"→"Send all Ir data".
- When all data items are sent, order of the data may change in the receiver's data folder.

Receiving by infrared communication

You can receive data individually, or collectively by data types.

- The data below can be received :

Data types	Storage location after reception
Phonebook/ User information	Phonebook - If the number of received data is 1, the data is saved in the smallest phonebook number. - If you perform Receive all and overwrite, User information (except My phone number) is also overwritten.
Schedule	Scheduler
Received/sent/ unsent messages	Received/sent/unsent messages The folder name set by the other terminal is not taken over even when receiving all items of message data from F2102V, F2051.
Note	Notepad
Bookmark	Bookmark - Upon reception of all items, the data you receive covers the entire of the folder created by the other terminal. - Data received from terminals except FOMA F series is saved to the top folder.
LCS client	LCS clients list
Image	"Data transfer" folder of My Picture "Deco-mail pict" folder of My Picture for Deco-mail pictogram
Movie/ i-motion	"Data transfer" folder of i-motion
Melody	"Data transfer" folder of Melody

- Images, movies/i-motion or melodies, if any, received from terminals except FOMA F series may be saved as notes.

◆ Receiving single data item

- You cannot receive data larger than 512 Kbytes.

1       or   **"Yes"**  **A data item is sent from the sender side**

Confirm & save : Received data is temporarily saved in INBOX. INBOX appears upon reception completion.

The next procedure→P243 "Saving received data"

Save : Received data is saved in the location specified for data types.

◆ Receiving all data items

Data is received collectively by data types.

- Enter the same authentication password on the sending and receiving sides. Decide a 4-digit authentication password in advance.
- Images, movies/i-motion, melodies or User information are not applicable to Receive all.

1       or 

Confirm & save : Received data is temporarily saved in INBOX.

Overwrite : Received data is overwritten in the FOMA terminal. If selected, deleting confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" and perform authentication operation, and then go to Step 2.

- * Overwriting deletes all existing data in FOMA terminal and writes new data.

2 Enter a 4-digit authentication password **"Yes"** **All data is sent from sender**

- If "Confirm & save" is selected, INBOX appears upon reception completion.
The next procedure→P243 Step 2 in "Saving received data"

✓INFORMATION

- FOMA terminal cannot save data of ToDo (List function for managing entries). When all items of ToDo and schedule data are received, only the schedule data is saved. Be careful that when only entire ToDo data is received with "Overwrite", all the schedules registered in the FOMA terminal are deleted.
- Receiving time differs depending on the type or number of received data items. If you receive large size data or a lot of data items, receiving may take a long time.

◆ Saving received data

You can save received data stored temporarily in INBOX to FOMA terminal.

1

- Icon definitions :

 /  : Single/multiple phonebook entries

 /  : Single/multiple schedule entries

 /  : Single/multiple messages

 /  : Single/multiple notes

 /  : Single/multiple bookmarks

 /  : Single/multiple LCS clients

 : Image data

 : Movie/i-motion

 : Melody

Deleting : Place the cursor on data and  

or 

- When "Delete all" is selected, perform authentication.

2 Select data "Yes"

- Overwriting deletes all existing data in FOMA terminal and write new data.

✓INFORMATION

- Depending on the size of data saved, the maximum number of items that can be received and registered may be fewer than the limit in the FOMA terminal.
- Message data received from equipment that is able to save messages by folder may be saved in the folder for Message i-αpli. Place the cursor on the folder for Message i-αpli and press   to check saved message data.

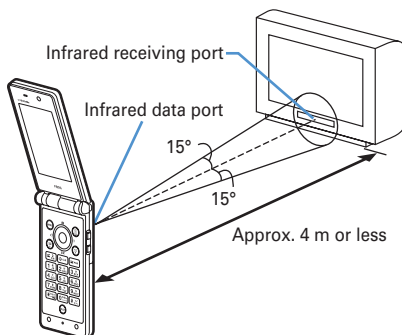
Using infrared remote control function

FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller by downloading i-αpli for infrared remote control.

- Download i-αpli suited for the individual model. Operations differ depending on i-αpli.
- Communication may be influenced depending on the model of the supported device used and ambient luminance.
- Even devices compatible with infrared remote control may not be operated.

◆ Remote control

Perform remote control operation with the infrared data port of FOMA terminal pointed at the infrared receiver of the supported device. Angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and distance is up to approximately 4 m. However, the allowable angle and distance depend on the operated device or ambient luminance.



Setting operations for data exchange

Operations for data exchange via infrared communication or packet communication or 64K data communication or data transfer by connecting with PC can be set.

1 ▶ Set the required items ▶

End alert : Specify if you emit the end tone at the end of communications.

Auto authentication : Specify if you automatically exchange authentication codes with the other party for packet communication or 64K data communication or data transfer by connecting with PC.

- To set "ON", perform authentication and enter 4-8 digit Auth code: Terminal (FOMA terminal) and Auth code: PC (the other party) and press .

Ph.book image sending : Specify if you send image saved in the phonebook along with all items of the phonebook entries.

Sound recorder

Recording voice with Sound recorder

Recorded sound can be saved in an external device as well as in FOMA terminal or attached to i-mode mail to send.

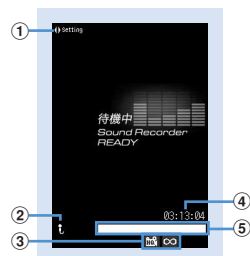
- Data is saved with formats and titles below :
File format : MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method : AMR Extension : 3gp
Title : Recording date/time is automatically set. The file name can be changed. → P238
- Approximate recording times are as given below.
Times vary by the quality and size restriction, etc.

Item	Quality	Size restriction		
		Msg attach: Small (500 Kbytes)	Msg attach: Large (2 Mbytes)	None
Recording time for 1 operation	STD	Approx. 485 sec.	Approx. 33 min.	Approx. 331 min.
	HQ	Approx. 319 sec.	Approx. 21 min.	Approx. 217 min.
Maximum recording time	STD	Approx. 331 min.	Approx. 331 min.	Approx. 331 min.
	HQ	Approx. 217 min.	Approx. 217 min.	Approx. 217 min.

◆ Recording sound

- The sound is recorded from the microphone.
- Record the sound in as quiet place as possible where environmental noise is little.
- A recording confirmation sound (Shutter sound) is emitted even in Silent mode.

1 : Switching still image/movie recording screen



Sound recording screen (stand-by)

① Operation guide of setting for recording

Press to indicate that recording settings are enabled.

② Recording type

Indicate that it is only sound (Sound recorder).

③ Quality and size restriction → P245

④ Counter

Indicate the approximate maximum recording time. While recording, indicate the elapsed and remaining time (approximate).

⑤ Indicator

Indicate the usage rate of the memory. During recording/pausing, indicate the ratio of the recorded sound size to the file size set in Size restrictions.

2

A recording confirmation sound (Shutter sound) is heard, appears on the display and sound recording starts. During recording, the light flashes in red.

- Press to pause recording. appears and the light turns on in green. Press again to start the recording.

3

Recording confirmation sound (Shutter sound) is heard, recording sound is finished.

- If the file size reaches the limit, recording ends and sounds recorded up to that point are saved.
- If  is pressed to end the recording while in pause, the sound recorded up to that point is saved.
- When Auto save in Recording settings is "Yes", the operations of Step 4 and the following steps cannot be performed.

4 Press to play the recorded sound.

Saving immediately : Go to Step 5.

Recording again without saving : 

Attaching to mail :  ▶ "Yes"

- The attached sound is saved in "Taken video" folder of i-motion.

Editing a title :  ▶ 

- You can change within 31 characters.

5

The recorded sound is saved in "Taken video" folder of i-motion.

✓INFORMATION

- If the file size of the recorded sound is larger than 2 Mbytes, the sound cannot be attached to mails.
- Sound recorder can also be started after pressing  and selecting "Switch mode" → "Sound recorder" or after setting the recording type for Recording settings to "Voice only".
- Precautions on using Sound recorder→P131
INFORMATION in "Recording movies with Camera"

Changing record settings

Sound settings such as quality and size limit can be changed.

- Recording settings can also be used for setting.→P131

◆ Setting sound quality

1 On the sound recording screen, ▶ Place the cursor on Quality icon (

- You can also press  to select the icon.

2 to place the cursor on Quality icon and .

The set quality appears by icon.

 **HQ** : Better sound quality but shorter recording time

 **STD** : Standard quality

◆ Limiting file size

1 On the sound recording screen, ▶ Place the cursor on Size Limit icon (

- You can also press  to select the icon.

2 to place the cursor on a size restriction icon and .

The set size limit is indicated by icon.→P135 "During movie recording" of "Restricting file size"

Other Convenient Functions

Multiaccess	Multiaccess	248
Multitask	Multitask	248
Turning power ON/OFF automatically	Auto power ON/OFF	249
Setting the timer with a simple operation	Countdown timer	249
Ringing alarm clock at specified time	Alarm clock	249
Turning power ON automatically at set alarm time	Alarm auto power ON	250
Managing schedule	Scheduler	251
Registering often-used functions	Custom menu	256
Recording your own name	User information	257
Recording voice/image	Voice memo/Movie memo	258
Checking call duration and call cost	Call duration/Call cost	260
Using Calculator	Calculator	261
Creating notes	Notepad	261
Using Dictionaries	Dictionaries	263
Playing by pressing key	Play function	263
Using the earphone/microphone with switch	Earphone/microphone with switch	263
Shortening start time after power-ON	Quick start-up	265
Confirming current settings of functions	Confirm	265
Resetting functions	Reset	265
Deleting registered data all at once	Delete all data	266

Multiaccess

Multiaccess is the function that allows you to use 3 functions; voice call, packet communication and short message (SMS) simultaneously.

- The icon indicating the function in progress appears on the task area.
- The functions below are available simultaneously :
 - Voice call : 1 communication
 - i-mode, i-appli, i-mode mail, packet communication connected with PC : 1 communication of these
 - SMS : 1 communication
- You are charged separately for each communication when using the Multiaccess function.
- Combination of Multiaccess functions→P315

◆ Main operations available with Multiaccess

❖ Receiving voice call during communication

<Example> Answering a voice call during i-mode

1 A call is received during an i-mode ▶

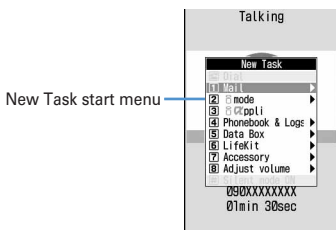
The call is connected.

- Press  to end the current function on the display.

❖ Performing another communication during communication

<Example> Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

1 During a voice call, ▶



- You can talk while displaying the site screen.
- Press  to end the current function on the display.

<Example> Sending i-mode mail during a voice call

1 During a voice call, ▶ ▶ Send i-mode mail

- You can talk while displaying the mail creation screen.
- Press  to end the current function on the display.

Multitask

Multitask allows you to execute multiple functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen.

- The icon indicating the function in progress appears on the task area.
- Up to 2 functions can be executed at the same time. You may start Dial, User information or Silent mode ON/OFF function even with multiple functions active.
- Combination of Multitask functions→P316

◆ Executing new function

During talking or communications, another function can be executed.

<Example> Saving schedule during a call

1 During a call, ▶ ▶ Save schedule

- You can talk while displaying the schedule screen.
- Press  to end the current function on the display.

✓INFORMATION

- If many functions are executed at a time (e.g. a mail automatically received during playing movie or camera operation), the movements displayed on the screen may not appear smoothly or the sound may be distorted during play.

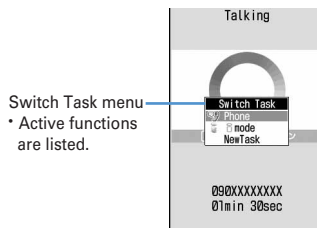
◆ Switching tasks to operate

Displaying the Switch Task menu allows you to operate while switching screens.

- Some items in the Switch Task menu may be displayed differently from the item names on the main menu.

<Example> Switching from voice call screen to site screen

1 During a voice call, ▶ "i-mode"



- To return to the talking screen, press  and select "Phone".

- You can start a new function by pressing on the Switch Task menu to display the New Task start menu. Press again to return to the Switch Task menu.

◆ Exiting all running functions

1 In Multitask, ► "Yes"

Auto power ON/OFF

Turning power ON/OFF automatically

The power can be automatically turned ON/OFF at the specified time.

<Example> Turning power ON automatically

1 ►

Turning power OFF automatically :

► ► Authenticator

2 Set the required items ►

Auto power ON : Set if you automatically turn the power ON.

Time : Enter a time to turn the power ON.

Repeat : Set a repeating operation.

✓INFORMATION

- Even when Auto power OFF is "ON", when the specified time arrives while FOMA terminal is in any mode except stand-by, the power is not turned OFF. The power is turned OFF after exiting the currently active function.
- In addition to turning the FOMA terminal OFF, keep Auto power ON set to "OFF" in areas where use of a mobile phone is prohibited, such as in airplanes, medical facilities or hospitals.

Countdown timer

Setting the timer with a simple operation

MENU 76

On the stand-by display, you can enter and set the time (minutes) to elapse before the timer sounds.

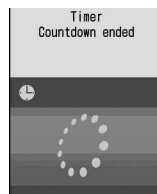
1 Enter a time (minutes) ►

The countdown starts.

- The time is entered between 1 and 60 minutes.
- Even when the FOMA terminal is folded, countdown is continued.
- When or is pressed during the countdown, a screen appears for confirming the end.

◆ When the specified time has elapsed

The next screen appears on the display, the timer starts sounding at a Alarm clock sound set in Adjust volume, and the sub-display section and light blink. Also, the vibrator operates according to Alarm clock of Vibrate alert/effect.



- Press to stop the timer.
- When no operation is carried out for approx. 1 minute or any key except and is pressed, the timer stops.

✓INFORMATION

- When the specified time arrives during a call, a warning sound is emitted and a screen showing a stopped timer appears.
- If the specified time arrives in the cases below, the alarm starts sounding after the operations or actions are completed.
 - While making/receiving/calling/disconnecting a call
 - During transmission/reception of 64K data communications
 - In data transfer mode
 - Infrared remote control function in operation

Alarm clock

Ringing alarm clock at specified time

- Up to 9 alarm clocks can be set.

1 ► ► -

Setting/canceling the timed theme : Place the cursor on the title and

- appears at the left of the time for the set alarm clock.

2 Set the required items.

Time : Enter the time to sound an alarm clock.

Repeat : Set a repeating operation.

- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of week and press .

Title : Set the title of the alarm clock.

- Up to 7 two-byte (14 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Snooze : Set whether to repeat Snooze operation (sounding continues approx. 1 minute and stops 4 minutes) for approx. 30 minutes.

3 to switch to Set sound screen ▶ Set the required items

Alarm sound : Set sound.

- When selecting "i-motion" or "Melody", select alarm clock sound.
- If you set "Phone setting", it depends on the alarm clock sound of Ring alerts & Sounds.

Volume : Set the volume.

- If you set "Phone setting", it depends on Alarm clock sound of Adjust volume.

4 to switch to Set others screen ▶ Set the required items

Vibrate alert : Set vibration.

- Setting "Phone setting" applies to Alarm clock in Vibrate alert/effect.

Light pattern : Set the lighting pattern of the light.

- When "Sync melody" is set, Light color operates in "Rainbow".

Light color : Set the lighting color of the light.

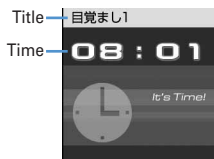
5

- When alarm clock is set,  or  (when a schedule reminder is also set) appears on the stand-by display.

❖ When the specified time arrives

The screen below appears on the display and the settings apply to the operation.

- When the FOMA terminal is closed → P31



- Press  to stop the alarm clock.
- When no operation is carried out for approx. 1 minute or any key except  and  is pressed, the alarm clock stops or Snooze operation starts.
- While alarm clock is stopped with Snooze operation activated, "スヌーズ中 Snooze" appears on the display.
- While alarm clock is stopped, press **(CLR)** or  to deactivate it. While alarm clock is stopped with Snooze operation activated, press  to deactivate.

✓ INFORMATION

- With movie/i-motion set for Alarm clock sound, movie/i-motion appears on the screen when the alarm clock operates.
- If alarm clock and a schedule reminder are set for the same date and time, the alarm clock sounds, succeeded by notification of the schedule reminder. When  is pressed, the schedule reminder ends, but the alarm clock stops or Snooze operation is performed.
- When the specified time arrives during a call, a warning sound is emitted and an alarm clock screen appears.
- When the specified time arrives in the cases below, the alarm clock is activated after the operations or actions are completed :
 - While making/receiving/calling/disconnecting a call
 - During transmission/reception of 64K data communications
 - When Silent alarm is ON
 - In data transfer mode
 - Infrared remote control function in operation
 - When safety alarm is ON

Alarm auto power ON

Turning power ON automatically at set alarm time

You can set whether to automatically turn the power ON to activate the alarm if the power is OFF when the date and time specified for the alarm clock or schedule arrive.

1  ▶ **(8)** **(7)** **(1)** **(5)** ▶ **(1)** or **(2)**

✓ INFORMATION

- This function does not operate if power supply to FOMA terminal is stopped in a way except power OFF operation or Auto power OFF settings, (e.g. by removing the battery pack).
- In addition to turning the FOMA terminal OFF, keep this function set to "OFF" in areas where use of a mobile phone is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities or airplanes.

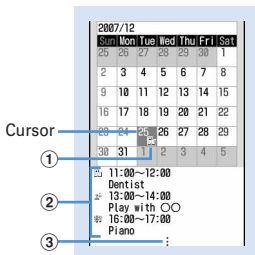
Managing schedule

You can save various schedules. At the specified time, you are notified with the display and/or alarm.

◆ Displaying calendar

MENU 71

1 (1 sec. or more)



Calendar screen

The current day appears in yellow or pink, Saturdays in blue or light blue, and days off and holidays in red, etc.

- While displaying a calendar screen, the operations below are enabled :

⊗ : Move date

⊙ : Day view screen

⏮ / ⏭ : Switching previous/next month

- Reading the screen is described below :

① Item icon

- For a date with multiple schedules set, the schedule item icon set for the earliest hour is indicated.

② List of schedules set for the date at cursor position

- Reading the list is in the same way as Day view screen (→P253).

③ Indicates 4 or more schedules

Specifying a particular date to display (Move date) :

⏮ 4 2 ▶ Enter a date

- Press ⏮ 4 1 to restore the current date.
- When operating from the Day view screen, press ⏮ 5 2. Press ⏮ 5 1 to restore the current date.

✓ INFORMATION

- The calendar can display dates between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2060.
- The displayed color may differ depends on the settings of Style theme and Color scheme.
- Holidays in the calendar are based on the "Law for amendment of laws related to national holidays and a part of old-age person's welfare law (for those until 2005; Law No. 43)". In addition, Vernal Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day are announced in the gazette released on February 1 in the previous year and they may differ from the calendar display (as of November, 2007). Note that, though the above law is in effect from January, 2007, some of national and substitute public holidays on or before the end of 2006 are displayed based on the amended law.

◆ Setting display style for calendar <Calendar view mode>

- By default, Scroll mode is "Monthly mode" and Week display mode is "Sunday start".

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ ⏮ 6 1 ▶ Set the required items ▶ ⊗

Scroll mode : Set a calendar display style of the date moved by pressing ⊗.

- Set "Monthly mode" to switch the display by month. Set "Slide mode" to scroll and switch the display by week.

Week display mode : Set the first day of the week (Leftmost position).

◆ Setting days off <Days off>

- Up to 30 days off can be registered.

<Example> Setting by specifying the date

1 (1 sec. or more)

2 Place the cursor on a date and

⏮ 6 2 1

The date specified is highlighted on the calendar screen.

- Press ⏮ 6 2 2 to set day off to be repeated yearly.

Canceling : Place the cursor on a date and

⏮ 6 2 ▶ 3 or 4

Setting by specifying the day of the week :

① ⏮ 6 3 ▶ Select a day of week

- When a day of week other than Sunday is selected, press ⏮ to restore to the default.

② ⊗

◆ Setting holiday <Holiday settings>

- Up to 5 holidays can be saved newly.
- The default holiday cannot be deleted.

1  (1 sec. or more) ►  ► 6 4

2 

Changing : Select a holiday ► Go to Step 3

Deleting : Place the cursor on a holiday and

 ► "Yes"

3 **Set the required items** ► 

Holiday : Enter a holiday name.

- Up to 11 two-byte (22 one-byte) characters can be entered.
- Holiday names set by default cannot be changed.

Mark on calendar : Select if you display holidays.

- When "ON", the dates set as holidays are highlighted on the calendar screen. When the cursor is placed on one of holidays, a holiday name appears at the top of the calendar screen. On the Day view screen,  and the holiday name appear.

Date : Enter a date to set as holiday.

- Select "Change" and enter a date to change a default holiday.

◆ Saving schedules

- You can save multiple schedules for the same day.
- Maximum number of recorded items→P335

1  (1 sec. or more) ► Place the cursor on a date and 

- When operating from the Day view screen, press .

2 **Set the required items.**

 (Item icon) : Select an item icon.

Schedule (Content entry field) : The schedule content entered for the selected item icon appears.

- Up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters can be entered.

All day : To set the all day schedule without specifying the hour, select "ON".

Start time : Enter a start date/time.

End time : Enter an end date/time.

- When the set date is later than the start date/time,  appears in the upper right corner of the set date on the calendar screen. And,  appears below the individual item icons of the schedule list of the calendar screen, Day view screen or schedule details screen (Long-term schedule).

Note : Enter details, etc.

- Up to 300 two-byte (600 one-byte) characters can be entered.

3  to switch to the Select members screen ► "<Select member list>" ► Select a member from the phonebook

- Up to 5 members can be saved.
- To delete a member, place the cursor on that member and press .

4  to switch to Reminder screen ► Set the required items

Alarm on time (Schedule reminder) : To set a reminder, select "Yes" and select an alarm sound.

- When selecting "i-motion" or "Melody", select alarm sound.
- If you set "Phone setting", it depends on the Schedule reminder of Ring alerts & Sounds.

Alarm in advance : Select "Yes" to sound Alarm in advance before the start date/time.

- The selection method is the same as for Alarm on time.

Alarm before time : Set a time to start Alarm in advance with a number of minutes before the start date/time.

5  to switch to Other settings screen ► Set the required items

Repeat : Set a repeating operation.

- When a "31st" day or "February 29" in a leap year is set as the starting date and "Every month" or "Every year" is selected in the repeat setting, the schedule is repeated on the last day of the same year/month instead of the specified date (that is, "30th" or "Feb. 28").
- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of week and press .
- When Repeat is set,  appears in the upper-right corner of the set date on the calendar screen. And,  appears below the item icon on the schedule list of the calendar screen, Day view screen or schedule details screen (Repeat schedule).

Image : To change the schedule reminder screen, select "Yes", select "Image" and select the image.

- Flash graphics cannot be set.

6 

- When a schedule that sets Alarm on time and Alarm in advance is saved,  or  (when Alarm clock is also set) appears on the stand-by display.

❖ Saving schedules from stand-by display <Quick schedule>

You can save a schedule by a simple key operation on the stand-by display without displaying the calendar screen.

1 Enter date/time in 8-digit number ▶

The Main (New) screen of schedule appears.

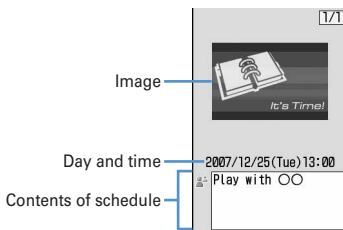
- For 08:01 on December 25, enter
.
- When 4 digits (2 digits for hour and 2 digits for minute) are entered, the Main (New) screen for the current day (or the next day if the entered time is the one before the current time) appears.

The next procedure→P252 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

❖ When the specified date and time arrives

The next screen appears on the display and the alarm sounds at Schedule reminder set in Adjust volume. Actions are taken according to Schedule reminder in Vibrate alert/effect or Call in Light alert.

- When the FOMA terminal is closed→P31



- Press  to stop the alarm.
- When no operation is carried out for approx. 1 minute or any key except  and  is pressed, the alarm stops.
- While the alarm is stopped, press  to display the schedule details screen.

✓INFORMATION

- The schedule with All day set to "ON" operates the schedule reminder at 0 o'clock on the specified day.
- With movie/i-motion set for schedule reminder, movie/i-motion appears on the screen when the schedule reminder operates.
- When multiple schedule reminders are set for the same date and time, the contents of other schedules can be checked by pressing  after stopping the alarm.
- If a schedule reminder and alarm clock are set for the same date and time, the alarm clock sounds, succeeded by notification of the schedule reminder.
- When the specified date and time arrives during a call, a warning sound is emitted and the schedule reminder screen appears.

- When the specified date and time arrives in the cases below, the alarm is activated after the operations or actions are completed.
 - While making/receiving/calling/disconnecting a call
 - During transmission/reception of 64K data communications
 - When Silent alarm is ON
 - In data transfer mode
 - Infrared remote control function in operation
 - When safety alarm is ON

◆ Setting default value for schedule reminder <Reminder option>

You can change the default values for the schedule reminder of a new schedule.

- By default, Set by scheduler and Set by quick-schedule is set to "Alarm:Yes".
- It gives no influence to the settings of registered schedules.

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ 6 5 ▶ Set the required items ▶

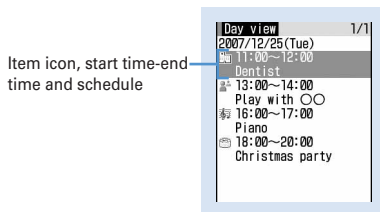
Set by scheduler : Set default values for saving a schedule from the calendar screen.

Set by quick-schedule : Set default values for saving a schedule from the stand-by display.

◆ Checking and changing saved schedule

<Example> Checking schedules

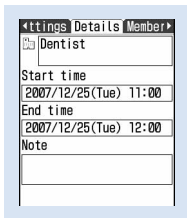
1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select the saved schedule day



Day view screen

- Press  to switch the date.

2 Select a schedule.



Schedule details screen

Changing : Place the cursor on a schedule and

- Press **MENU** **▶** **2**
- When operating from the schedule details screen, press **⏏**.

The next procedure → P252 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

Displaying after specifying an item (Display by type mode) :

- 1 **MENU** **▶** **4** **2**
 - Press **MENU** **4** **1** to restore the display.
 - When operating from the calendar screen, press **MENU** **3** **2**. Press **MENU** **3** **1** to restore the display.

② Select an item icon.

The selected item icon appears in the upper-right corner of the calendar or the Day view screen and only the schedule for the item icon appears.

✓INFORMATION

- If the displayed schedule data contains phone numbers, mail addresses or URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To or Web To functions can be used.

❖ Copying and pasting a schedule

- Of the copied schedules, only the latest one remains recorded until the Scheduler is ended, allowing to paste to other days any number of times.

1 **⏏** (1 sec. or more) **▶** **Select the saved schedule day ▶ Place the cursor on the schedule and** **MENU** **▶** **6** **1**

2 **CLR** **▶** **Place the cursor on the date to paste and** **MENU** **▶** **5**

- When operating from Day view screen, press **MENU** **6** **2**.

❖ Operating i-mode mail from schedule

❖ Creating mail

You can automatically enter a schedule to message text or attach it as a schedule data item.

- Schedules are entered to a mail text in the Date To format. → P262

<Example> Entering a schedule from Day view screen

1 **⏏** (1 sec. or more) **▶** **Select the saved schedule day**

2 **Place the cursor on a schedule and** **ⓧ**.

- Press **MENU** **7** **1** **2** to enter all of the schedule saved for the selected date.
- Press **MENU** **7** **1** **3** to enter all the schedule saved at the same time.
- When operating from the calendar screen, press **MENU** **8** **1** and press **1** or **2**.
- When operating from the schedule details screen, press **ⓧ**.

Attaching : Place the cursor on a schedule and

- MENU** **▶** **7** **1** **4**
- When operating from the schedule details screen, press **MENU** **4** **2**.

❖ Searching for mail

<Example> Searching from calendar screen

1 **⏏** (1 sec. or more) **▶** **Place the cursor on the date and** **MENU** **▶** **8** **2** **▶** **1** or **2**

- When operating from the Day view screen, press **MENU** **7** **2** and press **1** or **2**.

✓INFORMATION

- When the schedule to be entered reaches the maximum limit of characters for the message text, the excessive part is deleted.
- In Display by type mode, only the displayed items can be entered into the message text.

◆ Deleting schedules

<Example> Deleting from the Day view screen

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select the saved schedule day ▶ ▶ 3 ▶ 1 - 4 ▶ "Yes"

- When "Delete all" is selected, perform authentication.
- When operating from the calendar screen, press 2 and press 1 - 3.
- When operating from the schedule details screen, press 3.

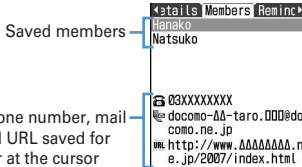
✓INFORMATION

- When a long-term schedule including the selected date is saved and "One day" or "Before date" is selected, a screen for confirming to delete the long term schedule appears.
- In Display by type mode, only the displayed items can be deleted.

◆ Using member lists

You can make voice calls and create mails by selecting a member list.

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select the saved schedule day ▶ Select a schedule ▶ to display the Members screen



The first phone number, mail address and URL saved for the member at the cursor

2 Place the cursor on a member and perform the necessary operation.

Making calls : or

- To make a call specifying conditions, press 4 .→P52

Creating an i-mode mail :

The mail address is set for the receiver and the schedule is entered in the message in the Date To format.

- Press 5 2 to send i-mode mail to all members.

Displaying a site : ▶ 6

✓INFORMATION

- To use the second or subsequent phone number or mail address registered in a phonebook, select a member from the Members screen and display the target phone number or mail address from the phonebook details screen. However, if i-mode mail is created from the phonebook details screen, the schedule is not entered in the message text.

◆ Protecting secret schedules <Secret attribute>

Set secret attribute to a schedule. In Privacy mode ("Hide set schedule" set for Schedule), the schedule with secret attribute does not appear.

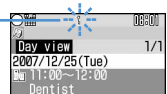
- Setting Privacy mode→P111

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select the saved schedule day

2 Place the cursor on the schedule and

▶ 9

When secret attribute is set for the schedule at the cursor position, blinks.



- To cancel the secret attribute, place the cursor on the schedule and press 9.
- When operating from the schedule details screen, press 6.

◆ Checking number of saved schedule items <No. of items>

You can check the numbers of Schedule data and Set day off.

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ ▶ 7

Registering often-used functions

MENU 8232

You can register frequently used functions and make your own menu.

- One of functions saved in the first level of Custom menu can be activated by pressing and holding the related key (**1**-**9**) for 1 second or more on the stand-by display. However, a menu with lower level functions, person or group saved cannot be activated.

◆ Reading template

You can read any of 4 types of templates and set custom menus.

1 **MENU** ▶ **□** **MENU** ▶ **7** **1** ▶ **1**-**4**

My menu : Open/close, Image/i-appli, New announcement, Style theme, Time schedule, Dictionaries, Calculator, Position location

Safety option menu : Safety options, Security code, Password, Request permit/deny, Keypad dial lock, Unregistered caller

Customize : Style theme, Image/i-appli, New announcement, Open/close, Light alert, Operation sound, Font size, Font style, DL dictionary

User data : Bookmark, Screen memo, Scheduler, Notepad, Alarm clock, Save word, Save phrase, Ans.Machine&Voice memo

2 Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

- If all the menu items in the custom menu have been deleted, the template is loaded after performing authentication.

◆ Creating custom menu

- Up to 9 menu items can be registered in a level of Custom menu.

1 **MENU** ▶ **□**

2 Register the menu item.

Adding a person to item : **MENU** ▶ **1** **1** ▶ **Select a person from phonebook**

- The image (except Flash graphics and movies/i-motion) or character icon registered in the phonebook appears on the menu screen.

Adding a function to item :

1 **MENU** ▶ **1** **2**



Function selection screen

- The function selection screen appears according to Normal in Menu setting. If Normal is set to "Animation", "シンプル (Simple)" or "Kisekæ Tool", the function selection screen appears as "Tile display".

2 **Place the cursor on a menu item and** **□**.

- A menu item without lower levels can be registered also by selecting the menu item.

Adding a group to item :

1 **MENU** ▶ **1** **3** ▶ **Enter the group name**

- Up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters can be entered.

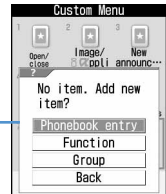
2 **□**

Adding to a group :

The custom menu can have up to 3 levels. No groups can be added to the third level.

1 **Select a group.**

- When no menu items have been added to the group, the item selection screen appears.



Item selection screen

2 **MENU** ▶ **1** ▶ **1**-**3** ▶ **Perform adding operation**

Replacing menu item : **Place the cursor on a menu**

item to replace and **MENU** ▶ **2** ▶ **1**-

3 ▶ **Perform registering operation**

- When replacing a group, a screen for confirming the overwrite appears.

◆ Using custom menu

You can execute a function or make a call to a person.

- Shortcut operations are also available while custom menu is used. Shortcut operations when the custom menu is used depend on Active shortcut in Menu setting. →P88

1 ▶ Select a menu item

- When a function is selected, the function is activated or menu items in lower levels appear.
- When a person is selected, the registered phonebook data becomes available. →P257 Step 2 in "Using person"
- When a group is selected, the menu items registered in the group are displayed.

❖ Using person

1

2 Place the cursor on a person and perform the necessary operation.

Making calls :  or 

- To make a call specifying conditions, select a person and press . →P52
- When 2 or more phone numbers are saved, select a phone number to use from the phonebook details screen.

Creating an i-mode mail : 

- When 2 or more mail addresses are saved, select a mail address to use from the phonebook details screen.

Creating SMS :  (1 sec. or more)

- When 2 or more phone numbers are saved, select a phone number to use from the phonebook details screen.

Displaying a site : Select a person ▶ 

Display detail information : Select a person ▶ 

◆ Editing custom menu

The menu item arrangement, icons and group names can be changed or menu items can be deleted on custom menu.

1

2 Place the cursor on a menu item and perform the necessary operation.

Replacing menu items :  ▶  ▶ Select the destination menu item ▶ "Yes"

Changing an icon :   ▶ Select an icon

- Press    to restore the icon.

Renaming a group :   ▶ rename a group ▶ 

Deleting a menu item :   ▶ "Yes"

◆ Resetting custom menu

1 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

- After all the saved information has been deleted, pressing  displays the item selection screen.

User information

Recording your own name

MENU 48

In addition to the phone number, you can also record your name and mail addresses.

1

- For My phone number, the subscribing terminal phone number appears.

2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set the required items ▶

- Setting items →P67 Step 2 and the following steps in "Adding entries into FOMA terminal phonebook" (None of phonebook number or group can be set.)
- My phone number appears in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.

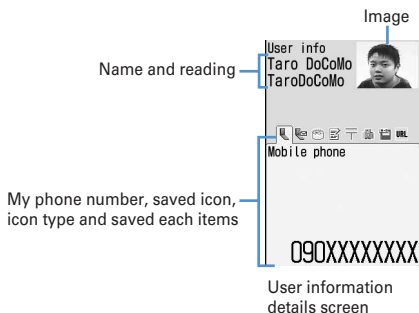
✓INFORMATION

- My phone number is registered to UIM and other items to the FOMA terminal.
- Changing the mail address in User information does not change your i-mode mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode mail address does not change the mail address in User information.

◆ Checking user information details

1 (MENU) ▶ 0 ▶ ● ▶ Authenticate

- Each time you press ●, the details screen is switched.
- When the registered phone number has Caller ID settings, ! appears in the top of the details screen.



Displaying user information : (MENU) ▶ 8 ▶ 1

The phone number, mail address, etc. of the first entry appear.

Switching details screen display :

(MENU) ▶ 8 ▶ 2 ▶ 1 - 3

Setting items → P71 "Switching details screen display"

Editing the recorded data : (MENU) ▶ 2 ▶ Edit and



Resetting the recorded data : (MENU) ▶ 3 ▶ "Yes"

◆ Using user information details

You can make a call or create mail from the user information details screen.

1 (MENU) ▶ 0 ▶ ● ▶ Authenticate

2 Perform necessary operation.

Making call : Display phone number detail screen ▶ (CALL) or (CALL)

- Pressing ● also makes a call.
- Calls cannot be made to My phone number.
- To make a call specifying conditions, press (MENU) 4. → P52

Setting caller ID : Display phone number detail screen ▶ (MENU) ▶ 7 ▶ 1 ▶ 1 - 3

Creating i-mode mail : Display mail address detail screen ▶ (MAIL) or ●

- To change the mail address order, press (MENU) 7 ▶ 2 and select a mail address to be set as the first one.
- To create SMS, display the phone number detail screen and press (SMS).

Displaying a site : Display the URL detail screen ▶ ●

Copying the recorded data : (MENU) ▶ 5 ▶ 1 - 8

- The first registered phone number or mail address is copied. To copy the second or subsequent item, display the detail screen for it, press (MENU) 5 and press 2 or 3.

Using location information : Display the location information detail screen ▶ ●

The next procedure → P213 "■ Use location info menu"

Voice memo/Movie memo

Recording voice/image

You can record voice or images while talking over a call or in stand-by mode.

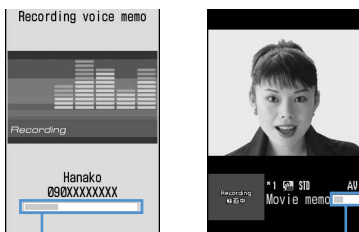
- Up to 4 voice memo while talking or voice memo in stand-by can be recorded in total, with up to 30 seconds for each memo.
- Movie memos up to 30 seconds each can be recorded.
- Some messages such as out of service area notice or number change information may not be recorded.
- The recording of the voice memo while talking or movie memo may be distorted or the image may be blurred if the signal quality is poor.

◆ Recording voice/image of the other party while talking

MENU 464

1 During a call, [] (1 sec. or more).

Recording starts.



Voice memo during voice call

Movie memo during videophone call

- During movie memo recording, the image is sent to the other party according to the settings of Movie memo image in Image setting (Videophone image).
- During movie memo recording, pressing [] switches display between lapse of the recording time and call duration.
- When the remaining time becomes about 5 seconds, 2 short beeps noticing the end of recording sound. A long beep sounds at the end of recording.
- To stop in the middle of recording, press and hold [] for 1 second or more.
- Movie memo is saved in "Taken video" folder of i-motion.

◆ Recording your own voice during stand-by

MENU 463

- Operate FOMA terminal in open state.

1 [] (1 sec. or more) ▶ [3]

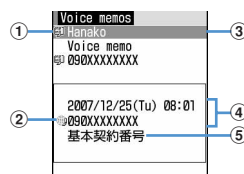
After about 3 seconds, a long beep sounds and recording starts.

- During recording, elapsed recording time appears in the bottom of the screen.
- When the remaining time becomes about 5 seconds, 2 short beeps noticing the end of recording sound. A long beep sounds at the end of recording.
- Press any of [], [CLR] or [] to stop in the middle of recording.

◆ Playing voice memos

- Operate FOMA terminal in open state.

1 [] (1 sec. or more) ▶ [4]



① Status icon

[] : Voice memo while talking

No icon : Voice memo in stand-by

② Voice memo while talking icon appearing in international call

③ Phone number* /name (if saved in the phonebook)/reason for hiding caller ID/Voice memo (Voice memo in stand-by)

④ Recording date/time of item at cursor position, phone number* /reason for hiding caller ID/Voice memo (Voice memo in stand-by)

⑤ Multi number name of outgoing/incoming call (when subscribing to Multi number)

* For international call, "+" appears before phone number.

2 Select voice memo.

- During playing, elapsed playing time appears in the bottom of the screen.
- During playing, the operations below are enabled :

[] : Adjust volume

[] : Stop

[] : Switch the speakerphone function ON/OFF

Deleting : Place the cursor on a voice memo and

[MENU] ▶ [2] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ "Yes"

- When "Delete all" is selected, perform authentication.

Making call : Place the cursor on the voice memo while talking and [] or []

- To make a call specifying conditions, press

[MENU] [3] → P52

Adding a phone number to the phonebook :

- ① Place the cursor on the voice memo while talking and [MENU] ▶ [4] or [5] ▶ [1] or [2]
 - When adding data to existing phonebook entry, select the phonebook entry.
- ② Save the name, phone number, etc.
Phonebook new entry → P67, 68

3 Select if you delete the voice memo.

Checking call duration and call cost

Last and total call durations and costs for voice and videophone calls can be checked.

- The call durations are displayed individually for voice calls, videophone calls and 64K data communication, counting both outgoing and incoming calls.
- Call costs are only counted for outgoing calls. However "0 YEN" or "***** YEN" appears when a call is made to toll free numbers such as Free-dial or to Directory assistance (104).
- Because the call costs are stored on the UIM, the stored total calls cost appears (totaling from December, 2004) when the UIM is replaced.
 - * For FOMA terminals before 901i series, the call costs are stored on the UIM, but they cannot be displayed.
- The call durations and costs displayed are approximate values and may be different from the actual durations and costs.
- The call costs displayed do not include consumption tax.

Checking call duration

1     

- If the total duration of calls was reset in the past, the total duration from that point appears.

Last call : Duration of last incoming/outgoing voice call, videophone or data session

Total voice calls : The total duration of voice calls made

Total videophone calls : The total duration of videophone calls made

Total data sessions : The total duration of data communication established

Reset:day&time(Voice) : Last date and time the total duration of voice calls was reset

Reset:day&time(VP) : Last date and time the total duration of videophone calls was reset

Reset:day&time(Data) : Last date and time the total duration of data communications was reset

Resetting total calls : On the call duration check screen,   -   "Yes"

- To return to the call duration check screen, press .

Checking call cost

1      

- If there is no last call cost information, "***** YEN" appears.
- If the total cost of calls was reset in the past, the total cost from that point is displayed.

Last call cost: Voice : Charge for the previous voice call

Last call cost: VP : Charge for the previous videophone call

Last call cost: Data : Charge for the previous data session

Total calls cost : The total cost of voice or videophone calls or data communication

Reset: day & time : Last date and time Total calls cost was reset

Resetting total calls cost : On the call cost check screen,   Enter the PIN2 code  "Yes"

Automatically resetting Total calls cost <Reset call cost>

You can set if you automatically reset Total calls cost at 0:00 on the first day of every month.

1      

Authenticate  or  Enter PIN2 code

✓INFORMATION

- The duration of received calls or that for calling the other party is not counted.
- Transmission charge for Chaku-moji messages is not counted.
- For i-mode and packet communications, the communication durations or costs are not counted. For the procedure for confirming i-mode fees, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- The international call fee for using WORLD CALL is counted. It is not counted for using other international call service.
- When the FOMA terminal is turned OFF, Last call cost appears as "***** YEN".
- When last or total duration for the voice or videophone call or data communication has exceeded 9,999 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds, counting restarts from 0 second.
- When switching voice and videophone calls is made during talking, the last call cost shows the total charge for each of voice and videophone calls. No call cost is charged while switching.
- Even with Reset call cost set to "ON", the call cost is reset after the terminal is turned ON or ending the call if the power is OFF or a call is being made at 0:00 on the first day of the month.
- With Reset call cost set to "ON", the call cost is immediately reset when a date and time in the next or subsequent month are set in Date & time.

- With Reset call cost set to "ON", PIN2 code is required when turning the power ON or authentication is required when performing Date & time.
- With Reset call cost set to "ON", the settings are canceled when FOMA terminal is turned ON with different UIM inserted from one used when making the settings.

◆ Notifying call cost upper limit <Call cost limit>

When Total calls cost has exceeded the set limit, it is notified with an alarm and/or icon display, etc.

1 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Set the required items** ▶

Alert : Set if you notify that the upper limit has been exceeded.

Limit : Enter the upper limit cost in the range of 10 yen-100,000 yen omitting the one's place.

Alert method : Set to use both an alarm and icon or only an icon for notification.

Alert sound : Select a sound to be notified.

Alert time : Set the period of time to sound the alarm in the range of 1-60 seconds.

◆ When the call cost has exceeded the limit

- When the set limit cost is exceeded during a call or communications, ¥ appears at the top of the display.
- When the stand-by display reappears after completion of a call or communications exceeding the set limit cost with "Sound + icon display" set for Alert method, an alarm sounds and message "Call cost reached limit." appears on the display. However, the alarm does not sound when FOMA terminal is being folded during call or communications or when the call is terminated with FOMA terminal folded.
- The alarm depends on Call alert volume of Adjust volume.

◆ Hiding call cost icon <Hide call cost icon>

1 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"Yes"**

✓INFORMATION

- Even with "Sound + icon display" set for Alert method, the alarm does not sound or no messages appear when a call exceeding the call cost limit is made at 0:00 on the first day of the month with Reset call cost set to "ON".

Calculator

Using Calculator

You can perform addition, subtraction, multiplication and division (+, -, ×, ÷) calculation on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 8 digits can be entered.
- You can use the calculator from the entry fields of Scheduler or Notepad and quote the calculation result. →P272

1 ▶ **Make a calculation**

Functions assigned to FOMA terminal keys appear on the calculator screen.

  : Enter digits

    : Enter +, -, ×, and ÷

 : Enter = (Executing calculation)

 : Enter a decimal point

 : Switch + and - of entered numbers

 : Delete one digit from the number entered

 : Delete an entered number or calculation result

Copying a calculation result :  

- To paste the copied number, press  .
- Of the copied numbers, only the latest one remains recorded until the terminal is turned OFF, allowing to paste to other locations any number of times.

✓INFORMATION

- An error is generated and "E" appears when the integral part of the calculation result exceeds 8 digits or a divide-by-zero occurs. When the number including a decimal point exceeds 8 digits, any decimals that do not fit in the display are rounded off.

Notepad

Creating notes

You can enter important information or notes in Notepad.

- Maximum number of recorded items→P335

1 ▶

- When operating from the Display notepad screen, press  .

2 **Set the required items** ▶

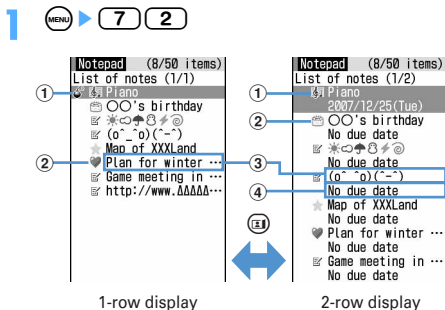
Catg icons : Select the category icon.

Note content : Enter notes.

- Up to 1,000 two-byte (2,000 one-byte) characters can be entered.

Due date : To set an expiration date, select "ON" and enter a date.

◆ Checking notes



① Status icon

Indicate expiration status of a note (Completed/Uncompleted)

☐ : Uncompleted (2 or more days before expiration)

☐ : Uncompleted (1 day before expiration or expiration date)

☐ : Uncompleted (Past expiration)

☐ : Completed

No icon : No expiration

② Category icon

③ Note content

④ Due date

2 Select note.

Display notepad screen appears.

- If Note content includes phone numbers, mail addresses and URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.

Specifying category icon to display (List by category mode) : **MENU** ▶ **4** ▶ **2** ▶ **Select a category icon**

The selected category icon appears in the upper-right corner of List of notes and only the note for that item icon appears.

- Press **MENU** **4** **1** to restore the display.

Specifying Completed/Uncompleted to display (List by status) : **MENU** ▶ **5** ▶ **2** or **3**

The completed note list or uncompleted note list appears.

- Press **MENU** **5** **1** to restore the display.

Changing Completed/Uncompleted : Place the cursor on a note with expiration set and **MENU**.

- When operating from the Display notepad screen, press **MENU** **4**.

Sorting notes : **MENU** ▶ **6** ▶ **Set the required items** ▶ **□**

By : Select a sort type.

Order : Select sorting order.

Creating an i-mode mail : Place the cursor on a note and **MENU** ▶ **7**

- When operating from the Display notepad screen, press **MENU** **5**.

Changing a note : Place the cursor on the note and **MENU** ▶ **2**

- When operating from the Display notepad screen, press **□**.

The next procedure → P261 Step 2 in "Creating notes"

◆ Saving schedule from notes

- Data of note of 300 two-byte (600 one-byte) characters are reflected to Scheduler.

❖ Saving to schedule from submenu

1 **MENU** ▶ **7** ▶ **2** ▶ **Place the cursor on a note and** **MENU** ▶ **8**

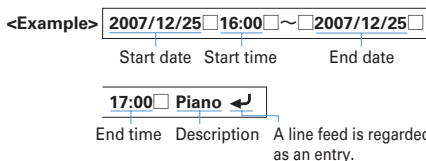
A screen with note contents entered to the Note field of Scheduler appears. The date of Start time and End time varies depending on Note Due date settings.

- When operating from the Display notepad screen, press **MENU** **6**.

The next procedure → P252 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

❖ Saving schedule of Date To format

Date To format is formed with strings below.



* All characters except " ~ " are one-byte characters. □ represents an one-byte space.

- The year is Western calendar year and the time is in the 24-hour format. If there is only 1 digit for month, date, hour or minute, the preceding zero is not needed.
- Using fixed phrases simplifies entering sentences in Date To format with the current dates. → P271

1 **MENU** ▶ **7** ▶ **2** ▶ **Select a note** ▶ **Select a description in Date To format**

The Main (New) screen of schedule appears.

The next procedure → P252 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

◆ Deleting notes

<Example> Deleting a note

1 > >

2 Place the cursor on a note and

> >

- When operating from the Display notepad screen, press > .

Deleting selected notes : > > > Select notes >

Deleting all notes : > > > Authenticate

Deleting completed notes only : > >

3 "Yes"

✓INFORMATION

- When List by category mode or List by status is performed, only the displayed notes can be deleted.

Dictionaries

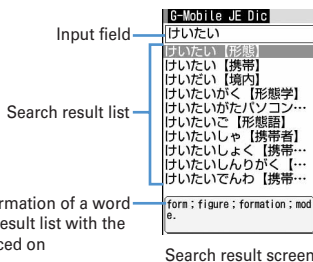
Using Dictionaries

You can use Japanese, Japanese-English and English-Japanese dictionaries in FOMA terminal.

<Example> Searching Japanese-English dictionary

1 > > > "G-Mobile JE Dic" > Enter a word in entry field

When is pressed, the character entry screen is switched to the search result screen.



- Up to 20 two-byte (40 one-byte) characters can be entered.
- When the cursor is in a search result list, press to enter a word.

2 Select a word to be searched for from a search result list.

The detail screen (meaning of the word) appears.

- To copy the text, press > on the detail screen.
- To search another dictionary for a word already searched, press > on the search result or detail screen.
- Some words may not be correctly searched for.

◆ Using or deleting search records

<Example> Using search records from Japanese-English dictionary

1 > > > "G-Mobile JE Dic" > >

The search records are displayed.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

2 Select word.

The search result screen appears.

Deleting a word : Place the cursor on the word and

> > "Yes"

Deleting selected words : > > Select words > > "Yes"

Deleting all words : > > Authenticate > "Yes"

Play function

Playing by pressing key

- When no operation is carried out for approx. 1 minute, this function automatically stops.

1 > > Play

- : Do - Si

- : Do - So at an octave higher

: Adjust volume.

: End

Earphone/microphone with switch

Using the earphone/microphone with switch

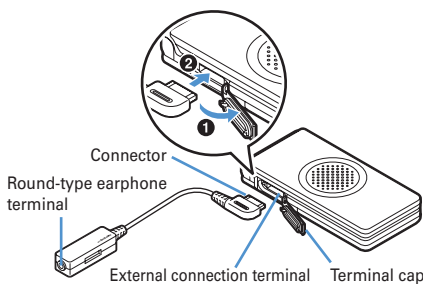
By connecting the optional Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 to the external connection terminal, the optional Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch can be connected. You can make and receive a call by pressing the switch.

◆ Connecting earphone/microphone with switch

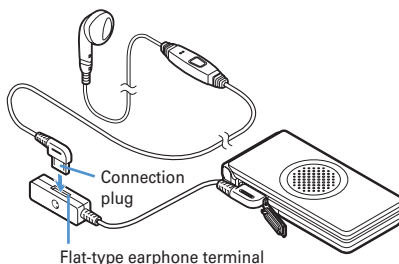
- With Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch connected in Silent mode, the sound is emitted from the earphone regardless of the settings of Alert preference. If the earphone is disconnected before completion, a melody stops. i-appli, movie/i-motion, etc. is performed and played silently.

■ Connecting

- Open terminal cap (1) of FOMA terminal, insert the connector of Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 to terminal (2).



- Insert the connection plug of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch to the flat-type earphone terminal.
- You can connect a earphone plug of 3.5 mm dia. to the round-type earphone terminal.
 - If you connect a earphone provided with no microphone, you cannot send voice.



■ Removing

- Pull out the connection plug of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch from Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01.
- Pull out the connector of Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 from the FOMA terminal.

◆ Setting switch operation of earphone/microphone <Headset key control>

You can set so that the switch of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch allows to make a voice call.

- Headset quick-dial → P264

- Set the required items** ▶

Control function : Set if you use the switch to make voice calls.

Phonebook No. : Search the party to call with Headset quick-dial from the FOMA terminal phonebook and set.

◆ Making voice call by pressing switch <Headset quick-dial>

You can make a voice call to a party set with Headset key control by pressing a switch of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.

- Press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear 2 short beeps ▶ When ending the call, press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear a short beep**

✓INFORMATION

- When the phonebook No. of Headset key control contains multiple phone numbers, the voice call is made to the first phone number registered.
- When the phonebook entry of the phonebook No. in Headset key control is deleted, overwritten by another phonebook entry, or its phonebook No. is switched, Headset key control is canceled.

◆ Receiving calls by pressing switch Auto answer <Headset quick-answer>

- When there is an incoming call, press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear 2 short beeps ▶ When ending the call, press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear a short beep**

✓INFORMATION

- In reply to a videophone call received, a camera image is sent if FOMA terminal is open or a substitute image is sent if FOMA terminal is folded.
- When the FOMA terminal is folded during a call by connecting Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, the operations below take place :
 - The call can be continued regardless of Close settings.
 - A substitute image appears on the terminal of the other party during a videophone call.
 - If a camera image with frame is being sent, the frame is released and a substitute image appears on the other party's terminal.

- When Catch Phone is active, you can answer another incoming voice call by pressing and holding the switch for 1 second or more. While Call waiting is active, a party you talk to can be switched by pressing and holding the switch for 1 second or more.

◆ Answering call automatically with earphone connected <Auto answer>

If you receive an incoming call when connecting Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, you can set if you answer the call automatically after the specified ring time.

- This function is unavailable to incoming calls during another call.
- This function is not available in Public mode.

1 ▶ Set the required items ▶

Auto answering : Set if you automatically answer while Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is connected.

Delayed time(Sec) : Set time before automatically answering an incoming call in the range of 0-120 seconds.

✓INFORMATION

- When a videophone call has been answered by Auto answer, a substitute image is sent and a videophone call is automatically started.
- The same time period cannot be set for both Delayed time and greeting response time of Answer machine.
- With Delayed time set within the time of Ring alert delay, Auto answer does not operate when a call is received from a caller not saved in Phonebook.

◆ Hearing the ring tone only through the earphone <Alert preference>

By connecting Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, you can set to hear the ring tone through both headset and speaker or only through the headset.

- Alert tone such as alarm sound is operated according to this setting.

1 ▶ -

- With "HS, + SP after 20sec" set, the ring alert is emitted from the speaker about 20 seconds after the ring alert is emitted only from the earphone.

Quick start-up

Shortening start time after power-ON

You can set if you shorten the start-time after turning ON the FOMA terminal.

1 ▶ or

✓INFORMATION

- The FOMA terminal starts normally in the cases below.
 - When the remaining battery level is 2 or lower
 - When the battery pack is removed and installed
 - When 24 hours elapse after the terminal is turned OFF
 - When 30 seconds do not elapse after the terminal is turned OFF

Confirm

Confirming current settings of functions

You can confirm FOMA terminal settings.

1 ▶ to confirm current settings

✓INFORMATION

- In Personal data lock, the set conditions for locked items are displayed as "----".
- In Privacy mode ("Authorized access" set for My Picture or i-motion), authentication is required.

Reset

Resetting functions

This function resets functions to their default settings.

- For the functions to be returned to the default settings, see "Menu list". →P290
- The functions below and data items are restored to their default settings, though they are not listed in "Menu list" :
 - Preferences : Silent mode, Public mode (Drive mode), settings of Kisekai Tool, call cost icon, input history of Pictogram/Symbol/Smiley
 - Predict dict. data : Data recorded using the input prediction function
 - Safety options : Public mode (Drive mode), Privacy mode

1 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Select an item to reset ▶ ▶ "Yes"

Deleting registered data all at once

Data saved, registered and set in the FOMA terminal can be deleted all at once.

- The protected data is also deleted.
- The preinstalled data below is deleted :
 - i-αpli
 - Chara-den
 - Images in "Deco-mail picture", "Deco-mail pict" and "Item" folders in My Picture
- The functions listed in Reset return to the default.
- The data and functions below saved, registered or set, if any, are deleted or return to the default :
 - Date & time
 - Redial
 - Received calls
 - Chaku-moji (including sent messages)
 - Recorded status message
 - Recorded messages (including the recorded greeting message)
 - External device
 - Phonebook entry (including Direct call)
 - Settings made from Phonebook
 - Menu setting
 - Light data created/acquired by ひかりクリエーター (Light creator)
 - Setting added to New announcement
 - Fonts
 - Select language
 - Password
 - Set Omamorimokon
 - Terminal security code
 - Privacy mode setting
 - Receive display option
 - Side key hold
 - Security indicator
 - Synchronization log of Data Center
 - Sync setting of Data Center
 - Still camera
 - Movie camera
 - Data read by Bar code reader
 - Enter URL
 - URL history
 - Last visited URL
 - Original certificate
 - Bookmark
 - Save shortcut for Bookmark
 - Screen memos
 - MessageR/F
 - i-mode mail
 - Mail template
 - Mail logs
 - Sort method
 - Mail group
 - Chat mail
 - Settings made from chat mail screen

- SMS
- i-αpli
- Settings made from i-αpli list
- Display history of i-αpli
- LCS clients list of GPS
- Loc. history of GPS
- Data saved in My Picture, i-motion, Melody, Chara-den or Kisekai Tool
- Settings made from My Picture, i-motion, Melody, Chara-den or Kisekai Tool
- Created folders and albums
- Changed folder name
- Data in INBOX of infrared communication
- Data exchange settings
- Sound recorder
- Alarm clock
- Schedule
- Settings made from Scheduler
- Custom menu
- Reset call cost
- User information (except for My phone number)
- Voice memo
- Call duration
- Notepad
- Search record of Dictionaries
- Register USSD
- Record reply message of Additional service
- Save phrase
- DL dictionary
- Software update (reserved update)

1      ► **Authenticate** ►
"Yes"

Delete all data is performed while restarting.

✓INFORMATION

- When restarting after this function is executed, the same screen as that for the first activation of the terminal appears. →P42
- The data below cannot be deleted. Also, they cannot be restored to the default :
 - "  はじめまして (Welcome)  " saved in "Inbox" folder (saved again if deleted.)
 - Update notification icon (displayed again if hidden.)
 - Data saved, registered or set in UIM
 - Data communication settings set from PC
- When deleting a large size of data, restarting may take approximately 1 minute. Be careful not to turn the power OFF before deletion completes.
- When data stored by default is deleted, it can be downloaded from the site. →P300

Character Entry

Entering characters	268
Entering characters using 5-touch input method	5-touch input method 269
Entering characters using useful entry function	271
Storing fixed phrase	Save phrase 272
Copying/cutting and pasting characters	273
Entering characters using KUTEN code	KUTEN code input 273
Storing frequently used words	Save word 273
Using downloaded dictionary	DL dictionary 274
Inputting characters by the slot input method	Slot input method 274
Setting input method	Text input method 275

For details of Kuten code list, see "PDF version 'Kuten Code List'" in the CD-ROM attached. To see "PDF version 'Kuten Code List'", Adobe® Reader® (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe® Reader® is not installed in your PC, you can install it from the attached CD-ROM. For details of usage, refer to "Adobe Reader Help".

Entering characters

Procedures for entering characters are below.

- There are 2 methods for entering characters : 5-touch input method and slot input method. →P269, 274
- The font types below can be entered : two-byte characters (hiragana/kanji/katakana/alphabetic characters/numbers/symbols/pictograms) and one-byte characters (katakana/alphabetic characters/numbers/symbols). 1 two-byte character, space or line feed is counted as 2 one-byte characters. Voiced sound and semi-voiced sound one-byte characters are also counted as 1 character.
- A total of 6,355 JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- Complex characters may be displayed in a simplified form.
- In this manual, "enter" means entering characters and pressing .

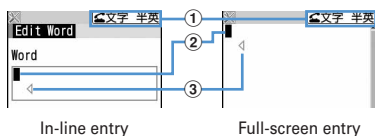
◆ Character entry screen

There are 2 kinds of character entry screens : in-line entry mode and full-screen entry mode.

In-line entry : Place the cursor on the field without switching screens and enter characters directly.

Full-screen entry : Select the field to display the full-screen entry area.

- When fixed phrases pasted or entered exceed the allowable number of input characters, the excessive characters are deleted.



① Input mode

② Cursor (blinking)

Indicate location where characters are entered or inserted. Use  to move the cursor.

③ Entry range

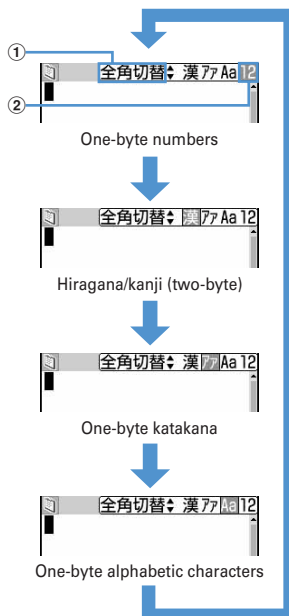
This icon indicates limitation of entry area.

- For the field to enter date and time, etc., you may enter numbers by pressing .

<Example> In 5-touch input method

1 On the character entry screen, .

- The input mode changes each time the key is pressed as follows :



① Switch display

When using 5-touch input method, it shows that switching two-byte/one-byte characters is available by pressing .

② Switch items

The item at the cursor is highlighted.

- You can also press  to switch the input mode.
- When using slot input method, one-byte characters are not displayed. Switching two-byte/one-byte is also not available.

2 Place the cursor on the item to switch and .

◆ Available items and input modes

Items	Input mode	
漢	Hiragana/kanji character	漢字
ア	One-byte katakana	半ｶﾀ
Aa	One-byte alphabetic characters	半英
12*	One-byte numbers	半数
ア*	Two-byte katakana	全ｶﾀ
A*	Two-byte alphabetic characters	全英
1*	Two-byte numbers	全数

* This does not appear in Slot input method.

- The available input modes vary by the character entry screen.
- 全かな appears when entering readings of a stored word.

5-touch input method

Entering characters using 5-touch input method

In 5-touch input method, multiple characters are assigned to each key and the character changes each time you press the key.

List of character assignments→P301

- When characters are entered, the cursor moves rightward in about 1 second. The number of seconds before moving the cursor can be set from Text input method.→P275

◆ Entering characters <Kana/kanji conversion>

<Example> Entering "企業 (kigyō)" in Phonebook

1 (MENU) 4 2 (●) (◀) twice to switch to the hiragana/kanji mode ▶ Enter "きぎょう"

"き" : (2) (twice)

"ぎ" : When the cursor moves to the right, (2) (twice) ▶ (*)

"よ" : (8) (3 times) ▶ (Ⓔ)

"う" : (1) (3 times)



Option selection list

- During character entry, the operations below are available :

(Ⓔ) : Change upper/lower case.

(◀) : Return to the previous character. (except when entering voiced sound or semi-voiced sound)

(eg. : …→1→お→え→う→い→あ→1→…)

(CLR) : Cancel entered characters.

(*) : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound.

(eg. : …→ほ→ぼ→ぼ→ぼ→ぼ→…)

2 (Ⓔ)



- You can also press (Ⓔ) to convert text when an option selection list is not displayed.
- Press (CLR) to restore the entry before conversion.
- To leave hiragana unconverted, go to Step 3 without pressing (Ⓔ).

Displaying conversion options list :

When pressing (Ⓔ) fails to display the desired character, a conversion options list appears by pressing (Ⓔ) or pressing (Ⓔ) again.

Displaying kana options list :

While entering hiragana characters, press (MENU) to display a list of kana characters, dates, times, etc.

- When there are multiple pages, press (Ⓔ) or (◀) to switch pages. Press the key for the option or press (Ⓔ) to select options.

3 (●) ▶ "閉じる (Close)"

Inserting characters :

Press (●) to move the cursor to the insertion point and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

Deleting characters :

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string
(eg. : ドコモ太郎)
- Press (CLR) to delete 1 character at the cursor position.
- Press and hold (CLR) for 1 second or more to delete the character at the cursor position and all other characters after the cursor position.
- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string
(eg. : ドコモ太郎)
- Press (CLR) to delete 1 character to the left of the cursor.
- Press and hold (CLR) for 1 second or more to delete all entered characters.

Entering line feed :

Move the cursor to the location to insert a line feed and press (#). When the cursor is at the end of an entered characters, you can also press (●) to insert a line feed.

- Some fields may not permit a line feed.

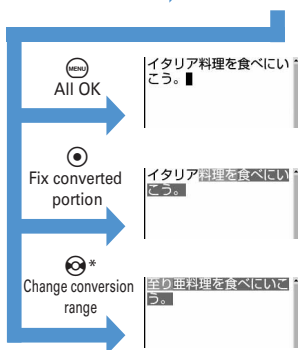
✓ INFORMATION

- When the cursor has been moved rightward by pressing during character entry, the operations below are unavailable :
 - : Change upper/lower case.
 - : Return to the previous character.
- Enter readings in hiragana and convert them to two-byte alphabetic characters, Greek characters, etc. → P309

❖ Block conversion of multiple clauses

- Converted within 24 two-byte characters.

<Example> Entering "イタリア料理を食べにいこう。
(Let's go to eat Italian food.)"



* The screen shows the example of .

◆ Entering characters using input prediction function

The input prediction function displays a list of the word selection options that match first part of the reading of the entered characters when entering characters in hiragana/kanji mode. Input prediction function automatically saves previously entered characters in the option selection list as Predict dict. data; you can easily enter the same characters next time by entering only the first part.

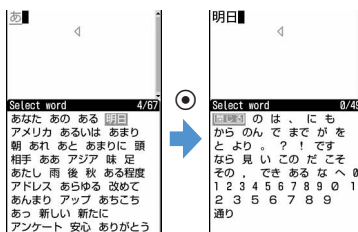
- The words below appear in addition to Predict dict. data.
 - Words stored by default
 - Words stored as words
 - Words selected from DL dictionary
- Input prediction function can be used only in the hiragana/kanji mode with full-screen entry.

<Example> Selecting and entering "明日 (asu)"

1 On the character entry screen, enter "あ (a)".

- The option selection list appears. Options change as entered characters increase.

2 Select the option



- When there are multiple pages, press or to switch pages.

3 "閉じる (Close)"

❖ Resetting prediction

You can reset data stored as Predict dict. data in the options selection list to default.

1 ► Authenticate ► "Yes"

Entering characters using useful entry function

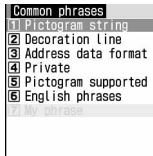
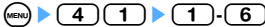
You can enter pictograms, symbols or fixed phrases, or quote data from the submenu of the character entry screen.

- The submenus do not appear before characters are set, on the decoration selection screen of Deco-mail or on the in-line entry screen.

◆ Entering fixed phrases

- List of fixed phrases→P302

1 On the character entry screen,



- After fixed phrases are registered, **7** becomes available.
- Press **MENU** **5** **1** on the message text entry screen.

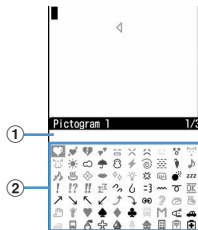
2 Select a fixed phrase.

◆ Entering pictograms and symbols

- Symbol list→P304
- Pictogram list→P305

<Example> Entering pictograms

1 On the character entry screen,



① Input log field

The input log field appears on the first page of Pictogram 1, 2 and Pictogram D of the pictogram list, and one-byte/two-byte symbols of the symbol list.

② Pictogram and symbol list

Only supported symbols appear.

- Pressing switches Pictogram 1 and 2.
- Press **MENU** to enter symbols. Each time you press the key, switches two-byte and one-byte symbols.

- When there are multiple pages, press or to switch pages.

Entering Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) :

On message text entry and edit signature entry screens, each pressing of switches pictogram list as Pictogram 1 → Pictogram 2 → Pictogram D. On a pictogram list of Pictogram D, images saved in "Deco-mail pict" folders appear. Select a Deco-mail pictogram to enter it.

Downloading Deco-mail pictogram→P150

2 Select a pictogram to enter.

Press **CLR** to close the pictogram list.

- In the input log field, up to 10 pictograms or symbols from the latest entry are displayed, allowing to select characters from the list.

✓ INFORMATION

- Pictograms and symbols can be converted by entering readings.→P305, 309
- Pictograms and symbols transferred via infrared communication may not appear correctly.
- A pictogram or symbol can be entered also by selecting "Pict/Symbol/Smiley" → "Pictogram" or "Symbol" on the submenu of the character entry screen. At this time, press to display a continuous input field above the input log field, and up to 10 pictograms, 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) symbols can be selected continuously. Note that no continuous field appears for Pictogram D.
- If "Deco-mail pict" folder contains no images, the pictograms list appears blank when Pictogram D is displayed on message text entry or edit signature entry screen.
- Deco-mail pict can also be entered by pressing **MENU** to select "Decorate mail"→"Insert image"→"Phone memory" on a message text entry screen or edit signature entry screen.
- When selecting "Pict/Symbol/Smiley"→"Symbol" on the submenu of character entry screen, selecting a left parenthesis (e.g. : {) causes the associated right parenthesis (e.g. : }) to be automatically entered.

◆ Entering smileys

- Smiley list→P311

1 On the character entry screen,

(MENU) ▶ 5 3 ▶ 2 - 9



- Press (MENU) 6 3 on the message text entry screen.
- Pressing 1 displays the input history list of up to 18 smileys beginning with the latest one entered from the Smiley Type list.

2 Select smileys.

◆ Quoting data to enter characters

Characters can be entered by quoting phonebook data, user information, the calculation results on Calculator or character string of the data scanned with Bar code reader.

- Other data can be quoted except when a character entry screen and quoted data have the same function (such as phonebook data on a phonebook character entry screen).

❖ Quoting phonebook data

1 On the character entry screen,

(MENU) ▶ 4 3 ▶ Select phonebook entry to quote

- Press (MENU) 5 3 on the message text entry screen.

2 Select the data to quote.

❖ Quoting user information data

1 On the character entry screen,

(MENU) ▶ 4 4 ▶ Authenticate

- Press (MENU) 5 4 on the message text entry screen.

2 Select the user information data to quote.

❖ Quoting calculation results on Calculator

1 On the character entry screen of Notepad or Scheduler,

(MENU) ▶ 4 5 ▶ Make a calculation ▶ ●

❖ Quoting data scanned with Bar code reader

1 On the URL entry screen, (MENU) ▶ 4 5

- They can be used for the character entry screen during i-mode.
- When distance between camera and the code to be scanned is short, switch the close-up switch to change the camera into close-up mode.

2 Scan a code ▶ ●

Save phrase

Storing fixed phrase

- Up to 50 phrases can be registered.

1 (MENU) ▶ 8 7 2 4 7 ▶ "<New phrase>"

Deleting the saved fixed phrases : Place the cursor on the fixed phrase and (MENU) ▶ "Yes"

- To check the fixed phrase already stored, place the cursor on the phrase to check and press (□). Edit it by pressing ●.

2 Enter the fixed phrase.

- Up to 64 two-byte (128 one-byte) characters can be entered.

3 (□)

Phrases are stored in "My phrase".

- When editing a stored fixed phrase, a confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to replace or "No" to cancel the operation.

❖ Storing words during character entry

1 On the character entry screen,

(MENU) ▶ 6 2

- Press (MENU) 7 2 on the message text entry screen.

2 Select the start point.

Selecting the whole sentence : (MENU) ▶ ● ▶ Go to Step 4

- On the message text entry screen, press (Ⓔ) to select the whole sentence. Go to Step 4.

3 Select the end point.

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the edit phrase screen.

Selecting from the starting position to the beginning of the sentence : (MENU) ▶ ●

Selecting from the starting position to the end of the sentence : (□) ▶ ●

✓INFORMATION

- A character string in the selected area that contains blank spaces is processed as follows :
Blank spaces only : Cannot be stored as a fixed phrase.
Blank spaces before and after a character string : Only character string is enabled.
Blank spaces between characters : Blank spaces are also enabled.
- To save a new phrase when 50 fixed phrases are already saved, delete or edit one of the saved fixed phrases in the list.

Copying/cutting and pasting characters

- Only the last item of the copied or cut characters is recorded until the power is turned OFF, and it can be pasted any number of times.

◆ Copying/cutting characters**1 On the character entry screen, or **

- On the message text entry screen, press   to copy or   to cut.

2 Select the start point.

Selecting the whole sentence :  

- On the message text entry screen, press  to select the whole sentence.

3 Select the end point.

The characters in the selected range are copied or cut.

Selecting from the starting position to the beginning of the sentence :  

Selecting from the starting position to the end of the sentence :  

◆ Pasting characters

- When the pasted phrase exceeds the permitted number of characters, a screen appears indicating not all characters can be pasted. Select "Yes" to paste the phrase with excessive characters deleted.

**1 On the character entry screen, place the cursor at the position to paste characters and **

The characters are inserted at the cursor position.

- Press   on the message text entry screen.

✓INFORMATION

- When the type of the copied/cut characters matches with the character type used of the paste destination field, pasting is available. Hiragana or kanji cannot be pasted into the mail address entry field.
- When a character string containing a line feed is pasted into the entry screen that cannot contain any line feeds, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

KUTEN code input**Entering characters using KUTEN code**

Characters, numbers and symbols on the Kuten code list can be entered using 4-digit code.

- For "Kuten Code List", see PDF version "Kuten Code List" in the CD-ROM attached.

<Example> Entering "〒" (code number 0209)

1 On the character entry screen,
   Enter the 4-digit Kuten code (   ) 

- Press    on the message text entry screen.

Save word**Storing frequently used words**

Storing frequently used words makes it easy to produce them during character conversion.

- Up to 200 words can be registered. Up to 5 words with the same reading can be stored.

1      ▶ "<New word>"



- Select when storing new word
- Icon indicating the beginning of the line
- Stored words

Listed in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

- To check the stored word, place the cursor on the word and press . Edit it by pressing .
- To delete a word, place the cursor on the word and press , and select "Delete". Select "Delete all" to delete all stored words.

2 Enter a word to save in the Word field.

- Up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters can be entered.

3 Enter the reading in the Reading field.

- Up to 8 hiragana can be entered.
- The word with the characters below entered at the beginning cannot be stored :
 - を, ん, あ, い, う, え, お, つ, や, ゆ, よ, わ, °
 (Voiced sound), ° (Semi-voiced sound), ー (Long vowels)
- Any blank spaces entered are deleted after storing.

4

- When editing a stored word, a confirmation screen appears. Select "Overwrite" to overwrite to the original word or "New" to store as a new word leaving the original word.

❖ Storing words during character entry

1 On the character entry screen,

- Press    on the message text entry screen.

2 Select the start point.

Selecting the whole sentence :   

- On the message text entry screen, press  to select the whole sentence. Go to Step 4.

3 Select the end point.

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the word entry field.

Selecting from the starting position to the beginning of the sentence :  

Selecting from the starting position to the end of the sentence :  

4 Enter the reading

✓ INFORMATION

- To save a new word when 200 words are already saved, delete or edit one of the saved words in the list.
- When a character string containing a line feed is selected, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

DL dictionary

Using downloaded dictionary

You can set words stored in downloaded dictionaries for conversion to Japanese to be displayed as conversion options.

- Up to 5 dictionaries can be used simultaneously.
- Downloading dictionaries→P151

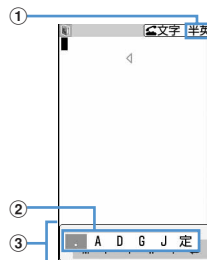
1       

Slot input method

Inputting characters by the slot input method

From characters displayed on the slot input board (Input bar with 2 columns of upper and lower), use  to select a character to enter.

- Setting input method is required to enter characters using the slot input method.→P275
- Even when the slot input method is set, it changes into 5-touch input method at in-line entry.
- In slot input method, two-byte katakana, alphabetic characters and numbers cannot be entered, and the input prediction function cannot be used.
- List of character assignments→P302



① Input mode

② Input bar

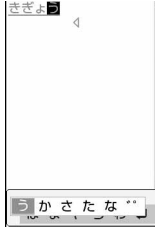
③ Slot input board

- To switch upper and lower column of the bar, press .
- To handle entry area (copy characters, move cursor, etc.) when operating by the slot input board, press . To return to the operation by the slot input board, press  again.

<Example> When entering "企業 (kigyuu)" in Phonebook

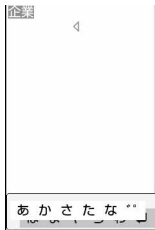
1 [MENU] [4] [2] [] [] twice to switch to the hiragana/kanji mode ▶ Enter "きぎょう"

"き": [] 1 time [] 1 time []
 "ぎ": [] [] 4 times []
 "よ": [] [] 2 times [] 5 times []
 "う": [] [] 5 times [] 2 times []



On the message text entry screen, press [0] - [9], [] to display the slot input board.

2 []



When pressing [] fails to display the desired character, a conversion options list appears by pressing [] or pressing [] again. When there are multiple pages in the conversion options list, press [] or [] to switch pages. Press the key assigned to the option or press [] to select conversion options. Note that pressing [MENU] does not display an option list for Kana and alphanumeric.

- Press [CLR] to restore the state before conversion and continue characters input.
- Press [MENU] to determine without conversion. Slot input board is enabled immediately at the determination.

3 []

4 [MENU] [8]

- You can operate in the same way also by pressing [] [].

Text input method

Setting input method

1 [MENU] [8] [7] [2] [5] ▶ Set the required items ▶ []

Input method : Set "5-touch" or "Slot".

Input prediction : Set if you display the option selection list.

Auto cursor : Set the time period before the cursor to move to the right automatically.

- Setting "OFF" disables automatic movement of the cursor.
- Setting "Slow" moves the cursor in approx. 1.5 seconds.
- Setting "Normal" moves the cursor in approx. 1 second.
- Setting "Fast" moves the cursor in approx. 0.5 seconds.

❖ Changing settings during character entry

- The settings cannot be changed before setting characters or on the decoration selection screen of Deco-mail.
- During inline entry, only Auto cursor is enabled.

1 On the character entry screen,

[MENU] [7] [1] - [3]

- Press [MENU] [8] on the message text entry screen.
- To switch "Use 5-touch" and "Use Slot input", press [1].
- To switch Prediction ON/OFF, press [2].
- To specify the time period before Auto cursor moves, press [3] and set the time by pressing [1] - [4].

✓ INFORMATION

- When entering 2 characters both assigned to the same key successively with Auto cursor set to "OFF", enter the first character, press [] to move the cursor rightward and enter the next character. To enter "あい", press [1] [] [1] [1].

Network Services

Voice Mail Service	278
Call waiting	279
Call Forwarding Service	279
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	280
Caller ID request service	280
Dual Network Service	280
Switching language for voice prompts	English guidance 281
Service Dialing Number	281
Set arrival act	281
Selecting how incoming calls are handled while talking	Arrival call act 281
Setting Remote control	Remote control 282
Multi number	282
Registering new network services	Additional service (Register USSD) 283

Network services available

- The DoCoMo network services given below are available with the FOMA terminal.

Service	Application	Monthly fee	Service	Application	Monthly fee
Voice Mail Service	Required	Charged	Dual Network Service	Required	Charged
Call waiting	Required	Charged			
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	English guidance	Not required	Free
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Not required	Free	Multi number	Required	Charged
Caller ID request service	Not required	Free	Public mode (Drive mode)*	Not required	Free
			Public mode (Power OFF)*	Not required	Free

- * Public mode→P58, 59
- Network services are not available outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach.
 - Contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for applications and inquiries.
 - This manual describes the outline of network services from the aspect of the operation procedure using Menu on the FOMA terminal. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

Voice Mail Service

If there is an incoming voice or videophone call while FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach or powered OFF or if not answering an incoming voice or videophone call within the specified ring time, this service answers the caller with a reply message and stores a voice message for you.

- To give priority to Voice Mail Service with Answer machine active, set ring time for Voice Mail Service which is shorter than a response time for Answer machine.
- When an incoming voice or videophone call is not answered with Voice Mail Service active, it is recorded as a missed call and  2 (the digit indicates the number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display.
- To change videophone call settings for Voice Mail Service, make a voice call at "1412".
- When a new voice message is received from a videophone call, it is notified with SMS.

❖ Basic flow of Voice Mail Service

Step 1 : Activate the service.

Step 2 : The caller leaves a voice message.

Step 3 : Play the voice message.

1  **8** **8** **1** ▶ **Select a menu item and proceed**

Menu items	Functions and operations
1 Voice Mail Service	
1 Activate	▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter ring time • When ring time is "0 Sec.", incoming calls are not recorded in Received calls.
2 Set ring time	▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter ring time • When ring time is "0 Sec.", incoming calls are not recorded in Received calls.
3 Deactivate	▶ "Yes"
4 Check setting	▶ "Yes" • Settings can be changed from the submenu on the setting confirmation screen.
5 Play messages	▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts • The number displayed on  1 shows the number of new voice messages announced before new voice messages are played. The number of saved voice messages is not contained.
6 Voice Mail setting	Set up Voice Mail Service by voice prompts below. ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts
7 Check messages	Check for voice messages. ▶ "Yes"

Menu items	Functions and operations
2 Tone/Vibration message notification	Sets to sound an alert when a new voice message is added or when it is found by Check messages. ▶ Set the required items ▶  Voice Mail alert : For "ON", the alert tone sounds and the terminal vibrates according to the setting of Vibrator alert/effect for voice call. Notification melody : Set melody for Voice Mail alert.
3 Notify missed call	
1 Activate	If there is a missed call while FOMA terminal is powered OFF or out of the service area, this function notifies of it by SMS when FOMA terminal is powered ON or within the service area again. ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" or "No" • Select "Yes" to notify only calls with Caller ID. • Select "No" to notify of all missed calls.
2 Deactivate	▶ "Yes"
3 Check setting	▶ "Yes"
4 Hide Voice Mail icon	Hides an icon for voice messages. ▶ "Yes"

Call waiting

When there is another incoming voice call during a voice call, this service notifies you with the call waiting ring tone. This allows you to place your current voice call on hold and then answer the other voice call. You can also make a call to another party, putting the current call on hold.

- When a videophone call is received during a videophone or voice call, Call waiting does not operate but the call is recorded as a missed call.
- When using Call Waiting Service, set Arrival call act to "Answer" in advance. Otherwise, you cannot answer calls received during a voice call even if you activate Call waiting.
- To answer an incoming voice call received during a voice call, perform the steps below :
 : Put the current call on hold and answer the second voice call.
 : The current call is disconnected and a screen for the incoming call appears. Press  to answer the call.
- During Call waiting, you can switch the other party by pressing .
- When making a voice call to another party during a current voice call, press  and select "Dial up".

1   8  8  2  1 ▶ Select a menu item and proceed

Menu items	Functions and operations
1 Activate	▶ "Yes"
2 Deactivate	▶ "Yes"
3 Check setting	▶ "Yes"

Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding Service forwards voice calls and videophone calls to the phone of your home or office when there is an incoming voice or videophone call while FOMA terminal is located where radio waves are hard to reach or is powered OFF or you do not answer the call within the specified ring time.

- To give priority to Call Forwarding Service with Answer machine active, set ring time for Call Forwarding Service which is shorter than a response time for Answer machine.
- When an incoming voice or videophone call is not answered with Call forwarding active, it is recorded as a missed call and  2 (the digit indicates the number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display.

❖ Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

Step 1 : Activate Call Forwarding Service.

Step 2 : Set the phone number of forwarding destination.

Step 3 : Call comes in to FOMA terminal.

Step 4 : Unanswered calls are forwarded to the previously specified destination.

1   8  8  2  2 ▶ Select a menu item and proceed

Menu items	Functions and operations
1 Activate	▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the forwarding destination number ▶  ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter ring time • On the forwarding destination number entry screen, you can select phone number by pressing  from Phonebook,  from Received calls or  form Redial. • When ring time is "0 Sec.", incoming calls are not recorded in Received calls.
2 Deactivate	▶ "Yes"
3 Register The Forwarding Number	Change the forwarding destination or activates Call Forwarding Service after changing the forwarding destination. ▶ Enter a forwarding number ▶  ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes" • On the phone number entry screen, you can select phone number by pressing  from Phonebook,  from Received calls or  form Redial.
4 Setting if forwarding number busy	Set Voice Mail Service to answer calls when the forwarding destination is busy or other cases. ▶ "Yes"
5 Check setting	▶ "Yes"

1 **1** **4** **2** **9** ▶ ▶ **Follow the voice prompts**

- For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

Nuisance Call Blocking Service

You can set FOMA terminal to automatically reject nuisance calls. After registering a phone number of the nuisance caller, calls from the registered phone number are answered with a call rejection announcement or announcement and image, and automatically disconnected.

- When there is an incoming call from a number on the nuisance call list, no ring alert sounds. The call reception is not recorded in Received calls.

1 ▶ **8** **8** **5** **3** ▶ **Select a menu item and proceed**

Menu items	Functions and operations
1 Register the caller	Register the phone number of the last call you answered as a nuisance caller. ▶ "Yes" • Phone numbers of calls not answered, such as missed calls, are not registered.
2 Register selected No	Register the specified phone number as a nuisance caller. ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the phone number ▶  ▶ "Yes" • On the phone number entry screen, you can enter phone number from Phonebook, Received calls, and Redial by pressing  ,  , and  , respectively.
3 Delete all entries	▶ "Yes"
4 Delete last entry	Delete one phone number registered last. By repeating the similar procedure, you can delete phone numbers individually from the one registered most recently. ▶ "Yes"
5 Check the number of entries	▶ "Yes"

Caller ID request service

An incoming call without the caller ID is answered with an announcement or announcement and image requesting caller ID, and automatically disconnected.

- An incoming call rejected by Caller ID request is not recorded in Received calls and  **2** (the digit indicates the number of missed calls) does not appear on the stand-by display.

1 ▶ **8** **8** **4** **2** ▶ **Select a menu item and proceed**

Menu items	Functions and operations
1 Activate	▶ "Yes"
2 Deactivate	▶ "Yes"
3 Check setting	▶ "Yes"

Dual Network Service

You can use the mova terminal with the same phone number on FOMA terminal. In a location out of the FOMA service and inside the mova service area, you can communicate with others by using mova terminal.

- FOMA terminal and mova terminal cannot be used simultaneously.
- Operation to switch Dual Network Service is performed from FOMA terminal/mova terminal not using the service.

1 ▶ **8** **8** **5** **5** ▶ **Select a menu item and proceed**

Menu items	Functions and operations
1 Dual Network Switching	Switch the Dual Network Service from mova terminal to the FOMA terminal. ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the network security code
2 Check setting	▶ "Yes"

Switching language for voice prompts

You can set to display in English the guidance for setting network services such as Voice Mail Service and voice guidance notifying out of service area, etc.

- 1 ▶ Select a menu item and proceed

Menu items	Functions and operations
1 Guidance setting	Switch the voice prompts for outgoing/incoming call to English or Japanese. ▶ "Yes" ▶ or Japanese : Set the voice prompts to Japanese for you to hear at the time of calling. English : Set the voice prompts to English for you to hear at the time of calling. ▶ "Yes" ▶ - Japanese : Set the voice prompts to Japanese for the other party to hear at the time of receiving. Japanese+English : Set the voice prompts for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese followed by English. English+Japanese : Set the voice prompts for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to English followed by Japanese.
2 Check setting	▶ "Yes"

Service Dialing Number

You can make a call to DoCoMo-specified repair office or to general inquiries.

- Displayed items may differ or may not appear depending on the UIM types.→P37

- 1 ▶ Select a menu item and proceed

Menu items	Functions and operations
1 ドコモ故障問合せ	Call to DoCoMo-specified repair office. ▶ "Yes"
2 ドコモ総合案内・受付	Call to DoCoMo for general inquiries. ▶ "Yes"

Set arrival act

You can activate/deactivate or check the Arrival call act settings.

- 1 ▶ Select a menu item and proceed

Menu items	Functions and operations
1 Activate	▶ "Yes"
2 Deactivate	▶ "Yes"
3 Check setting	▶ "Yes"

Arrival call act

Selecting how incoming calls are handled while talking

If subscribing to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service and/or Call waiting, you can set how to answer voice/videophone calls and 64K data communications received during a call.

- Unless you subscribe to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or Call waiting, you cannot answer to calls received during a voice call.
- When using Arrival call act, set Set arrival act to activate in advance.

- 1 ▶ Select a menu item and proceed

Menu items	Functions and operations
1 Answer	When Call waiting is activate, the call waiting function starts. With deactivate, you can end the current voice call or 64K data communication and answer an incoming voice call. You can select how to react to an incoming voice call received during a current voice call from submenu.→P55
2 Voice Mail	Connect incoming voice/videophone calls received during a call to the Voice Mail Service.
3 Call Forwarding	Forward the second voice/videophone calls or 64K data communication received during a call to the set forwarding destination. • 64K data communication calls, if any received during 64K data communications, are not forwarded.
4 Call Rejection	Reject the second voice/videophone calls or 64K data communication received during a call.

- Regardless of settings, calls are recorded as missed calls.

Setting Remote control

You can access services such as Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone general subscriber phones, DoCoMo mobile phones, payphones, etc.

1      ▶ Select a menu item and proceed

Menu items	Functions and operations
1 Activate	▶ "Yes"
2 Deactivate	▶ "Yes"
3 Check setting	▶ "Yes"

Multi number

In addition to Basic Number, you can add and use up to 2 more numbers as phone numbers of the FOMA terminal : Additional No.1 and No.2.

- Removing or replacing UIM may cause Multi number settings (name, phone number, etc.) saved in FOMA terminal to be deleted. In such a case, save the settings again.
- A name of Basic Number or Additional Number appears on an incoming/outgoing call screen.
- When making a call from Redial or Received calls, a name of Multi number used for the previous call appears and that number is used.

1      ▶ Select a menu item and proceed

Menu items	Functions and operations
1 Set Multi Number	
1 Basic Number	Set Basic Number to use when making calls. ▶ "Yes"
2 Additional Number1	Set Additional Number1 to use when making calls. ▶ "Yes"
3 Additional Number2	Set Additional Number2 to use when making calls. ▶ "Yes"
2 Check setting	▶ "Yes"

Menu items	Functions and operations
3 Number Setting	The name set in User information appears as Name for Basic Number. ▶ Set the required items ▶  Additional No1 or No2: Name; Enter a name for the additional number. The name appears on the incoming call screen or logs such as redial and received call. • Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered. Additional No1 or No2: Phone number; Enter a phone number to register as an additional number. • Up to 26 digits can be entered. Multi number call : With "Enable" set, a caller ID of Multi number can be selected from a submenu when making a call.
4 Incoming calls melody setting	▶ 1 or 2 ▶ Set the required items ▶  Individual setting : Set if you use operations for incoming calls to each additional number. Setting "Ring alert" and "Show image"→P78 "Changing operations for incoming call"

◆ Selecting a phone number and making a call

- When Multi number call of Number Setting is "Disable", Multi number cannot be selected.

1 Enter the phone number ▶   ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ 

✓INFORMATION

- When operating from the Redial or Received calls, press  and select "Multi-No".
- When operating from Recorded messages, Voice memos or Members list of schedule, press  and select "Call option".
- When operating from FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook list, press  and select "Mail/Call option"→"Call option"; when operating from a phone number detail screen, press  and select "Chaku-moji/MultiNo"→"Multi-No".
- When operating from Call option, if you set to "Unspecified", it depends on Set Multi Number.

Additional service (Register USSD)

Registering new network services

When a new network service is introduced by DoCoMo, you can use the service by registering it in the menu.

1      ▶ Select a menu item and proceed

Menu items	Functions and operations
1 Register USSD	Registering/changing ▶ Place the cursor on the number and  ▶ Set the required items ▶  USSD code : Enter Service code provided by DoCoMo. - Service code is the code used to make settings for the network services. It is registered as the USSD code on FOMA terminal. Name : Enter a display name (service name). - Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered. Using registered service ▶ Select a service Deleting registered service ▶ Place the cursor on the service and  ▶  or  ▶ "Yes"
2 Record reply message	Register the message associated with the code returned from the service center when executing the added service. This message appears when the registered code is returned as a response. Registering/changing ▶ Select a number ▶ Set the required items ▶  USSD code : Enter Service code provided by DoCoMo. Reply message : Register reply message. Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered. Deleting registered reply message ▶ Place the cursor on the reply message and  ▶  or  ▶ "Yes"

PC connection setting

Data Communication	286
Before use	286
Flow of setup for data communication	287
AT commands	288
CD-ROM	288
Introduction of DoCoMo keitai datalink	288

For details of data communications, see "PDF version "Manual for PC connection setting"" in the attached CD-ROM. To read "PDF version "Manual for PC connection setting"", Adobe® Reader® (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe® Reader® is not installed in your PC, install it from the attached CD-ROM. For details of usage, see "Adobe Reader Help".

Data Communication

Communications between FOMA terminal and a connected PC are classified to packet communication and 64K data communication.

- To make packet or 64K data communications or edit data such as the phonebook using a PC connected, installation of the software in the attached CD-ROM and various settings are required.
- DoCoMo does not guarantee operations on upgraded OS.
- IP connection is not supported.
- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication or Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be performed connecting with PDA of DoCoMo, musea, sigmarion II or sigmarion III. Note that update of musea or sigmarion II is required for use. For details of such as method to update, refer to the DoCoMo website.

❖ Packet communication

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which makes it suitable for high-speed exchange of comparatively small amounts of data as in sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.

High-speed packet communications with maximum reception rate 384 kbps and maximum transmission rate 64 kbps are enabled using access points that support FOMA packet communication services such as DoCoMo's Internet connection service mopera U or mopera. The actual transmission speed varies with the environment and the rate of congestion.

Note that communications of large-size data such as viewing websites containing images and downloading require high charges.

❖ 64K data communication

Since communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, it is suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents.

Data can be sent/received at stabled communication speed of 64 Kbps by using access points that support FOMA 64K data communication services such as mopera U or mopera of DoCoMo's Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64K access points.

Be careful that a high cost is charged for long-time communications.

Data such as phonebook or mail can be sent or received with no charges required.

- You can also use infrared communication to send/receive data to/from other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs.

Before use

❖ Operating environment

The operation environment for using data communication is as shown below :

Item	Requirements
Computer	PC/AT compatible computer with a USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0)
OS (Japanese version)	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista
Memory requirements*	Windows 2000 : 64MB or more Windows XP : 128MB or more Windows Vista : 512MB or more
Hard disk capacity*	5MB or more free disk space

* This is the operating environment of FOMA PC configuration software. Memory requirements and hard disk capacity may vary by the PC system configurations.

- Utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Operation is not guaranteed in an environment except that described above nor DoCoMo assumes responsibility for pertaining to operation under such conditions.

❖ Devices required

The devices below are required in addition to FOMA terminal and PC :

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01(optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "FOMA®F801i用CD-ROM (CD-ROM for FOMA®F801i)"

* USB cable for PC is not available because the connector type is different.

* If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.

* This manual uses examples using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 for explanation.

❖ Usage precautions

❖ Internet service provider usage charges

When using the Internet on a PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter referred to as Provider) is usually required. This charge is paid directly to the Provider, and is separated from the FOMA service charge. For details on usage charges, contact your Provider.

- DoCoMo's Internet connection service mopera U or mopera is available.
mopera U is an optional subscriber service to be charged requiring subscription. You can also use a plan which charges monthly fee only for a month you use this service. For Internet connection with the FOMA terminal, to use mopera U applicable to broadband connections is recommended.
mopera requires no subscription or monthly charge. This service is convenient for those who need to connect to Internet immediately.

❖ Dialup connection (Provider, etc.)

Packet and 64K data communications have different connection destinations. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

- PHS 64K/32K data communications such as PIAFS or connections to DoPa access points are disabled.

❖ User authentication

Some dialup connections require user authentication before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password. Your ID and password are assigned by the network administrator of the connection destination such as your provider or corporate LAN. For details, contact your provider or network administrator.

❖ Access authentication during using PC browser

If FirstPass (user certificate) is required for the access authentication during using PC browser, you must install FirstPass PC software from the CD-ROM provided and configure it. For details, see "簡易操作マニュアル(Manual for simple use)" in CD-ROM.

To view "簡易操作マニュアル"(PDF format), Adobe® Reader® (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe® Reader® is not installed in your PC, you can install it from the attached CD-ROM.

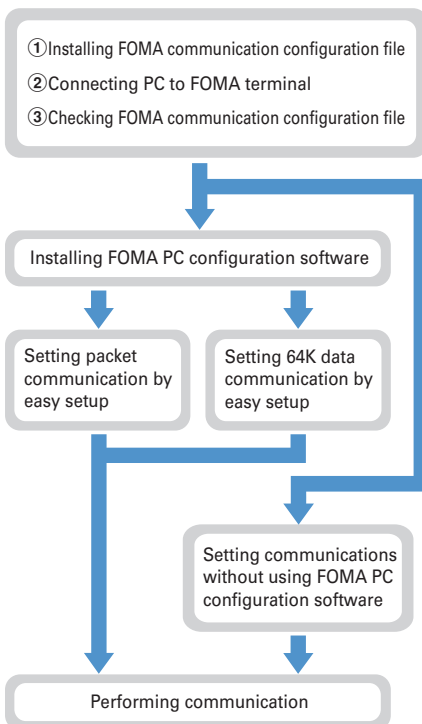
❖ Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the conditions below must be satisfied :

- You must be within the FOMA service area
 - Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications
 - 64K data communication requires a dialup connection that supports FOMA 64K data communications or ISDN synchronized 64K
- * Even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy or the signal quality is poor.

Flow of setup for data communication

This section describes the setup work needed to perform packet communication or 64K data communication.



❖ Communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file before connecting to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication.

When the FOMA PC configuration software (contained in the attached CD-ROM) is installed on the PC, a number of settings required for packet communication or 64K data communication can be set from PC by simple operation.

AT commands

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC. FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

For AT command details, see "Manual for PC connection setting" in the attached CD-ROM.

CD-ROM

Attached CD-ROM contains software for Data Communication with FOMA terminals, PDF version "Manual for PC connection setting" and "Kuten Code List". For details, see attached CD-ROM.

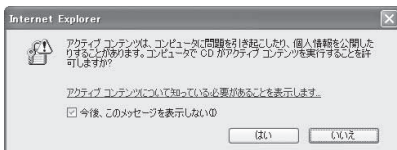
■ Software/PDF included

- FOMA communication configuration file
- FOMA PC configuration software
- FOMA byte counter
- Guide to DoCoMo keitai datalink
- FirstPass PC software
- Guide to mopera U (mopera U start up tool/mopera U connection & setting tool/mopera U requesting original data/FOMA byte counter)
- PDF version "パソコン接続マニュアル"/"Manual for PC connection setting"
- PDF version "区点コード一覧"/"Kuten Code List"
- Adobe® Reader®

When the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC's CD-ROM drive, the warning screen below may be displayed.

This warning appears by security settings for Internet Explorer, but may be ignored. Click [はい (Yes)].

* The screen shows an example displayed when using Windows XP. The screen contents may vary by the environment of the PC used.



Introduction of DoCoMo keitai datalink

"DoCoMo keitai datalink" is software for backing up phonebook, mail and other data in your mobile phone to a PC and edit them. It can be downloaded from DoCoMo's website. For details and downloading of this software, see the website below. You can also access to this site from the attached CD-ROM.

<http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (In Japanese only)

For details including downloading procedure, transferable data, supported operating system, operation environment, installing procedure, restrictions, see the webpage above. For operations after installation, see Help in the software. Using DoCoMo keitai datalink requires USB connection cable (optional) separately.

Appendix/External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Menu list	290
Data stored by default	300
List of keypads and character assignments (5-touch input method)	301
List of characters assigned to input bar (Slot input method)	302
List of fixed phrases	302
Symbol list	304
Pictogram list	305
Special symbol list	309
Smiley list	311
Combination of Multiaccess functions	315
Combination of Multitask functions	316
Services available for FOMA terminal	317
Options and related devices	318
Data interchange with external device	
Playing movie data recorded with FOMA terminal on PC	318
Troubleshooting	
Troubleshooting	319
Error messages	Error messages 322
Warranty and After-Sales Service	326
i モード故障診断サイト (i-mode fault diagnostic site)	328
Software update	Software update 328
Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data	Scanning function 332
Specifications	334
Number of saved/recorded/protected items in F801i	335
SAR certification information	335

Menu list

Characters in blue : Menus restored to the default by Reset

In Kids' mode A : Operations and settings enabled B : Entry of terminal security code or password required C : Entry of terminal security code required D : Operations and settings disabled

1 Mail

Menu		Kids' mode	Default	Page		
1 Inbox		A	—	P177		
2 Compose message		A	—	P164		
3 Chat mail		A	—	P190		
4 Unsent messages		A	—	P177		
5 Outbox		A	—	P177		
6 Check message	1 Check new message	A	—	P172		
	2 Check new SMS	A	—	P194		
	3 Receive option	A	—	P172		
	4 Check msg option	A	Select All	P187		
7 SMS	1 Compose SMS	A	—	P193		
	2 UIM Inbox	A	—	P196		
	3 UIM Outbox	A	—	P196		
	4 SMS settings	A*1	Font type : Japanese SMS report request : Not request Keep in SMS center : 3 days SMSC : DoCoMo Address : 81903101652 Type of Number : international	P195		
8 Template		A	—	P167		
9 Mail settings	1 Mail alert		A	Ring alert : Melody/サウンド着信音2 (Sound tone2) Light alert : Glimmer/Aqua Vibrate alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	P78	
	2 Chat mail alert		A	Alert setting : Same:Mail setting	P78	
	3 Sort method		A	[Inbox sorting/Outbox sorting] Auto sort : ON	P185	
	4 Signature		A	[Auto add] ON [Edit signature] —	P187	
	5 Reply setting	1 Reply format		A	Quote : Yes Quote characters : >	P188
		2 Activate quick reply		A	ON	P188
		3 Quick reply presets		A	了解です (I see.) 後で連絡します (I'll contact you later.) ごめんなさいm(_)_m (Sorry) ありがとう (-^-) (Thank you) OK	P188
	6 Mail group		A	—	P188	
	7 Display settings	1 Display priority		A	Show message	P190
		2 Receive option		A	OFF	P187
		3 Incoming msg. attach		A	Select All	P189
		4 Attachment auto-play		A	Auto play	P189
		5 Message list		A	Display 2 rows	P189

2 i-mode

Menu		Kids' mode	Default	Page
1 iMenu		A	—	P142
2 Bookmark		A	—	P147
3 Go to location	1 Enter URL	A	—	P146
	2 URL history	A	—	P147
4 Last visited URL		A	—	P144
5 Screen memo		A	—	P149
6 Check new message		A	—	P172
7 MessageR&F	1 MessageR	A	—	P156
	2 MessageF	A	—	P156

Menu			Kids' mode	Default	Page
	[3] Message settings	[1] Auto-display	A	MessageR preferred	P156
		[2] Check msg option	A	Select All	P187
		[3] Attachment auto-play	A	Auto play	P189
		[4] MessageR alert	A	Ring alert : Melody/サウンド着信音2 (Sound tone2) Light alert : Glimmer/Aqua Vibrate alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	P78
		[5] MessageF alert	A	Ring alert : Melody/サウンド着信音2 (Sound tone2) Light alert : Glimmer/Aqua Vibrate alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	P78
[8] i-mode settings	[1] i-mode shortcuts		A	—	P148
	[2] Connection timeout		A	60 seconds	P153
	[3] Display light		A	Always ON	P154
	[4] Certificate	[1] Manage certificate ^{*2}	C	CA Certificate 1-13, DoCoMo Cert1 : Valid	P157
		[2] Certificate download	C	—	P158
		[3] Certificate host	D	Host : DoCoMo	P160
		[4] Skip password	C	Yes	P160
	[5] Image & Effect		A	Image, Animation : Display Use phone information : Yes Sound effect setting : ON	P154
	[6] i-motion		A	Auto replay setting : Auto Play ON	P161
[7] Host selection		D	i-mode (UIM)	P154	

[3] i-appli

Menu		Kids' mode	Default	Page
[1] Software list		A	—	P201
[2] i-appli settings	[1] Sort software	A	By access time	P210
	[2] Auto start	A	ON	P207
	[3] Software info disp.	A	OFF	P201
	[4] Display light	A	Terminal Setting	P203
	[5] Vibrate effect	A	ON	P203
	[6] i-appli shortcuts	A	—	P206
[3] Display history		A	[Start failure hist., Abnormal exit hist., Security error hist.] —	P202 P207 P208

[4] Phonebook & Logs

Menu		Kids' mode	Default	Page
[1] Phonebook		A	Show all names	P69
[2] Phonebook new entry		A	—	P67
[3] Phonebook(UIM) new entry		A	—	P68
[4] Received calls		A	—	P48
[5] Redial		A	—	P48
[6] Ans.Machine& Voice memo	[1] Answer machine	A	Deactivate	P60
	[2] Recorded messages	A	—	P61
	[3] Record voice memo	A	—	P259
	[4] Voice memos	A	—	P259
[7] Mail logs	[1] Sent msg log	A	—	P183
	[2] Received msg log	A	—	P183
[8] User information		A	Name, Mail address : — My phone number : The subscribing terminal phone number	P44 P257

5 Data Box

Menu	Kids' mode	Default	Page
1 My Picture	A	—	P224
2 i-motion	A	—	P230
3 Melody	A	—	P236
4 Chara-den	A	—	P235
5 Kisekai Tool	A	—	P89

6 LifeKit

Menu			Kids' mode	Default	Page	
[1] Bar code reader			A	—	P137	
[2] Ir/PC connection	[1] Receive Ir data		A	—	P242	
	[2] Send all Ir data		A	—	P241	
	[3] Save received data		A	—	P243	
	[4] Data exchange settings		A	End alert : OFF Auto authentication : OFF Ph.book image sending : ON	P244	
[3] Camera	[1] Still camera		A	—	P127	
	[2] Movie camera		A	—	P130	
[4] Sound recorder			A	—	P244	
[5] Data Center	[1] Access Data Center		A	—	P76	
	[2] Synchronization log		A	—	P76	
	[3] Sync setting		A	Contact image sending : OFF	P76	
[6] GPS	[1] Position location		A	—	P212	
	[2] i-appli		A	—	P214	
	[3] Loc. history		A	—	P220	
	[4] Position settings	[1] Post-Position task		A	Read map	P213
		[2] Position accuracy		A	Standard mode	P221
		[3] Positioning alert		A	Ring alert, Vibrate alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10 Light alert : Light/Lime	P221
	[5] Loc. notify setting	[1] Notify location		A	—	P219
		[2] Notification setting	[1] LCS clients list	C	—	P220
			[2] Position accuracy	A	Standard mode	P221
			[3] Positioning alert	A	Ring alert : Melody/サウンド着信音4 (Sound tone4) Vibrate alert : Pattern B Ring time (sec) : 10 Light alert : Light/Amethyst	P221
	[6] Request setting	[1] Request permit/deny		C	Always permit	P217
		[2] Position accuracy		A	Standard mode	P221
		[3] Service settings		C	—	P219
		[4] Service host URL		C	Host : DoCoMo	P219
		[5] Positioning alert	[1] Loc. request-accept	A	Ring alert : Melody/サウンド着信音3 (Sound tone3) Vibrate alert : Pattern C Ring time (sec) : 10 Light alert : Light/Grape	P221
			[2] Loc. request-verify	A	Ring alert : Melody/サウンド着信音3 (Sound tone3) Vibrate alert : Pattern C Ring time (sec) : 10 Light alert : Light/Grape	P221

7 Accessory

Menu	Kids' mode	Default	Page
1 Scheduler	A	—	P251
2 Notepad	A	—	P261
3 Alarm clock	A	—	P249
4 Calculator	A	—	P261
5 Dictionaries	A	—	P263
6 Countdown timer	A	03 min.	P249

Menu	Kids' mode	Default	Page
[7] Time schedule	A	—	P204

[8] Settings & NW services*3

Menu		Kids' mode		Default	Page		
[1] Alerts & Sounds	[1] Ring alerts & Sounds	[1] Call ring alert	[1] Call ring alert	A	Phone : Melody/サウンド着信音1 (Sound tone1)	P78	
			[2] V.phone ring alert	A	Videophone : Melody/ハーブ (Harp)	P78	
			[3] Anonymous caller	C	[Anonymous/Payphone/Unavailable] Disable settings	P119	
		[2] Mail/Msg ring alert	[1] Mail ring alert	A	Mail : Melody/サウンド着信音2 (Sound tone2)	P78	
			[2] Chat M ring alert	A	Chat mail : Sync msg alert	P78	
			[3] Msg.R ring alert	A	MessageR : Melody/サウンド着信音2 (Sound tone2)	P78	
			[4] Msg.F ring alert	A	MessageF : Melody/サウンド着信音2 (Sound tone2)	P78	
			[3] GPS alert	[1] Positioning alert	A	Ring alert : OFF	P80
		[2] Loc. notify alert		A	Ring alert : Melody/サウンド着信音4 (Sound tone4)	P80	
		[3] Loc. request-accept		A	Ring alert : Melody/サウンド着信音3 (Sound tone3)	P80	
		[4] Loc. request-verify		A	Ring alert : Melody/サウンド着信音3 (Sound tone3)	P80	
		[4] Alarm sound	[1] Alarm clock sound	A	Alarm clock : Melody/目覚まし時計 (Alarm clock)	P79	
			[2] Schedule reminder	A	Alarm on time : Melody/時間になりました (Set time arrives) Alarm in advance : Melody/もうすぐ予定の時間です (It's almost schedule time)	P79	
		[5] System sound	[1] Operation sound	A	Sol-fa	P80	
			[2] Shutter sound	A	Standard	P81	
			[3] Movie camera sound	A	Standard	P81	
		[6] Charge alert			A	ON	P81
		[7] Call session	[1] Status message	A	On-hold tone : Standard	P57	
			[2] On-hold tone	A	ENTERTAINER	P81	
			[3] Quality alarm	A	High alarm	P81	
			[4] Reconnect alarm	A	High alarm	P81	
			[5] Low Battery alert	A	ON	P81	
		[2] Adjust volume	[1] Call alert volume	A	Level 4	P79	
			[2] Mail/Msg alert vol.	A	Level 4	P79	
			[3] GPS alert volume	A	Level 4	P79	
			[4] Listen volume	A	Level 4	P79	
			[5] Alarm volume	[1] Alarm clock sound	A	Level 4	P79
				[2] Schedule reminder	A	Level 4	P79
			[6] i-appli effect sound	A	Level 4	P79	
	[7] Operation sound		A	Level 4	P79		
	[8] Melody effect sound		A	Level 4	P79		
	[3] Vibrate alert/effect		[1] Call vibrate alert	[1] Call vibrate alert	A	OFF	P80
		[2] V.phone vibrate alert		A	OFF	P80	
		[2] Mail/Msg vibrate alert	[1] Mail vibrate alert	A	OFF	P80	
			[2] Chat M vibrate alert	A	—	P80	
			[3] Msg.R vibrate alert	A	OFF	P80	

Menu				Kids' mode	Default	Page
			[4] Msg.F vibrate alert	A	OFF	P80
		[3] GPS vibrate alert	[1] Positioning vibrate	A	OFF	P80
			[2] Loc. notify vibrate	A	Pattern B	P80
			[3] Loc. request-accept	A	Pattern C	P80
			[4] Loc. request-verify	A	Pattern C	P80
		[4] Alarm vibrate	[1] Alarm clock	A	OFF	P80
			[2] Schedule reminder	A	OFF	P80
	[5] i-appli effect		A	ON	P80	
	[4] Silent mode			A	General	P83
	[5] Ring alert delay			A	Delayed ring alert : OFF	P119
[2] Display	[1] Stand-by display	[1] Image/i-appli	A	Style theme default	P83 P299	
		[2] Clock format	A	Style theme default	P94 P299	
		[3] Battery icon	A	Style theme default	P91 P299	
		[4] Signal level icon	A	Style theme default	P91 P299	
		[5] Info/calendar layout	A	—	P85	
	[2] New announcement ^{*4}		A	Name : All incomings Item at incoming : Settings of Spot animation and Style theme are observed.	P92 P299	
	[3] Menu preference	[1] Menu setting ^{*5}		A	Normal : Animation Custom : Tile display Type of animation : Style theme default Icon display effect : OFF Default MENU : Normal Active shortcut : Custom	P88 P299
		[2] Customize shortcut		A	Open/close, Image/i-appli, New announcement, Style theme, Time schedule, Dictionaries, Calculator, Position location	P256
	[4] Color & Action image	[1] Color scheme		A	Style theme default	P88 P299
		[2] Call image	[1] Outgoing call	A	Display image : Default	P86
			[2] Incoming call	A	Show image : Standard image	P86
			[3] Videophone dialing	A	Display image : Default	P86
			[4] Videophone receiving	A	Show image : Standard image	P86
			[5] Contact image	A	ON	P87
			[6] Anonymous caller	C	[Anonymous/Payphone/Unavailable] Disable settings	P119
		[3] Mail image	[1] Outgoing message	A	Display image : Default	P87
			[2] Incoming message	A	Display image : Default	P87
			[3] Image message alert	A	Display image : Default	P87
			[4] Message retrieval	A	Display image : Default	P87
		[4] Videophone image		A	[Substitute image] Image : Default Chara-den [Answer machine image/Response hold image/On-hold image/Movie memo image] Image : Default	P63
	[5] Display light			A	[Display light time] Normal use : 10 sec AC adapter connected, i-appli : Terminal setting i-mode session, Camera session, Movie camera session, i-motion : Always on [Light area] Display + Key [Brightness] Brightness 3	P88

Menu			Kids' mode	Default	Page
[6] Light alert	[1] Open/close [2] Light alert [3] Call session light [4] Top of hour light [5] GPS light alert		A	Time+Random	P92
			A	Lighting pattern for incoming voice/ videophone call : Light pattern 2 Lighting pattern for incoming mail, MessageR/F : Glimmer Light color for incoming voice/videophone call : Lime Light color for incoming mail, MessageR/F : Aqua Lighting pattern and Light color for Chat mail : Sync msg alert	P91
			A	During call: Light : ON Color : Rainbow	P91
			A	Setting : Always Top of sound : Standard Volume : Level 1	P92
			A	Lighting pattern for all items : Light Light color for Position location : Lime Light color for Notifying location : Amethyst Light color for Loc. request-accept, Loc. request-verify : Grape	P92
	[7] Indicator light		A	ON	P91
	[8] Font & Language	[1] Font size	A	Standard	P93
		[2] Font style	A	Kanji/Alphameric : Round gothic Hiragana/Katakana : Kanji/Alphameric	P93
		[3] Select language	A	Japanese	P43
[3] Style theme			A	Style theme default	P83 P299
[4] Security & Locks	[1] Locks	[1] Lock on close	B	Lock on close : OFF	P116
		[2] All lock	D	—	P108
		[3] Personal data lock	C	OFF	P110
		[4] Keypad dial lock	C	OFF	P111
	[2] Privacy mode	[1] Privacy mode setting	D	Phonebook & Logs : Hide set contact Mail & Logs, My Picture, i-motion, i-appli, Loc. history(GPS) : Show all Schedule : Hide set schedule Incoming: privacy mode, Auto start : OFF	P111
		[2] Contact setting	D	—	P114
	[3] Security indicator		B	ON	P117
	[4] Receive display option		D	Call display, Message display : Privacy mode	P115
	[5] UIM		D*6	[Change PIN/PIN2 code] 0000 [PIN code ON/OFF] OFF	P106
	[6] Change code/ password	[1] Security code	C	0000	P106
		[2] Password	B	1111	P96
	[7] Scanning function	[1] Update	A	—	P333
		[2] Set auto-update	A	—	P332
		[3] Set scan	C	Scan, Message scan : Valid	P332
		[4] Version	A	—	P333
[5] Call & Answer	[1] Sound & Image	[1] Outgoing call	A	Display image : Default	P86
		[2] Call alert	A	Ring alert : Melody/サウンド着信音1 (Sound tone1) Show image : Standard image Vibrate alert : OFF Light alert : Light pattern 2/Lime	P78
	[2] Anonymous caller		C	[Anonymous/Payphone/Unavailable] Disable settings	P119
	[3] Any key answer		A	ON	P56
	[4] Headset	[1] Alert preference	C	Headset + speaker	P265
		[2] Auto answer	C	Auto answering : OFF	P265
		[3] Headset key control	C	Control function : OFF	P264
	[5] Reject/Accept call	[1] Specified caller	C	Cancel settings	P118
		[2] Unregistered caller	C	OFF	P120
	[6] Make/Receive call	[1] Priority comm mode	C	No Set Up	P57
		[2] Prefix dialing	C	Prefix1 : 009130010	P54
		[3] Sub address	C	ON	P54
	[7] Call session	[1] Noise reduction	A	ON	P54

Menu			Kids' mode	Default	Page	
[6] Videophone		[2] Close settings	A	End the call	P56	
	[8] Self mode		D	OFF	P109	
	[1] V.phone dialing img.		A	Display image : Default	P86	
	[2] Videophone alert		A	Ring alert : Melody/ハーブ (Harp) Show image : Standard image Vibrate alert : OFF Light alert : Light pattern 2/Lime	P78	
	[3] Operation		A	Auto redial as voice : OFF Display setting : Both sides Sub screen : My side Screen size : Large Visual preference : Normal Display light : Brightness 2 Speakerphone : ON	P63	
	[4] DataSession arv. act		A	V.phone priority	P64	
	[5] Image setting		A	[Substitute image] Image : Default Chara-den [Answer machine image/Response hold image/On-hold image/Movie memo image] Image : Default	P63	
	[6] External device		A	Phone	P64	
	[7] Notify switchable mode	[1] Indication ON	A	—	P64	
		[2] Indication OFF	A	—	P64	
[3] Check Indication		A	—	P64		
[7] Other	[1] Clock	[1] Date & time ^{*)}	A	Adjust time/time diff : ON Offset : +/00h00m	P43	
		[2] Auto power ON	C	Auto power ON : OFF	P249	
		[3] Auto power OFF	C	Auto power OFF : OFF	P249	
		[4] Clock display format	A	Style theme default	P94 P299	
		[5] Alarm auto power ON	D	OFF	P250	
	[2] Other	[1] Save word	A	—	P273	
		[2] DL dictionary	A	—	P274	
		[3] Reset prediction	B	—	P270	
		[4] Save phrase	A	—	P272	
		[5] Text input method	A	Input method : 5-touch Input prediction : ON Auto cursor : Normal	P275	
	[3] Font size		A	Standard	P93	
	[4] Software update		C	—	P328	
	[5] Quick start-up		A	ON	P265	
	[6] Info & Reset	[1] Call duration	A	—	P260	
		[2] Call cost	[1] Last call cost	A	—	P260
			[2] Call cost limit	C	Alert : OFF	P261
			[3] Hide call cost icon	C	—	P261
			[4] Reset call cost	C	OFF	P260
		[3] Memory status		A	—	P240
		[4] Confirm		A	—	P265
		[5] Battery level		A	—	P41
		[6] Reset		D	—	P265
		[7] Delete all data		D	—	P266
		[8] Default setting		D	[Date & time] Auto time set : ON [Security code] 0000 [Keypad sound] Sol-fa [Location request] Always permit [Kids' mode] ON [Password] 1111	P42
		[7] Side key shortcut		A	Flashlight	P103

Menu				Kids' mode	Default	Page	
[8] NW Services	[1] Voice Mail	[1] Voice Mail Service	[1] Activate	C	—	P278	
			[2] Set ring time	C	—		
			[3] Deactivate	C	—		
			[4] Check setting	C	—		
			[5] Play messages	A	—		
			[6] Voice Mail setting	C	—		
			[7] Check messages	A	—		
		[2] Tone/Vibration message notification		A	Voice Mail alert : ON Notification melody : 着信音1 (Tone1)		
		[3] Notify missed call	[1] Activate	C	—		
			[2] Deactivate	C	—		
			[3] Check setting	C	—		
		[4] Hide Voice Mail icon		A	—		
		[2] Call waiting/forward	[1] Call waiting	[1] Activate	C	—	
				[2] Deactivate	C	—	
	[3] Check setting			C	—		
	[2] Call forwarding		[1] Activate	C	—		
			[2] Deactivate	C	—		
			[3] Register The Forwarding Number	C	—		
			[4] Setting if forwarding number busy	C	—		
			[5] Check setting	C	—		
	[3] Chaku-moji		[1] Create message		A	—	
			[2] Message display settings		A	Only with Caller ID	
	[4] Caller ID	[1] Caller ID notification	[1] Activate/Deactivate	C	—		
			[2] Check setting	C	—		
		[2] Caller ID request	[1] Activate	C	—		
			[2] Deactivate	C	—		
			[3] Check setting	C	—		
	[5] Other	[1] Additional service	[1] Register USSD	C	—		
			[2] Record reply message	C	—		
		[2] Remote control	[1] Activate	C	—		
			[2] Deactivate	C	—		
			[3] Check setting	C	—		
		[3] Nuisance call barring	[1] Register the caller	C	—		
			[2] Register selected No	C	—		
			[3] Delete all entries	C	—		
			[4] Delete last entry	C	—		
			[5] Check the number of entries	C	—		
		[4] English guidance	[1] Guidance setting	A	—		
			[2] Check setting	A	—		
		[5] Dual network	[1] Dual Network Switching	D	—		
	[2] Check setting		D	—			

Menu			Kids' mode	Default	Page
	[6] Service numbers	[1] ドコモ故障問合せ	A	—	P281
		[2] ドコモ総合案内・受付	A	—	
	[7] Multi number	[1] Set Multi Number	C	—	P282
		[2] Check setting	C	—	
		[3] Number Setting	C	Basic Number : Name : 基本契約番号 (Basic Number) Phone number; The subscribing terminal phone number Additional No1 : Name : 付加番号1 (Additional No1) Additional No2 : Name : 付加番号2 (Additional No2) Additional No1/No2 Phone number : Not recorded Multi number call : Disable	
		[4] Incoming calls melody setting	C	[Additional Number1, Additional Number2] Individual setting : OFF	
	[8] Set arrival act	[1] Activate	C	—	P281
		[2] Deactivate	C	—	
		[3] Check setting	C	—	
	[9] Arrival call act		C	Answer	P281
[9] Int'l call assist	[1] Auto switch		C	Intn'l prefix : ON (Name : World Call, Intn'l prefix No. : 009130010)	P53
	[2] Country code setting		C	—	P53
	[3] Auto assist setting		C	—	P53

[9] Safety options

Menu		Kids' mode	Default	Page
Page 1				
[1] Kids' mode setting		C	ON	P96
[2] Safety alarm		C	Safety alarm : Alarm only	P97
[3] Silent alarm		C	ON	P99
[4] Loss protection	[1] Set Omamorimokon	C	—	P101
	[2] Loss setting	C	Omamorimokon : Not use	P101
Page 2				
[1] Power OFF notice		C	Notify : ON Notify interval : 15 min	P103
[2] Side key shortcut		C	Flashlight	P103
[3] Battery indicator		C	Show indicator : ON Restrict functions : OFF	P104
[4] Restrict call/ mail	[1] Call/Mail lock	C	OFF	P111
	[2] Anonymous caller	C	[Anonymous/Payphone/Unavailable] Disable settings	P119
	[3] Reject/Accept call	C	Cancel settings	P118
	[4] Unregistered caller	C	OFF	P120
	[5] Network setting	C	—	P104
Page 3				
[1] Timed theme		C	—	P104
[2] Restrict functions		C	Mail lock, i-mode lock, i-appli lock, Camera lock : OFF	P105
[3] Change security code		C	0000	P106

0 User information

Menu	Kids' mode	Default	Page
User information	A	Name/Mail address : — My phone number : The subscribing terminal phone number	P44 P257

*1 "SMSC" becomes D.

*2 All certificates saved in UIM are valid by Reset.

*3 For the network service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

*4 Reset causes only the settings of "All incomings" to be restored to the default.

*5 Reset causes Normal (including Type of icons and Type of animation) to be restored to the default.

*6 "Change PIN2 code" becomes C.

*7 Reset causes the settings of Adjust time/time diff and Offset to be restored to the default.

When Normal of Menu setting is "Simple display"

①でんわ	①電話帳検索	③カメラ	①カメラ	⑤i アプリ	①ソフトー覧	⑦設定/ス デーションナ リー	①音/パイプ		
	②電話帳登録		②マイピクチャ		②待受画面設定		②ディスプレイ		
	③リダイヤル		③待受画面設定		③i アプリ設定		③目覚まし		
	④着信履歴	④i モード	①i Menu	⑥データ BOX	①マイピクチャ		④電卓		
	⑤伝言メモー覧		②Bookmark		②i モーション		⑤伝言メモ設定		
	⑥プロフィール情報		③ラストURL		③メロディ		⑥情報表示/リセット		
②メール	①受信メール		④画面メモ		④キャラ電		⑦留守番電話		
	②送信メール						⑧プロフィール情報		
	③未送信メール								
	④新規メール								
	⑤i モード問合せ								

* "Simple display" is disabled when the screen display is English.

Setting item of Style theme

When one of 5 Style themes saved by default is selected, the items below are collectively set up.

Item		Setting				
		ColorBar (Orange)*1	Dot (Light Blue)*1	Animal (Black)*1	Cherry (White)*1	Flower
Color scheme		ColorBar	Dot	Animal	Cherry	Flower
Stand-by display*2		カラーバー (Color bar)	ドット (Dot)	アニマル (Animal)	チェリー (Cherry)	フラワー (Flower)
Clock display format	Style	Digital 1	Analog 1	Analog 2	Digital 2	Digital 4
	Time format	24 hour	24 hour	24 hour	12 hour	24 hour
	Clock layout	Top	Center	Center	Top	Center
	Day	English	English	English	Japanese	English
Menu setting (Type of animation)		ColorBar	Dot	Animal	Cherry	Flower
Battery icon/Signal level icon						
New announcement		ColorBar	Dot	Animal	Cherry	Flower

*1 The color name of FOMA terminal is in a bracket.

*2 Displayed in several patterns, and the movement or color changes according to the received signal level.

Data stored by default

- When i-appli, Chara-den, Frame, Deco-mail picture, PDF data, Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) stored by default is deleted, it can be downloaded from "@ケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" site.

Access method (As of November, 2007)

iMenu → メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → @F
ケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)

* The access method may be changed without previous notice.



QR code for
site access

◆ Melodies for ring tone

Fixed ring tone		
着信音1-6 (Tone1-6), サウンド着信音1-6 (Sound tone1-6)		
Melody ([] is the composer)		
凱旋行進曲 (Aida march) [Giuseppe Verdi]	ニュルンベルクのマイスタージンガー (The Mastersingers of Nuremberg) [Wilhelm Richard Wagner]	ラプソディインブルー (Rhapsody in Blue) [George Gershwin]
ツィゴイネルワイゼン (Zigeunerweisen) [Pablo de Sarasate]	新世界より～第四楽章 (From The New World, 4th movement) [Antonin Leopold Dvořák]	ポップンゲーム (POP'n Game)
Sound effect/Voice		
ゾウ (Elephant)	ライオン (Lion)	イルカ (Dolphin)
ヤギ (Goat)	うぐいす (Bush warbler)	ドラ (Gong)
トライアングル (Triangle)	ハーブ (Harp)	マリンバ (Marimba)
ピアノ (Piano)	バイオリン〜ピチカート (Violin-Pizzicato)	アゴゴベル (Agogobell)
フルート (Flute)	ギター (Guitar)	トランペット (Trumpet)
アテンションプリーズ (Attention please)	メールだよ (Here's mail!)	電話だよ (Phone call!)
ざんねん (Shame!)	打ち上げ (Completion)	警告 (Warning)
ヒーリング (Healing)	目覚まし時計 (Alarm clock)	もうすぐ予定の時間です (It's almost schedule time)
時間になりました (Set time arrives)	無音 (Silent)	

◆ Melodies for mail attachment

Melody ([] is the composer)	
誕生日 (Birthday)	ウィリアムテル序曲 (William Tell Overture) [GIOACCHINO ANTONIO ROSSINI]
結婚行進曲 (Wedding March) [BARTHOLDY FELIX J L MENDELSSOHN]	祝婚歌 (Bridal March) [RICHARD WILHELM WAGNER]
運命 (Symphony No.5) [VAN LUDWIG BEETHOVEN]	ジングルベル (Jingle Bells) [JAMES PIERPONT]
タフワフワイ (TAFUWA HUWAI) [Hawaiian folk song]	さくら (SAKURA) [Japanese folk song]
紅葉 (MOMIJI) [TEIICHI OKANO]	雪 (Snow) [School song]
おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ (Parade der Zinnsoldaten) [LEON JESSEL]	登場 (Appearance)
3・3・7拍子 (Three-three-seven beats)	Are you sleeping? [French folk song]
トッカータとフーガ (Toccata and fugue) [JOHANN SEBASTIAN BACH]	子守唄 (Lullaby) [FRANZ SCHUBERT]

List of characters assigned to input bar (Slot input method)

Input bar	Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)	
Upper slot	あ	あいうえお あいうえお 1
	か	かきくけこ 2
	さ	さしすせそ 3
	た	たちつてと 4
	な	なにぬねの 5
	。 。 。 *	ゝ 。
Lower slot	は	はひふへほ 6
	ま	まみむめも 7
	や	やゆよ やゆよ 8
	ら	らりるれろ 9
	わ	わをんー、。?!「」 ■ 0
	↵	Line feed

Input bar		Katakana mode (one-byte)
Upper slot	ア	アイウエオ アイウエオ
	カ	カキクケコ 2
	サ	サシスセソ 3
	タ	タチツテトツ 4
	ナ	ナニヌネノ 5
	・	・ °
Lower slot	ハ	ハヒフヘホ 6
	マ	マミムメモ 7
	ヤ	ヤユヨ ャュョ 8
	ラ	ラリルレロ 9
	ワ	ワヲンー、。?!「」 ■ 0
	↵	Line feed

Input bar		Alphabet mode (one-byte)									
Upper slot	.	. / @ ~ - : _ [¥] ^ ` { } 1									
	A	A B C a b c 2									
	D	D E F d e f 3									
	G	G H I g h i 4									
	J	J K L j k l 5									
	定	@docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm									
Lower slot	M	M N O m n o 6									
	P	P Q R S p q r s 7									
	T	T U V t u v 8									
	W	W X Y Z w x y z 9									
	!	! " # \$ % & ' () * + , ; < = > ? ■ 0									
		Line feed									

■ : Blank

* Each time you press $\odot$, "°" and "°" are switched between each other.

List of fixed phrases

- Pictogram string (14 items)

♥ ♪ ☀️ ❤️	✕ 🎵 🎧 🌟	👉 👈 👉	👤 👉 👉
📺 📶 📶	📶 🐼 🖐️	👤 🐼 💎 💎	👤 🌟 🌟 🌟 🌟 !!
📺 💎 🎵 📶	🎮 🎵 📶 =3	🎵 🎵 🎵 🎵 🎵	🌟 👤 🌟 💎 !!
➕ 👉 ↩️	💎 🌟 💎 zzz		

- **Decoration line (10 items)**

+--+--+--+--+--+--+	■ ■ □ □ ■ ■ □ □ ■ ■ □ □	. : * : . ° ★ . . : * : . ° ☆ . :
< > ∞ × ○ ○ ○ ○	♪ // ♪ // ♫ // ♬ // ♭	- - - - - - - - - -
∇ ▮ ▯ ▰ ▱ ▲ △ ▴	* * * * * * * * *	/ \ / \ / \
(^) (~) (`) (´) (¨) (ˇ)		

- **Address data format (11 items)**

http://www.	http://	@docomo.ne.jp	.net
.com	.ne.jp	.co.jp	.or.jp
.go.jp	.ac.jp	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx ~ xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx Schedule	

* The current date/time is entered in "xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx".

• Private (27 items)

今日の宿題何だっけ？教えて！
宿題終わった～？
〇〇の約束、絶対忘れないでね。
さっきの話、内緒だよ。誰にも言わないでね。
明日の〇〇、楽しみだね！
明日のテストいやだ～。勉強したあ？
今日のご飯は何～？
今日のおやつ何～？
〇〇を出ました！もうすぐ〇〇に着きます。
〇〇を出ました。迎えにきて！
〇〇で電車に乗ったよ～。
〇〇で電車を降りたよ～。
〇〇のことについて、パソコンにメールしたので、かくにんしといてね。
〇〇のことで、すぐに知りたいことがあるから、電話ちょうだい
今日は一日おつかれ。明日もがんばろう～。
今日は一日ありがとう。とても楽しかったよ。
〇〇で〇〇という、いいお店見つけたから、今度、いっしょにいかない？
今日〇〇という、えいが見たよ。とても良かった。今度見てみるといいよ。
今日のデートはどこに行きたい？〇〇なんてどうかな？
〇月〇日にみんなで〇〇へ行く計画してるんだけど、いっしょにどう？
〇〇だけど、アドレスを変えたよ。新しいアドレスは@docomo.ne.jpだよ。電話帳の登録を変えておいてね。
〇〇で〇〇時に待ち合わせしましょう。よろしくね。
〇月〇日に〇〇へ遊びに行かない？
〇月〇日の予定はどう？いっしょに〇〇なんてどうかな？
明日はいよいよ、待ちに待った〇〇だから、今日はゆっくり休んで明日に備えましょうね。
体調はどう？無理しないでゆっくり休んでね。
今日、〇〇時から〇〇チャンネルのテレビ番組の録画をお願い。

• Pictogram supported (22 items)

おはよう☀️今日も一日がんばろう!!	おやすみ💤また明日ね(-_-)zzz...
おやすみ💤いいコメ見てねzzz	ありがとう!!今日はとても楽しかったです🎉またれんらくしてね📞
m(_)_m ごめんなさい。おくれます🙇	
口へ(_)_深く反省してます👉	もう少し待ってください🙏
今、終わりました🏠これから帰ります🏠	さようなら👋また会える日を楽しみにしてます!!
(^_^)はじめてまして!ちゃんとメールとどいてる📧?	お久しぶりです!元氣!?
最近の調子はどう👉👉👉	今日の都合はどう!?
おなかすいた。食事に行かない!!?	どこか旅行に連れてって🚗?
今日何時に終わる🕒?	あとでれんらくする📞📧
れんらくちょうだい📞👉	今日は外食します!!
りょうかいしました👉じゃあね(^_^)/~~~~	おまかせします🙇
すぐにもどります👉👉👉	

• English phrases (46 items)

Hello! How are you?	Hi! What's up?
Long time no talk. How are you doing?	Good morning. Have a nice day!

Pictogram list

You can convert characters by entering the readings in hiragana/kanji mode. →P269

Pictogram	Reading
	はーと、あい、こころ、すき、らぶ
	はーと、あい、こころ、ときどき、すき、らぶ、ゆれるはーと
	はーと、しつれん、ふられた、わかれた、しょっく
	はーと、あい、こころ、すき、らぶ、はーとたち
	かお、えがお、わらう、わらい、わーい、うれしい、にこにこ
	かお、おこる、いかり、ぶん、ちっ
	かお、かなしい、こまった、ごめん、がく
	かお、かなしい、こまった、さいあく、もうやだ
	かお、だめ、ふら
	どうぶつ、いぬ
	どうぶつ、ねこ
	てんき、はれ、たいよう
	てんき、くもり、くも
	てんき、あめ、かさ
	てんき、ゆき、ゆきだるま
	てんき、かみなり、いかすち、いかづち、でんき
	てんき、うすまき、たいふう、あらし、ぐるぐる、くるくる、めまい
	てんき、きり、あめ
	てんき、こさめ、あめ、かさ
	おんぶ、おんがく、うた、るん
	おんぶ、おんがく、うた、さんれんぶ、るん、むーど
	おんせん、ふる、おふる、いいきぶん
	はな、かわい
	きす、きっす、くちびる、くち、ちゅ、ちゅう、ちゅー、きすまーく
	きらきら、ぴかぴか
	でんきゅう、ぴか、あいであ、あいでいあ、ひらめき
	いかり、おこる、おこり、きれる、むかつく、むか
	がんばる、がんばれ、ばんち、ぐー、ぐう
	ばくだん、ばくはつ
	おやすみ、すいみん、ねる、ねむい、ぐー、ずー、ぐう、ずう
	びっくり、あつ、えくすくらめーしょん、えくすくらめいしょん

Pictogram	Reading
	びっくり、ほんと、えっ、えー、えくすくらめーしょん、えくすくらめいしょん
	びっくり、ちょー、えくすくらめーしょん、えくすくらめいしょん
	しょっく、ぐらぐら、どん
	あせ、あせる、ひやあせ
	あせ、あせる、ひやあせ、なみだ、だらー、たらー
	いそぐ、いそげ、だっしゅ、ためいき、ふう、ふう、ふー、はしる
	のぼす、ちょうおん、ちょーおん
	のぼす、くるり、ちょうおん、ちょーおん
	おっけー、おーけー、おーけい、おうけい、けってい
	やじるし、みぎうえ、あがる、あげる、あっぷ、みぎななめうえ
	やじるし、みぎした、さがる、さげる、だうん、みぎななめした
	やじるし、ひだりうえ、あがる、あげる、あっぷ、ひだりななめうえ
	やじるし、ひだりした、さがる、さげる、だうん、ひだりななめした
	やじるし、ぐっと、あがる、あげる、ぐっと
	やじるし、ぼっと、さがる、さげる、ぼっと
	かお、め、からだ
	かお、みみ、からだ
	ぐー、ぐう、じゃんけん、て、こぼし、ばんち、からだ
	ちょき、じゃんけん、て、ぴーす
	ばー、ばあ、じゃんけん、て、ばい、さんせい
	あし、あしあと、あるく、とほ、からだ、きつく、けり、ける
	とらんぶ、はーと、あい、こころ
	とらんぶ、すべど
	とらんぶ、だいや
	とらんぶ、くらぶ
	のりもの、こうつう、でんしゃ、れっしゃ、えき
	のりもの、こうつう、ちかてつ、えむ
	のりもの、こうつう、しんかんせん、のぞみ、ひかり、こだま
	のりもの、こうつう、じどうしゃ、くるま、たくしー、どらいぶ、せだん

Pictogram	Reading
	のりもの、こうつう、じどうしゃ、くるま、たくしー、どらいぶ、あーるぶい
	のりもの、こうつう、ばす
	のりもの、こうつう、ぶね、ふえりー、こうかい
	のりもの、こうつう、ひこうき、じえっと、じえっとき、ぶらいと、くうこう
	のりもの、よっと、ぶね、りぞーと
	つりー、くりすます、き
	いえ、うち、おうち、じたく
	びる、かいしゃ、しょくば、がっこう
	ゆうびん、ゆうびんきょく、ぼすと
	びょういん、びょうき、けが
	ぎんこう、ばんく
	えーていえむ、えいていえむ、ぎんこう
	ほてる
	こんびに、こんびにえんす、こんびにえんすすとあ
	がそりんすたんど、がそりん、がすすた、すたんど
	ちゅうしゃじょう、ちゅうしゃ、ばーきんぐ
	しんごう、しんごうき
	といれ、かつぶる、でーと、けっこん
	しょくじ、ごはん、れすとらん、ふあみれす
	こーひー、どりんく、のみもの、かつぶ、こっぶ、きっさてん、さてん、おちゃ
	かくてる、おさけ、さけ、ばー
	びーる、おさけ、さけ、いざかや、のみかい、こんば、かんばい
	はんぱーがー、ぱーがー、けいしょく、ふあーすとぶーど
	はいひーる、ひーる、くつ、あし
	はさみ、かつと、びょういん、びょうしつ、さんばつ、とこや
	まいく、からおけ、うた、うたう
	えいが、えいがかん、しねま、かめら、さつえい、びでお
	うま、けいば、もくば、めりーごーらんど、ゆうえんち
	おんがく、おと、きく、へっどほん、へっどふあん
	え、あーと、げいじゅつ、びじゅつ、ばれっと
	えんげき、ひと、しんし、ぼうし
	いべんと、はた
	ちけっと、きつぷ
	すば一つ、うんどう、しゃつ、たんくとつぷ

Pictogram	Reading
	すば一つ、うんどう、やきゅう、そふと、ぼーる、そふとぼーる
	すば一つ、うんどう、ごるふ
	すば一つ、うんどう、てにす、たつきゅう、らけっと
	すば一つ、うんどう、さっかー、ぼーる
	すば一つ、うんどう、すきー、すのーぼーど、ぼーど、すけーと、すのぼ、すべる
	すば一つ、うんどう、ばすけっと、ばすけ、ばすけっとぼーる
	すば一つ、うんどう、ごーる、はた、れーす、えふわん、もーたーすば一つ
	ぼけべる、ぼけっとべる、ペーじゃー
	たばこ、しがー、しがれっと、きつえん、いっぽぐ
	たばこ、しがー、しがれっと、きんえん
	かめら、しゃしん、さつえい、げきしゃ
	かばん、ばつぐ、てさげ、りょうこう
	ほん、のーと、しょしんしゃ
	りぼん、ちょうねくたい、ねくたい、あめ
	ぶれぜんと、たんじょうび、おくりもの
	ろうそく、きやんどる、たんじょうび、ばーすでい、ばーすでー
	でんわ、くろでん、てれふあん、てれほん、てる、てれ
	けいたいでんわ、けいたい、けーたい、でんわ、びっち、ふおーん、ふおん
	めーる、てがみ
	めも、しよるい、れぼーと、しゅくだい、しけん
	てれび、がめん、ばんぐみ
	げーむ、こんとろーら
	しーでいー、あるぼむ、しんぐる、でいすく
	くつ、しゅーず、すにーかー、あし
	めがね
	くるまいす
	せいざ、おひつじざ、おひつじ
	せいざ、おうしざ、おうし
	せいざ、ふたござ、ふたご、すなどけい
	せいざ、かにざ、かに
	せいざ、ししざ、しし
	せいざ、おとめざ、おとめ
	せいざ、てんびんざ、てんびん、おもち、もち
	せいざ、さそりざ、さそり
	せいざ、いてざ、いて、あがる、あつぷ
	せいざ、やぎざ、やぎ

Pictogram	Reading
	せいざ、みずがめざ、みずがめ、なみ
	せいざ、うおざ、うお、さかな
	つき、しんげつ、まる
	つき
	つき、はんげつ
	つき、みかづき
	つき、まんげつ、まる
	でんわ、けいたいでんわ、けいたい、ケーたい、ふぉーん、ふぉん、ぴっち、ちゃくしん
	めーる、てがみ、じゅしん
	ふあっくす、ふあくす、じゅしん
	あいもーど、あい、どこも
	あいもーど、あい、どこも
	どこもていきょう、でい、でー、でいー
	どこもぼいんと、ぼいんと、でい、でー、でいー
	えん、かね、きんがく、ねだん、りょうきん
	ただ、むりょう、じゅう、ひま、ふりー
	あいでい、あいでいー、あいでー
	かぎ、きー、ひみつ、ばすわーど、ろっく
	かいぎょう、まがる、つづく、つづき
	さくじょ、しーえる、くりあ、くーる
	さがす、しらべる、むしめがね、さーち
	にゅー、にゅう、あたらしい、しん
	はた、もくひょう、ごるふ、いちじょうほう、いち
	だいやる、だいはる、ふりーだいやる、ふりーだいはる
	しゃーぶ
	もばきゅー、もばきゅう、しつもん、きゅー、きゅー
	1、いち、すうじ、ぼんごう
	2、に、すうじ、ぼんごう
	3、さん、すうじ、ぼんごう
	4、よん、し、すうじ、ぼんごう
	5、ご、すうじ、ぼんごう
	6、ろく、すうじ、ぼんごう
	7、しち、なな、すうじ、ぼんごう
	8、はち、すうじ、ぼんごう
	9、きゅう、く、きゅー、すうじ、ぼんごう
	0、ぜろ、れい、すうじ、ぼんごう
	かちんこ、さつえい、すたーと、はこ
	ふくろ、つぼ
	べんさき、べん
	はんこ、ひと、ひとかげ
	いす、ざせき、すわる

Pictogram	Reading
	よる、よなか、しんや、れいと
	すぐ、もうすぐ、ずーん
	おん
	おわり、えんど
	じかん、じこく、たいむ、とけい
	じてんしゃ、ちゃり、ちゃりんこ、のりもの
	れんち、すばな、こうぐ、どうぐ
	ばそこん、ぴーしー、こんびゅーた、こんびゅーたー
	えんびつ、ぶんぼうぐ
	くりっぶ、ぶんぼうぐ、てんぷ
	やじるし、さゆう
	やじるし、じょうげ
	やじるし、りさいくる、かいてん、まわる
	えぬじー、だめ
	ひみつ、まるひ
	きんし、げんきん、だめ
	くうしつ、くうせき、くうしゃ、あき、あく、から
	こうかく
	まんしつ、まんせき、まんしゃ、いつぱい、まんたん、ふる
	けいこく、きけん、ぴっくり
	こびーらいと、しー、まるしー
	とれーどまーく、ていーえむ
	れじすたーどとれーどまーく、とれーどまーく、あーる、まるあーる
	あいあぶり、あるふあ、あぶり
	あいあぶり、あるふあ、あぶり
	どるぶくろ、どる、かね、おかね
	うでどけい、とけい、うおっち
	すなどけい、とけい
	おにぎり、おむすび、ごはん、おべんとう、べんとう
	けーき、しーとけーき、でざーと、おかし、かし
	ばん、ぶれっど
	どんぶり、らーめん、めん、うどん、そば
	ゆのみ、おゆのみ、おちゃ、ちゃ
	とっくり、おちょこ、おさけ、さけ、にほんしゅ
	わいんぐらす、わいん、おさけ、さけ
	ばなな、くだもの
	りんご、あつがる、くだもの
	さくらんぼ、ちえりー、くだもの
	くろーばー、よつば、はっぱ
	ちゅーりつぷ、はな

Pictogram	Reading
	わかば、ふたば、はっぱ
	もみじ、こうよう、はっぱ
	さくら、はな
	かたつむり、まいまい、でんでんむし、どうぶつ、むし
	ひよこ、とり、どうぶつ
	べんぎん、とり、どうぶつ
	さかな、おさかな、どうぶつ
	うま、どうぶつ
	ぶた、どうぶつ、ぶー
	しゃつ、ていーしゃつ、ふく、ようふく、ていしゃつ
	すぽん、ばんつ、じーばん、じーんず、ふく、ようふく
	けしよう、くちべに、るーじゅ、りっぱ
	ゆびわ、あくせさりー、りんぐ
	おうかん、かんむり、おうさま
	べる、ちゃべる、かね
	どあ、とびら、と
	がっこう、だいがく
	なみ、うみ、つなみ、おおなみ
	ふじさん、やま
	すぽーつ、うんどう、すのーぼーど、ぼーど、すのぼ、すべる
	すぽーつ、うんどう、はしる、にげる
	かお、こまる、うーむ、うーん、うむ、むすっ、かんがえる
	かお、ほっ
	かお、ひやあせ、たらー、だらー、あせ、あせる
	かお、ひやあせ、たらー、だらー、あせ、あせる
	かお、おこる、ぶー、ぶー
	かお、ぼけー、しらー、しらけ
	かお、はーと、らぶ、すき、わーい、うれしい
	かお、あっかんぺー、ぺー、いたすら
	かお、ういんく、ういんく、ぱちっ、ぱち
	かお、うれしい、わーい、きゃっ、きゃ
	かお、がまん
	かお、どうぶつ、ねこ
	かお、かなしい、なく、えーん、わーん、なきがお
	かお、なみだ、かなしい、ぼろり、なく、なきがお
	かお、おいしい、うまい、まんぞく

Pictogram	Reading
	かお、えがお、わらう、うっしっし、うしし、ししし
	かお、さけぶ、さけび、げっそり、ひゃー、むんく
	て、おっけー、おーけー、おーけい、おうけい、ぐっど、ゆび、おやゆび、ぐっと
	てがみ、めーる、らぶれたー、こいづみ
	がまぐち、さいふ、おかね、かね

You can convert characters by entering the readings in hiragana/kanji mode.→P269

Reading	Symbol	Reading	Symbol	Reading	Symbol	
あーる	R r ゾ	から	〜	しぐま	Σ σ	
あい	I i	かりー	㍿	しち	⑦ VII	
あすたりすく	*	がんま	Γ γ	しめ	↗	
あすてりすく	*	がんまー	Γ γ	しゃーぶ	#	
あっとまーく	@	きー	X x	しゃせん	／＼	
あるふあ	A a	きごう	<> @ / //	じゅう	⑩ X	
あるふあー	A a		± × ≠ ÷	じゅういち	⑪	
あんだーばー	_		≥ ≤ ∴ ∵ ∞	じゅうきゅう	⑲	
あんど	&		∞ ∧ ∈ ∨ ∩	じゅうく	⑲	
あんばんさんど	&		∩ ∪ ⊆ ⊃ ∩	じゅうご	⑮	
いー	E e		∠ ⊂ ⊃ ⊂	じゅうさん	⑬	
いーた	H η		∪ ∩ ∅ ∆ ∇	じゅうし	⑭	
いおた	I i		Σ ≡ ≡ ∫ ≪	じゅうしち	⑰	
いこーる	=		„ ” ≧ ≦ √	じゅうしち	⑰	
いち	① I		Å % ‰ ‡ ¶	じゅうに	⑫	
いぶしろん	E ε	きゅー	Q q	じゅうはち	⑱	
うぶしろん	Y u	きゅう	⑨ IX	じゅうよん	⑭	
えい	A a	きろ	キロ	じゅうろく	⑯	
えいち	H h	きろぐらむ	kg	しょうなり	<	
えー	A a	きろめーとる	km	しょうわ	昭和	
えす	S s	く	⑨ IX	しろぼし	☆	
えつくす	X x	くさい	≡ ξ	しろまる	○	
えっち	H h	ぐざい	≡ ξ	すけい	☆★●●◎ ◇◆□■△ ▲▼▼	
えぬ	N n	くしー	≡ ξ		すらしゅ	／＼
えふ	F f	ぐらむ	グラム		ぜーた	Z ζ
えむ	M m	くろぼし	★	せくしょん	§	
える	L l	くろまる	●	せっし	℃	
えん	¥	けい	K k	ぜっと	Z z	
おう	O o	けー	K k	せみころん	；	
おー	O o	ご	⑤ V	せんち	cm セン	
おーむ	Ω ω	ごうどう	≡	せんちめーとる	cm	
おす	♂	ごめ	※	せんと	¢ ド	
おなじ	々 //	ごめじるし	※	だい	(代)	
おみくろん	O o	ころん	：	たいしょう	㊦	
おめが	Ω ω	さん	③ III	だいなり	>	
おんぐすとろーむ	Å	さんかく	△▲▽▼	だいひょう	(代)	
おんぶ	♪	し	④ IV	たう	T τ	
かい	X x	しー	C c	だがー	†	
かける	×	じー	G g	だくてん	*	
かって	「」 『』 [] “ ”	しーしー	cc	たす	+	
	"" () [] {} <> ≪ ≫	しーた	Θ θ	だぶりゅ	W w	
かつぱ	K k	じーた	Z ζ	だぶりゅー	W w	
かぶ	(株)	じえい	J j	だぶるだがー	±	
かぶしきがいしゃ	(株) KK	じえー	J j			
		しかく	□■◆◆			

Reading	Symbol
たんい	° ´ ° º º ¥ \$ ¢ £ %
ていー	T t
でいー	D d
てー	T t
でー	D d
でるた	Δ δ
てん	∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞
てんてん	∞ ∞ ∞ ∞ ∞
でんわ	TEL
ど	℃ °
どう	々 // 全
どしー	℃
どる	\$ ドル
とん	トン
ないし	～
なぜならば	∴
なな	⑦ VII
なみ	～
なんばー	No
に	② II
にじゅう	②⑩
にじゅうまる	◎
にゅー	N v
のま	々
ぱーせんと	% ㊿
ぱーみる	‰
ぱい	Π π
はいふん	—
はち	⑧ VIII
ばつ	×
はてな	?

Reading	Symbol
はんだくてん	°
びー	B b
びー	P p Π π
ひく	—
ひしがた	◇ ◆
びっくり	!
びょう	〃
ふあい	Φ φ
ぶい	V v
ふいー	Φ φ
ぶさい	Ψ ψ
ぶしー	Ψ ψ
ふとうごう	< > ≤ ≥ ≠ ≪ ≫
ぶらす	+
ぶらすまいなす	±
ふらっと	b
ふん	′
へいせい	平成
へいほうめーとる	mp
ページ	ページ
べーた	B β
べーたー	B β
へくたーる	ヘルツ
ほし	☆ ★ ※
ぼんど	£
まいなす	—
まる	○ ● ◎ ◦ ① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑩ ⑪ ⑫ ⑬ ⑭ ⑮ ⑯ ⑰ ⑱ ⑲ ⑳ ㊱ ㊲ ㊳ ㊴ ㊵

Reading	Symbol
みゅー	M μ
みり	mm ミリ
みりぐらむ	mg
みりばーる	ミル
みりめーとる	mm
むげん	∞
むげんだい	∞
めいじ	明治
めーとる	メートル
めす	♀
やじるし	→ ← ↑ ↓ ⇒ ⇐ ⇔
ゆう	(有)
ゆー	U u
ゆうげんがいしや	(有)
ゆうびん	〒
ゆうびんばんごう	〒
ゆえに	∴
ゆぶしろん	Y u
よん	④ IV
らむだ	Λ λ
りっとる	リットル
ろー	P ρ
ろく	⑥ VI
わい	Y y
わっと	ワット
わる	÷

* Some may differ from actual displays.
 * There are types of input characters as two-byte only, one-byte only and both two/one-byte characters.

Smiley list

You can convert characters by entering the readings in hiragana/kanji mode. →P269

- You can also enter "かお", "かおもじ" to convert into the smileys in .
- Greeting and reply (19 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^_^)/~	あいさつ、ばい
(^ ^)/♪	あいさつ、ばいばい
(^_^)/^	あいさつ、ばいばい
ㄵ (^_^) byebye!!	あいさつ、ばいばい
(^^)/	あいさつ、おーい、 じゃあ、ども、よろしく
(^_^)/	あいさつ、おーい、 じゃあ、ども、よろしく
(^^)/~~~~	あいさつ、ばいばい
(^_^)/	あいさつ、おーい
(//^ー^//) ♪	あいさつ、にこっ

- Laugh and happy (34 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^_^)	わらう、にこっ
(^_^)v	うれしい、にこっ
(^o^)	うれしい、うほほ、にこっ、 わーい
o(^o^o	うれしい、うきうき
(o^_^o)	うれしい、にこっ
(*^_^*)	うれしい、にこっ
(・∀・)	わらう、きたー、にこっ
ㄵ (^▽^)/	うれしい、わーい
ㄵ (´ー´)/	うれしい、わーい
(*▽▽*)	うれしい、にこっ
(☆▽☆)	うれしい、きらーん
(^^)v	うれしい、やったね、ぴー す、にこっ、ぶい
(=^ー^=)	うれしい、にこっ
(´∀´)	うれしい、にこっ
(≥▽≥)	うれしい
:-)	わらう、にこっ、すまいる
V(^o^)	うれしい、ぴーす

Smiley	Reading
~('*)	あいさつ、やあ
(*^_^)/	あいさつ、ちわっ
ㄵ (´ω`=´ω`)ノ	あいさつ、おはよう
(o^~)b	へんじ、ぐっ、ぐー
(≥ω≤)b	へんじ、ぐっ、ぐー
(・∀・n)	へんじ、はい
('^^)ok	へんじ、おっけー
(`_´)ㄵ了解!	へんじ、りょうかい
(。・_・。)/	あいさつ、やあ
(=° ω°)ノ	あいさつ、やあ

Smiley	Reading
(^3^)/チユツ	わらう、ちゅっ、にこっ
((o(^_^o))	うれしい、わくわく
(^^)	わらう、にこっ
v(^o^)	うれしい、いえい、ぶい、 ぴーす
(^_^)v	うれしい、やったね、ぴー す、にこっ、ぶい
(^o^)	わらう、にこっ
(^o^)	わらう、わーい
(^o^)/	わらう、おーい、はーい
(^o^)v	わらう、やったね、ぴーす、 にこっ、ぶい
)^o^(	わらう、ほっぺがおちる
ㄵ(^o^)/	わらう、わーい
:-)	わらう、にこっ、すまいる
ㄵ (≥▽≤)/	うれしい、きゃー
d=(^o^)=b	うれしい、ぐー
ε=ㄵ (*▽▽)ノ	うれしい、きゃー
(@^o^@)	うれしい
(´艸´)	うれしい、むふふ

• Abashed and angry (18 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^^ゞ	てれる、ぼりぼり
f(^_ ^)	てれる、てへ
(#^.^#)	てれる、にこっ、ぽっ
(*^.^*)	てれる、えへっ
(//▽//)	てれる、てれ
(*´)	てれる、てへっ
(=° ω° =)	てれる、てへっ
(*´ ｀ ㇿ ´*)	てれる、こまる、てれ
:p	てれる、てへっ
('▽')	てれる、うふふ

• Cry and sad (19 items)

Smiley	Reading
(>_<)	なく、あいた、いたい、いてー、ひえー
(T^T)	なく、うるうる
(T_T)	なく、しくしく
(/_:)	なく、しくしく
(+_+)	かなしい、びくっ
(x_x:)	かなしい、がっくり
(/_・:)	なく、ぐすん
(つㇿ´)	なく、ぐすん
○ _ _	かなしい、がっくり

• Surprised (28 items)

Smiley	Reading
(*_*)	おどろき、びくっ
(..?)	おどろき、めがてん
(..:)	おどろき、めがてん
(°-°)	おどろき、うーん
@_@	おどろき、びくっ
(-:)	おどろき、ぎくっ
(-☆)	おどろき、きらーん
(□□;)!!	おどろき、がーん
(° 〇° ;)	おどろき、ぼかーん
Σ(□□)!	おどろき、びっくり、がーん、ぎく
(◇◇;)	おどろき、えっ
ゝ(° □° ;)ノ	おどろき、えっ
(;° □°)	おどろき、えっ
(((((° ㇿ° :))))	おどろき、がくがく

Smiley	Reading
ゝ(*´ ㇿ´)ノ	おこる、こら、こるあ、こるあ
o-_-)=○☆	おこる、ばんち
(ノ"-)ノゝゝゝ	おこる、ちゃぶだい
(-_-#)	おこる、こらっ
:-)	おこる、ふまん
ψ(´ ㇿ´)ψ	おこる、こら
(ノ´ ㇿ´)ノ	おこる、こらっ
(●° ε´ ●)	おこる、ぶんぶん、むかつ

Smiley	Reading
(´・ω・´)	かなしい、しょぼん
(;O:)	なく、しくしく
(>_<.)	なく
(;:)	なく、しくしく
(T-T)	なく、なき、うるうる
(TOT)	なく、なき、うるうる
(/_・o)	なく、いたい
:<	なく、かなしい
(;´ ㇿ ㇿ)	なく、なき、ぐすん
°・(ノㇿ°)°・	なく、えーん

Smiley	Reading
(=.=:)	おどろき、ぎくっ、てつや
(.・:)	おどろき、めがてん
(° 〇°)	おどろき、ぎくっ、ぎょ
(° 〇° ;)	おどろき、ぎくっ、ぎょ
@_@。	おどろき、びくっ、ぎょっ
(° ㇿ°)	おどろき、ぼかーん
(°_°)	おどろき、うーん
(.・:;)	おどろき、めがてん
(.・:)	おどろき、めがてん
(.・:;)	おどろき、めがてん
(.・o)	おどろき、めがてん
(° 〇°)/	おどろき、おおー、びっくり
(° 〇° ::)	おどろき、ぎくっ
Σ(° □° ;)	おどろき、がーん

• Question and upset (21 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^^;)	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ
(?_?)	ぎもん、なぜ
(-_-;)	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ
w=(° o°)=w	ぎもん、ばたばた
σ(^_^;)?	ぎもん、えっ
(;¬_¬)ゞ-	ぎもん、じー
O(><);(><)O	あせり、あたふた
(° Д° ;≡;° Д°)	あせり、あたふた
^^;	あせり、ぎくっ
(^^;;	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ
(^_^;)	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ

Smiley	Reading
(^~^;	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ
(¬_¬;)	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ
(¥_¥;	ぎもん、ぎくっ、あせ
(*_*;	あせり、びくっ
^_^;	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ
(?_?;	ぎもん、ぎくっ、なぜ
ε=┐(・_・)┐	あせり、にげる
(° ▽° ;)	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ、えっ
((O(><)O))	あせり、じたばた
(;° O°)	あせり、ぎくっ、あせ

• Others (61 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^▽^@)♪♪♪	うたう
(^◇^)*	りょうかい、おっけー、らじゃ
m(_ _)m	べこり
(..)_	べこり
<(_ _)>	ありがと、おねがい、ごめん、べこり
≡≡≡^(*--)/	いそぐ、にげる
(^_~;))))))コソコソ...	こそこそ
p(^-^~)q	がんばれ、ふぁいと
:)	ういんく
(^_~)	ういんく
(・∀・)イイ	いい
(^人^)	かんしゃ、ありがとう
!(^!)	びんぼーん
ヽ(^ ^)	よしよし、おい
(*≥m≤*)	ぶっ
(σ・∀・)σ	げつつ
(――)	にやり
(・∀・)っ	どうぞ
(^_~)且~	どうぞ、おちゃ
(㊦ □)㊦	きて、かもん、おいで
♪~(――ε――)	くちぶえ
(――)y-~~~	たばこ
(`・ω・´)	しゃきーん
ㄘ(・∀・)ㄘ	せーふ
(-;-)y-	いっぶく
(-o-)y-***	いっぶく
(~~)	うまい、たべる
(人)	おねがい
(^_~)人(^_~)	かんぱい、なかま、たっち
(i_i)\(^_~)	よしよし

Smiley	Reading
(^▽^σ)〇〇	つんつん
~~(m´Д`~)m	たすけて
~~(m`∀`~)m	いひひ
φ(。_。)ㄨㄨㄨ	めもめも、かきかき
(°▽^)モモシ	もしもし
(´□´)	あーん
ㄣ(――▽――;)ㄣ	やれやれ
(´^`~;)	はあ、ためいき
(;-_-)=3	ためいき
(-;-)	うーん
(´ー´)	ぶぶん、じまん
(´¬´)	よだれ
(――+――)ㄗ	ぶっ
(――)	ほへー
(σ)	ほへー
(p_-)	むしめがね
(-_-)	じとっ
(-;-)	じとっ
(-;-)凸	ちちち
(..)	どれどれ
[壁]_-)	ちらっ
(+。+)	いたい
(-_-)zzz	ねてる、ねる
(_ _)oO	ねむい
(´_>`)	ぶーん
(UoU)	ねむい
(^I)^	くま
U^I^U	いぬ
ホィツ(――)ノ	ぼい
ヽ(° ▽ °)ノ	よだれ
>°))))≡	さかな

* Some may differ from actual displays.

Combination of Multiaccess functions

Availability of operations of processes generated or to be performed for each operation currently in progress is shown below :

- When making a videophone call with an external device connected, see In 64K data communication.
- i-mode mail reception includes reception of MessageR/F.

○ : New communications enabled △ : New communications enabled by condition
× : New communications disabled

Current status			During a voice call	During a videophone call	In i-mode	In Packet communication with a PC	In 64K data communication
Processes that occur or are performed	Voice call	Send	△*1	×	○	○	×
		Receive	△*1, 2, 3	△*2, 3, 4	○	○	△*2, 3, 5
	Videophone call	Send	×	×	○*6	×	×
		Receive	△*2, 3, 4	△*2, 3, 4	△*7	△*8, 9	△*2, 3, 4
	i-mode	Connect	○	×	×	×	×
	i-mode mail	Send	○	×	○	×	×
		Receive	○*10	×	○	×	×
	SMS	Send	○	×	○	○	×
		Receive	○*10	○*10	○	○	○*10
	Packet communication with a PC	Send	○	×	×	×	×
		Receive	○	×	×	×	×
	64K data communication	Send	×	×	×	×	×
		Receive	△*3, 8, 11	△*3, 8, 11	△*8, 11	△*8, 11	△*8, 11

*1 During a call, a subscriber to Call waiting can make or receive a call to/from another party.

*2 Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, if subscribed to, can be used.

*3 When Set arrival act is Activate, Arrival call act is used.

*4 When Call waiting is activated, calls are recorded as missed calls.

*5 When Call waiting is Activate, you can select either exiting current communication to answer the phone or rejecting the call.

*6 i-mode connection is terminated.

*7 Depend on DataSession arv. act.

*8 Unanswered calls are recorded as missed calls.

*9 If Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service is active and Ring time is "0 Sec.", it is available by various services.

*10 The ring tone does not sound.

*11 If Call Forwarding Service is active and Ring time is "0 Sec.", it is available by Call Forwarding Service.

Combination of Multitask functions

The table below indicates whether an item in New Task start menu can be activated combined with the currently running function/group.

- Some activatable functions may be unavailable depending on the condition of the FOMA terminal.

○ : Available × : Unavailable

Menu items Executing functions/group	Voice call	Videophone call	Data communication	Dial	Mail	i-mode	i-appli	Phonebook & Logs	Data Box	LifeKit	Accessory	Adjust volume	Silent mode ON/OFF
During a voice call	Combination of Multiaccess functions →P315			×	○	○	○	○*2	○*2	○*2	○	○*2	×
During a videophone call				×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○*2	○*2	×
In Packet communication with PC				○	×	×	○	○	○*2	○	○	○	○
During 64K data communication				×	○*2	×	○	○*2	○*2	○*2	○	○*2	×
Dial input	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○*2	○	○	○	○
Mail	○	○	○*2	○	○*2	○*2	○	○	○*2	○	○	○	○
i-mode	○	○	○*2	○	○*2	×	×	○	○*2	○	○*2	○	○
i-appli	○	○	○	○	○*2	×	×	○	×	○	○*2	○	○
Phonebook & Logs	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*2	○*2	○	○	○	○
Data Box	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*2	○*2	○	○	○
LifeKit (except infrared communication)	○	○	○*2	○	○	○*2	○*2	○*2	×	○*2	○	○	○
Accessory	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*2	○	○*2	○	○
Settings & NW services	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	×	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2
User information	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*2	○*2	○	○	○	○
Safety options	○	○	○*2	○	○*2	○*2	○*2	○	○*2	○	○*2	○	○

*1 Some functions may be activated depending on the running function.

*2 Some functions may not be activated depending on the running function.

Services available for FOMA terminal

Service	Phone number
Directory assistance service (Charged : service fee + call fee) (Not provided for those who do not require Directory assistance service)	104 (no area code)
Sending telegrams (Charged : telegram fee)	115 (no area code)
Time (Charged service)	117 (no area code)
Weather (Charged service)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster recorded message service (Charged service)	171 (no area code)
Collect call (Charged : service fee + call fee)	106 (no area code)

INFORMATION

- If you use the directory assistance service (104), a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen with tax included) is billed together with the call charge. This service is available without charge for those visually impaired or physically disabled in the upper body. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a general subscriber phone (as of November, 2007).
- This FOMA terminal is applicable to "Emergency Location Report". When making an emergency call to 110, 119, 118, etc., information of your location (location information) is automatically informed to an emergency call receiving organization such as police. Depending on your location and/or wave reception conditions, the emergency call receiving organization may not be able to recognize the correct location.
When location information is notified, the name of the emergency call receiving organization the information is sent to appears on the stand-by display.
When the caller ID is hidden for the call, i.e., by appending "184" to the dialed number, none of location information or your phone number is notified; however, the organization may acquire the location information and phone number regardless of your settings, if they have determined that such information is necessary for the protection of life, etc. The area and timing of implementing "Emergency Location Report" vary by the preparatory state of respective emergency call receiving organizations.
- When calling to 110, 119 or 118 from FOMA terminal, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone and give your phone number and your current location precisely since the police or fire department has to call you back for confirmation. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, do not move when making the call and do not turn off the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.

- Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or general subscriber phone if you cannot get in touch with the local authorities.
- If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen with tax included) per call (as of November, 2007).
- Customers who use Call forwarding from a general subscriber phone whose forwarding destination is a mobile phone, may still hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy, out of service area or turned OFF due to the settings.
- You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q2, Message Dial and make credit card calls. However, credit card calls can be made from a general subscriber phone or a payphone to a FOMA terminal.

Options and related devices

Combining the FOMA terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety of uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the area.

For details, contact a sales outlet such as DoCoMo Shop.

For details about the optional devices, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA AC Adapter 02^{*1}
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Battery Pack F09
- In-Car Holder 01
- Desktop Holder F21
- Back Cover F24
- Carry Case L 01
- FOMA USB Cable^{*2}
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01^{*2}
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01^{*3}/P02^{*3}
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01^{*3}
- Omamorimokon F01
- Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use^{*1}
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver^{*3}

^{*1} When using the adapter overseas, a conversion plug adapter applicable to the country you are going to stay is required.

^{*2} If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.

^{*3} Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 is required to connect to F801i.

Playing movie data recorded with FOMA terminal on PC

You can play movies (MP4 format) recorded with FOMA terminals on PC by sending using data transfer such as mail attachment.

- Movie file recorded with FOMA terminal→P125

❖ Movie playing software

Playing movies on PC (MP4 format) requires QuickTime Player (free of charge) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP), which is provided by Apple Computer, Inc.

QuickTime Player can be downloaded from the website below.

<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

- Downloading software requires PC with Internet access. Communication charges are separately required for downloading.
- For details including the operating environment, downloading procedure and operating procedure, see the website shown above.

Troubleshooting

Check for the necessity of software update first, and update the software if necessary. →P328

■ Power supply and charging

● FOMA terminal cannot be turned ON (the terminal cannot be used).

- Is the battery pack connected properly? →P37
- Is the battery depleted? →P40, 41
- When the FOMA terminal is active in Dual Network Service, the FOMA terminal service is not available. Check whether FOMA terminal is active or not. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

● FOMA terminal cannot be charged.

- Is the battery pack connected properly? →P37
- Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean the terminal with dry cotton swab, etc.
- Is the AC adapter connector securely inserted to the FOMA terminal's jack or the desktop holder connection terminal? Is FOMA terminal correctly mounted on the desktop holder? →P40

● The light on sub-display section flashes during charging.

- End any calls or communications immediately. Remove the AC adapter (Desktop holder) and DC adapter from the FOMA terminal, then connect them correctly and start over. →P40
- If the problem still persists, contact a sales outlet such as DoCoMo Shop.

● All icons on the top of the display blink and alarm is heard.

The battery is almost exhausted. Charge the battery. →P39, 41

■ Phone

● Calls cannot be made using the keypads.

- Is loss protection lock activated? →P101
- Have you activated All lock? →P108
- Have you activated Omakase Lock? →P108
- Have you activated Self mode? →P109
- Have you activated Keypad dial lock? →P111
- Have you set Lock on close? →P116

● After dialing a number, you hear a busy tone and cannot establish a call.

- Have you dialed the area code?
- Did you hear the dial tone before dialing?
- Is 圏外 (out of service area) displayed? →P42

● The ring alert does not sound.

- Is Call alert volume of Adjust volume set to "Silent"? →P79
- Is the function below set?
 - Specified caller →P118
 - Anonymous caller →P119
 - Ring alert delay →P119
 - Unregistered caller →P120
- Have you activated Public mode? →P58
- Have you activated Silent mode? →P82
- Have you activated Self mode? →P109
- When Ring time for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service is "0 Sec.", the ring tone does not sound. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- Is Greeting msg resp time "0 Sec."? →P60
- Is Delayed time in Auto answer "0sec"? →P265

● During a voice call, the distant party's voice is hard to listen to or too loud.

Has Listen volume of Adjust volume been changed? →P47, 79

● When a call comes in, the terminal operates in a ring alert, image or light not set.

- Ring alerts, if any, set in multiple functions sound according to the priority levels. →P79
- Incoming images, if any, set for multiple functions appear according to the priority levels. →P87
- Lighting patterns and/or light colors, if any, set for multiple functions operate according to the priority levels. →P91
- Have you activated All lock? →P108
- Have you activated Omakase Lock? →P108
- Have you activated Personal data lock? →P110
- Have you activated Privacy mode? →P111
- Is Receive display option set? →P115

- When there is an incoming call, functions for displaying the name or sounding the ring alert as saved in the Phonebook are not activated.
 - The phone number of the caller does not match that saved in Phonebook. Register the correct phone number in the Phonebook (Name displays→P66).
 - Have you activated All lock?→P108
 - Have you activated Omakase Lock?→P108
 - Have you activated Personal data lock?→P110
 - Have you activated Privacy mode?→P111
 - Is Receive display option set?→P115
- **Settings and operations**
 - The menu icon becomes a key, which is not selectable.

For a function not executable due to lock functions or no UIM inserted, the icon  appears.→P35, 107
 - Occasionally, menus cannot be selected or selecting a menu causes an authentication screen to appear.

In Kids' mode, some functions are disabled or require authentication.→P96, 290
 - The Keypad sound is not generated.
 - Is Operation sound "OFF"?→P80
 - Have you activated Silent mode?→P82
 - "Insert UIM." appears when the FOMA terminal is powered on.

The UIM may not be properly attached or may be damaged. Check UIM.→P35
 - The authentication screen appears every time FOMA terminal is opened.

Lock on close is ON.→P116
 - "All locked." appears on the display.

All lock is ON.→P108
 - "Omakase Lock active." appears on the display.

Omakase Lock is ON.→P108
 - The authentication screen appears if trying to display phonebook or mail

Privacy mode is ON. Perform authentication or cancel the setting.→P111
 -  appears on the stand-by display.

Side key hold is ON.→P116
 -  appears on the stand-by display and no operation can be made.

Lock on close is ON.→P116
 - With FOMA terminal folded, pressing  has no effect.

Side key hold is ON.→P116
 - The date and time is deleted.

With Adjust time/time diff set to "OFF" in Date & time, removing the battery pack or leaving it exhausted for a long time may delete the date and time.→P43
 - The display is dim.
 - Is power saving mode active?→P43
 - Is Brightness of Display light changed?→P88
 - The lighting for the display and keypads does not go ON.

Is Normal use in Display light time in Display light "0 sec"?→P88
 - Alarm clock or schedule reminder is set, but it does not operate at the specified date and time while the power is turned OFF.

Is Alarm auto power ON is "OFF"?→P250
 - Call cost is not totaled.

The call cost totaled on the UIM may have reached the upper limit (approximately ¥ 16,770,000). It can be reset to ¥0.→P260
 - Omamorimokon cannot be registered.
 - Is Omamorimokon power OFF?→P100
 - Is Omamorimokon placed close to FOMA terminal when it is powered?→P101
 - Loss protection lock cannot be canceled.
 - Is Omamorimokon power OFF?→P100
 - Is the distance between FOMA terminal and Omamorimokon in an allowable range?→P100
 - Is loss protection lock activated long time? If the distance between Omamorimokon and FOMA terminal is outside an allowable range long time, communications are disabled. In such a case, open/close the FOMA terminal, turn the power of Omamorimokon OFF and ON or press the search button of Omamorimokon.
 - Operations of Loss protection are unstable.
 - Are there any obstacles between Omamorimokon and FOMA terminal? Check operations in conditions with no obstacles.
 - Are there electronic devices emitting wave or radio stations in the vicinity? Keep Omamorimokon and FOMA terminal away approximately 5 cm or more from electronic devices and radio stations.
 - Is Omamorimokon battery in low level?→P102
- **Mail, i-appli and data**
 - Still images and movie taken with the camera are blurred.
 - Shoot in Shake reduce Auto mode.→P135
 - When shooting an object nearby, use Macro shooting.→P133
 - When a mail is received, the terminal operates in a ring alert, image or light not set.
 - Mail alerts, if any, set in multiple functions sound according to the priority levels.→P79
 - Lighting patterns and/or light colors, if any, set for multiple functions operate according to the priority levels.→P91
 - When movie/i-motion containing sound and image is set as Mail ring alert, the set i-motion is used as the image.
 - If multiple mails are received at the same time, the terminal operates as set for the last mail received.
 - Have you activated Privacy mode?→P111
 - Is Receive display option set?→P115

● **Names do not appear or ring alert does not sound at the time of mail reception even though they have been registered in the Phonebook.**

- The phone number or the mail address of the party does not match that saved in Phonebook. Register the correct phone number or mail address in the Phonebook (Name displays → P66).
- Have you activated Privacy mode? → P111
- Is Receive display option set? → P115

● **The still image and movie appears as and .**

Destroyed data cannot be displayed correctly.

● **i-appli/i-appli stand-by display cannot be activated.**

- Activation is disabled due to UIM operation restriction. → P36
- Has i-appli been in suspended condition by IP (Information Provider)?
- Activating i-appliDX requires the date and time setting of FOMA terminal. → P43
- With i-appliDX, communication may be made to confirm the validity of i-appli regardless of the network transmission setting of i-appli. Some i-appli may not be activated until confirmation of the validity have finished.
- When loss protection lock, Battery indicator, i-appli lock, All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock or Privacy mode is ON (when i-appli is "Authorized access"), i-appli stand-by display cannot be activated. → P102, 104, 105, 108, 110, 111

● **The lighting for the display does not go ON while i-appli is running.**

- When "0 sec" is set for Normal use in Display light time in Display light and "Terminal setting" is set for i-appli, the light does not light. → P88, 203
- Even when "Software" is set for i-appli, the light does not turn on in Public mode.

● **Data transfer is not performed**

Are you using USB HUB? If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.

■ **Other**

● **The display has afterimages.**

- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, afterimages may remain. Remove the battery pack with the power turned off.
- If FOMA terminal is left open for a while with the same screen displayed, afterimages of that screen may remain even after changing the screen for a certain operation.

● **The display has some dots always lit or unlit.**

FOMA terminal displays are manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit. Note that, this shows characteristics of liquid crystal displays and not defects in FOMA terminals.

● **A battery icon or antenna icon not shown in the instruction manual appears./The number of possible settings in Color scheme increased./Animation designs for Menu preference increased.**

A secret function has been activated. To activate or cancel this function, enter "ドク□" to the group name in the custom menu. → P256

Error messages

Major error messages displayed on the FOMA terminal are shown in the English alphabetical order as follows :

- The "(number)" or "(XXX)" in error messages is a code used to distinguish the error sent from i-mode Center.

- **A Network error has occurred.**
Press  to close GPS function.
- **Address is not valid.(451)**
Make sure that the address is correct.
- **Apply secret attribute to mail address and SMS? Procedure may take time depending on items.**
This message appears when external phonebook entries with Secret attribute set are loaded or when Secret attribute is set for phonebook entries.→P114
- **Authentication interrupted.**
Displayed when you stop authentication by pressing  in the Authentication screen.
- **Authentication type is not supported.(401)**
The authentication type is not supported and connection to the specified site or website is disabled.
- **Cannot execute because of other tasks.**
When updating pattern data, terminate all other functions in advance.
- **Caution! This SMS includes Phone Nos. or URLs. Be careful if you do not recognize the sender.**
 - With Message scan of Set scan is "Valid", you make an attempt to display SMS containing a phone number and/or URL description.
 - It does not appear when mopera mail or voice mail reception notification is received in SMS.
- **Certificate is rejected.(tampered)**
The site certificate has been altered. Connection is suspended.
- **Check address.**
 - Failed to transmit the SMS. Make sure that the address.
 - An incorrect or no mail address was input to the mail group.
- **Check SMS center setting.**
SMS settings (SMSC) are incorrect.→P195
- **Connection failed.**
Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please retry in a place with good wave conditions.
- **Connection failed.(403)**
Failed to connect for a certain reason such as connection rejection.
- **Connection failed.(562)**
Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please retry in a place with good wave conditions.
- **Connection interrupted.**
Please retry in a place with good wave conditions. If the error persists, retry later.
- **Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion.**
Download has suspended because the data size exceeds 10 Mbytes while downloading i-motion data.
- **Continue using i-appli and transmit data?**
After "Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?" appears, an attempt was made by i-appli to make communications.
- **Corrupted data.**
i-appli cannot be started from invalid data read with Bar code reader.
- **Corrupted data. Restore default setting?**
The data contains error. Select "Yes" to return to the default setting. Functions cannot be started without restoring the default setting.
- **Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?**
This message appears when communications using i-appli are made very frequently in a predetermined period of time. Select "Yes" to continue using i-appli, "No" to continue i-appli stopping i-appli communications or "Terminate i-appli" to stop i-appli.
- **Date and time not set. Unable to start.**
Some functions cannot be activated before date and time are set.→P43
- **Dial callout restricted.**
This prohibited operation is unavailable in Keypad dial lock ON.→P111
- **Download failed.**
Communication was interrupted during reception. Please retry in a place with good wave conditions.
- **Error in image. Does not work correctly.**
Unable to display the Flash graphic due to image data error.
- **Failed to read/clear call cost information.**
The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty.→P35
- **Failed to view message data.**
Mail data cannot be referenced in chat mail.
- **Folder is full.**
Unable to receive MessageR/F because of insufficient memory space. Please read, release protection or delete unread MessageR/F.→P156
- **i-appli stand-by display terminated due to security error.**
The i-appli stand-by display has been closed due to an unpermitted operation or i-appli action.
- **Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.**
 - Unable to receive SMS because of insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or UIM. Please read, release protection or delete unread mail.→P177, 182, 197

● **Inbox is full.**

Unable to receive i-mode mail because of insufficient memory space in the Inbox. Please read unread i-mode mail, release protection or delete unnecessary i-mode mail.→P177, 182

● **Infrared**

Connection interrupted.

An error occurred during infrared communication. During infrared communication, do not move FOMA terminal from the right location before data sending/receiving completes.→P240

● **Infrared**

Failed to connect via authentication.

Sending all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct.→P241

● **Infrared**

No response. Retry data exchange?

A certain period of time elapsed in infrared communication state, but no communicating parties are found. Locate your and the other party's FOMA terminals correctly.→P240

● **Infrared**

No UIM inserted. Unable to start requested software.

Even if an i-appli To is set to data received by infrared communication, it is not activated due to UIM operation restriction.→P36

● **Input error (205)**

Input data for the site or website is incorrect.

● **Insufficient memory.**

Operation interrupted due to insufficient memory. If it appears frequently, once turn OFF the FOMA terminal and then turn it ON.

● **Insufficient memory. Quit application.**

Insufficient memory. The application is terminated stopping operation.

● **Invalid data**

The data contains an error and cannot be downloaded.

● **Invalid data. Connection cannot be established.(400)**

Cannot be connected because of the error in the site or website. Make sure that the URL.

● **Invalid data. Unable to save.**

- The downloaded Chara-den contains invalid data.
- Data received through infrared communications cannot be saved because it is in a format incompatible with FOMA terminal.

● **Invalid data.(xxx)**

- Unable to display because there is an error in the received data.
- Sending auto-send message failed.

● **Invalid information. Unable to play.**

Playing is impossible because attached data is incorrect.

● **Invalid UIM. Requested service not available.**

Operation is disabled by UIM operation restriction function. Insert the same UIM used when saving data and/or files.→P36

● **Invalid UIM. Requested software failed to start.**

i-appli cannot be activated because of UIM operation restriction. Before using, insert the same UIM used when downloading i-appli.→P36

● **以下の宛先にはメール送信できませんでした (561) Mails could not be sent to following address.(561)○○@△△△.ne.jp**

Sending i-mode mail to the following address failed : Select ● to display the receiver address of the failed message sending. Check the receiver address and retry sending in a place with good wave conditions. Mail addresses displayed in the message vary depending on the destinations.

● **Memory full. Unable to save.**

FOMA terminal does not have enough memory space and the SMS cannot be saved. Move SMS to UIM or delete messages/SMS.→P182, 195

● **Message cannot be read. Still retrieving message data.**

The message data cannot be viewed because the message or the folder is used by the other process.

● **Message kept in center.**

The SMS have already been sent.

● **No content is available.(204)**

Could not find data at the specified site.

● **No requested software**

The software specified is not stored in your FOMA terminal.

● **No response.(408)**

Unable to receive a response from a site or website within the specified time and the communication is disconnected. Retry later.

● **Out of service area.**

Unable to execute because the terminal is in a place where radio waves do not reach or out of the service area.

● **Page is not found.(404)**

Make sure that the URL is correct.

● **Password is not correct.(401)**

The user name or password entered on the Authentication screen of sites or website is incorrect.

● **Please wait.**

- Failure in the voice line/packet communications facilities or congestion in voice line network/ packet communications network. Retry later.
- A call can be made to 110, 119 and 118. However, the connection may not be established depending on the conditions.

● **Please wait for a while (Packet)**

Failure in the packet communications facilities or congestion in packet communications network. Retry later.

- **PUK blocked.**
Contact a DoCoMo Shop.
- **Receiving messages stopped. Some messages unreceived.**
Unable to receive all SMS because an error occurred during reception. Please execute Check new message for SMS in a place with good wave conditions.→P194
- **Registration is in progress. (554)**
User registration with i-mode is in process. Retry later.
- **Remotely Controllable services denied**
Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service that you tried to control remotely has not subscribed yet. A subscription is required separately.
- **Replay period has not yet started.**
Unable to play because of the term prior to the replay period specified for i-motion. Check the details.→P238
- **Requested software unavailable.**
i-appli cannot be started because of an error. Starting i-appli To is disabled if there is a problem in the settings or start-up conditions.
- **Root certificate has expired. Connect?**
The CA certificate has been expired. (→P157)
This may appear when date and time are not set or wrong. Set the time and date correctly before connecting.→P43
- **Root certificate is not valid.**
FOMA terminal certificate is invalidated by setting. Change the setting.→P157
- **Save unsaved data to phone memory or delete.**
Infrared communication INBOX is full. Save the data from INBOX into FOMA terminal or delete it.→P243
- **Service not registered.**
 - Unable to run because you are not an i-mode subscriber. You need to subscribe to use the service.
 - If you have subscribed to i-mode after purchasing FOMA terminal, once turn FOMA terminal power OFF and then turn ON.
- **Service unavailable.**
The SMS service is not available.
- **Size of this page is not supported.**
 - The size of site or Web page exceeds the limit size. Press  to display the data already acquired normally.
 - The downloading data exceeds the limit size.
- **Software terminated due to security error.**
i-appli has been terminated due to an unpermitted operation or i-appli action.
- **Software updated.**
i-appli has already been upgraded to the latest version.
- **SSL session cannot be established.**
SSL session was interrupted due to a session error or an authentication error on the server side.
- **SSL session failed.**
A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL session. Session is suspended.
- **The software contains an error.**
Unable to import because i-appli data contains an error.
- **This certificate has expired. Connect?**
The term of validity of the site certificate is premature or overdue. (→P157)
This may appear when date and time are not set or wrong.→P43
- **This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?**
CN name (server name) of the site certificate does not match the actual server name.→P157
- **This data may not be replayed.**
i-motion or movie file format is not supported on the FOMA terminal.
- **This site is not certified. Connect?**
The site certification is not supported by FOMA terminal.
- **This software is not supported by this phone.**
The i-appli to download is not compatible with this FOMA terminal.
- **This software is presently out of use.**
Using i-appli is stopped by the IP (Information Provider).
- **This UIM cannot be recognized.**
The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty.
Check that UIM is inserted correctly.→P35
- **Time out**
The i-mode Center is busy. Retry later.
- **Time reset. Unable to download/play data. Set auto time adjustment ON in Date & Time and restart phone.**
When setting Auto time adjust "OFF" in Set date and time, removing the battery pack or leaving it exhausted for a long time may cause the date and time to be deleted.→P43
- **Too much data was entered.**
Unable to transmit data because too many characters were entered in the entry field of the site or Web page. Please reduce the number of characters and retry transmission.
- **Too much text entered. Entry uncompleted.**
An attempt is made to save an item containing characters exceeding the limit selected from a site, etc. to phonebook. Press  to display phonebook registration screen with excess characters erased.
- **Transmission failed.**
Failed to transmit the SMS. Please move to another location with good signal quality and retry transmission.
- **Transmission failed.(552)**
Failed to transmit the i-mode mail because of an error of the i-mode Center. Retry later.
- **UIM full.**
UIM does not have enough storage space and SMS cannot be saved.
Delete or move SMS in the UIM to FOMA terminal.→P197
- **UIM not inserted. Requested service unavailable.**
The UIM is not inserted.→P35

- **Unable to check new messages.**
Please retry in a place with good wave conditions. If the error persists, retry later.
- **Unable to download. Data exceeds maximum size. (452)**
The size of site or Web page exceeds the limit size.
- **Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error.**
Cannot acquire because the replay restriction data is incorrect.
- **Unable to retrieve the requested URL.(504)**
Failed to connect to the specified site, etc. for a certain reason. Retry the connection.
- **Unable to save specified image.**
Failed to save because the image contains error.
- **"○○○.ne.jp"宛のメールが混み合っているため、送信することができません (555) Unable to send. "○○○.ne.jp" is not available temporarily.(555)**
i-mode Center is busy. Please wait for a while and retry. The domain name displayed in the message varies depending on the receiver.
- **Unable to shoot serially.**
You cannot shoot serially because of insufficient memory space. Continuous shoot is cancelled automatically.
- **Unable to switch to data transfer mode.**
As the FOMA terminal is performing communication, data transfer mode cannot be set. Try again after the communication ends.
- **Unable to update pattern definitions.**
Updating the pattern definitions has failed. Stop all other functions currently running and retry the update in a place with good signal quality.
- **Unsupported content.**
Because the content is not supported by FOMA terminal, operations selecting the contents are not available.
- **URL address changed.(301)**
The site or website automatically performs URL transfer or the URL was changed.
- **URL address is not valid.(xxx)**
The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL.
- **URL is too long to register.**
Unable to register as a Bookmark because the number of characters of URL exceeds the limit.
- **Usage is currently restricted. Try again later.**
This message appears when a very large volume of data was sent or received in a predetermined period of time with the i-mode packet flat-rate service used. Connection may be disabled for a predetermined period of the time; use i-mode after a while.
- **You have no certificate. Connect?**
The user certificate has not been downloaded.
- **Your certificate has expired. Connect?**
The user certificate has expired.→ P157
- **Your HTTP version is not supported.(505)**
The specified site or website does not support i-mode.

Warranty and After-Sales Service

❖ Warranty

- Make sure that you receive a written warranty provided with every FOMA terminal. Store the warranty securely after reading the written contents and items such as "shop name/purchased date". If it does not contain the necessary information, contact the shop where you bought it immediately. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Since troubles, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal may cause contents in the phonebook, etc. to be modified or deleted, DoCoMo recommends making a copy of the phonebook data, etc., in case. In repairing, etc. of FOMA terminal, information downloaded through i-mode or i-appli is not transferred to repaired FOMA terminal with some exceptions according to the copyright law.
 - * This FOMA terminal allows to save phonebook and other data in Data Center by using Data Security Service (service to be charged requiring subscription).
 - * If a PC is available, you can use DoCoMo keitai datalink (→ P288) and FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional), or FOMA USB Cable (optional) to transfer phonebook and other data to the PC and store.

■ When problems occur

Before requesting service, read the section

"Troubleshooting" in this manual (→P319). If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

■ If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to DoCoMo-specified repair office. Be sure to check the opening hours of the office before you go. Note that you must bring the warranty.

■ In the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal is repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber is charged for the repair even during the warranty period if the warranty is not presented, malfunction and damage is caused by misuse, etc.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DoCoMo-specified.
- The subscriber is charged for the repair of the color LCD or connector if broken after purchase.

■ Repairs may not be possible in the cases below :

- Repair is not possible when corrosion due exposure to moisture, condensation or perspiration is detected in a moisture seal reaction or test, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. Since these conditions are outside the range of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, is charged.

■ After expiration of the warranty

- All repairs that are requested are charged.

■ Replacement parts

- Replacement parts (parts required to maintain the product functions) are basically kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. However, repair may not be possible due to lack of repair parts, etc. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your phone even after this period. Call the contacts listed on the back of this manual, "Repairs".

■ Notes

- Do not modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
 - May cause fire, injury or damage.
- Modified FOMA terminals, etc. are repaired only after the customer accepts that the modified parts are to be restored to the condition at the time of purchase. Note that repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.
- The cases below may be regarded as modifications :
 - A sticker etc. are put on the LCD or keypad part
 - The FOMA terminal is embellished with adhesive material etc.
 - Exteriors are replaced with other than DoCoMo's genuine parts
- Repair of failures or damage caused by modification is charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to the FOMA.

The inscription stickers certify that the FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that, if stickers are removed intentionally or reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.

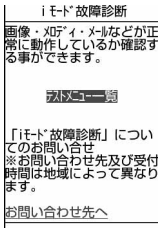
- Function settings and information such as total calls may be cleared (reset) by malfunctions, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal. Should that happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece and speaker, etc. of the FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- If the FOMA terminal becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring the terminal to the repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the FOMA terminal.

▲ Phonebook and downloaded data, etc. ▼

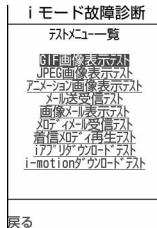
- Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo assumes no liability or responsibility whatsoever for changes of information or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may be changed or lost when changing models or repairing FOMA terminal. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for such incidents. DoCoMo may, at our option, replace your FOMA terminal instead of repairing it. Data downloaded to FOMA terminal including images and ring tones and data you created is transferred only at repairing (Some data may not be transferred. Also cannot be transferred depending on the failure level).
 - * Depending on the size of data saved in the FOMA terminal, transfer may take a time or be disabled.

i モード故障診断サイト (i-mode fault diagnostic site)

Using your FOMA terminal, you can check whether sending/receiving of messages and downloading of images and melodies are normally performed.



TOP screen



Screen of テストメニュー一覧 (test menu list)

- Access method to "i モード故障診断サイト" (In Japanese only)
iMenu→お知らせ (Notice)→サービス・機能 (Services/Function)→i モード (i-mode)→i モード故障診断 (i-mode fault diagnostic site)



QR code for site access

* The access method may be changed without previous notice.

- Packet communication for i モード故障診断 is free of charge.
- Test items vary by FOMA terminal models. And test items are subject to change.
- Before checking operations using individual test items, carefully read the precautions given in the site.
- When connecting to i モード故障診断サイト or conducting message transmission test, information specific to your FOMA terminal (model name, mail address, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (i-mode fault diagnostic server). DoCoMo does not use the received information for purposes except i モード故障診断.
- When FOMA terminal is assumed to have malfunctions as the result of the diagnosis, contact the phone number given in "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

Software update

Software update

This function makes network connection to check for the necessity of updating FOMA terminal software and, when necessary, downloads a part of the software through packet communication* to update the software. When software update is required, the information is posted in "お知らせ (Notice)" on the DoCoMo website or iMenu.

* Packet communication for software update is free of charge.

- Software may be updated in the 2 methods below :
Immediate update : Updates on the spot as desired.
Reserved update : Specifies the day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time-slot.

✓INFORMATION

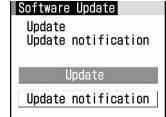
- Never remove the battery pack while updating software. The update fails.
- Software update can be done even when various data, such as a phonebook registered in the FOMA terminal, camera images, downloaded data, are remaining; note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DoCoMo recommends backing up necessary data. However some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.
- Software update is available even when Host selection is other than "i-mode (UIM)".
- Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power (→P41).
- Software cannot be updated in the cases below :
 - When UIM is not inserted
 - When the battery is not fully charged
 - When the power is OFF
 - When 圏外 (out of service area) is displayed
 - When date and time are not set
 - During a call
 - While using other functions
 - When PIN code is being entered
 - When PIN is blocked
 - In All lock
 - In Omakase Lock
 - In Self mode
 - In Personal data lock
 - In Packet communication with a PC
 - In 64K data communication
- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.

- If software update is executed when "ON" is set for PIN1 code ON/OFF, the PIN code entry screen appears at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN code is entered.
- Making/receiving calls, communications functions and other functions are disabled during software update. Only incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading.
- For software update, SSL session is established to the server (our site). Validate SSL certificate from Manage certificate. Configured as valid by default. →P157
- It is recommended that software update be executed when good signal quality is obtained, three bars of the signal level icon (→P42) are displayed and the terminal is not being moved. If radio wave signals become weaker during software downloading or downloading has stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave signals.
- A displayed icon of message stored at i-mode Center disappears after software update.
- If Receive option is "ON" and e-mail arrives during software updating, the screen that notifies an arrival of e-mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update being completed. →P172
- When updating software, your private information concerning the FOMA terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software update managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes except software update.
- When software update fails, "Rewrite failed" appears and all operation becomes unavailable. In that case, please bring FOMA terminal to DoCoMo-specified repair office.

◆ Receiving software update notification <Update notification>

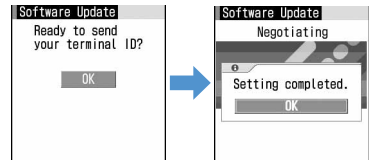
You can display  (Update notification icon) on the stand-by display whenever software update is necessary by setting this function to "Enable" in advance.

- 1     **Authenticate** **"Update notification"** **"Change setting"** **"Enable"**



- Select "Confirm setting" to confirm setting.

- 2  



✓ INFORMATION

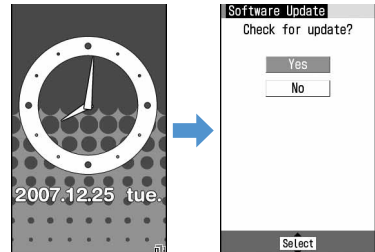
-  (update notification icon) appears in the cases below :
 - When there is notification from DoCoMo
 - When the reserved update has failed
 - When canceling the reserved update
 - When Delete all data is performed
 - When software update screen appears
 - Default settings (The icon may not always appear.)

◆ Starting Software update

You can start software update in two ways : Selecting  (Update notification icon) on the stand-by display or selecting an item number from menu.

<Example> Starting by selecting update notification icon

- 1   **Place the cursor on  (update notification icon),  "Yes" **Authenticate****



- When "No" is selected, a confirmation screen appears asking if you delete the update notification icon.

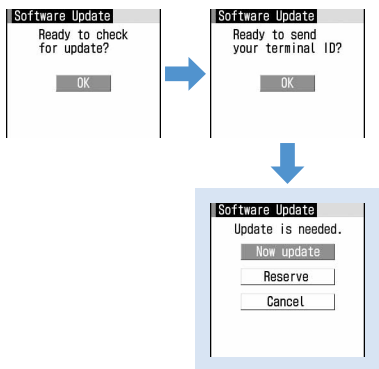
Starting from menu :

Ⓐ ▶ 8 ▶ 7 ▶ 4 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Update"

2 Check the notice and Ⓐ.

3 Ⓐ ▶ Ⓐ

Checks whether software update is required.



Software update screen

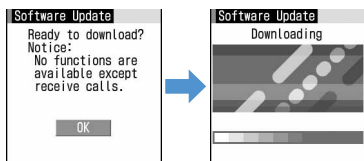
- When update is necessary, "Update is needed" appears. Select "Now update (→P330)" or "Reserve (→P331)".
- When update is not necessary, "No update is needed. Please continue to use as before." appears. Press Ⓐ and continue to use as before.
- When Update notification is "Disable", a confirmation screen for setting it to enable appears.

◆ Updating software immediately <Immediate update>

- Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

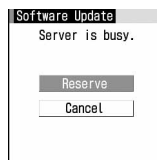
1 "Now update" on the software update screen ▶ Download automatically starts after approximately 5 seconds

Pressing Ⓐ starts downloading immediately. The light flashes during download.



- To cancel downloading, press Ⓐ.

When the server is busy :

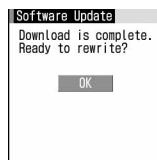


- Select "Reserve" and reserve a date for update. → P331

2 Software update automatically starts 5 seconds after the completion of download.

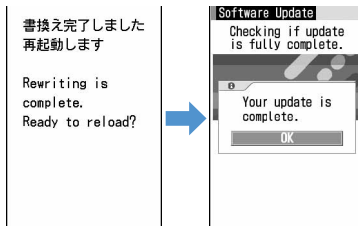
Pressing Ⓐ starts rewriting immediately.

During updating, the light flashes. All key operations are disabled and the updating operation cannot be canceled.



3 Automatically reloaded after the completion of update ▶ Ⓐ

After reload, wait while connection is made again to the server.



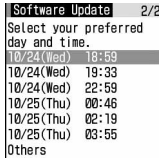
◆ Updating software at pre-specified time <Reserved update>

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can choose to set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

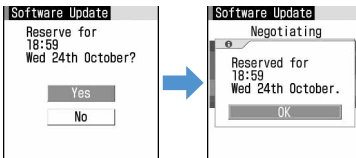
<Example> Selecting from options displayed to reserve

1 On the software update screen, "Reserve".

Available dates for reservation are shown by the time of the server.



2 Select preferred date and time ► "Yes"



Selecting from other than options displayed to reserve :

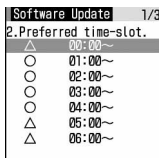
① "Others"

② Select preferred day.

Availability for reservation at each time period is shown :

○ : available △ : barely available

- Press to display the description of the symbol on the left of time-slot.



③ Select preferred time-slot.

Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.

④ Select preferred date and time ► "Yes"

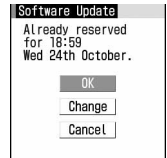
3

When the setting of the reservation is completed, appears on the stand-by display.

◆ Checking/changing/canceling reservation

<Example> Checking the date and time reserved for software update

1 ► Authenticate ► "Update" ► Check the contents



- Select "OK" to stop checking.

Changing the reservation : "Change" ►

The option selection screen appears.

The next procedure→P331 Step ② and the following steps in "Selecting from other than options displayed to reserve"

Canceling reservation : "Cancel" ► "Yes" ►

The reservation is canceled.

◆ When the reserved time arrives

When the reserved time arrives, the screen below appears and, after about 5 seconds, the terminal automatically starts software update. (Pressing starts software update immediately). Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and the FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the stand-by display. When downloading is completed, software rewriting is automatically started, followed by reload.



- To cancel the software update, press and select "Yes".

✓ INFORMATION

- Reservation of software update may be canceled in the cases below :
 - When the battery pack is removed
 - When the battery is left exhausted without being charged
 - When all data is deleted
 - When reserved date/time comes while Omakase Lock is active
- Note that the software update may not start if any other functions are used when the reserved time arrives. When the reserved date and time comes during a call or mail reception, the software update starts after completion of the operation.
- If alarm, etc. is set for the same time, alarm, etc. take precedence and the software update may not be activated.

Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data

Update pattern definition first, then keep the pattern definition up-to-date.

For the data or programs that are imported to the FOMA terminal by downloading from a website, i-mode messages or SMS, this function detects data and deletes data or inhibits activation of applications that may cause troubles.

- Pattern definition used for the check is upgraded as needed for a new problem. When Set auto-update is "Enable", pattern definitions are automatically downloaded and updated when they are upgraded.
- The Scanning function provides a certain countermeasure against invasion of data which causes some trouble in the mobile phone, when viewing website or receiving messages, etc.

Note that, if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent those troubles from occurring.

- Different pattern definition is used for different mobile phone models. In addition, note that DoCoMo may stop distribution of pattern definition for models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.

◆ Setting Scanning function <Set scan>

When making this setting "Valid", data or program to be executed is automatically checked.

1 (MENU) ▶ 8 4 7 3 ▶ Set the required items ▶ (H)

Scan : Specify if you enable scanning function.

Message scan : Set if you enable the scan function when displaying SMS.

2 "Yes"

- When making this setting "Valid", if data causing troubles is detected, a warning is indicated at 5 levels. → P333

◆ Update pattern definition automatically <Set auto-update>

You can set to update the pattern definitions automatically.

1 (MENU) ▶ 8 4 7 2

2 "Enable" ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶ (●)

- Select "Disable" if you do not use auto-update.
- When the auto-update of pattern definitions is completed, (H) appears on the stand-by display. Select the icon and check the message, then press (●).

◆ Updating pattern definition

When Set auto-update is "Disable" or  (Failed to auto-update of pattern definition) appears on the stand-by display, manually update the pattern definition.

1      ► "Yes" ► "Yes"

Downloading and updating of the pattern definitions are started.

2 

- When update is not necessary, "Pattern definitions are up-to-date." appears. Press  and continue to use as before.

✓INFORMATION

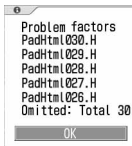
- When updating pattern definition, your private information concerning the mobile phone (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the Scanning function managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes except scanning function.
- When the correct date and time have not been set on the FOMA terminal, the pattern definitions cannot be updated.
- Updating pattern definition is stopped by a voice call arrived. When there is receiving data using a videophone, an external device or the infrared communication function, the updating pattern definition does not stop.
- When the set date and time of Alarm clock or schedule comes while updating the pattern definitions, the screen notifying the start date and time appears and the alarm sounds, continuing updating pattern definition.

◆ Displaying scan results

■ Displaying problem element scanned

① "Detail" while a warning level screen appears.

When 6 or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problem names are omitted and the total number of the detected problem elements appears.



■ Displaying scan results

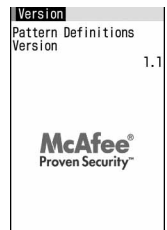
Warning level	Handling method
Warning level 0 	"OK" : Continue processing of the active application. "Detail" : List names of the detected problem elements.
Warning level 1 	"Yes" : Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles. "No" : Continue processing of the active application. "Detail" : List names of the detected problem elements.
Warning level 2 	"OK" : Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles. "Detail" : List names of the detected problem elements.
Warning level 3 	"Yes" : Delete data that may cause troubles. "No" : Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles. "Detail" : List names of the detected problem elements.
Warning level 4 	"OK" : Delete data that may cause troubles. "Detail" : List names of the detected problem elements.

✓INFORMATION

- When a problem element is detected on i-appli set for the stand-by display and the starting i-appli is stopped, i-appli stand-by display is canceled.
- For some problem elements, "Detail" button may not appear.

◆ Checking pattern definition version <Version>

1     



Specifications

FOMA terminal

Product name		FOMA F801i
Size		105 mm (H)×48 mm (W)× 17.8 mm (T) (Unit : mm, Folded)
Weight		Approx. 120 g (with battery)
Continuous stand-by time*1, 2		Stationary : Approx. 570 H Moving : Approx. 400 H
Continuous call time*2, 3		Voice call : Approx. 185 min. Videophone call : Approx. 110 min.
Charging time*4		AC adapter : Approx. 140 min. DC adapter : Approx. 140 min.
LCD	Type	Display : TFT 262,144 colors
	Size	Display : Approx. 2.7 inch
	Number of pixels	Display : 103,680 pixels (240×432)
Image pickup device	Type	In-camera : CMOS Out-camera : CMOS
	Size	In-camera : 1/7.4 inch Out-camera : 1/5 inch
	Number of effective pixels	In-camera : Approx. 320,000 pixels Out-camera : Approx. 1,300,000 pixels
Camera section	Number of recording pixels (Max.)	In-camera : Approx. 310,000 pixels Out-camera : Approx. 1,200,000 pixels
	Zoom (digital)	In-camera : Up to approx. 2.0× Out-camera : Up to approx. 16.0×
Recording section	Number of still images recorded*5	Approx. 524
	Continuous shooting of still images	2-9
	File format for still image	JPEG
	Movie recording time*6	Up to approx. 35 min.
	File format for Movie	MP4, ASF

*1 Continuous stand-by time indicates the estimated time that FOMA terminal can receive signals normally. The stand-by time may be approximately half depending on factors such as the battery charging condition, function settings, operating environment such as ambient temperature and signal condition in the area of use (The signal is weak, absent, etc.). Stationary continuous stand-by time indicates the average utilization time when FOMA terminal is folded and able to receive signals normally in a static condition. Moving continuous stand-by time indicates the average utilization time when FOMA terminal is folded and able to receive signals normally with a combination of "stationary", "moving" and "out of service area" status.

*2 The continuous stand-by and continuous call time are reduced by making i-mode communications, creating i-mode mail, activating downloaded i-αpli and setting i-αpli stand-by display, etc.

*3 Continuous call time indicates the estimated call time that FOMA terminal can send or receive signals normally.

*4 Charging time indicates the estimated time for charging an empty battery with FOMA terminal turned OFF. Charging with FOMA terminal turned ON requires longer time.

*5 The number of still images saved is valid for image size "128×96", quality "Standard" and file size 10 Kbytes.

*6 The movie recording time means allowable time for one movie. It varies depending on the image size, quality and movie to be recorded.

Battery pack

Product name	Battery Pack F09
Used battery	Li-ion battery
Nominal voltage	3.7 V
Nominal capacity	770 mAh

Number of saved/recorded/ protected items in F801i

Type	No. of saved/ recorded items	No. of protected items
Phonebook* ¹	Up to 1000	—
Kisekai Tool* ¹	Up to 36	—
Bookmark	Up to 100	—
Screen memo* ¹	Up to 100	Up to 50
DL dictionary	Up to 10	—
Downloaded fonts* ²	Up to 5	—
MessageR* ¹	Up to 100	Up to 50
MessageF* ¹	Up to 50	Up to 25
Mail	Received message * ¹ , 3, 4	Up to 1000
	Sent message * ¹ , 3	Up to 200
	Unsent message * ¹ , 3	Up to 200
	Mail template * ¹ , 5	Up to 100
UIM SMS* ⁶	Up to 20	—
i-appli* ¹ , 7	Up to 100	—
Image* ¹ , 8	Up to 1000	—
Movie/i-motion/sound recorded with the Sound Recorder* ¹	Up to 100	—
Playlists of movie/ i-motion	Up to 100	—
Chara-den * ¹ , 9	Up to 50	—
Melody* ¹	Up to 500	—
Scheduler	Up to 300	—
Notepad	Up to 50	—

*1 Depending on the size of data, the actual number of items that can be saved and recorded may be fewer.

*2 The number of font (プリティー桃) recorded by default is included.

*3 The total number of i-mode mail and SMS.

*4 The number of "はじめまして (Welcome)" messages is included.

*5 The number of mail templates recorded by default is included.

*6 The total number of sent and received SMS. The SMS report request is not included.

*7 The number of i-appli items recorded by default is included. Up to 5 items of message i-appli items can be saved (included in the up to 100 i-appli items that can be saved).

*8 Number of data items of "Deco-mail picture", "Deco-mail pict" and "Item" folders recorded by default is included.

*9 The number of Chara-den items recorded by default is included.

✓INFORMATION

- The display of the data in FOMA terminal file size may contain some error depending on the function that handles the data.

SAR certification information

This model phone FOMA F801i meets the MIC's*¹ technical regulation governing exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)*² averaged over 10 grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP.*³

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this FOMA F801i is 1.03 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC). The test for SAR was conducted according to the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the websites below:

World Health Organization (WHO) :

<http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP :

<http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC :

<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm>

TELEC :

http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm

NTT DoCoMo :

<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/>

FUJITSU LIMITED :

<http://www.fmworlworld.net/product/phone/sar/>

*1 Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications.

*2 The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*3 International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection.

Index/Quick Manual

Index	342
Quick Manual	348

Index

Using Index

You can also use this index listing function names and keywords as "Alphabetical keyword reference". For functions such as "Set" and "Delete", first search by a function name of the first level (**bold**) and then by an index item of the second layer.

<Example> Download Chara-den

Chara-den	61, 235
Adding/Deleting folder	237
Deleting	239
Detail information/Edit detail information	238
Download	151

A	
AC adapter	40
Accept/Reject call	118
Add address	165
Additional service (Register USSD)	283
Adjust volume	79
After-Sales Service	326
Alarm auto power ON	250
Alarm clock	249
Alarm clock sound	79
Alarm sound	79
Alarm strap	97
Album	237
Adding	237
Moving/Copying data	237
Playing album	238
Alert by contact	68
Alert preference	265
Alert/Image by group	69
All lock	108
Animation (Menu)	32
Anonymous caller	119
Answer machine	60
Playing/Deleting	61
Quick answer machine	60
Any key answer	56
Arrival call act	281
AT command	288
Attach location menu	213
Attaching/removing battery pack	37
Attachment auto-play	189
Attachment (receiving)	
Displaying/Saving bookmark data	176
Displaying/Saving image	174
Displaying/Saving phonebook data	175
Displaying/Saving schedule data	176
Playing/Saving i-motion	175
Playing/Saving melody	175
Attachment (sending)	169
Changing/Removing	169
Authentication	
Terminal security code	105
Auto answer	265
Auto power ON/OFF	249
Auto timer	132
Auto-send	170

B	
Bar code reader	137
Divided QR code	138
Quoting	272
Scanning code	137
Using scanned data	138
Battery	
Charging	39
Charging time	39
Operation time	39
Battery icon	91
Battery indicator	104
Battery level	41
Bookmark	
Changing title	148
Creating/Deleting folders	148
Deleting	148
Displaying	147
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail)	176
i-mode shortcuts	148
Moving	148
Recording (Site/Website)	147
Saving (Mail)	185
Sort	149

C	
CA Certificate	157
Cache	145
Calculator	261
Quoting	272
Calendar → Scheduler	
Call alert/Videophone alert	78
Call cost	260
Call cost limit	261
Hide call cost icon	261
Reset call cost	260
Call duration	260
Call Forwarding Service	279
Call option	52
Call ring alert	78
Call session light	91
Call waiting	279
Caller ID notification	44
Caller ID request service	280
Caller ID settings	73
Caller ID (Notify/Not notify)	
Call option	52
Caller ID settings	73
186/184	51
Calling image	86

Camera	
Adjust flicker	138
Adjusting	127
Auto timer	132
Brightness	134
Continuous shooting	128
Creating i-mode mail	127, 130
File details	125
Frame	134
Image settings	131
Image size	135
Light	133
Macro shooting	133
Movie camera	130
Movie recording time	126
Number of still images saved	126
Panorama	129
Quality	135
Recording settings	131
Restoring default camera setting	136
Save mirror	127
Shake reduce	135
Shooting mode	134
Shooting procedure	124
Shutter sound	131
Size restrictions	135
Still camera	127
Switching cameras	133
Switching normal/mirror display	127
Switching portrait and landscape	133
Switching shooting screens	133
White balance	134
Zoom	132
Certificate	
Certificate host	160
Download	158, 159
Manage certificate	157
Skip password	160
Certificate download	158
Chaku-moji	50
Change i-mode password	146
Character encode (Switch encode)	
.....	147
Characters entry	268
Block conversion	270
Conversion options list	269
Copying characters	273
Deco-mail pictogram	271
DL dictionary	274

Fixed phrase entry	271
Full-screen entry	268
In-line entry	268
Input mode	268
Input prediction function	270
Kana/kanji conversion	269
KUTEN code input	273
Line feed	269
Pictogram entry	271
Quoting	272
Reset prediction	270
Save phrase	272
Save word	273
Slot input method	274
Smiley entry	272
Symbol entry	271
Text input method	275
5-touch input method	269
Chara-den	61, 235
Adding/Deleting folder	237
Deleting	239
Detail information/Edit detail information	238
Download	151
Moving	237
Settings	235
Sort	240
Charge alert	81
Charging	40
Charging jack	27
Charging time	39
Chat mail	190
Broadcast address	192
Chat mail screen	190
Creating/Sending	191
Delete history	192
Personal data setting	191
Quitting	193
Receiving	192
Chat mail alert	78
Chat mail screen	190
Chat member setting	191
Check box operation	34
Clock format	94
Close settings	56
CODE39 code	137
Color scheme	88
Communication configuration file	287
Complete power OFF	42
Confirm	265
Confirmation screen operation	35
Connecting to SSL page	143
Connection timeout	153
Contact image	87
Conversion options list	269
Copying characters	273
Countdown timer	249
Custom menu	256

D

Data Center → Data Security Service	
Data Communication	286
Data exchange settings	244
Data Security Service	120
Phonebook	76
Data Security Service (Data Center)	
Image	229
Mail	179

Data transfer mode	114
DataSession arv. act	64
Date & time	43
DC adapter	40
Deco-mail pictogram → Pictogram D	
Deco-mail picture	165
Deco-mail (Decoration mail)	
Creating	165
Template	167
Decoration selection screen	166
Default search setting	71
Default setting	42
Delete all data	266
Deleting attachment	176
Desktop holder	40
Dictionaries	263, 274
Download	151
Direct call	75
Display	26, 28
Color scheme	88
Display light	88
Guide area	30
List screen	30
Task area	29
Display address	180
Display in English	43
Display light	88
Brightness	88
Display light time	88
i-appli	203
Light area	88
Site	154
Display priority	190
Displaying phone number	44
DoCoMo Cert	157
DoCoMo keitai datalink	288
Download dictionary	274
Dual Network Service	280

E

Earphone/microphone with switch	263
Alert preference	265
Auto answer	265
Headset key control	264
Headset quick-answer	264
Earpiece	26
English guidance	281
External device	64

F

FirstPass	143, 287
Fixed phrase entry	271
Flash	144
Focus mode	35
Font size	189
Font size (mail)	93
Font style	93
Frame	
Movie camera	134
Still camera	134
Still image	227
Videophone	62
Full-screen entry	268

G

GPS	
LCS clients list	220
Location information menu	213

Location request	217
Loc. history	220
Notify location	219
Position location	212
Positioning alert	221
Request permit/deny	217
Setting	221
GPS alert	80
GPS compatible i-appli	214
GPS light alert	92
Greeting msg resp time	60
Guide area	30

H

Headset key control	264
Headset quick-answer	264
Host selection	154

I

i-appli	200
Auto start	207
Changing ring tone/image	202
Checking number of i-appli in folder	210
Creating/Deleting folders	208
Deleting	209
Display light	203
Displaying history (Abnormal exit history)	208
Displaying history (Security error history)	202
Displaying history (Start failure hist)	207
Downloading	200
i-appli To	207
Icon information (Use icons)	202
Location usage setting	202
Moving	209
Network transmission	202
One-key shortcut	206
Preinstalled i-appli	203
Quitting	201
Set auto start info	207
Software description	202
Software info disp.	201
Software information	210
Software settings	202
Sort software	210
Stand-by display	208
Start	201
Trace information	202
Two-key shortcut	206
Upgrade	208
Using camera	210
Using infrared communication	210
Vibrate effect	203
View phonebook/call records	202
i-appli stand-by display	85, 208
Abnormal exit history	208
Terminating	208
Icon list	28, 29
Image	224
Adding/Deleting album	237
Adjusting	228
Change size	226
Creating animation	226
Deleting	239

Detail information/Edit detail information.....	238
Displaying.....	224
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail).....	174
Download.....	150
Edit menu screen.....	226
Editing.....	226
Moving/Copying.....	237
Settings.....	229
Slideshow.....	225
Sort.....	240
Using images.....	225
Image message alert	87
Image setting	63
Image & Effect	154
i-melody	151
i-mode	142
Character encode (Switch encode).....	147
URL history.....	147
i-mode fault diagnostic site	328
i-mode mail	164
Activate quick reply.....	188
Add address.....	165
Add bookmark.....	185
Add to phonebook.....	185
Adding signature.....	164
Address type.....	165
Attachment (receiving).....	174
Attachment (sending).....	169
Auto-send.....	170
By display type.....	189
Changing read/unread state.....	181
Check new message.....	172
Check No. of msgs.....	180
Copying.....	184
Creating.....	70, 164
Creating/Deleting folders.....	179
Deco-mail.....	165
Deleting.....	182
Deleting attachment.....	176
Display priority.....	190
Displaying mail address.....	180
Displaying new message.....	171
Editing.....	170
Folder list screen.....	177
Font size.....	189
Forwarding.....	173
Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages.....	177
List/details screen.....	177
Mail group.....	188
Mail logs.....	183
Message list.....	189
Moving.....	180
Phone call.....	185
Protecting.....	182
Quick mail.....	170
Quick reply presets.....	188
Receive option.....	172
Receive option attachment file.....	174
Receiving.....	171
Replying.....	173
Saving.....	170
Search message.....	181
Sending.....	164
Sort.....	181
Sort method.....	185

Template.....	167
i-mode message	
i-mode mail.....	172
MessageR/F.....	172
i-mode password	105
i-mode settings	153
i-mode shortcuts	148
i-motion mail	
Creating.....	169
i-motion → Movie/i-motion	
In-camera	26
Incoming call image	86
Incoming msg. attach	189
Indicator light	91
Info/calendar layout	85
Infrared communication	240
Data exchange settings.....	244
Receiving.....	242
Remote control function.....	243
Sending.....	241
Infrared data port	27
In-line entry	268
Input mode	268
Input prediction function	270
International call	52
Int'l call assist	53
ISP connection communication	154

J

JAN code	137

K

Kana/kanji conversion	269
Keypad dial lock	111
Kids' mode setting	96
Kisekae Tool	89
Adding/Deleting folder.....	237
Deleting.....	239
Detail information/Edit detail information.....	238
Moving.....	237
Sort.....	240
KUTEN code input	273

L

Last call	260
Last call cost	260
Last visited URL	144
Light	27
Light alert	91
Call session light.....	91
GPS light alert.....	92
Light alert.....	91
Open/close.....	92
Top of hour light.....	92
Line feed	269
List of fixed phrases	302
List (Menu)	32
Listen volume	47, 79
Lock on close	116
Loss protection	101
Loss protection lock	101
Low Battery alert	81

M

Macro shooting	133
Mail address	44
Mail alert	78
Mail auto receive	171

Mail creation screen	164
Mail group	188
Mail image	87
Mail logs	183
Mail settings (FOMA terminal)	185
Mail template	167
Changing detail info.....	168
Creating i-mode mail.....	167
Deleting.....	168
Download.....	168
Load.....	167
Saving.....	168
Mail to	
Mail.....	184
Site.....	152
Mail/Msg ring alert	78
Map application for kids	214
Map display screen	215
Maximum number of saved/recorded/protected items	335
Melody	236
Adding/Deleting album.....	237
Deleting.....	239
Detail information/Edit detail information.....	238
Download.....	151
List.....	300
Melodies for mail attachment.....	300
Moving/Copying.....	237
Playing/Saving (i-mode mail).....	175
Settings.....	236
Sort.....	240
Using melody.....	236
Memory status	240
Menu	32
List.....	290
Menu setting	88
Message i-appli	
Downloading.....	200
Message list	189
Message retrieval	87, 187
MessageF alert	78
MessageR alert	78
MessageR/F	155
Auto-display.....	156
Check new message.....	172
Deleting.....	157
Display by type.....	157
Display priority.....	190
Displaying.....	156
Displaying new message.....	155
Displaying/Saving attachment.....	156
Font size.....	189
List/details screen.....	156
Protect.....	157
Microphone	26
Missed calls	49
Movie camera sound	81
Movie memo	258
Movie playing software	318
Movie ringtone	78
Movie/i-motion	
Adding/Deleting album.....	237
Bookmark setting.....	231
Capture.....	233
Custom edit.....	234
Deleting.....	239
Detail information/Edit detail information.....	238

Downloading	160
Edit by size	234
Editing	233
i-motion setting	161
Moving/Copying	237
Playing	230
Playing/Saving (i-mode mail) ..	175
Playlist	232
Recording	130
Recording screen	125, 130
Recording settings	131
Settings	234
Sort	240
Using movie/i-motion	233
Multi number	282
Call option	52
Multiaccess	248
Combination of functions	315
Multi-cursor key	27
Multitask	248
Combination of functions	316
Multitask key	27
My Menu	145
My phone number	44
My Picture → Image	

N

Network security code	105
New announcement	92
New Task start menu	248
Newly arrived information	35
Noise reduction	54
Normal menu	88
Notepad	261
List by category mode	262
List by status	262
Notify switchable mode	64
Nuisance Call Blocking Service ..	280
Number of messages in folder ..	180
NW7 code	137

O

Omakase Lock	108
Omamorimokon	100, 101
Replacing battery	100
Saving	101
On hold	47
One-key shortcut	206
On-hold tone	81
Open/close	92
Operation sound	80
Options and related devices	318
Original certificate	157
Out of service area	42

P

Packet communication	286
Password	96
i-mode	105
Paste location menu	213
Pause ("P")	51
Personal data lock	110
Phone	
Call option	52
Call waiting ring tone	56
Making calls	46
Operation possible while receiving calls	55
Receiving calls	55

Phone To

Mail	184
Site	152
Phonebook	66
Adding	67, 68
Call option	52
Caller ID settings	73
Copying	72
Copying to UIM/FOMA terminal	73
Deleting	73
Details screen	71
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail) ..	175
Editing	72
Group setting	69
No. of items	74
Quoting	272
Switching order of phone numbers/mail addresses	72
Switching phonebook numbers	72
Phonebook search	
Group search	70
Name search	70
Number search	70
Ph book No. search	70
Phone/UIM switch	70
Rocket search	70
Search by frequency	70
Secret search	70
Show all names	70
Pictogram D	165, 271
Pictogram entry	271
List	305
PIN code ON/OFF	106
PIN/PIN2 code	106
Changing	107
Play function	263
Power	
Auto power ON/OFF	249
Power OFF notice	103
Power ON/OFF	42
Complete power OFF	42
Power saving mode	43
Prefix dialing	54
Preinstalled i-appli	203
Elephant's gift	206
Kids' safe training	204
Light creator	205
Map application for kids' 206,	214
MOJI stand-by creator	205
Obunsha mobile learning	203
Time schedule	204
ZOOKEEPER DX F	204
Priority	
Caller ID notification	44
Incoming call image	87
Light alert	91
Name displays	66
Outgoing call image	86
Ring alert	79
Vibrate alert	80
Priority comm mode	57
Privacy mode	111
Contact setting	114
Public mode (Drive mode)	58
Public mode (Power OFF)	59
PUK (PIN Unblocking Key)	106
Pulldown menu operation	34

Q

QR code	137
Quality alarm	81
Quick answer machine	60
Quick dial	75
Quick mail	170
Quick Manual	348
Quick start-up	265

R

Random Display Image	84
Receive display option	115
Receive option	172
Receive option	187
Receive option attachment file ..	174
Received calls	48
Received messages → i-mode mail	
Received signal level	42
Receiving screen	155, 171, 194
Reception result screen	
.....	155, 171, 194
Reconnect alarm	81
Redial	48
Registering USSD	283
Remaining battery level	41
Remote control	282
Remote control function	243
Reply format	188
Request permit/deny	217
Reset	265
Delete all data	266
Reset	265
Total calls	260
Total calls cost	260
User information	258
Reset prediction	270
Respond and Hold	57
Restrict functions	105
Ring alert delay	119

S

Safety alarm	97
Safety alarm	97
Sound	98
Safety options	96
Password	96
SAR	335
Save phrase	272
Save word	273
Scanning function	332
Set auto-update	332
Set scan	332
Schedule reminder	79
Scheduler	251
Alarm in advance	252
Calendar screen	251
Calendar view mode	251
Copying/Pasting	254
Creating mail	254
Day view screen	253
Days off	251
Display by type mode	254
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail) ..	176
Holiday settings	252
Long-term schedule	252
Member list	255
Move date	251

No. of items.....	255
Quick schedule.....	253
Reminder option.....	253
Repeat schedule.....	252
Saving.....	252
Schedule details screen.....	254
Schedule reminder.....	252
Search message.....	254
Screen memo	149
Search message	181, 254
Secret attribute	
Mail.....	179
Phonebook.....	74
Schedule.....	255
Secret search.....	70
Secret code	74
Security codes	105
Security indicator	117
Security Scan → Scanning function	
Select language.....	43
Self mode	109
Send DTMF	51
Send location info menu	213
Sent messages → i-mode mail	
Serial number	143
Service Dialing Number	281
Services available	317
Set arrival act	281
Set greeting message	60
Shake reduce	135
Shortcut operations	33
Shutter sound	81
Side key hold	116
Side key shortcut	103
Signal level icon	91
Signature	
Adding (i-mode mail).....	164
Inserting (SMS).....	193
Setting.....	187
Silent alarm	99
Silent mode	82, 83
Simultaneous sending	165
Site	
Operating.....	144
Phonebook new entry.....	152
URL display.....	145
Slot input method	274
List.....	302
Smiley entry	272
Smiley list	311
SMS	193
Add bookmark.....	185
Add to phonebook.....	185
Check new SMS.....	194
Creating/Sending.....	70, 193
Deleting (FOMA terminal).....	182
Deleting (UIM).....	197
Display priority.....	190
Displaying (FOMA terminal).....	177
Displaying (UIM).....	196
Editing.....	193
Folder list screen.....	177
List/details screen.....	177
Moving/Copying (into UIM).....	195
Moving/Copying (to FOMA terminal).....	197
Quick mail.....	170
Receiving.....	194
Setting.....	195

Sort method.....	185
SMS report request	195
Software update	328
Immediate update.....	330
Reserved update.....	331
Update notification.....	329
Software update screen	330
Sort method	185
Sound recorder	244
Creating i-mode mail.....	245
Quality.....	245
Size limit.....	245
Sound recording screen.....	244
Sound recording screen	244
Speaker	27
Speakerphone function	47
Special symbol list	309
Specified caller	118
Stand-by display	42, 83
Battery icon.....	91
Clock format.....	94
i-appli stand-by display.....	85
Info/calendar layout.....	85
Set random image.....	84
Signal level icon.....	91
Stand-by time	39
Status message	57
Still image	
Continuous shooting.....	128
Displaying.....	224
Editing.....	226
Panorama.....	129
Quality.....	135
Settings.....	131
Shooting.....	127
Shooting screen.....	125, 127
Style theme	
Customize.....	83
Setting item.....	299
Sub address	54
Sub-display section	30
Submenu operation	34
Substitute image	63
Switch Task menu	248
Symbol entry	271
Symbol list	304

T

Task area	29
Terminal security code	105
Terminal security code change	106
Text input method	275
Tile icon (Menu)	32
Timed pause ("T")	51
Timed theme	104
Tone signal (Send DTMF)	51
Top of hour light	92
Total calls	260
Total calls cost	260
Two-key shortcut	206

U

UIM	
Attaching/Removing.....	35
Functional differences.....	37
Security codes.....	36
Serial number.....	143
UIM operation restriction	36
Unblocking PIN	107

Unregistered caller	120
Unsent messages → i-mode mail	
Upgrade	208
URL	
Copying.....	152
Phonebook new entry.....	153
URL display	145
URL history	147
User Certificate	157
User information	
Checking.....	44, 258
Details screen.....	258
Quoting.....	272

V

Vibrate alert/effect	80
Vibrate effect	
i-appli.....	203
Videophone	46
Auto redial as voice.....	63
Brightness.....	62
Chara-den.....	61
Display settings.....	62
Flicker.....	62
image quality.....	62
Light.....	62
Macro shooting.....	62
Making calls.....	46
Operation possible while receiving calls.....	55
Receiving calls.....	55
Scene mode/effect.....	62
Select frame.....	62
Send DTMF.....	52
Sending still image.....	62
Sending still images/Camera-Off images.....	62
Switching cameras.....	62
Switching images.....	62
Zoom.....	62
Videophone settings (Operation)	63
View preference	49, 71, 184
Voice Mail Service	278
Voice memo	258
Voice memo in stand-by	258
Voice memo while talking	258

W

Warranty	326
Web to	
Mail.....	184
Site.....	152
Wheel	31
WORLD CALL	52
WORLD WING	37

Numeric

3D icon (Menu)	32
3G-324M	46
5-touch input method	269
List.....	301
64K data communication	286

Quick Manual

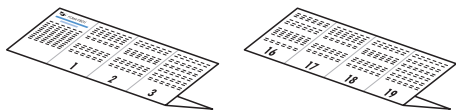
◆ How to use Quick Manual

The "Quick Manual" briefly describes basic operations and screen displays. Cut along the dotted line and fold up the manual as shown below.

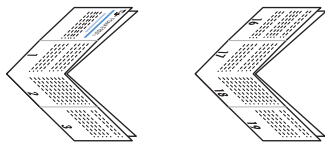
1 Cut along the dotted line. (2 sheets)

Take care not to hurt yourself when cutting.

2 Fold once vertically.



3 Fold once horizontally.



4 Fold once horizontally again.



Quick Manual

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

Contact for more detailed information :

<In English>

☎ 0120-005-250 (toll-free) * Available from general subscriber phones, mobile phones and PHSs.

<In Japanese only>

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll-free) * Available only from mobile phones and PHSs.

No prefix 151 (toll-free)

◆ Please check on the number before dialing.

Repairs

Contact for any problems :

<In Japanese only>

No prefix 113 (toll-free) * Available only from mobile phones and PHSs.

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll-free) * Available from general subscriber phones, mobile phones and PHSs.

◆ Please check on the number before dialing.

Adding entries in Phonebook

Savings in the FOMA terminal phonebook

1. Enter a name ▶ **[4]** **[2]** ▶ Set required items ▶ **[11]**



Saving in UIM phonebook

1. Enter a name ▶ **[4]** **[3]** ▶ Set required items ▶ **[11]**

1

Switching input modes

- On the character entry screen, **[5]** (several times) ▶ **[10]**
- Press **[10]** to switch input mode one-byte/two-byte.

Deleting characters

When the cursor is in the text

- [CLR]** : Delete characters at the cursor
- Pressing and holding for 1 sec. or more deletes characters at the cursor and all the characters on the right of the cursor.

When the cursor is at the end of the text

- [CLR]** : Delete a character at the left of the cursor position
- Pressing and holding for 1 sec. or more deletes all the characters entered.

Saving from redial list or received call list

1. Place the cursor on the party to save and **[10]** ▶ **[4]** **[1]**
2. Adding to phonebook data already saved : **[10]** ▶ **[4]** **[2]**
3. **[1]** (FOMA terminal phonebook) or **[2]** (UIM phonebook)
4. To save to the saved entry, select the party.

Searching the Phonebook

1. Switching to UIM phonebook : **[10]** ▶ **[4]** **[1]** ▶ **[8]**
2. **[1]** **[7]**
3. **[1]** **[4]** for searching UIM phonebook, **[5]** for switching to FOMA terminal phonebook.

2

Entering pictograms, symbols and fixed phrases

Entering pictograms

- On the character entry screen, **[10]** ▶ Select pictogram

Entering symbols

- On the character entry screen, **[10]** ▶ **[10]** ▶ Select symbol

Entering fixed phrases

- On the character entry screen, **[10]** ▶ **[4]** **[1]** **[5]** **[1]** on the message text entry screen) ▶ Select fixed phrase type ▶ Select fixed phrase

Copying/pasting characters

Copying characters

- On the character entry screen, **[10]** ▶ **[1]** **[2]** on the message text entry screen) ▶ Select the start point ▶ Select the end point

Editing Phonebook

1. Search the phonebook
2. Place the cursor on the party to edit and **[10]** ▶ **[3]** **[1]**
 - For UIM phonebook, place the cursor on the party to edit and **[10]** ▶ **[3]** Edit ▶ **[11]**
3. When a phonebook No. that has already been used in the FOMA terminal phonebook is specified, a confirmation screen appears asking if you overwrite.

Entering characters

Entering/converting characters (5-touch method)

- <Example> Entering "企業 (kigyuu)"
- 1. Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode.
- "企" : **[2]** twice

3

Pasting characters

- On the character entry screen, place the cursor at the position to paste characters and **[10]** ▶ **[3]** **[4]** on the message text entry screen)

Camera function

Shooting still images

- [10]** ▶ Point the camera at the object and **[10]**

Recording movies

- [10]** (1 sec. or more) ▶ Point the camera at the object and **[10]** ▶ **[10]**

Displaying image

- [10]** **[5]** **[1]** ▶ Select "Taken picture" folder ▶ Select an image to display

Playing movie

- [10]** **[5]** **[2]** ▶ Select "Taken video" folder ▶ Select a movie to play
- Operation available in playing movie **[10]** : Adjust volume

4

5

6

7

- ⏮ : Reverse play/Fast play
- ⏸ : Pause/Play
- ⏹ : Stop

Videophone

❖ Making videophone calls

- 1 Enter a phone number ▶
- 2 Talk with the other party.
 - Switching earpiece/speaker :
 - Switching image to send :
- 3 When ending the call, .

❖ Receiving videophone calls

- 1 A call is received ▶
 - Respond and Hold :
 - Operation during a call is the same as Step 2 in "Making videophone calls".
- 2 When ending the call, .

8

Display overview

❖ Top of the display



- 1 : Battery icon
- 2 : Signal level icon
 : Out of service area
Self : Self mode ON
 : In data transfer mode
- 3 : In i-mode communication (i-mode site)/(packet communication)
- 4 : In camera lock
- 5 : Speakerphone in use
- 6 : Positioning with GPS
 GPS : Location request setting with GPS

12

Cutoff line

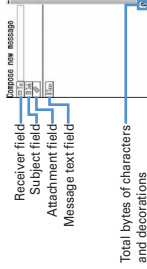
i-mode mail

❖ No. of characters available

Item	Two-byte	One-byte
Subject	15 characters	30 characters
Mail address	—	30 characters
Message text	5,000 characters	10,000 characters

❖ Creating/sending i-mode mail

- 1 (1 sec. or more)



Total bytes of characters and decorations

- 2 Select ▶ Select input method ▶ Enter or select receiver

9

- 7 : Phonebook entry or schedule data has secret attribute
 : In infrared communication, etc.

- 8 : The total calls cost exceeds the limit
 : Unread message or Message/R/F status

- 9 : Storage status in i-mode Center

- 10 : Displaying SSL page, etc.

- : Mail failed to Auto-send exists

- : Auto-send mail exists

- 11 : i-appli/i-upplIDX is running

- : i-appli stand-by display ON

- 12 : i-upplIDX stand-by display ON

- : In Kids' mode

- 13 : Omamorimokon in valid range

- : Omamorimokon not in valid range

13

- 3 Select ▶ Enter the subject
- 4 Select ▶ Enter message text
 · Composing Deco-mail : ▶ Select decoration ▶ Enter characters

- 5
 - Saving message : ▶ 3
 - Auto-send : ▶ 2

❖ File attachment

- 1 Select on the mail creation screen.

Displaying the mail creation screen → Pg

- 2 Select the type of the file to attach ▶ Select the attachment source ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a file

10

❖ Bottom of the display



- 1 : Missed calls

- 2 : Recorded messages

- 3 : Voice messages in Voice Mail service

- 4 : Unread messages

- 5 : Silent mode ON

- 6 : Personalized silent mode ON

- 7 : Call alert volume OFF

- 8 : Vibrator for voice call ON

- 9 : Call alert volume OFF / vibrator for voice call ON

- 10 : In Public mode (Drive mode)

- 11 : Answer machine ON/recorded messages full

14

❖ Sending/sending sent/saved i-mode mail

<Example> Editing unsent messages

- 1 ▶ 4
 - Editing sent message : ▶ 5
- 2 Select a folder.
- 3 Select a message.
 - Editing sent message : Select a message ▶ 14
- 4 Edit ▶ 14

❖ Check new message (Mail)

- 1 ▶ 6 ▶ 1

11

- 9 : Keypad dial lock ON

- 10 : Side key hold ON

- 11 : Personal data lock ON

- 12 : Reading UIM

- 13 : Available multi-cursor key

- 14 : Lock on close ON

- 15 : Alarm clock ON

- 16 : Schedule reminder ON

- 17 : Alarm clock & Schedule reminder ON
 : Location request success/failure/end as unanswered

- 18 : Connected to external device using USB cable

- 19 : Software update pre-specified/Update notification icon

- 20 : Failed to auto-update of latest pattern definition/successful

15

Menu list

<Example> Activating Notepad

▶ (16) ▶ (7) ▶ (2)

1	Mail
1	Inbox
2	Compose message
3	Chat mail
4	Unsent messages
5	Outbox
6	Check message
7	SMS
8	Template
9	Mail settings
	Mail alert
	Chat mail alert
	Sort method
	Signature
	Reply setting
	Mail group

16

7	Accessory
1	Scheduler
2	Notepad
3	Alarm clock
4	Calculator
5	Dictionaries
6	Countdown timer
7	Time schedule

8	Settings & NW services
1	Alerts & Sounds
2	Display
3	Style theme
4	Security & Looks
	Looks
	Privacy mode
	Security indicator
	Receive display option
	UIM
	Change code/password

20

	Display settings
2	I-mode
1	Menu
2	Bookmark
3	Go to location
4	Last visited URL
5	Screen memo
6	Check new message
7	Messenger&F
8	I-mode settings
	I-mode shortcuts
	Connection timeout
	Display light
	Certificate
	Image & Effect
	I-motion
	Host selection

17

	Scanning function
5	Call & Answer
	Anonymous caller
	Any key answer
	Headset
	Reject/Accept call
	Make/Receive call
	Call session
	Self mode

6	Videophone
	Clock
	Other
	Font size
	Software update
	Quick start-up
	Info & Reset
	Side key shortcut
8	NW Services
	Voice Mail
	Call waiting/forward

21

3	i- appl
1	Software list
2	i- appl settings
3	Display history
4	Phonebook & Logs
1	Phonebook
2	Phonebook new entry
3	Phonebook(UIM) new entry
4	Received calls
5	Redial
6	Ans.Machine&Voice memo
7	Mail logs
8	User information
5	Data Box
1	My Picture
2	i-motion
3	Melody

18

	Chaku-moji
	Caller ID
	Other
9	Intr'l call assist
	Auto switch
	Country code setting
	Auto assist setting

9	Safety options
Page 1	
1	Kids' mode setting
2	Safety alarm
3	Silent alarm
4	Loss protection
	Set Omamori-mokon
	Loss setting
Page 2	
1	Power OFF notice
2	Side key shortcut
3	Battery indicator
4	Restrict call/mail
	Call/Mail lock
	Anonymous caller

22

4	Chara-den
5	Kisakae Tool
6	Lifekt
1	Bar code reader
2	I/r/PC connection
	Receive Ir data
	Send all Ir data
	Save received data
	Data exchange
	settings
3	Camera
4	Sound recorder
5	Data Center
6	GPS
	Position location
	i- appl
	Loc. history
	Position settings
	Loc. notify setting
	Request setting

19

	Reject/Accept call
	Unregistered caller
	Network setting
Page 3	
1	Timed theme
2	Restrict functions
3	Change security code

0 User information

Safety options

❖Setting Kids' mode

▶ (9) ▶ Authenticate ▶ On 1st page,

(1) ▶ (1) or (2)

❖Changing password

▶ (8) ▶ (4) ▶ (6) ▶ (2) ▶ Authenticate ▶

Enter a new password ▶ Enter the new password again to Re-enter password field ▶ (14)

23

About Proper Telephone Etiquette

Always turn OFF your FOMA terminal in the following situation

■ In a location where use of mobile phones is prohibited

Always turn OFF your FOMA terminal completely in an aircraft or hospital.

* Be aware that patients using electronic medical equipment are in many areas in hospitals.

Your FOMA terminal must be switched off even in lobbies or waiting rooms.

■ When you are in crowded train and near by someone using pacemakers, defibrillators or other devices

The FOMA terminal's signals may negatively affect the operation of implanted pacemakers, defibrillators or other devices.

Always set Public mode ON in the following situation

■ While driving

Using a mobile phone holding it with your hand while driving is subject to penal regulations.

* If you inevitably receive a call, tell the caller that you will "call back" by handsfree, then park in a safe place and call back.

■ While in public places such as a concert hall, movie theater or art museum

Using your FOMA terminal in quiet public places will likely bother other people.

Match the volume of voice and ring alert to your location

■ In a quiet location like a restaurant or hotel lobby, pay attention to the volume of your voice and ring alert, etc. when using your FOMA terminal.

■ In town areas, while using your FOMA terminal, be sure not to block foot or vehicular traffic.

Consider privacy



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Functions designed for public use

Your FOMA terminal has a number of useful functions designed for public use, such as a setting that instructs your terminal not to answer incoming calls and the ability to set the terminal for silent operation.

● Public mode (Drive mode/Power OFF)

The caller hears an announcement notifying that the receiver is driving a car or in a place (electric train, bus, movie theater, etc.) requiring suppression of calling and the call is disconnected. →P58

● Recorded messages

Allows the caller to leave a message when you cannot answer the phone. →P60

● Vibrate alert

Vibrates when there is an incoming call. →P80

● Silent mode/Personalized silent mode

Eliminates all sounds your FOMA terminal makes, such as keypad sound and ring alert (Silent mode). →P82

Allows the user to change Silent mode operations (Personalized silent mode). →P83



Don't forget your mobile phone ... or your manners!
When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Through DoCoMo e-site, you may change and confirm your user information, request information materials and also apply new services (in Japanese only).

From i-mode

No packet communication charges

iMenu ⇒ 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Applications/Settings)

⇒ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト) (Various Procedures (DoCoMo e-site))

From PCs

My DoCoMo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>)

⇒ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト) (Various Procedures (DoCoMo e-site))

- * You need your "Network security code" to use e-site from i-mode.
- * No packet communication charge applies to access e-site from i-mode. Packet communication charge applies to access from overseas.
- * You need "DoCoMo ID/Password" to access e-site from your PC.
- * If you do not have or forget "Network security code" or "DoCoMo ID/Password", contact to the numbers mentioned below.
- * You may not use the services depending on your subscription.
- * There are cases where the site may not be available to system maintenance, etc.

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

■(In English)

 **0120-005-250 (toll-free)**

* Available from general subscriber phones, mobile phones and PHSS.

■(In Japanese only)

 **No prefix 151 (toll-free)**

* Available only from mobile phones and PHSS.

●Please check on the number before dialing.

Repairs

■(In Japanese only)

 **No prefix 113 (toll-free)**

* Available only from mobile phones and PHSS.

 **0120-800-000 (toll-free)**

* Available from general subscriber phones, mobile phones and PHSS.

●Please check on the number before dialing.

●For further information, please refer to the list of service stations supplied with your FOMA terminal.

あんしん↑
DoCoMo

DoCoMo "ANSHIN" Mission

“Safe and secure world for all with mobile”

Retailer NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: FUJITSU LIMITED



To promote environmental conservation, be sure to return your used battery pack to NTT DoCoMo's sales outlets, our cooperate agencies or the shops that collect used battery in your community.



80% made from trees in properly managed forests



'07.12 (Issue 1.1)
CA92002-5261

FOMA® F801i

Manual for PC connection setting

Data Communication.....	1
Before use.....	2
Flow of setup for data communication.....	4
Connecting PC and FOMA terminal	6
Installing FOMA communication configuration file.....	7
Communicating using FOMA PC Configuration Software	11
Setting communications without using FOMA PC Configuration Software.....	34
AT command	49

■ About Manual for PC connection setting

This manual describes about data communications using FOMA F801i and how to install "FOMA communication configuration file" and "FOMA PC Configuration Software" contained in CD-ROM.

Depending on the environment of your PC, some of operation procedures and/or screens may be different.

Data Communication

The communication modes available by connecting FOMA terminal and PC are packet communication and 64K data communication.

- To make packet communications or 64K data communications or edit data such as the phonebook using a PC connected, installation of the software in the attached CD-ROM and various settings are required.
- DoCoMo will not guarantee operations on upgraded OS.
- It does not support IP接続 (IP connection).
- FOMA terminal does not support FAX communication or Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be performed connecting with PDA of DoCoMo, musea, sigmarion II or sigmarion III. Note that update of musea or sigmarion II is required for use. For details on update such as method, refer to the DoCoMo website.

Packet communication

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which makes it suitable for high-speed exchange of comparatively small amounts of data as in sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.

High-speed packet communication can be performed at a maximum reception speed of 384bps and a maximum transmission speed of 64kbps by using access points that support FOMA packet communication such as mopera U or mopera of DoCoMo's Internet connection service. However, the actual communication speed varies with the environment and the rate of congestion.

Note that communications of large-size data such as viewing websites containing images and downloading will require high charges.

64K data communication

Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which makes it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents.

Data can be sent/received by using access points that support FOMA 64K data communication services such as mopera U or mopera of DoCoMo's Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64K access points.

Please be careful that a high cost will be charged for long-time communications.

Before use

Operating environment

The operation environment for using data communication is as shown below :

Item	Requirements
Computer	PC/AT compatible computer with a USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0)
OS (Japanese version)	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista
Memory requirements*	Windows 2000 : 64MB or more Windows XP : 128MB or more Windows Vista : 512MB or more
Hard disk capacity*	5MB or more free disk space

* This is the operating environment of FOMA PC Configuration Software. Memory requirements and hard disk capacity may vary depending on the PC system configurations.

- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for pertaining to operation under conditions other than that described above.
- Recommended environment for operating the menu is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later (For Windows Vista, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 or later). If no menu appears when CD-ROM is set, take actions given below.

① Click [スタート (Start)] → "ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run)".

Under Windows Vista : Click  (Start) → "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" → "アクセサリ (Accessories)" → "ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run)".

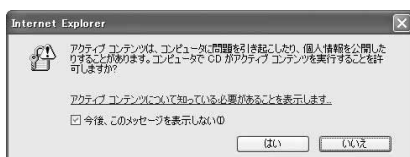
② Enter as follows in "名前 (Name)" and click [OK].

<CD-ROM drive name> : index.html

* CD-ROM drive name varies depending on PC to be used.

When the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC's CD-ROM drive, the warning screen below may be displayed. This warning is displayed according to the security settings of Internet Explorer but it is not a problem for use. Click [[はい] (Yes)].

* The screen is a sample of Windows XP. Depending on the environment of your PC, the screen may be different.



Devices required

The following devices are required in addition to FOMA terminal and PC :

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA® F801i"

* Standard USB cable for PC cannot be used because the connector type is different.

* When using USB HUB, it may not operate properly.

* The description in this manual takes the case with FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 for example.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charges

When using the Internet on a PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter referred to as Provider) is usually required. This charge is paid directly to the Provider, and is separated from the FOMA service charge. For details on usage charges, contact your Provider.

- DoCoMo's Internet connection service, mopera U or mopera is available.

mopera U is an optional subscriber service to be charged requiring subscription. You can also use a plan which charges monthly fee only for a month you use this service. For Internet connection with the FOMA terminal, to use mopera U applicable to broadband connections is recommended.

mopera requires no subscription or monthly charge. This service is convenient for those who need to connect to Internet immediately.

Dialup connection (Provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

- PHS 64K/32K data communications such as PIAFS or connections to DoPa access points are disabled.

User authentication

Some dialup connections require user authentication before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password. Your ID and password will be assigned by the network administrator of the connection destination such as your provider or corporate LAN. For details, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication during using PC browser

If FirstPass (user certificate) is required for the access authentication during using PC browser, you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. For details, see "簡易操作マニュアル (Manual for simple use)" in the attached CD-ROM.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

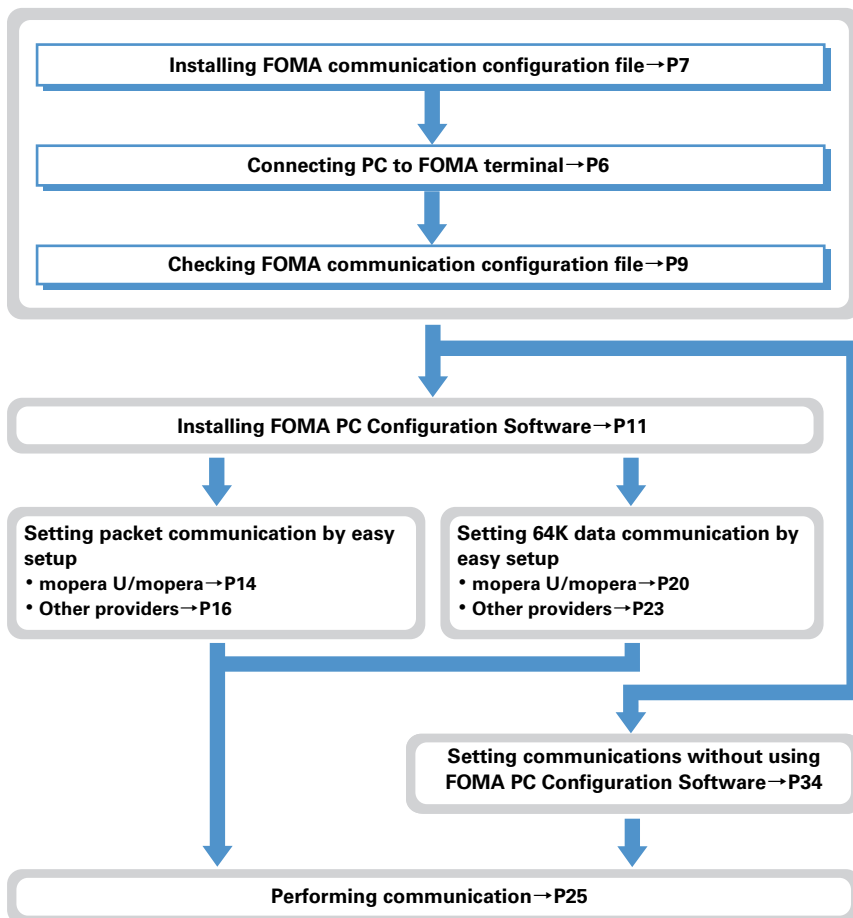
To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied :

- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires a dialup connection that supports FOMA 64K data communications or ISDN synchronized 64K.

* Note that even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy or the signal quality is poor.

Flow of setup for data communication

This section describes the setup work needed to perform packet communication or 64K data communication.



FOMA communication configuration file

Install FOMA communication configuration file on a PC before connecting to PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication.

FOMA PC Configuration Software

When the FOMA PC Configuration Software (found on the attached CD-ROM) is installed on the PC, a number of settings required for packet communication or 64K data communication can be simply operated from PC.

Precautions for installation/uninstallation

- Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running and exit the program if any.
- For installing/uninstalling FOMA communication configuration file, FOMA byte counter or the FOMA PC Configuration Software, make sure that a user with administrator's privilege performs the operation. Installing/uninstalling the software by other users may produce an error. For Windows Vista, when the "ユーザーアカウント制御 (User Account Control)" screen appears, click "許可 (Permit)" or "続行 (Continue)", or enter the password and click [OK]. For details on PC administrator privileges, contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- For operations of the PC, settings of administrator privileges, etc., refer to the Instructions Manual of the PC.

■ Glossary for data communication

● APN (Access Point Name)

String to identify access points such as provider to connect with by packet communication. For example, the APN for mopera U is "mopera.net".

● cid (Context Identifier)

A number used to control dialup connection (APN) for packet communication to be registered in FOMA terminal. 10 numbers from 1 to 10 are available for FOMA terminal.

● DNS (Domain Name System)

A system used to convert domain names (example : nttdocomo.co.jp) to IP addresses used on a PC.

● OBEX (Object Exchange)

An international data communication standard. Mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras, printers, etc. that support OBEX can exchange data with each other.

● QoS (Quality of Service)

The quality of a provided service. Technology ensuring that lines meet user expectations during communication. The communication speed of a FOMA terminal can be set.

● Communication configuration optimization

A TCP parameter designed to fully utilize TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communications in a FOMA network. This communication setup is needed to enable full use of the communication capability of FOMA terminal.

● Administrator privilege

A user level that provides complete access to all operating system functions. There must be at least one user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install/uninstall drivers or software.

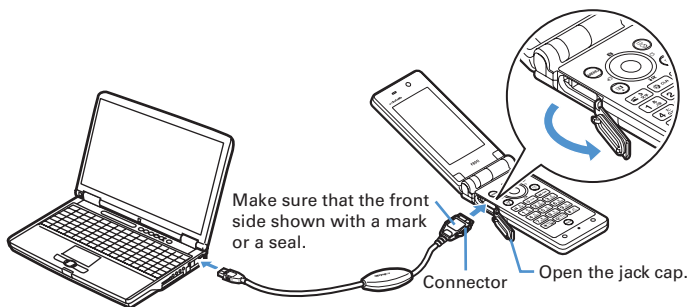
Connecting PC and FOMA terminal

- The connection should be made with the PC and FOMA terminal both turned ON.
- Install FOMA communication configuration file before connecting with a PC for the first time. →P7

Connecting using USB cable

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 is optional.

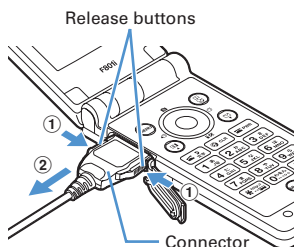
- 1 Insert the connector of the USB cable into the FOMA terminal's external jack.**
- 2 Insert the other end of the USB cable into the PC USB port.**
 - If you connect FOMA terminal to PC before installing FOMA communication configuration file, Windows may automatically detect that USB cable has been inserted and request the driver, and the wizard screen will be displayed. In such a case, remove the FOMA terminal. For Windows 2000 or Windows XP, click [キャンセル (Cancel)] on the wizard screen to end.



- When PC and FOMA terminal are connected, Ψ appears on the stand-by display of the FOMA terminal.

Removing USB cable

- 1 Press the USB cable's release buttons on both sides of the connector (①) and remove the connector from FOMA terminal (②).**



- 2 Pull the USB cable out from the PC.**

INFORMATION

- Be careful not to give excessive force to the connector of the USB cable when connecting/disconnecting the cable to/from FOMA terminal. When disconnecting the connector, be sure to pull it straight while pressing the release buttons. Applying an excessive force to disconnect the connector may give damage to it.
- Do not remove the USB cable during data communication. The data communication would be disconnected and it may cause data loss or malfunction.

Installing FOMA communication configuration file

To make data communication by connecting FOMA terminal to a PC, FOMA communication configuration file is required. Install the file before connecting FOMA terminal for the first time to the PC.

Installing FOMA communication configuration file

- Before operating, refer to "Precautions for installation/uninstallation". → P5
- Do not connect the FOMA terminal before Step 4.

<Example> Installing the driver under Windows XP

1 Insert the CD-ROM into the PC's CD-ROM drive.



2 Click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Configuration software)]→[インストール (Install)] of "FOMA通信設定ファイル (USBドライバ) (FOMA communication configuration file (USB driver))" and double-click "F801ist.exe" icon from a window displayed.



3 Click [インストール開始 (Start installation)].



4 When a message indicating to connect the FOMA terminal to the PC appears, connect the FOMA terminal to the PC.



- Connect the FOMA terminal while the power is ON.

5 On the installation completion screen, click [OK].



- Subsequently, install FOMA byte counter. FOMA byte counter is software to figure out the approximate estimate of the fee of the data communication performed by connecting a mobile phone and a PC. When FOMA byte counter is running, exit it.

6 On the "FOMAバイトカウンタセットアップへようこそ (Welcome to FOMA byte counter setup)" screen, click [次へ (Next)].

7 Read "注意事項 (Precautions)" and click [次へ (Next)].

8 On the "使用許諾契約 (Agreement)" screen, read the contents of the agreement, and if you agree to the agreement, click "使用許諾契約の全条項に同意します (Agree to the all clauses of the agreement)" and click [次へ (Next)].

9 On the "インストール先の選択 (Select installation path)" screen, check the installation path and click [次へ (Next)].

- To change the path, click [変更 (Change)], specify a new path and click [OK].

10 Click [インストール (Install)].

11 Click [完了 (Done)].

12 Click [OK], set the option according to your usage.

- For setting method of option or usage of FOMA byte counter, see "FOMAバイトカウンタ操作マニュアル (FOMA byte counter User manual)".

INFORMATION

- Installation may take a few minutes.
- When a message notifying you to reboot Windows is displayed, follow the instruction and reboot.
- Do not install during data communication.

Checking FOMA communication configuration file

- When the PC does not detect the FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

<Example> Checking the driver under Windows XP

Click [スタート (Start)]→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→[パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance)] icon→[システム (System)] icon.

■ Under Windows 2000

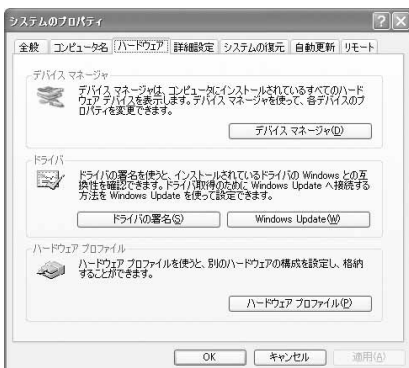
Click [スタート (Start)]→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)" and double-click [システム (System)] icon.

■ Under Windows Vista

Click  (Start)→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"システムとメンテナンス (System and maintenance)"→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

Go to Step 3.

Click [ハードウェア (Hardware)] tab→[デバイス マネージャ (Device manager)].



3 Double-click the type of each device and check that the name of the following devices are registered.



- Device types and names are shown as below :
The order to be displayed differs depending on OSs.
 - USB (Universal Serial Bus) or ユニバーサルシリアルバス (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ (Controller) : FOMA F801i
 - ポート (COMとLPT) (Port (COM and LPT)) :
FOMA F801i Command Port (COMx)*
FOMA F801i OBEX Port (COMx)*
 - モデム (Modem) : FOMA F801i

* Depending on the PC environment, x represents different numbers.

Uninstalling communication configuration file (driver)

- Before operating, refer to "Precautions for installation/uninstallation".→P5
- Before operating, remove the FOMA terminal from the PC.

<Example> Uninstalling the driver under Windows XP

1 Click [スタート (Start)]→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→[プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/delete programs)] icon.

■ Under Windows 2000

Click [スタート (Start)]→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)" and double-click [アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/delete applications)] icon.

■ Under Windows Vista

Click [スタート (Start)]→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"プログラムのアンインストール (Uninstall programs)".

2 On the "プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/delete programs)" screen, select "FOMA F801i USB" and click [変更と削除 (Change and delete)].

■ Under Windows 2000

On the "アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/delete applications)" screen, select "FOMA F801i USB" and click [変更と削除 (Change and delete)].

■ Under Windows Vista

On the "プログラムのアンインストールまたは変更 (Uninstall or change programs)" screen, select "FOMA F801i USB" and click "アンインストールと変更 (Uninstall and change)".

3 Check that "FOMA F801i Uninstaller" is displayed and click [はい (Yes)].

The uninstall process of the driver starts.



4 After the driver uninstallation in progress screen is displayed, click [OK].

INFORMATION

- When "FOMA F801i USB" is not displayed on the deletion screen, execute the operations in "Installing FOMA communication configuration file" again and uninstall.→P7

Communicating using FOMA PC Configuration Software

The FOMA PC Configuration Software allows you to perform setup for the communication by simple operation.

FOMA PC Configuration Software

Easy setup

This function creates a dialup connection for FOMA data communication and performs communication configuration optimization at the same time by following the instructions in the guide.

Communication configuration optimization

This function optimizes the settings in the PC required for packet communication. Communication configuration optimization is required to enable full use of communication performance.

Dialup connection (APN) setup

This function performs Dialup connection (APN) setup required for packet communication. Phone numbers cannot be used as a dialup connection. Set a dialup connection name (called APN) in FOMA terminal for each dialup connection and enter the registration number (cid) in the entry field of dialup connection phone number. APN "mopera.ne.jp" to connect to mopera is registered in cid1 and APN "mopera.net" to connect to mopera U is registered in cid3 by default. However, the APN setting is required for connections to other providers and corporate LANs.

Installing FOMA PC Configuration Software

- In case W-TCP environment configuration software, previously used FOMA data communication configuration software or FOMA PC configuration software with version prior to 4.0.0 is already installed on the PC, uninstall this software beforehand.

To check the version of FOMA PC Configuration Software, click "メニュー (Menu)" on the start screen of FOMA PC Configuration Software→ Click "バージョン情報 (Version information)".

Display method for how to start FOMA PC Communication Software→P14 Step 1 in "Using mopera U/ mopera" of "Setting packet communication by easy setup"

- Before operating, refer to "Precautions for installation/uninstallation".→P5

<Example> Installing the software under Windows XP

1 Insert the CD-ROM into the PC's CD-ROM drive.

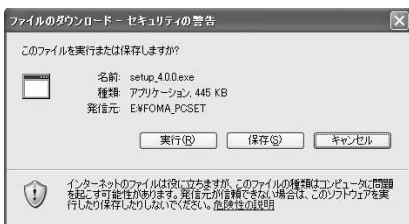


2

Click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Configuration software)]→[インストール (Install)] of "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)".



- When [インストール (Install)] is clicked, the warning screen below may be displayed. This warning is displayed according to the security settings of Internet Explorer but it is not a problem for use. Click [実行 (Execution)] or [実行する (Execute)].
- * Depending on the environment of your PC, the screen may be different.



3

On the "FOMA PC設定ソフト セットアップへようこそ (Welcome to FOMA PC Configuration Software setup)" screen, click [次へ (Next)].

4

On the "使用許諾契約 (Agreement)" screen, read the content of the screen and click [はい (Yes)] if you agree to the license agreement.

- Click [いいえ (No)] and click [はい (Yes)] to terminate the install process.

■ Under Windows Vista

Go to Step 6.

5

On the "セットアップタイプ (Setup type)" screen, select "タスクトレイに常駐する (Reside in task tray)" and click [次へ (Next)].

"通信設定最適化 (Communication configuration optimization)" resides in the task tray after the setup. → P27

- You can change the setting of residence after the installation.

6

On the "インストール先の選択 (Select installation path)" screen, check the installation path and click [次へ (Next)].

- To change the path, click [参照 (Browse)], specify a new path and click [OK].

7 Check the name of the "プログラム フォルダ (Program folder)" and click [次へ (Next)].



- To use a different folder, enter a folder name and click [次へ (Next)].

8 Click [完了 (Done)].

FOMA PC Configuration Software is started up. Go to settings from this screen.

INFORMATION

- When W-TCP environment configuration software, previously used FOMA data communication configuration software or FOMA PC Configuration Software is already installed, a message informing that the installation will be terminated appears. Click [OK] and uninstall these software from プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/delete programs) or アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/delete applications).
- When [キャンセル (Cancel)] or [いいえ (No)] is clicked during installation, a confirmation screen asking whether to stop installation appears. Click [いいえ (No)] to continue installation. When stopping installation, click [はい (Yes)] and click [完了 (Done)].

Setting packet communication by easy setup

Easy setup of FOMA PC Configuration Software allows simple dialup setting for FOMA by making selections and entries according to the instructions displayed.

- Before operating, make sure that the PC and FOMA terminal are properly connected. → P6
- When using Windows Vista, part of the screens differ.

Using mopera U/mopera

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

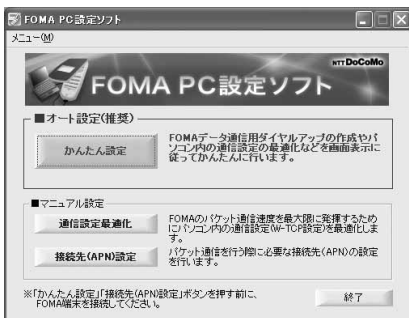
1 Click [スタート (Start)] → Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" → "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" → [かんたん設定 (Easy setup)].

■ Under Windows 2000

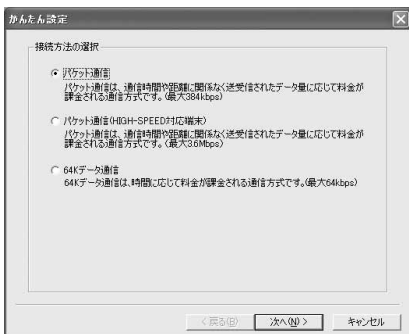
Click [スタート (Start)] → Select "プログラム (Programs)" → "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" → [かんたん設定 (Easy setup)].

■ Under Windows Vista

Click [スタート (Start)] → "すべてのプログラム (All Programs)" → "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" → "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" → [かんたん設定 (Easy setup)].

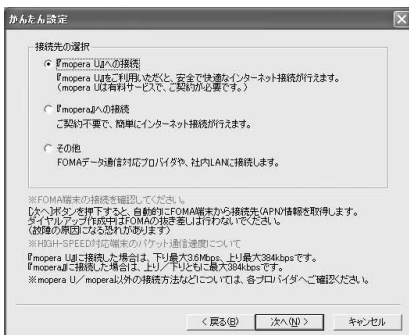


2 Select "パケット通信 (Packet communication)" and click [次へ (Next)].



3

Select "『mopera U』への接続 (mopera U connection)" or "『mopera』への接続 (mopera connection)" and click [次へ (Next)].



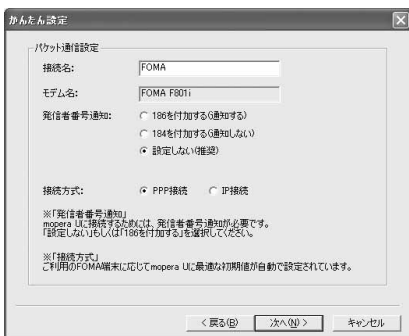
- After selecting "『mopera U』への接続 (mopera U connection)" and clicking [次へ (Next)], a subscription confirmation message appears. If you have already subscribed, click [はい (Yes)].

4

On the "FOMA端末設定取得 (Get FOMA terminal settings)" screen, click [OK].

5

Enter the desired dialup connection name in "接続名 (Connection name)" → Select "設定しない (推奨) (Not set (Recommended))" or "186を付加する (通知する) (Prefix 186 (Notify))" → Select "PPP接続 (PPP connection)" → Click [次へ (Next)].



- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used :
¥ / : * ? ! < > | "
- mopera U supports both PPP接続 (PPP connection) and IP接続 (IP connection). mopera supports only PPP接続 (PPP connection).

This FOMA terminal does not support IP接続 (IP connection).

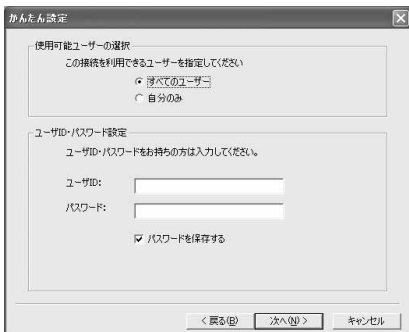
6

Set "使用可能ユーザーの選択 (Selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection)" and click [次へ (Next)].

■ Under Windows Vista

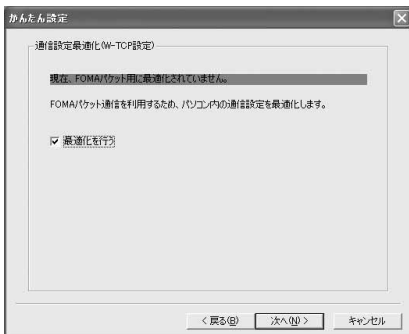
Click [次へ (Next)].

Go to Step 8.



- You do not need to enter "ユーザID (User ID)" or "パスワード (Password)".

7 Check that "最適化を行う (Optimize)" is selected and click [次へ (Next)].



- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.

8 Check "設定情報 (Settings)" and click [完了 (Done)].



9 Click [OK].

The PC may need to be rebooted depending on the settings. Click [はい (Yes)] when a message that prompts you to reboot the PC appears.

Performing communication → P25

Using other providers

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

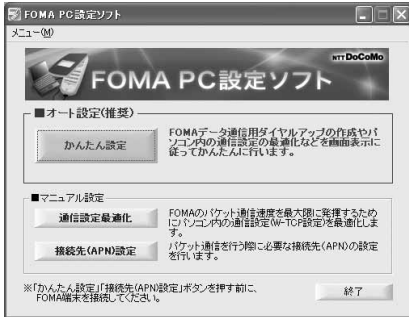
1 Click [スタート (Start)] → Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" → "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" → [かんたん設定 (Easy setup)].

■ Under Windows 2000

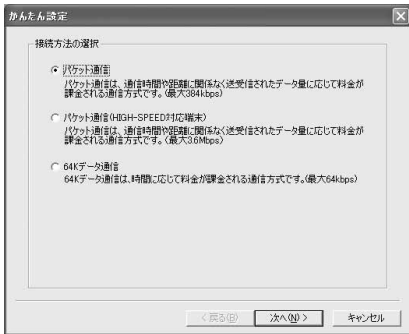
Click [スタート (Start)] → Select "プログラム (Programs)" → "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" → [かんたん設定 (Easy setup)].

■ Under Windows Vista

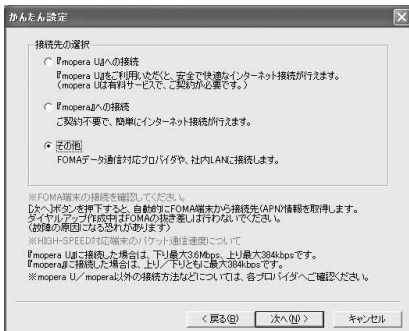
Click  (Start) → "すべてのプログラム (All Programs)" → "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" → "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" → [かんたん設定 (Easy setup)].



2 Select "パケット通信 (Packet communication)" and click [次へ (Next)].



3 Select "その他 (Others)" and click [次へ (Next)].



4 On the "FOMA 端末設定取得 (Get FOMA terminal settings)" screen, click [OK].

5 Enter the desired dialup connection name in "接続名 (Connection name)" and click [接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set dialup connection (APN))].

- For settings of caller ID notification, use information provided by the Information Provider, etc.
- If you select "186を付加する (通知する) (Prefix 186 (Notify))", your number is displayed on the other party's phone each time you execute the communication.
- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used :
¥ / : * ? ! < > | "
- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc., click [詳細情報の設定 (Set detail info)] and register various information.

6 Click [追加 (Add)].

APN "mopera.ne.jp" is set in number (cid) 1 to connect to mopera and APN "mopera.net" is set in number (cid) 3 to connect to mopera U. Set the dialup connection (APN) to number (cid) 2 or 4-10.

番号 (cid)	接続先 (APN)	接続方式
1	mopera.ne.jp	PPP接続
2	mopera.ne.jp	PPP接続
3	mopera.net	PPP接続

7 Enter a dialup connection (APN), which supports the FOMA packet communication of your provider, etc., in "接続先 (APN) (Dialup connection (APN))" → Select "PPP接続 (PPP connection)" and click [OK].

- Only one-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-) and periods (.) can be used in the "接続先 (APN) (Dialup connection (APN))".

This FOMA terminal does not support IP接続 (IP connection).

8 Click [OK].

番号 (cid)	接続先 (APN)	接続方式
1	mopera.ne.jp	PPP接続
2	XXXXXXXXXX	PPP接続
3	mopera.net	PPP接続
4	mopera.ne.jp	PPP接続

9 Check the connection name in "接続先 (APN) の選択 (Selection of dialup connection (APN))" and click [次へ (Next)].

"接続先 (APN) (Dialup connection (APN))" and "接続方式 (Connection method)" set in Step 7 is displayed in "接続先 (APN) の選択 (Selection of dialup connection (APN))".

10 Set "使用可能ユーザーの選択 (Selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection)" → Enter "ユーザID (User ID)" → "パスワード (Password)" and click [次へ (Next)].

■ Under Windows Vista

Enter "ユーザID (User ID)" → "パスワード (Password)" and click [次へ (Next)].

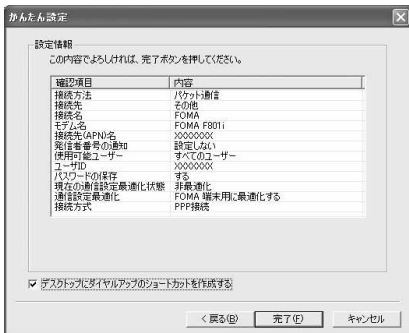
Go to Step 12.

- Enter "ユーザID (User ID)" and "パスワード (Password)" given by the provider, etc. Make sure such as the case of each character.

11 Check that "最適化を行う (Optimize)" is selected and click [次へ (Next)].

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.

12 Check "設定情報 (Settings)" and click [完了 (Done)].



13 Click [OK].

The PC may need to be rebooted depending on the settings. Click [[はい (Yes)]] when a message that prompts you to reboot the PC appears.

Performing communication → P25

Setting 64K data communication by easy setup

Using mopera U/mopera

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

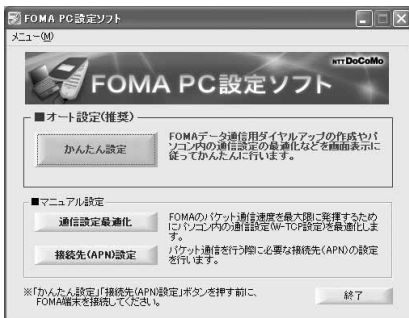
1 Click [スタート (Start)] → Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" → "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" → [かんたん設定 (Easy setup)].

■ Under Windows 2000

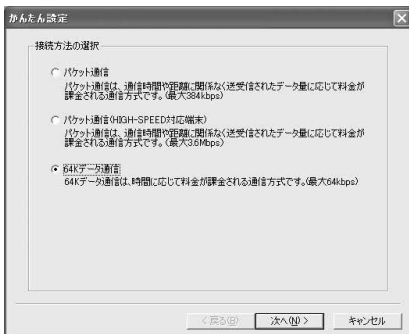
Click [スタート (Start)] → Select "プログラム (Programs)" → "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" → [かんたん設定 (Easy setup)].

■ Under Windows Vista

Click [スタート (Start)] → "すべてのプログラム (All Programs)" → "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" → "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" → [かんたん設定 (Easy setup)].



2 Select "64Kデータ通信 (64K data communication)" and click [次へ (Next)].

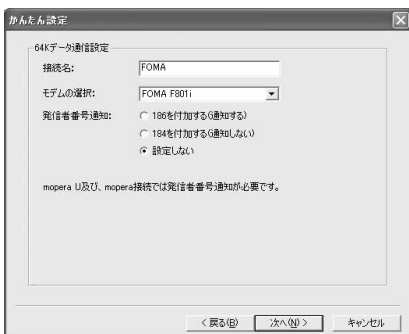


3 Select "『mopera U』への接続 (mopera U connection)" or "『mopera』への接続 (mopera connection)" and click [次へ (Next)].



- After selecting "『mopera U』への接続 (mopera U connection)" and clicking [次へ (Next)], a subscription confirmation message appears. If you have already subscribed, click [はい (Yes)].

4 Enter the desired dialup connection name in "接続名 (Connection name)"→ Check that "モデムの選択 (Modem selection)" is set to "FOMA F801i"→ Select "設定しない (Not set)" or "186を付加する (通知する) (Prefix 186 (Notify))" and click [次へ (Next)].

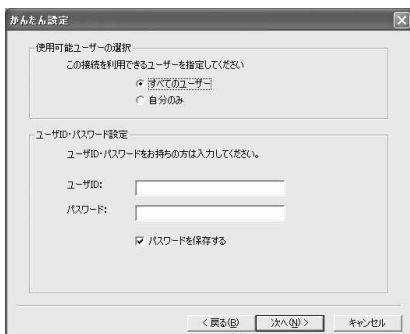


- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used :
¥/:*?!<> | "

5 Set "使用可能ユーザーの選択 (Selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection)" and click [次へ (Next)].

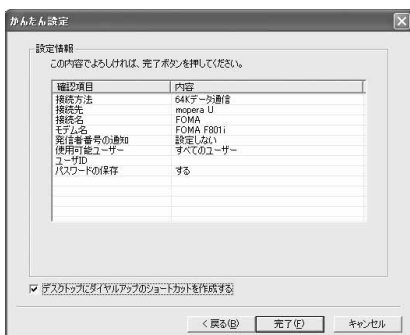
■ Under Windows Vista

Click [次へ (Next)].



- You do not need to enter "ユーザID (User ID)" or "パスワード (Password)".

6 Check "設定情報 (Settings)" and click [完了 (Done)].



項目	内容
接続方法	64Kデーモ接続
接続先	mopera U
接続名	FCMA
モデム名	FCMA F8011
電話番号の通知 (使用可能ユーザー)	設定しない
ユーザID	すべてのユーザー
パスワードの保存	する

7 Click [OK].

Performing communication → P25

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

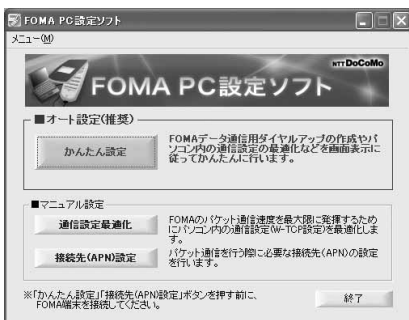
1 Click [スタート (Start)]→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)"→[かんたん設定 (Easy setup)].

■ Under Windows 2000

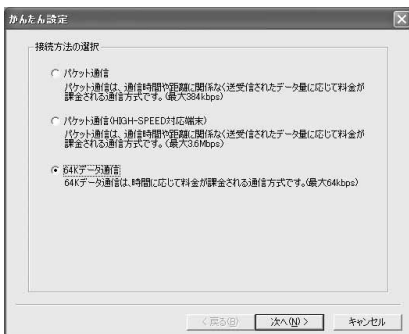
Click [スタート (Start)]→Select "プログラム (Programs)"→"FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)"→[かんたん設定 (Easy setup)].

■ Under Windows Vista

Click  (Start)→"すべてのプログラム (All Programs)"→"FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)"→"FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)"→[かんたん設定 (Easy setup)].



2 Select "64Kデータ通信 (64K data communication)" and click [次へ (Next)].



3 Select "その他 (Others)" and click [次へ (Next)].



4 Enter the desired dialup connection name in "接続名 (Connection name)" → Check that "モデムの選択 (Modem selection)" is set to "FOMA F801i" → Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "電話番号 (Phone number)" with one-byte and click [次へ (Next)].



- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used :
¥/:*?!<>|"
- Enter "電話番号 (Phone number)" correctly based on the information given by provider, etc. The following characters (one-byte) and one-byte spaces can be used :
0123456789ABCDPTWabcdptw!@\$_-.()+ * #,&
- For settings of caller ID notification, use information provided by the Information Provider, etc.
- If you select "186を付加する (通知する) (Prefix 186 (Notify))", your number is displayed on the other party's phone each time you execute the communication.
- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc., click [詳細情報の設定 (Set detail info)] and register various information.

- 5** Set "使用可能ユーザーの選択 (Selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection)" → Enter "ユーザID (User ID)" → "パスワード (Password)" and click [次へ (Next)].

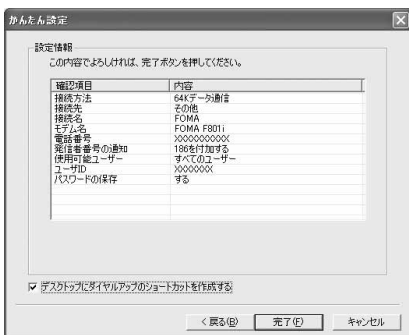
■ Under Windows Vista

Enter "ユーザID (User ID)" → "パスワード (Password)" and click [次へ (Next)].



- Enter "ユーザID (User ID)" and "パスワード (Password)" given by the provider, etc. Make sure such as the case of each character.

- 6** Check "設定情報 (Settings)" and click [完了 (Done)].



- 7** Click [OK].

Performing communication → P25

Performing communication

Starting communication and disconnection are explained here.

<Example> Performing communication under Windows XP

- 1** Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

Connection procedure → P6

- 2** Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.



Windows
XP



Windows
2000



Windows
Vista

- When the connection icon is not displayed, use the following connection procedure starting from the Start menu.

■ Connecting from Start menu of Windows XP

Click [スタート (Start)]→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)" and double-click the connection icon.

■ Connecting from Start menu of Windows 2000

Click [スタート (Start)]→Select "プログラム (Programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)" and double-click the connection icon.

■ Connecting from Start menu of Windows Vista

 (Start)→"接続先 (Dialup connection)"→Select the dialup connection and click [接続 (Connect)].

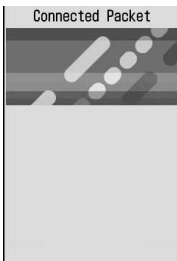
3 Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→"パスワード (Password)" and click [ダイヤル (Dial)].



- When using mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)".
- When "ユーザー名 (User name)" was entered or "パスワード (Password)" was saved while settings, these entries are no longer necessary.
- Click [OK] when the connection established screen is displayed.

INFORMATION

- FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet communication or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established :



For packet communication



For 64K data communication

- The communication speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.
- The transmission is available only with the FOMA terminal that was connected when the icon was created.

Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the PC browser may not disconnect communication. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation :

<Example> Disconnecting communication under Windows XP

1 Click  in the task tray → [切断 (Disconnect)].

■ Under Windows Vista

Right-click  in the task tray → Select "切断 (Disconnect)" and click the dialup connection to disconnect.



Optimizing packet communication setup <Communication configuration optimization>

Communication configuration optimization is a TCP parameter tuning tool for optimizing TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communication in the FOMA network when using Windows 2000 or Windows XP. This setup is needed to enable full use of the communication capability of FOMA terminal. The method of optimizing the PC packet communication setup for FOMA network by means of communication configuration optimization and deactivating optimization is explained here.

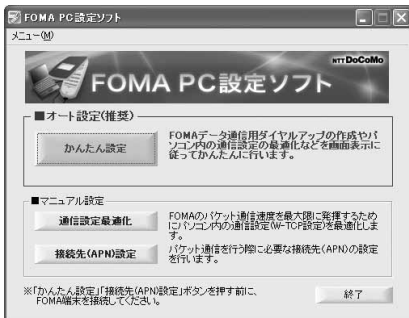
Activating and deactivating system optimization under Windows XP

System optimization can be performed for each dialup connection under Windows XP.

1 Click [スタート (Start)] → Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" → "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" → [通信設定最適化 (Communication configuration optimization)].

Starting communication configuration optimization from task tray

Click  in the task tray.

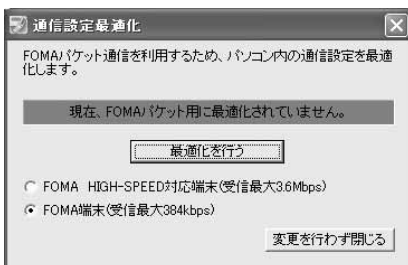


2

Perform the following.

When the system has not been optimized

- 1 Click [最適化を行う (Optimize)] on the "通信設定最適化 (Communication configuration optimization)" screen.



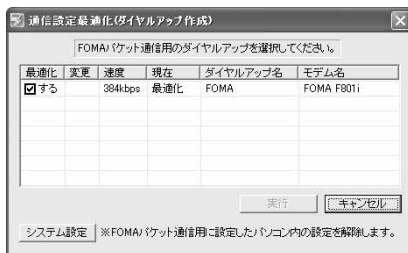
- Check that "FOMA端末 (受信最大384kbps) (FOMA terminal (Maximum reception speed of 384kbps))" is selected.

- 2 Click ☐ of dialup connection to be optimized in the "最適化 (Optimization)" field to ☒ and click [実行 (Execution)].
- 3 Click [OK].

Optimization of the system settings and dialup settings are performed respectively.

When the system has been optimized

Make the required settings if changes are to be made.



Deactivating optimization

- Deactivate the optimization when performing 64K data communications or performing communications with terminals other than FOMA terminal.

- 1 On "通信設定最適化 (ダイヤルアップ作成) (Communication configuration optimization (Create dialup connection))" screen, click ☒ of "最適化 (Optimization)" field for the dialup to be canceled.
 - Check that "する (Apply)" of "最適化 (Optimization)" field is deselected (☐).
- 2 Click [実行 (Execute)].
- 3 Click [OK].

3 Follow the instructions shown on the screen to reboot PC.

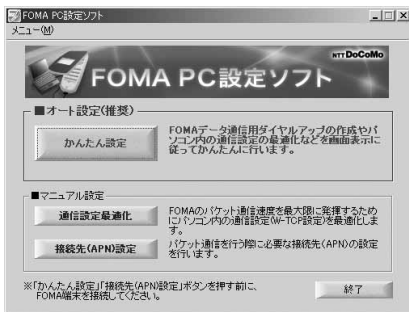
Rebooting the PC is required to enable settings. When selecting [いいえ (No)], settings are enabled when booting the PC next time.

Activating and deactivating system optimization under Windows 2000

1 Click [スタート (Start)]→Select "プログラム (Programs)"→"FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)"→[通信設定最適化 (Communication configuration optimization)].

■ Starting communication configuration optimization from task tray

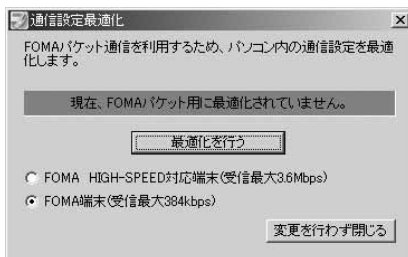
Click  in the task tray.



2 Perform the following.

■ When the system has not been optimized

① Click [最適化を行う (Optimize)].



- Check that "FOMA端末 (受信最大384kbps) (FOMA terminal (Maximum reception speed of 384kbps))" is selected.

② Click [OK].

■ When the system has been optimized

- Deactivate the optimization when performing 64K data communications or performing communications with terminals other than FOMA terminal, etc.

① Click [最適化を解除する (Deactivate optimization)].



- Check that "FOMA端末 (受信最大384kbps) (FOMA terminal (Maximum reception speed of 384kbps))" is selected.

② Click [OK].

3 Follow the instructions shown on the screen to reboot PC.

Rebooting the PC is required to enable settings. When selecting [いいえ (No)], settings are enabled when booting the PC next time.

Setting the dialup connection (APN)

Set dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

- Before operating, make sure that the PC and FOMA terminal are properly connected. → P6
- The dialup connections (APN) can be set for registration numbers (cid) between 1 and 10 in FOMA terminal. APN "mopera.ne.jp" to connect to mopera is set in cid1 and APN "mopera.net" to connect to mopera U is set in cid3 by default. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register APN for cid2 or 4-10.
- For the dialup connections (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

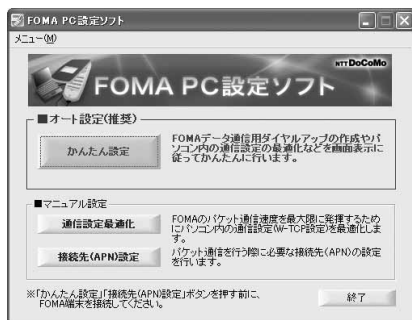
1 Click [スタート (Start)]→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)"→[接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set dialup connection (APN))].

■ Under Windows 2000

Click [スタート (Start)]→Select "プログラム (Programs)"→"FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)"→[接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set dialup connection (APN))].

■ Under Windows Vista

Click  (Start)→"すべてのプログラム (All Programs)"→"FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)"→"FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)"→[接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set dialup connection (APN))].



2 On the "FOMA端末設定取得 (Get FOMA terminal settings)" screen, click [OK].

3 Make the dialup connection (APN) settings.



■ Adding dialup connections (APN)

Click [追加 (Add)].

■ Editing/correcting registered dialup connections (APN)

Select the dialup connection (APN) to edit and click [編集 (Edit)].

■ Deleting registered dialup connections (APN)

Select the dialup connection (APN) to delete and click [削除 (Delete)]→Click [OK].

- The dialup connection (APN) registered in number (cid) 1 and 3 cannot be deleted. Even if you execute 削除 (Delete), when writing the settings to FOMA terminal, the original settings are restored without deleting these APNs.

■ Saving settings as file

Click "ファイル (File)"→"名前を付けて保存 (Save as...)" or "上書き保存 (Save)".

- Save the settings as a file to back up dialup connection (APN) settings registered in FOMA terminal or save dialup connection (APN) settings during editing.

■ Importing settings from file

Click "ファイル (File)"→"開く (Open)".

- Import settings from a file to edit access point (APN) saved on the PC or to write to the FOMA terminal.

■ Importing dialup connection (APN) information from FOMA terminal

Click "ファイル (File)"→"FOMA端末から設定を取得 (Import setting from FOMA terminal)".

- Access manually to FOMA terminal to import the dialup connection (APN) information registered.

■ Writing dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal

Click [FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む (Write setting to FOMA terminal)]→[はい (Yes)].

- The dialup connection (APN) setting displayed is written to the FOMA terminal.

■ Creating dialup connections

- ① **Select an added or edited dialup connection (APN) and click [ダイヤルアップ作成 (Create dialup connection)].**
"FOMA端末設定書き込み (Write setting to FOMA terminal)" screen is displayed.
- ② **Click [はい (Yes)]→[OK].**
"パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成 (Create dialup connection for packet communication)" screen is displayed.
- ③ **Enter the desired dialup connection name in "接続名 (Connection name)" and click [ユーザID・パスワードの設定 (Set user ID and password)].**
 - You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used :
¥/:*?!<>|"
 - For settings of caller ID notification, use information provided by the Information Provider, etc.
 - If you select "186を付加する (通知する) (Prefix 186 (Notify))", your number is displayed on the other party's phone each time you execute the communication.
 - When using mopera U or mopera, performing [ユーザID・パスワードの設定 (Set user ID and password)] is not required. In that case, go to Step ⑤.
- ④ **Set "使用可能ユーザーの選択 (Selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection)"→Enter "ユーザID (User ID)"→"パスワード (Password)" and click [OK].**
Under Windows Vista : Enter "ユーザID (User ID)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)" and click "OK".
 - When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc., click [詳細情報の設定 (Set detail info)] on the "パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成 (Create dialup connection for packet communication)" screen, register various information and click [OK].
- ⑤ **Click [OK]→[OK].**

INFORMATION

- Set "接続方式 (Connection method)" to "PPP接続 (PPP connection)" when adding or editing a dialup connection (APN). If "IP接続 (IP connection)" is selected, you cannot write the settings to FOMA terminal.
- The dialup connection (APN) setting is information saved in the FOMA terminal. When connecting another FOMA terminal (terminal replaced by repair, etc.), re-register the APN.
- To continue to use the dialup connection (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same APN in the FOMA terminal.

Uninstalling FOMA PC Configuration Software

- Before operating, refer to "Precautions for installation/uninstallation". →P5

Uninstall preparation

Right-click  if  is displayed in the task tray, click "終了 (End)" and cancel the residence of communication configuration optimization.

Uninstalling

<Example> Uninstalling the software under Windows XP

- 1 Click [スタート (Start)]→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→[プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/delete programs)] icon.

■ Under Windows 2000

Click [スタート (Start)]→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)" and double-click [アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/delete applications)] icon.

■ Under Windows Vista

Click  (Start)→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"プログラムのアンインストール (Uninstall programs)".

2 Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click [削除 (Delete)].

■ Under Windows 2000

Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click [変更と削除 (Change and delete)].

■ Under Windows Vista

Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click [アンインストール (Uninstall)].



3 Check that "FOMA PC設定ソフトセットアップ (FOMA PC Configuration Software setup)" is displayed and click [はい (Yes)].

The uninstall process of the FOMA PC Configuration Software starts.



■ Deactivating when optimized

On the confirmation screen asking whether to deactivate, click [はい (Yes)]→Set whether to reboot PC immediately on "再起動の確認 (Confirming reboot)" screen and click [完了 (Done)].

- Optimization is deactivated after PC is rebooted.

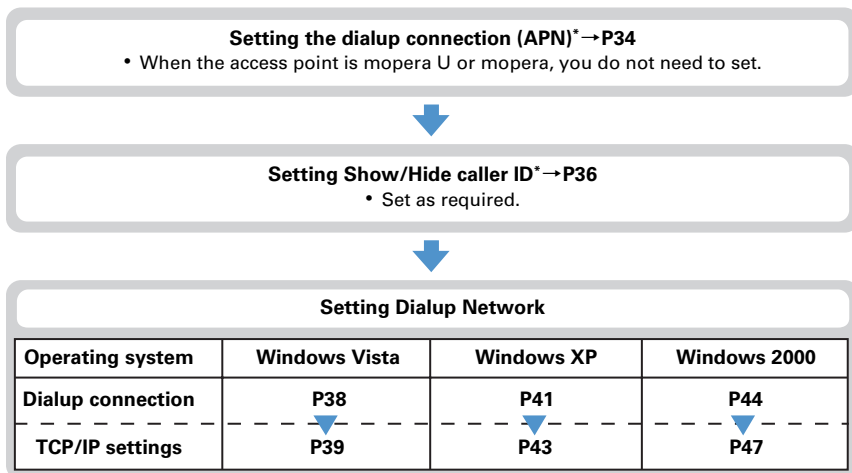
4 Click [完了 (Done)].

Setting communications without using FOMA PC Configuration Software

The method of dialup connection setup without the FOMA PC Configuration Software is explained.

Flow of dialup network setting

Flow of setup for data communication→P4



* Set for packet communication.

Communication software to input AT commands is required for settings.

The method of setting using "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)" that comes with Windows 2000 and Windows XP is explained here. Windows Vista does not support "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)". For Windows Vista, set using the software supported by Windows Vista (Follow the method for the software to be used.).

Setting the dialup connection (APN)

The dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup connections (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers (cid) between 1 and 10 in FOMA terminal. APN "mopera.ne.jp" to connect to mopera is registered in cid1 and APN "mopera.net" to connect to mopera U is registered in cid3 by default. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register APN for cid2 or 4-10.

- For the dialup connections (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.
- The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook entries registered for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and FOMA terminal phonebook is as shown below :

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

- The registered cid become the connection number in the dialup connection numbers setting.

Setting the dialup connection (APN)

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

- 1 **Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.**
Connection procedure→P6
- 2 **Click [スタート (Start)]→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ("プログラム (Programs)" for Windows 2000)→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)".**
- 3 **Enter the desired dialup connection name in "名前 (Name)" and click [OK].**



- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be used in "接続名 (Connection name)":
¥/:*?<>|"

- 4 **Enter a fictional phone number (such as "0") for "電話番号 (Phone number)"**
→ Check that "接続方法 (Connection procedure)" is set to "FOMA F801i" and click [OK].



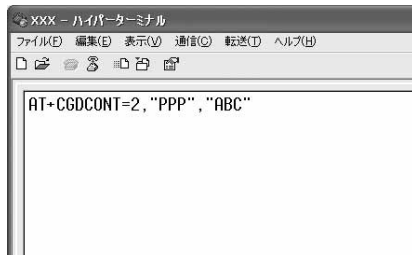
- The area code differs depending on the PC environment. The code does not relate to Dialup connection (APN) setup. So no need to change.

- 5 **Click [キャンセル (Cancel)] on the "接続 (Connect)" screen.**

6 Enter the dialup connection (APN) in the format "AT+CGDCONT =<cid>, "PPP", "<APN>" → .

<cid> : Enter any number between 4 and 10 or 2.

<APN> : Dialup connection (APN)



- +CGDCONT command → P56 "Supplement to AT command"
- If nothing is displayed even when AT command is entered, enter ATE1 and press .

7 Check that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイル (File)" → "ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)".



8 When confirming disconnection, click [はい (Yes)] → When confirming saving, click [いいえ (No)].

Setting Show/Hide caller ID

You can set to show/hide caller ID for packet communication at once.

Caller ID is your important information. Take care when deciding to disclose your caller ID.

- If "Not notify" is set when using mopera U or mopera, connection is disabled.

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

Connection procedure → P6

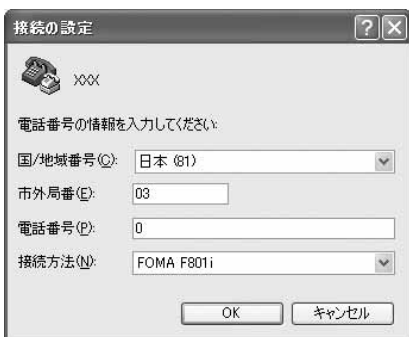
2 Click [スタート (Start)] → Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ("プログラム (Programs)" for Windows 2000) → "アクセサリ (Accessories)" → "通信 (Communication)" and click "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)".

3 Enter the desired dialup connection name in "名前 (Name)" and click [OK].



- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be used in "接続名 (Connection name)" :
¥ / : * ? < > | "

4 Enter a fictional phone number (such as "0") for "電話番号 (Phone number)" → Check that "接続方法 (Connection procedure)" is set to "FOMA F801i" and click [OK].



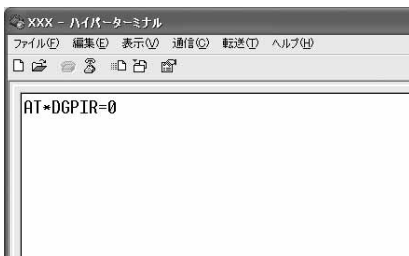
- The area code differs depending on the PC environment. The code does not relate to Dialup connection (APN) setup. So no need to change.

5 Click [キャンセル (Cancel)] on the "接続 (Connect)" screen.

6 Enter notify/not notify of caller ID in the format "AT * DGPIR=<n>" → .

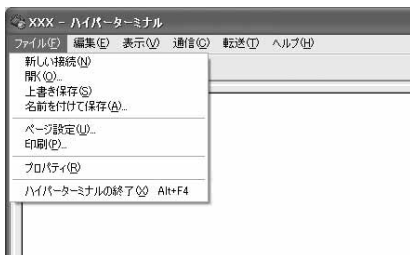
<n> : 0-2

- 0 : Connect directly (Default)
- 1 : Connect prefixing 184 (Not notify)
- 2 : Connect prefixing 186 (Notify)



- If nothing is displayed even when AT command is entered, enter ATE1 and press .

7 Check that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイル (File)"→"ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)".



8 When confirming disconnection, click [はい (Yes)]→When confirming saving, click [いいえ (No)].

Show/Hide caller ID function by dialup network settings

The dialup network settings can also be used to append 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) to the dialup connection number.

- The Show/Hide of caller ID when both of the * DGPIR command and dialup network settings are set is as shown below :

Setting made by * DGPIR command Dialup network setting (<cid>=3)	No setting	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
* 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184 * 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is not sent.		
186 * 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is sent.		

Setting dialup network for Windows Vista

Setting dialup connection

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

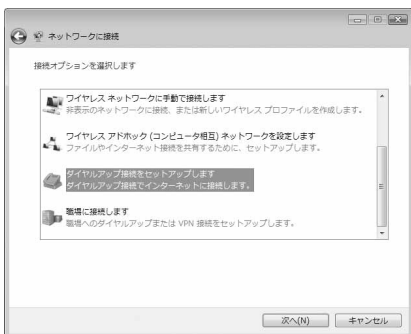
Connection procedure→P6

2 Click (Start)→"接続先 (Dialup connection)".

3 Click "接続またはネットワークをセットアップします (Set up connection or network)".

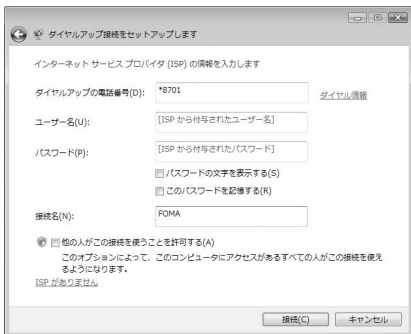


4 Select "ダイヤルアップ接続をセットアップします (Set up dialup connection)" and click [次へ (Next)].



■ When the "どのモデムを使いますか？ (Which modem will you use?)" screen is displayed
Click "FOMA F801".

5 Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "ダイヤルアップの電話番号 (Dialup phone number)" ("*99**<cid>#" for packet communication) with one-byte→Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)"→Enter "接続名 (Connection name)" and click [接続 (Connect)]. <cid> : P35 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"



- When connecting to moper U or moper a, enter as follows :

Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
moper a U	*99**3#	*8701
moper a	*99**1#	*9601

- When the access point is moper a U or moper a, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)".
- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used :

¥/:*?<>|

6 On the connecting screen, click [スキップ (Skip)].

- Only make settings without connecting to the Internet right away.

7 On the "インターネット接続テストに失敗しました (Failed in Internet connection test)" screen, click "接続をセットアップします (Set up connection)".

8 Click [閉じる (Close)].

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Click (Start)→"接続先 (Dialup connection)".

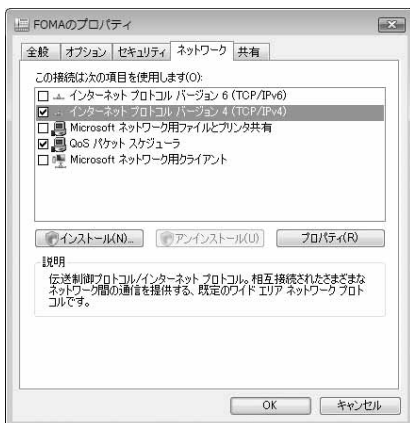
2 Right-click the dialup connection created and click "プロパティ (Property)".

3 Check the setting of each item in [全般 (General)] tab.



- If multiple modems are installed in the PC, check that "モデム - FOMA F801i (COMx)" (Modem : FOMA F801i (COMx))" is only selected under "接続の方法 (Connection method)" item (Depending on the PC environment, x represents different numbers).
- Uncheck (☐) "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)".

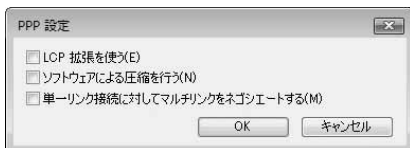
4 Click [ネットワーク (Network)] tab and set each item as shown below.



- Uncheck (☐) "インターネットプロトコルバージョン6 (TCP/IPV6) (Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPV6))".
- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc. select "インターネットプロトコルバージョン4 (TCP/IPV4) (Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPV4))", click [プロパティ (Property)] and set various information.
- When settings of "QoS/パケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler)" and other items have been requested from the provider, etc., check or uncheck as required.

5 Click [オプション (Option)] tab→Click [PPP設定 (PPP settings)].

6 Uncheck all items (☐) and click [OK].

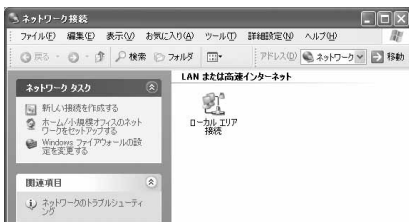


7 Click [OK].

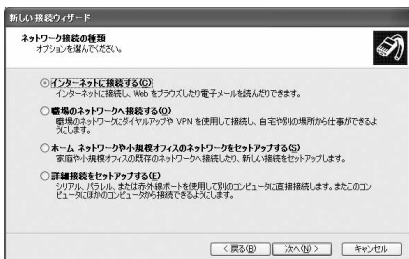
Performing communication→P25

Setting dialup connection

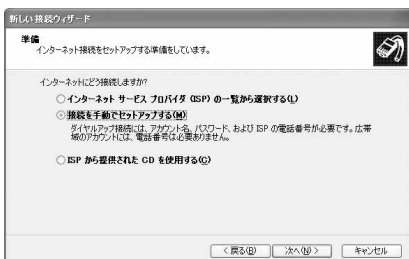
- 1 **Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.**
Connection procedure → P6
- 2 Click [スタート (Start)] → Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" → "アクセサリ (Accessories)" → "通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)".
- 3 Click "新しい接続を作成する (Create new connection)" in "ネットワークタスク (Network task)".



- 4 On the "新しい接続ウィザードの開始 (New connection wizard start)" screen, click [次へ (Next)].
- 5 Select "インターネットに接続する (Connect to Internet)" and click [次へ (Next)].



- 6 Select "接続を手動でセットアップする (Set up connection manually)" and click [次へ (Next)].

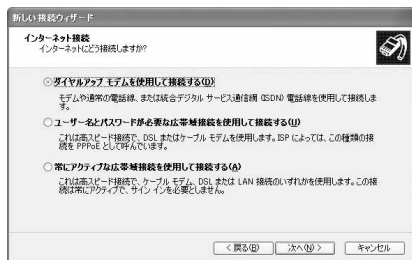


7

Select "ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Use dialup modem to connect)" and click [次へ (Next)].

■ When "デバイスの選択 (Device selection)" screen is displayed

Select only "モデム-FOMA F801i (COMx) (Modem : FOMA F801i (COMx))" and click [次へ (Next)].



- Depending on the PC environment, x represents different numbers.

8

Enter the desired dialup connection name in "ISP名 (ISP name)" and click [次へ (Next)].



- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used :
¥/:*?!<>|"

9

Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "電話番号 (Phone number)" (" * 99 * * * <cid> #" for packet communication) with one-byte and click [次へ (Next)].

<cid> : P35 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"



- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, enter as follows :

Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
mopera U	* 99 * * * 3#	* 8701
mopera	* 99 * * * 1#	* 9601

- 10** Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" → "パスワード (Password)" → "パスワードの確認入力 (Password confirmation entry)" and select all items as shown below and click [次へ (Next)].

- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)", "パスワード (Password)" or "パスワードの確認入力 (Password confirmation entry)".

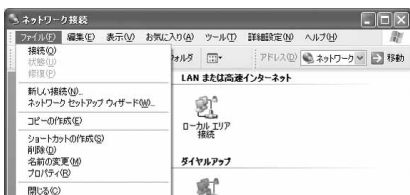
- 11** On the "新しい接続ウィザードの完了 (New connection wizard completion)" screen, click [完了 (Done)].

- 12** On the "(The ISP name entered in step 8) へ接続 (Connect to (The ISP name entered in step 8))" screen, check the settings and click [キャンセル (Cancel)].

- Check the settings without connecting to the Internet right away.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

- 1** Select the created dialup connection icon and click "ファイル (File)" → "プロパティ (Property)".



- 2** Check the setting of each item in [全般 (General)] tab.

- If multiple modems are installed in the PC, check that "モデム - FOMA F801i (COMx)" (Modem : FOMA F801i (COMx)) is only selected under "接続方法 (Connection procedure)" item (Depending on the PC environment, x represents different numbers).
- Uncheck () "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dialing information)".

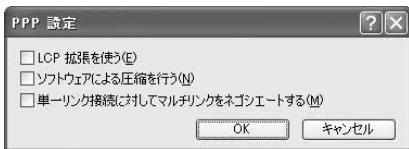
3 Click [ネットワーク (Network)] tab and set each item as shown below.



- Since "QoS/パケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler)" settings in "この接続は次の項目を使用します (Use these items for this connection)" can not be changed, leave it as it is.
- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc. select "インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP))", click [プロパティ (Property)] and set necessary information.

4 Click [設定 (Set)].

5 Uncheck all items () and click [OK].



6 Click [OK].

Performing communication → P25

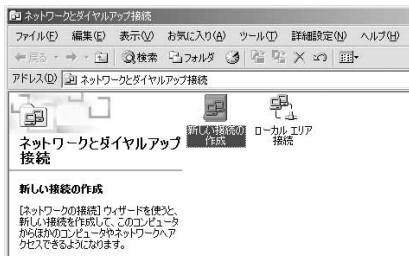
Setting dialup network for Windows 2000

Setting dialup connection

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

Connection procedure → P6

2 Click [スタート (Start)] → Select "プログラム (Programs)" → "アクセサリ (Accessories)" → "通信 (Communication)" → Click "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)" and double-click [新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection)] icon.

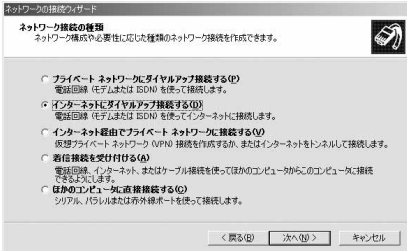


■ When "所在地情報 (Location information)" screen is displayed

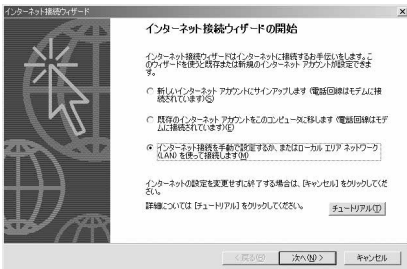
- ① Enter the area code in "市外局番／エリアコード (Area code)" and click [OK]
- ② Click [OK] on "電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options)" screen.

3 On the "ネットワークの接続ウィザードの開始 (Network connection wizard start)" screen, click [次へ (Next)].

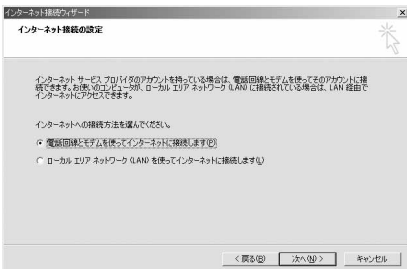
4 Select "インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Use dialup connection to Internet)" and click [次へ (Next)].



5 Select "インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Set Internet connection manually or connect using local area network (LAN))" and click [次へ (Next)].



6 Select "電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet using phone line and modem)" and click [次へ (Next)].



■ When "モデムの選択 (Modem selection)" screen is displayed

Select "FOMA F8011" and click [次へ (Next)].

7 Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "電話番号 (Phone number)" (" * 99 * * * <cid>#" for packet communication) with one-byte and click [詳細設定 (Detailed settings)].

<cid> : P35 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"

- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, enter as follows :

Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
mopera U	* 99 * * * 3#	* 8701
mopera	* 99 * * * 1#	* 9601

- Uncheck (☐) "市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial information)".

8 Set each item in [接続 (Connection)] tab as shown below.

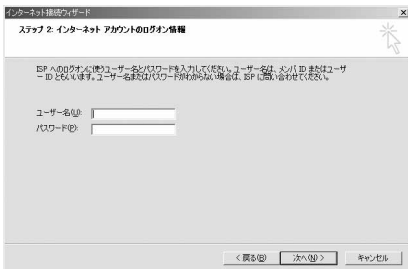
9 Click [アドレス (Address)] tab and set each item as shown below.

- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc., set various information.
- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to change the setting.

10 Click [OK].

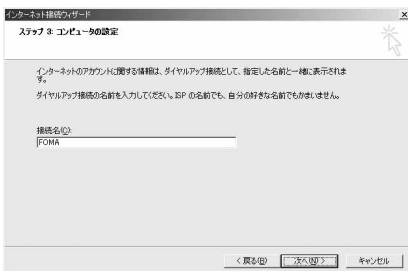
11 Click [次へ (Next)].

12 Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" → "パスワード (Password)" and click [次へ (Next)].



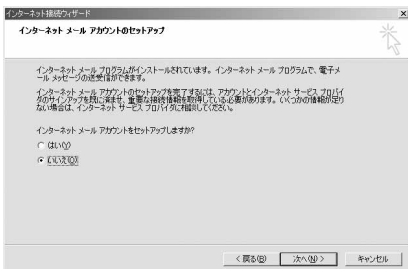
- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)". When you click [次へ (Next)] and the screen to confirm the blank entry appears, click [はい (Yes)].

13 Enter the desired dialup connection name in "接続名 (Connection name)" and click [次へ (Next)].



- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)".

14 Select "いいえ (No)" and click [次へ (Next)].



15 Click [完了 (Done)].

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection icon and click "ファイル (File)" → "プロパティ (Property)".

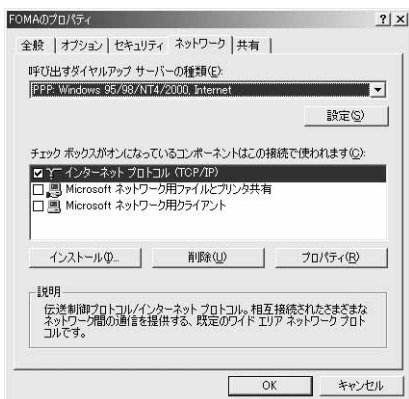


2 Check the setting of each item in [全般 (General)] tab.

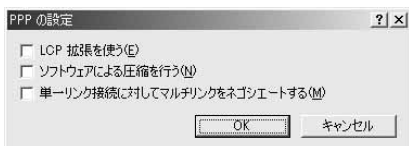


- If multiple modems are installed in the PC, check that "モデム - FOMA F801i (COMx)" (Modem : FOMA F801i (COMx))" is only selected under "接続の方法 (Connection method)" item (Depending on the PC environment, x represents different numbers).
- When the modem is changed, all items in "電話番号 (Phone number)" is initialized. Enter the dialup connection phone number again in that case.
- Uncheck (☐) "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)".

3 Click [ネットワーク (Network)] tab and set each item as shown below.



4 Click [設定 (Set)]→Uncheck all items (☐) and click [OK].



5 Click [OK].

Performing communication→P25

AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC. FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

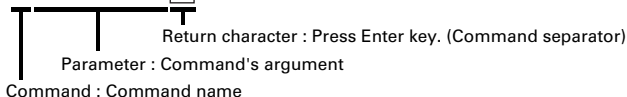
AT commands

AT command input format

"AT" must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters.

<Example> Connecting to mopera U with ATD command

ATD * 99 * * * 3# 



AT commands and their parameters must be entered on a single line. All the characters from the first character until the character directly preceding  must be entered on a single line. Each line can be up to 160 characters including "AT".

AT command input mode

To operate FOMA terminal using AT commands, the PC must be in terminal mode. Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. When terminal mode is set, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate FOMA terminal.

- Offline mode

FOMA terminal is in stand-by. FOMA terminal must be in stand-by status to use AT commands to control it.

- Online data mode

FOMA terminal is communicating. If you enter AT commands when FOMA terminal is performing communication, the sent characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while FOMA terminal is performing communication.

- Online command mode

AT commands can be used even when FOMA terminal is in communication mode. These operations make it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can continue after the commands have finished executing.

Switching between online data mode and online command mode

To switch FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode, you can use either of the following procedures :

- Enter +++ command or code set in the S2 register.

- Turn the RS-232C* ER signal OFF when set in "AT&D1".

* The USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

To switch from online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO ".

AT command list

- AT command that can be used via the FOMA F801i (Modem).
- Entering "¥" may cause "\" to appear depending on the font setting for the PC or communication software.
- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the setting values may not be recorded.

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
A/	Executes the previously executed command again.
A/ OK	When previous response is "ERROR", "ERROR" is returned.
AT	Use commands on this list by prefixing to commands other than A/ or +++. When using only this command, "OK" is returned with FOMA terminal enabled for using AT commands.
AT	
OK	
ATA	Performs the receiving process when entered while receiving a packet communication or 64K data communication.
RING ATA CONNECT	The following commands can be entered when receiving a packet communication : ATA184 : Handling of incoming calls : Send caller ID function OFF ATA186 : Handling of incoming calls : Send caller ID function ON
ATD	ATD *99 * * * <cid># : Performs calling process for packet communication. If <cid> or * * * <cid> is omitted, <cid>=1 is set.
ATD *99 * * * 1# CONNECT 460800	ATD [parameter] [phone number] : Performs calling process for 64K data communication. Calling process is not permitted if phone number contains characters other than the following : 0-9, *, #, A, a, B, b, C, c The following characters and a space can be entered but are not recognized in dialing : ,(comma), !, -, @, D, d, P, p, T, t, W, w Setting Show/Hide caller ID is enabled by inserting 186 or 184 after ATD. ATDN or ATDL can be used for redial calling.
ATE<n>	*1 Sets whether FOMA terminal will return echo for command sent from PC.
ATE1 OK	n=0 : Echo OFF n=1 : Echo ON (default) Normal usage is n=1. If the PC has an echo function, setting this command to n=0 prevents double display of characters.
ATH	Disconnects line when entered during a communication.
ATH NO CARRIER	Execute in online command mode.→P49
ATI<n>	Displays the confirmation code.
ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK	n=0 : "NTT DoCoMo" n=1 : Displays model name of the FOMA terminal n=2 : Displays version of the FOMA terminal n=3 : Displays elements of ACMF signals n=4 : Displays details of functions that can be communicated by FOMA terminal in numeric
ATO	Returns from online command mode to online data mode during communication.
ATO CONNECT 460800	
ATQ<n>	*1 Sets whether to display result code.
ATO0 OK	n=0 : Displays (default) n=1 : Does not display When ATQ1 is executed, "OK" is not returned.
ATS0=<n>	*1 Sets number of rings until FOMA terminal receives communication automatically.
ATS0=0 OK	n=0 : Do not receive automatically (default) n=1-255 : Receive automatically with specified number of rings ATS0? : Displays current settings
ATS2=<n>	Sets escape character.
ATS2=43 OK	n=0-127 (default : n=43) When n=127 is set, escape is disabled. ATS2? : Displays current settings
ATS3=<n>	Sets the carriage return (CR) character that identifies the end of AT command character string. Appended to end of echoed command character string and result code.
ATS3=13 OK	n=13 (fixed value) ATS3? : Displays current settings

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
ATS4=<n> ATS4=10  OK	Sets the line feed (LF) character. When result code is displayed as alphabetic characters, appends the character after the carriage return (CR) character. n=10 (fixed value) ATS4? : Displays current settings
ATS5=<n> ATS5=8  OK	Sets the back space (BS) character. When this character is detected during command input, the last character in the input buffer is deleted. n=8 (fixed value) ATS5? : Displays current settings
ATS6=<n> ATS6=5  OK	Sets pause time (seconds) until dialing commences but does not operate. n=2-10 (default : n=5) ATS6? : Displays current settings
ATS8=<n> ATS8=3  OK	Sets pause time (seconds) until commas are dialed but does not operate. n=0-255 (fixed value : n=3) ATS8? : Displays current settings
ATS10=<n> *1 ATS10=1  OK	Sets the delay time (1/10 seconds) for automatic disconnection but does not operate. n=1-255 (default : n=1) ATS10? : Displays current settings
ATS30=<n> ATS30=0  OK	Sets a period of time (minutes) with no data transmission/reception to terminate the connection for 64K data communications. n=0-255 : (default : n=0, n=0 indicates that inactive timer is set to OFF.) ATS30? : Displays current settings
ATS103=<n> ATS103=1  OK	Sets the separator used to append and send received sub addresses in 64K data communication. n=0 : * n=1 : / (default) n=2 : ¥ or \ ATS103? : Displays current settings
ATS104=<n> ATS104=1  OK	Sets the separator used to append and send outgoing sub addresses in 64K data communication. n=0 : # n=1 : % (default) n=2 : & ATS104? : Displays current settings
ATV<n> *1 ATV1  OK	Sets result code display method. n=0 : Number display n=1 : Alphabetical display (default) When ATV0 is executed, "0" is not returned to the same line.
ATX<n> *1 ATX4  OK	Sets whether to detect busy or dial tones and whether to display the speed in the "CONNECT" display for the connection. Busy tone detection : Sends "BUSY" response when dialup connection is busy. Dial tone detection : Detects whether FOMA terminal is connected. n=0 : No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and no speed is displayed n=1 : No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=2 : No busy tone, dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=3 : Busy tone detected, no dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=4 : Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, and speed is displayed (default) When n=0 is set, AT&E and AT¥V command will be unavailable.
ATZ *3 ATZ  OK (When in offline mode)	FOMA terminal AT command settings are reset to the status of nonvolatile memory. When this command is executed during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected (displaying "NO CARRIER").
AT%V AT%V  Ver1.00 OK	Displays the FOMA terminal version.
AT&C<n> *1 AT&C1  OK	Sets the operating conditions of the circuit CD (DCD) for DTE. n=0 : Always ON n=1 : Varies according to line connection status (default) When set to n=0, the CD signal is set to ON directly before sending "CONNECT" when ending connection. The CD signal is set to OFF directly before the line is disconnected and "NO CARRIER" is sent.

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT&D<n> *1 AT&D2 [↵] OK	Sets the operation performed when circuit ER (DTR) signal received from DTE is switched from ON to OFF while online data mode takes effect. n=0 : Ignores status (status is always considered to be ON) n=1 : Moves to online command mode when status changes from ON to OFF n=2 : Disconnects line and move to offline mode when status changes from ON to OFF (default)
AT&E<n> *1 AT&E1 [↵] OK	Sets type of speed display used when connection is made. n=0 : Displays communication speed of wireless zone n=1 : Displays communication speed between PC and FOMA terminal (default)
AT&F AT&F [↵] OK (When in offline mode)	The AT command settings in the FOMA terminal are reset to the default. When this command is executed during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected (displaying "NO CARRIER").
AT&S<n> *1 AT&S0 [↵] OK	Sets control of the data set ready (DR) signal to be output to DTE. n=0 : Always ON (default) n=1 : ON at time of connection
AT&W AT&W [↵] OK	Register the current settings in the FOMA terminal.
AT * DANTE AT * DANTE [↵] * DANTE : 3 OK	Indicates FOMA terminal reception level in the " * DANTE : <n>" format. n=0 : Out of service area n=1 : Received signal level of the FOMA terminal is 0 or 1 antenna. n=2 : Received signal level of the FOMA terminal is 2 antennas. n=3 : Received signal level of the FOMA terminal is 3 antennas. AT * DANTE=? : Displays a list of displayable values
AT * DGANSM=<n> *2 AT * DGANSM=0 [↵] OK	Sets to reject or permit incoming packet communications. n=0 : Reject setting = OFF, Accept setting = OFF (default) n=1 : Reject setting=ON n=2 : Accept setting=ON AT * DGANSM? : Displays current settings AT * DGANSM=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT * DGAPL=<n> [,<cid>] *2 AT * DGAPL=0,1 [↵] OK	Sets the dialup connections (APN) to permit incoming packet communications. APN uses <cid> defined by +CGDCONT command. n=0 : Adds to list of APN permitted for incoming communications n=1 : Deletes from list of APN permitted for incoming communications If the <cid> is not defined by the +CGDCONT command, it can still be added to or deleted from the list. If the <cid> is omitted, all the <cid> are added to/deleted from the list. AT * DGAPL? : Displays current settings AT * DGAPL=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT * DGARL=<n> [,<cid>] *2 AT * DGARL=0,1 [↵] OK	Sets the dialup connections (APN) to refuse incoming packet communications. APN uses <cid> defined by +CGDCONT command. n=0 : Adds to list of APN rejected for incoming communications n=1 : Deletes from list of APN rejected for incoming communications If the <cid> is not defined by the +CGDCONT command, it can still be added to or deleted from the list. If the <cid> is omitted, all the <cid> are added to/deleted from the list. AT * DGARL? : Displays current settings AT * DGARL=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT * DGPIR=<n> *2 AT * DGPIR=0 [↵] OK	Sets whether to send caller ID when packet communication connection is being established. This command is available when a communication is sent or received. n=0 : Connects to APN directly (default) n=1 : Connects to APN prefixing 184 n=2 : Connects to APN prefixing 186 When Show/Hide caller ID is specified by dialup network→P38 AT * DGPIR? : Displays current settings AT * DGPIR=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT * DRPW AT * DRPW [↵] * DRPW : 0 OK	Indicates an index for the reception power of the radio signals that FOMA terminal receive. AT * DRPW=? : Displays a list of displayable values

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CAOC	Displays last call cost.
AT+CAOC +CAOC : "000024" OK	
AT+CBC	Displays FOMA terminal's battery level in the "+CBC : <bcs>,<bcl>" format. bcs=0 : Powered by the battery pack bcs=1 : Not powered by the battery pack bcs=2 : Battery pack removed bcs=3 : Power-supply error bcl=0 : No battery remained or battery pack removed bcl=1-100 : Battery remained AT+CBC=? : Displays a list of displayable values
AT+CBC +CBC : 0,100 OK	
AT+CBST=<n>,1,0 *1	Sets the line to use (Setting of bearer service) n=116 : 64K data communication (default) n=134 : 64K videophone AT+CBST? : Displays current settings AT+CBST=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK	
AT+CEER	Displays reason for disconnection of immediately preceding communication. Disconnection reason list→P56
AT+CEER +CEER : 36 OK	
AT+CGDCONT *2	Sets dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.→P56
→P56	
AT+CGEQMIN *2	Sets the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) provisioned by the network when packet communication is established.→P57
→P57	
AT+CGEQREQ *2	Sets QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network at the transmission of packet communication.→P57
→P57	
AT+CGMR	Displays the FOMA terminal version.
AT+CGMR 1234567890123456 OK	
AT+CGREG=<n> *1	Sets whether to report network service registration status. The status reported is Within service area or Out of service area. n=0 : Not notified (default) n=1 : When the terminal is moved from Within service area to Out of service area or vice versa, the status is reported in the "+CGREG : <stat>" format. stat=0 : Out of service area stat=1 : Within service area stat=4 : Unknown AT+CGREG? : Displays the current settings and status in the "+CGREG : <n>,<stat>" format AT+CGREG=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT+CGREG=0 OK	
AT+CGSN	Displays FOMA terminal serial No.
AT+CGSN 123456789012345 OK	
AT+CLIP=<n> *1	Set whether to display sender's caller ID on PC when receiving 64K data communication. n=0 : Does not display result (default) n=1 : Displays result AT+CLIP? : Displays the current settings and status in the "+CLIP : <n>,<m>" format m=0 : Network setting not to send caller ID when sending data m=1 : Network setting to send caller ID when sending data m=2 : Unknown AT+CLIP=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT+CLIP=0 OK	
AT+CLIR=<n> *2	Sets whether to send phone number to the receiver when sending 64K data communication. n=0 : Uses the setting in service agreement n=1 : Does not send n=2 : Sends (default) AT+CLIR? : Displays the current settings and status in the "+CLIR : <n>,<m>" format m=0 : CLIR not operating (always sends) m=1 : CLIR operating (never sends) m=2 : Unknown m=3 : CLIR temporary mode (default=does not send) m=4 : CLIR temporary mode (default=sends) AT+CLIR=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT+CLIR=2 OK	

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CMEE=<n> *1	Sets whether to display an error report at the FOMA terminal. n=0 : Displays "ERROR" and no result code (default) n=1 : Uses result code, displaying reason as number n=2 : Uses result code, displaying reason as alphabetic characters Displays reasons in the "+CME ERROR : xxxx" format when n=1 or n=2 is set (xxxx = number or alphabetic characters).→P56 "Error messages list" AT+CMEE? : Displays current settings AT+CMEE=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT+CMEE=0  OK	
AT+CNUM	Displays FOMA terminal's own phone number in the "+CNUM : <number>,<type>" format. number : Own phone number type=129 : International access code + not included type=145 : International access code + included
AT+CNUM  +CNUM : ,"090XXXXXXXX", 129 OK	
AT+COPS=<n>,2,<oper> *2	Sets search method for network operator to connect. n=0 : Auto (default) n=1 : Manual n=3 : No mapping When n=1 is set, set PLMN Number in hexadecimal value for <oper>. AT+COPS? : Displays current settings AT+COPS=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT+COPS=0  OK	
AT+CPAS	Display whether FOMA terminal can send and receive AT commands to external devices in "+CPAS : <n>" format. n=0 : Possible n=1 : Impossible n=2 : Status unknown n=3 : Possible and receiving n=4 : Possible and communicating AT+CPAS=? : Displays a list of displayable values
AT+CPAS  +CPAS : 0 OK	
AT+CPIN="<pin>","<newpin>"	Enters these commands for entering PIN/PIN2 codes or PUK. To enter PUK, enter new PIN/ PIN2 code in <newpin>. Even if entering in <newpin> when entry of PIN/PIN2 code is request, PIN/PIN2 code cannot be changed. AT+CPIN? : Displays the code currently requested in "+CPIN : <n>" format n=READY : Entry of code not requested n=SIM PIN : Entry of PIN code waited n=SIM PIN2 : Entry of PIN2 code waited n=SIM PUK : Entry of PUK waited due to failure in unblocking PIN code n=SIM PUK2 : Entry of PUK waited due to failure in unblocking PIN2 code
AT+CPIN="0000"  OK	
AT+CR=<n> *1	Sets whether to display the communication type before "CONNECT" is displayed during connection. n=0 : Does not display (default) n=1 : Displays the communication type in the "+CR : <serv>" format serv=GPRS : Packet communication serv=SYNC : 64K data communication serv=AV64K : 64K videophone AT+CR? : Displays current settings AT+CR=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT+CR=0  OK	
AT+CRC=<n> *1	Sets whether to use +CRING result codes when communication is received. n=0 : Does not use (default) n=1 : Uses "+CRING : <type>" result codes type=GPRS "PPP",,"<APN>" : Packet communication type=SYNC : 64K data communication type=AV64K : 64K videophone AT+CRC? : Displays current settings AT+CRC=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT+CRC=0  OK	
AT+CREG=<n> *1	Sets whether to display network information indicating Within service area or Out of service area. n=0 : Not notified (default) n=1 : When the terminal is moved from Within service area to Out of service area or vice versa, the status is reported in the "+CREG : <stat>" format. stat=0 : Out of service area stat=1 : Within service area stat=4 : Unknown AT+CREG? : Displays the current settings and status in the "+CREG : <n>,<stat>" format AT+CREG=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT+CREG=0  OK	
AT+CUSD=<n>,<str> *1	Inquiries and set for Additional service (Register USSD) of Network Services. Enter Service code provided by DoCoMo in <str>. n=0 : Does not answer mid result (default) n=1 : Answers mid result in "+CUSD : <m>,<str>","0" format m=0 : Information not requested m=1 : Information requested AT+CUSD? : Displays current settings AT+CUSD=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT+CUSD=0,"012345678"  OK	

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+FCLASS=<n> *1	Sets communication type supported by FOMA terminal. n=0 : Only data supported (default) AT+FCLASS? : Displays current settings AT+FCLASS=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT+FCLASS=0 [↵] OK	
AT+GCAP	
AT+GCAP [↵] +GCAP : +CGSM,+FCLASS, +W OK	Displays the range of AT commands supported by FOMA terminal in the "+GCAP : <n>" format. n=+CGSM : Supports GSM commands (including the case for supporting a part) n=+FCLASS : Supports +FCLASS commands n=+W : Supports +W commands
AT+GMI	Displays FOMA terminal manufacturer name.
AT+GMI [↵] FUJITSU OK	
AT+GMM	Displays model name of the FOMA terminal.
AT+GMM [↵] FOMA F801i OK	
AT+GMR	Displays the FOMA terminal version.
AT+GMR [↵] Ver1.00 OK	
AT+IFC=<n,m> *1	Sets how to control local flow between the PC and the FOMA terminal. n : DCE by DTE m : DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control 1 : Perform XON/XOFF flow control 2 : Perform RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default) AT+IFC? : Displays current settings AT+IFC=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT+IFC=2,2 [↵] OK	
AT+WS46=<n> *1	Sets wireless network used when sending communication. Does not affect send operation. n=22 : FOMA network (fixed value) AT+WS46? : Displays current settings AT+WS46=? : Displays a list of assignable values
AT+WS46=22 [↵] OK	
AT+WS	Displays the currently set commands and S register settings.
AT+WS [↵] E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 · · · (snip) · · · S104=001 OK	
AT+V<n> *1	Sets type of response codes used when connection is made. n=0 : Does not use expanded result codes (default) n=1 : Uses expanded result codes
AT+V0 [↵] OK	
+++	Moves from online data mode to online command mode when entered during a communication. The escape guard interval is 1 second (fixed value).
+++ (not displayed) OK	

*1 Registered in FOMA terminal by &W command.

*2 Not reset by &F and Z commands.

*3 When Z command is executed before the &W command, the terminal is reset to the last status registered in memory, and prior changes are erased.

Disconnection reason list

■ Packet communication

Value	Description
26	APN is not present or is incorrect.
27	
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal does not subscribe to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection.

■ 64K data communication

Value	Description
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection.
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	The remote device is called but no response.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Description
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM
15	SIM wrong	Other than DoCoMo SIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

Supplement to AT command

- <cid> is the number used to control dialup connection (APN) for packet communication to be registered in FOMA terminal. "1-10" can be registered in FOMA terminal. An APN "mopera.ne.jp" to connect to mopera is registered in cid1 and an APN "mopera.net" to connect to mopera U is registered in cid3 by default.

<APN> is an optional string for each connection to indicate dialup connection.

■ Command name : +CGDCONT=[parameter]

- **Outline**
Sets dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.
- **Format**
+CGDCONT= [<cid> [, "PPP" [, "<APN>"]]]
- **Parameter description**
 <cid> : 1-10
 <APN> : Optional
- **Example of execution**
 The command used to register an APN named "abc" (when <cid> =2).
 AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc" 
 OK

- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**

AT+CGDCONT= : Returns all <cid> to the setting by default.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid> : Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.

AT+CGDCONT? : Displays current settings.

AT+CGDCONT=? : Displays a list of assignable values.

■ Command name : +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

- **Outline**

Sets the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) provisioned by the network when packet communication is established.

- **Format**

AT+CGEQMIN= [<cid> [,,<Maximum bitrate UL> [,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

- **Parameter description**

<cid> : 1-10

<Maximum bitrate UL> : None (default) or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL> : None (default) or 384

* For <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL>, the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to "None (default)", all speeds are permissible. If "64" and "384" are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.

- **Example of execution**

(1) Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)

AT+CGEQMIN=2 

OK

(2) Command used to permit only 64kbps upload and 384kbps download (when <cid>=4)

AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384 

OK

(3) Command used to permit only 64kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=5)

AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64 

OK

(4) Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 384kbps download (when <cid>=6)

AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384 

OK

- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**

AT+CGEQMIN= : Returns all <cid> to the setting by default.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid> : Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.

AT+CGEQMIN? : Displays current settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=? : Displays a list of assignable values.

■ Command name : +CGEQREQ=[parameter]

- **Outline**

Sets QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network at the transmission of packet communication.

- **Format**

AT+CGEQREQ= [<cid>]

- **Parameter description**

Only commands that require connection at 64kbps upload, 384kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each <cid>.

<cid> : 1-10

- **Example of execution**

(when <cid>=3)

AT+CGEQREQ=3 

OK

- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**

AT+CGEQREQ= : Returns all <cid> to the setting by default.

AT+CGEQREQ=<cid> : Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.

AT+CGEQREQ? : Displays current settings.

AT+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of assignable values.

Result codes

- When ATV command is set to n=1 (default), the result code is displayed in alphabetic characters. When the command is set to n=0, the result code is displayed numerically.→P51

Result codes

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to other party
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Completed connection Time-out
100	RESTRICTION	Network restriction in place (The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.)
101	DELAYED	Redial call restricted

Extended result code

- When AT&E is set to n=0

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal and base station
122	CONNECT 64000	64000bps
125	CONNECT 384000	384000bps

- When AT&E is set to n=1

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal and PC
5	CONNECT 1200	1200bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2400bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4800bps
13	CONNECT 7200	7200bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9600bps
15	CONNECT 14400	14400bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19200bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38400bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57600bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115200bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230400bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460800bps

* To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to the PC with a USB cable.

Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPOverUD	Connect via 64K data communication (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
3	AV64K	Connect via 64K videophone
5	PACKET	Connect via packet communication

■ Display example of result code

When ATX0 is set

Regardless of the settings of AT¥V command, only "CONNECT" is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example : ATD *99 * * * 3#
CONNECT

Number display example : ATD *99 * * * 3#
1

When ATX1 is set

- When ATX1, AT¥V0 (default) is set

Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format : "CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal - PC>".

Text display example : ATD *99 * * * 3#
CONNECT 460800

Number display example : ATD *99 * * * 3#
1 21

- When ATX1, AT¥V1 is set^{*1}

The code is displayed upon completion of connection in the following format :

"CONNECT<speed between FOMA terminal - PC> <Communication protocol><dialup connection (APN)>/<upstream maximum speed (between FOMA terminal→radio base station)>/<downstream maximum speed (between FOMA terminal←radio base station)>"^{*2}

Text display example : ATD *99 * * * 3#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.net/64/384
(Indicates the terminal is connected to mopera.net providing a maximum upload speed of 64kbps and a maximum download speed of 3648kbps.)

Number display example : ATD *99 * * * 3#
1 21 5

^{*1} When ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail. It is recommended to use only AT¥V0.

^{*2} When AT¥V1 is set, <dialup connection (APN)> and the following are displayed only when packet is used for connection.



FOMA® F801i

Kuten Code List

Kuten Code List

- * For entering characters using code, see "Entering characters using code" in the attached manual.
 * Note that some characters in the code input list may look different from actual ones.

1st -3rd	4th digit of code									1st -3rd	4th digit of code									1st -3rd	4th digit of code								
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	083	一	十							207	廣	雁	頤	頤					
011	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	130	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	207	企 危 忌 喜 器								
012	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	208	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
013	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	132	⑲	⑳	㉑	㉒	㉓	㉔	㉕	㉖	㉗	209	旗	寄	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器	
014	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	133	X	I	U	o	o	o	o	o	o	210	奇	婚	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器	
015	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	134	km	ng	kg	cc	cc	cc	cc	cc	cc	211	紀	婚	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器	
016	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	135										212	奇	婚	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器	
017	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	136										213	紀	婚	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器	
018	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	137										214	紀	婚	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器	
019	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	138										215	紀	婚	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器	
020	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	139										216	紀	婚	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器	
021	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓											217	紀	婚	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器	
022	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓											218	紀	婚	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器	
023	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	160	亜	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	蓬		219	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
024	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	161	西	梅	握	渥	旭	挨	始	蓬		220	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
										162	梓	梅	握	渥	旭	挨	始	蓬		221	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
										163	梓	梅	握	渥	旭	挨	始	蓬		222	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
										164	鞍	或	否							223	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
																				224	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
																				225	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
																				226	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
031										165	威	尉	以	位	依	偉	困	夷	委	227	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
032										166	成	尉	以	位	依	偉	困	夷	委	228	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
033										167	井	維	惟	慰	易	倚	困	夷	委	229	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
034										168	井	維	惟	慰	易	倚	困	夷	委	230	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
035										169	引	維	惟	慰	易	倚	困	夷	委	231	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
036										170										232	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
037										171	汪	雨	卯	雞	丑	石	宇	鳥	羽	233	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
038										172	明	雨	卯	雞	丑	石	宇	鳥	羽	234	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
039										173	云	運	雲							235	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
040																				236	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
041										174										237	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
042										175										238	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
043										176										239	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
044										177										240	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
045										178										241	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
046																				242	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
047																				243	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
048																				244	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
050										179										245	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
051										180										246	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
052										181										247	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
053										182										248	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
054																				249	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
055										182										250	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
056										183										251	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
057										184										252	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
058										185										253	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
										186										254	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
060										187										255	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
061										188										256	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
062										189										257	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
063										190										258	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
064										191										259	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
065										192										260	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
										193										261	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
070										194										262	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
071										195										263	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
072										196										264	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
073										197										265	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
074										198										266	基	岐	企	危	忌	喜	器		
075										199																			
076										200																			
077										201																			
078										202																			
										203																			
										204																			
										205																			
										206																			

[illegible]

1st -3rd	4th digit of code									1st -3rd	4th digit of code									1st -3rd	4th digit of code									1st -3rd	4th digit of code													
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
667	砌	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	744	岬	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	821	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑
668	碣	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	745	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	822	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
669	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	746	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	823	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
670	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	747	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	824	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
671	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	748	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	825	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
672	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	749	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	826	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
673	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	750	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	827	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
674	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	751	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	828	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
675	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	752	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	829	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
676	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	753	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	830	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
677	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	754	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	831	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
678	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	755	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	832	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
679	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	756	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	833	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
680	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	757	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	834	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
681	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	758	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	835	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
682	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	759	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	836	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
683	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	760	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	837	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
684	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	761	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	838	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
685	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	762	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	839	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
686	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	763	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	840	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	閑	
687	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	764	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
688	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	765	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
689	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	766	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
690	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	767	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
691	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	768	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
692	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	769	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
693	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	770	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
694	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	771	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
695	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	772	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
696	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	773	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
697	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	774	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
698	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	775	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
699	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	776	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
700	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	777	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
701	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	778	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
702	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	779	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
703	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	780	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
704	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	781	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
705	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	782	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
706	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	783	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
707	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	784	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
708	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	785	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
709	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	786	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
710	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	787	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
711	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	788	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
712	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	789	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞	衞																								
713	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	礧	790	衞	衞																																